

CLEM LABINE'S

PERIOD HOMES

*The Professional's Resource
for Residential Architecture*

SPRING 2001 • VOLUME TWO • NUMBER ONE • \$5.00

The
Classical
Residence

INSIDE:

25
**Buying
Guides**



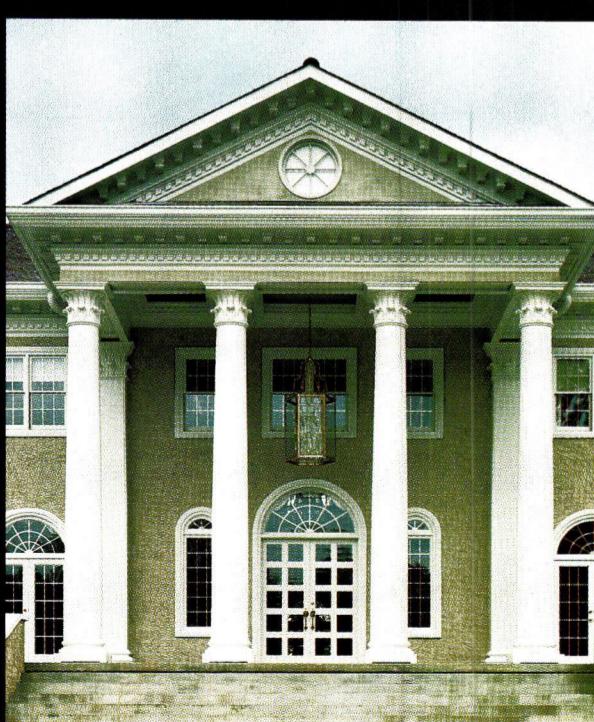
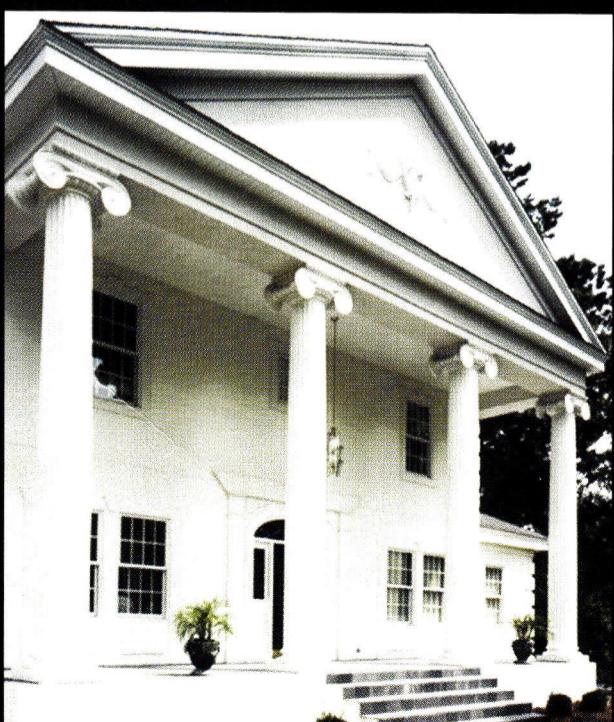
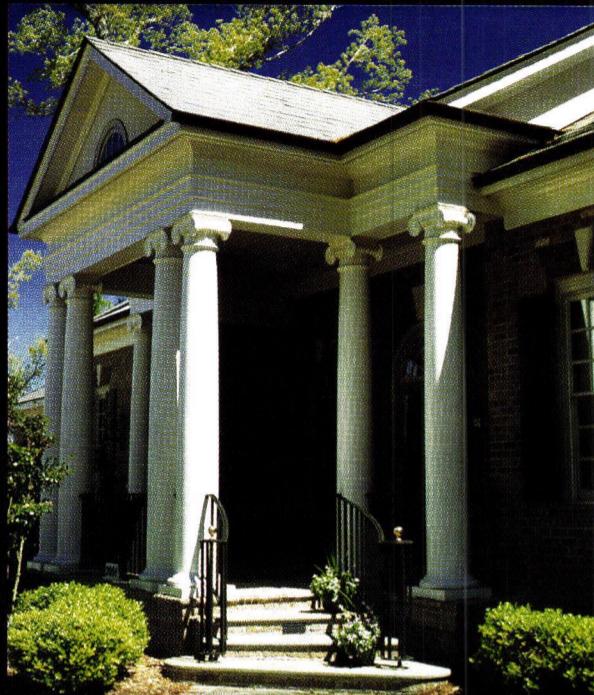
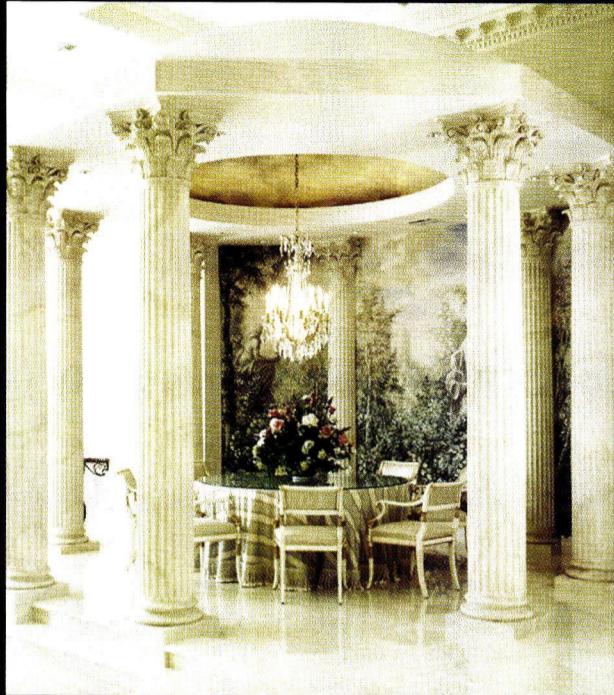
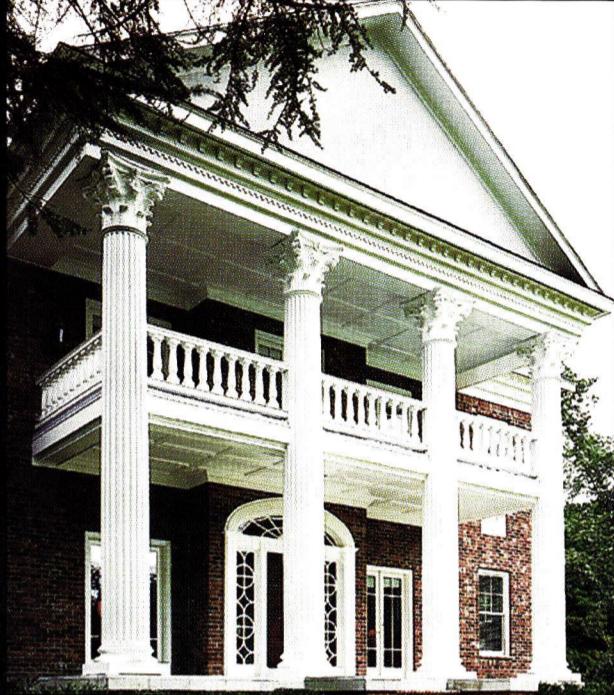
Residential Product Info:
www.period-homes.com

11/01/01
DIANE WILK
816 BONITA AVE.
SOUTH PASADENA, CA 91030

3-DIGIT 910
POOL7

CHADSWORTH'S 1.800.COLUMNS®

www.columns.com



WOOD • POLYSTONE™ • FIBERGLASS

*I*dea Book twenty dollars.

CORPORATE HEADQUARTERS • 277 NORTH FRONT STREET • HISTORIC WILMINGTON, NORTH CAROLINA 28401 • 800.486.2118
ATLANTA • PRIVATE CONSULTATION • 404.876.5410 LONDON • EUROPEAN HEADQUARTERS • 01.287.8718

WRITE IN NUMBER 1580 FOR POLYSTONE • 180 FOR WOOD

PERIOD HOMES

VOLUME 2 ♦ NUMBER 1 ♦ SPRING 2001



*The Professional's Resource
for Residential Architecture*

N THE COVER: The Brooklyn Heights, N.Y., firm Cameron Cameron & Taylor Design Associates renovated and designed an addition to a residence in East Iorches, N.Y. This photo dramatizes how beautifully one room flows into another with entryways articulated by traditional moldings and corner blocks. (Photo: Peter Zire Photography)

Editorial Content

THE CLASSICAL RESIDENCE

Feature Articles:

Profile: Thomas Norman Rajkovich	6
Decorating in the Classical Style	34
Repairing Wood Columns	42
Stone Carving Today	55
Venetian Plaster	66
Stone Floor Restoration	73
The Classical Garden	85
Book Review: Edward Lutyens	92

Classical Residential Projects:

Johnson Hall	12
Cameron Cameron & Taylor	18
Hilton-Vanderhorn	22
John Murray	26
Milton Grenfell	30

The Buying Guides:

Columns & Capitals	46-51
Balustrades & Balusters	52-54
Stone Carving	56
Wood Carving	59-60
Decorative Painting	69-72
Tile & Stone	76-80
Murals & Mosaics	81-82

Annual Report: GARDENS

The Buying Guides:

Planters & Urns	84 & 88-90
Benches & Garden Furniture	93-94
Garden & Landscape Paving	95-96
Sculpture & Garden Ornament	97-99
Lanterns & Exterior Lighting	100-106
Gas Lighting	108
Fountains & Water Features	109-112
Gazebos & Outbuildings	114-116
Landscape Specialties	118-126

Annual Report: ROOFING

Feature Articles:

Tile Roofing	128
Specifying Rain Gutters	143

The Buying Guides:

Residential Roofing	134-137
Metal Roofs	138
Slate Roofs	139-140
Gutters & Leader Boxes	145
Skylights	147
Cupolas	148
Weathervanes & Snowguards	149-150
Bird Control	152

Additional Editorial Features

The Web Address Book	72, 156-157
Product Literature	157-160
Book Review	161

Related Advertising

A

A&M Victorian Decorations, Inc.	47
A.A. Abbingdon Affiliates	35
AAMSCO Lighting	40
ARK II Timberframes	15
Aardvark Antiques	117
Adams Architectural Wood Products	21
Agrell & Thorpe Wood Carving	62
Alaco Ladder	37
Allied Window	27
Am-Dia, Inc.	125
American Slate Co.	141
American Wood Column Corp.	45
Amsterdam Corp.	75
Anything But Plain	71
Aquarius Waterworks	111
Architectural Accents—VA	21
Architectural Grille	11
Architectural Iron Designs, Inc.	123
Architectural Paneling, Inc.	47, 61
Architectural Products by Outwater-3/01	5
Architectural Sculpture Ltd.	49
Architectural Timberworks	13
Arco Mfg. Co.	11
Artistic Railings	11
Arts & Crafts Period Textiles	37
Authentic Designs	40

B

Badger Village Blacksmithing	121
Ball & Ball Lighting & Hardware	164
Barber Lumber Sales	133
Barn People, Inc.	17
Bear Creek Lumber	133
Berger Bros. Co.	151
Bevolo Gas & Electric Lights	109
Bill's Custom Metal Fabricator	11
Bird-B-Gone	153
Bird-X Inc.	153
Bolection Door	23
Boro Plastering Corp.	65
Boston Turning Works	47
Bradbury & Bradbury	33
Brass Baron	113

C

CS Conservatories	117
Carlisle Restoration Lumber	15
Casa di Murano	41
Castle Metal Products	141
CemcoLift/LGIS America, Inc.	39
CertainTeed Corp. Carriage House Shingle	133
Chadsworth's 1.800.Columns	2, 45
Chaenomeles, Inc.	119
Champlain Stone, Ltd.	121
Charles River Restoration Co.	146
Charleston Lighting & Mfg., Inc.	105
Cheryl Parsons Designs	84
Chestnut Oak Company	13
Chimney Pot Shoppe	133
Christopher D. Hess, Inc.	33
Christopher Thompson Ironworks	103
Classic Gutter Systems	142
Classic Lighting Devices	105
Classic Plaster Studios	35
Claystone	77
Color People	71
Conant Custom Brass Lighting	40
Conant Custom Brass Metalwork	40
Concrete Designs, Inc.	45
Coppa Woodworking	27
Copper House	106, 151
Coppersmythe, Josiah R.	106
Copperworks of Don Miller	142
Country Road Associates, Ltd.	17
Craftsmen Hardware Company	31
Crescent City Iron Supply, Inc.	123
Crosswinds Gallery	151
Crown City Hardware	23
Cumberland Woodcraft	62
Custom Fireplaces & More	37
Custom Home Accessories	127
Customlightstyles.com	106

D

DHS Designs	127
DMS Studios — Mantels	56
Dahlhaus Lighting	103
Davitt Garden Design	117
Decorative Outdoor Products	115

DecorativeIron.com/Steel Supply	123
Deep Landing Workshop	40
Deer Park Stairbuilding & Millwork	13
Designs In Tile	75
Dianne Warner Studio	83
Drums Sash & Door Co.	17
Duluth Timber Co.	13
Durable Slate Co.	141
Dutch Product & Supply Company	77

E

E.R. Butler & Co.	163
Early New England Restorations	17
Echeguren Slate	77
Edile, Ltd.	65
Eron Johnson Antiques	37
Escort Lighting	105
Eternit, Inc.	139
Eugenia's Antique Hardware	21
EverGreene Painting Studios	71
Evergreen Slate Co.	139

F

Fagan Designs	47
Faubourg Lighting, Inc.	105
Faux Effects	65
Festive Fountains	113
Fine Architectural Metalsmiths	119
Fischer & Jirouch	35
Florentine Craftsmen, Inc.	113
Flower Framers	89
Fresh Fish Ceramic Tiles	77

G

GAF Materials Corp.	141
Gaby's Shoppe	39
Gas & Electric Architectural Lighting	107
Gerald Siciliano/Studio Design Assoc.	37, 56
German Silver Sink Co.	39
Glass House	115
Good Time Stove Co.	35
Goodwin Assoc.	47
Gooseneck Designs	75
Gough Bros.	151
Grand Illusion	83
Grate Vents	13
Guided Imagery	83
Gutter Topper	146

H

H.I.C. Millwork, Inc.	23
HB&G	43
Haddonstone	119
Hahn's Woodworking, Inc.	21
Handelman Studios	105
Hans Duus Blacksmithing Inc.	40
Hazelmore Industries, Inc.	37
Hendricks Woodworking	17
Heritage Door	29
Hilltop Slate Company	139
Historical Arts & Casting, Inc.	101
Hooe, Ltd.	71
Hopper Specialty Finishes	65
Hugh Lofting Timber Framing	13
Hutton Metalcrafts	106

I

Indital, USA	125
Institute of Classical Architecture	9
Island Post Cap	121

J

J&L Shutters	19, 29
J. Sussman, Inc.	146
JMS Wood Products	49
James Peters & Sons, Inc.	21
Jenkins Publishing	142
Johnson Art Studio	106
Joseph Millworks	21

K

Kaleh Design Collection Stone	91
Kayne & Son	21
King's Chandelier Company	40
Kingsland Co.	31
Klitsas - Fine Wood Sculptor	62
Koch, Ken - Woodcarver	62
Kremer Pigments	71

B E C O M E A M E M B E R O F

THE INSTITUTE OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

*The leading educational resource
for the classical tradition in architecture*

When you become a member of the Institute of Classical Architecture, you not only support its educational mission but also gain access to the Institute's wide range of programs and publications:

Annual Journal — THE CLASSICIST Annual Conference Lecture and Salon Series Travel Programs Summer Program in Classical Architecture Book Series

Basic professional-level membership in the Institute is \$50; higher levels of membership are available that support its ongoing educational programs. Send check directly to the Institute at the address below, or for more details log onto the Institute website at www.classicist.org.

THE INSTITUTE OF
CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE
225 Lafayette St., Suite 1009 New York, NY 10012
Telephone (917) 237-1208 Fax (917) 237-1230
e-mail: institute@classicist.org / website: www.classicist.org

WRITE IN NO. 1340

T

TIR — The Information Refinery	I
Tanglewood Conservatories	II
Tartaruga Design	7
Teal Cedar Products	13
Texas Carved Stone, L.P.	5
Texas Metal Industries, Inc.	12
The Federalist	10
The TexSton Company	3
Tile Roofs, Inc.	13
Tiles of Iznik / Timok	7
Timberlane Woodcrafters	1
Touch's Of Illusion	7
Trellis Structures	12
Tropic Top	13

V

V. Michael Ashford Evergreen Studios	4
Vande Hey-Raleigh Mfg.	13
Vermont Timber Frames	1
Vintage Wood Works	1

W

W.H. Coe, Inc.	7
Waterlox Corp.	3
Wayside Fence Co.	II
Weather Guard Building Products	14
White River Hardwoods	1
Wiemann Iron Works	II
Winged Dog Tile	7
Wm. J. Rigby Company	1
Wood Factory	1
Wood Innovations of Suffolk	II
Wood Window Workshop	2
Woodline Company	6
Woodstone Company	2
Woolen Mill Fan Co.	3

Z

Zeluck Doors and Windows	2
------------------------------------	---

PERIOD HOMES

The Professional's Resource for Residential Architecture

69A Seventh Avenue, Brooklyn, NY 11217

FAX: (718) 636-0750

www.period-homes.com



Editor Judith Siegel Lief

Technical Editor Michael Carey

Production Editor Cole Gagne

Assistant Editor Henrika Taylor

Contributing Editor Eve M. Kahn

Art Director Judith Siegel Lief

Associate Art Director Nancy Carey

Assistant Art Director Molly Mackaman

Assistant Art Director Eli Connaughton

Assistant Art Director Kathy Mills

Publisher Clem Labine

Advertising & Marketing Director Jennifer Baldwin

District Manager Jennifer Fortune

Circulation Supervisor Danielle Cammarata

European Marketing Manager Lisa de Jager-Mahler

Marketing Consultant Susan Littman

IT Services Manager Dorian Henao

Office Manager Eileen Perreca

Office Assistant Melanie Gonzalez

Office Assistant Rebeca Gonzalez

Office Assistant Michelle Romeo

Office Assistant Christina Fortune

Office Assistant Nicole Quevedo

Office Assistant Casey Penney

Webmaster Ray Shepherd

Comptroller Elliott M. Davis

PERIOD HOMES (ISSN # 1531-2100) is published quarterly by Historical Trends Corporation, 69A Seventh Avenue, Brooklyn, NY 11217. Subscription rate to professionals in architecture, interior design, construction, and landscape design in the U.S. and possessions: \$18/yr. (4 issues). Not available outside the U.S. Postal System.

Contents of PERIOD HOMES are fully protected by copyright and must not be reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission from the Publisher.

© Copyright 2001 by Historical Trends Corporation. All rights reserved.

LIST RENTAL: THE INFORMATION REFINERY (201) 529-2600

BULK REPRINTS: THE REPRINT DEPT. (800) 259-0470

PRINTED AT THE MACK PRINTING GROUP, Easton, PA

L

Laguna Lightcraft	106
Larry Etzen Studio, Inc.	39
Lawler Foundry Corporation	133
Leeland's Slate Roof/Steeple Specialists	142
Limestone Concept, Inc.	56
Liner Rolpanit, Inc.	55
London Tile Co.	75
Luminaria	41

M

Mandish Research International	43
Manor Style, Inc.	43
Manuel Palos Sculpture Inc.	57
Margaret Licha Designs	75
Martha's Design Center	15
Maurer & Shepherd, Joyners	13
Melton Classics	43
Metro Inter Co.	84
Michael Reilly Design	21
Mitchell, D.C.	25
Mohamad Woodturning Corp.	45
Morrow Company	125
Mortex Mfg. Co., Inc.	97
Mosaic Fantasies	83
Murdock Fountains	113

N

NIKO Contracting — Roofing/Sheetmetal	138
Nanz Custom Hardware, Inc.	31
Native Tile & Ceramics	75
New Concept Louvers	148
New West Furniture	39
New York Gas Lighting Co	109
Newstamp Lighting	105
Nichols Bros. Stoneworks	91
Nixalite	153
Nocera Art Tile	75
Normandy Imports, Inc.	91
North American Stone Company	77
North Prairie Tileworks	75
Northern Roof Tile	133

O

Oak Leaf Conservatories	117
Old California Lantern Co.	103
Old Fashioned Milk Paint Co.	71
Old World Stoneworks	35
Olde Mill Lighting Ltd.	106

Optic Nerve Art Corp.

Passaic Millwork	45
Pave Tech/Probst	97
Period Lighting Fixtures Inc.	103
Phelps Company/Architectural Specialties	29, 31
Pickel Studio, Inc.	84
Pine Hall Brick	96
Private Garden	125

R

R. Walsh Gate & Railing	119
Real Milk Paint	71
Renaissance Conservatories	115
Restoration Trades Exchange	7
Restore Media	9
Robert Young & Sons, Inc.	11
Romancing the Woods	119
Roof Tile and Slate	131
Rossato Giovanni/Vicenza Stone Sculpture	37
Rossi USA Corp.	11
Rutter Decorative Painting Studios, Inc.	84

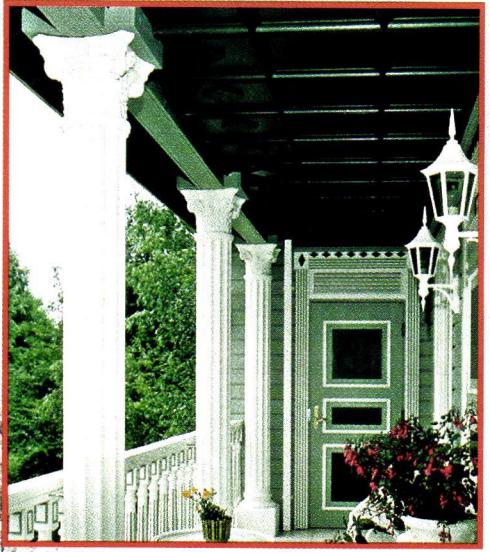
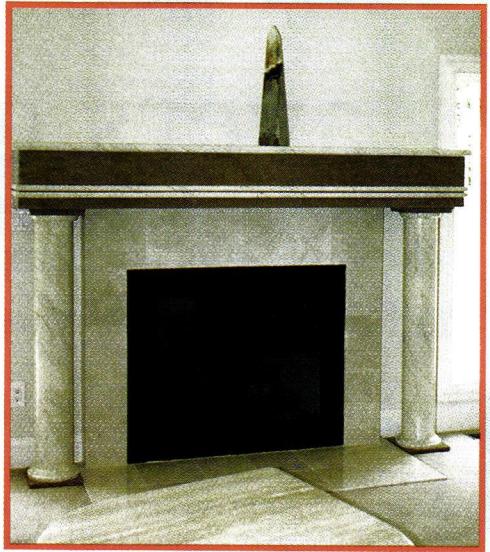
S

Sandwich Lantern	103
Savannah Hardscapes	113
Schwartz's Forge Metalworks	11
Schwerd Manufacturing	45
Scotia Slate Products	142
Seibert & Rice	91
Sepp Leaf Products, Inc.	65
Shutter Depot	13
Slate International	142
Slate and Copper Co.	129
Smooth-On	33
Sonrise Woodcarving Studio	62
Southern Aluminum Co.	142
Spartan Architectural Columns	47
Stone Forest	113
Stone Magic Mfg.	35
Stonex Cast Products	53
Sun-Dor Co.	27
Sunbilt Solar Products	146
Sunflower Shower Co.	39
Sunshine Rooms	115
Superior Moulding, Inc.	63
Swan Secure Products, Inc.	133
Sycamore Creek	119
Sylva Designs LLC	93

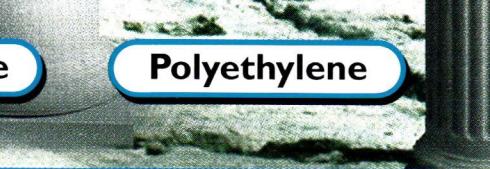
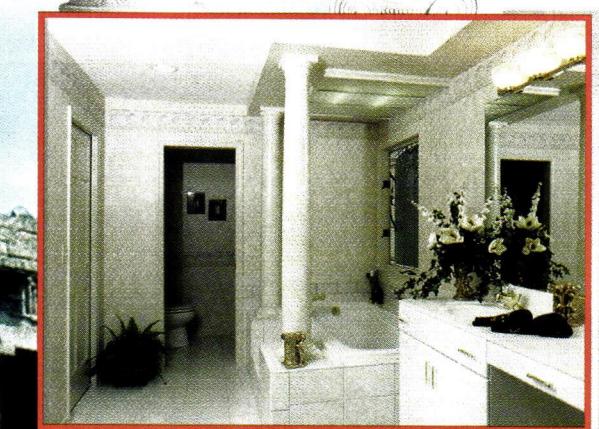
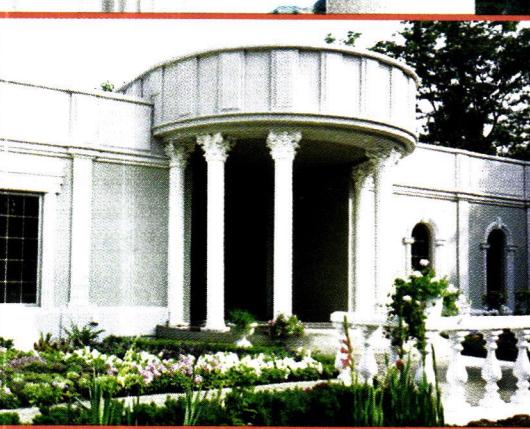
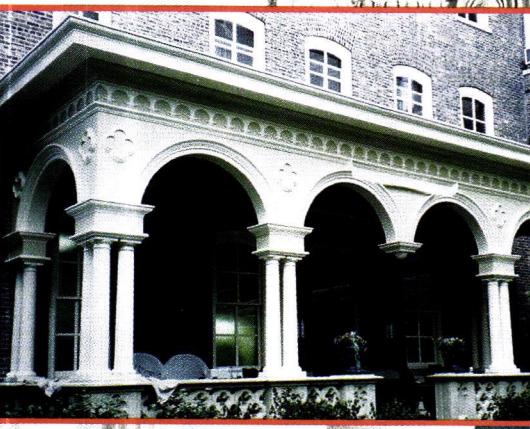
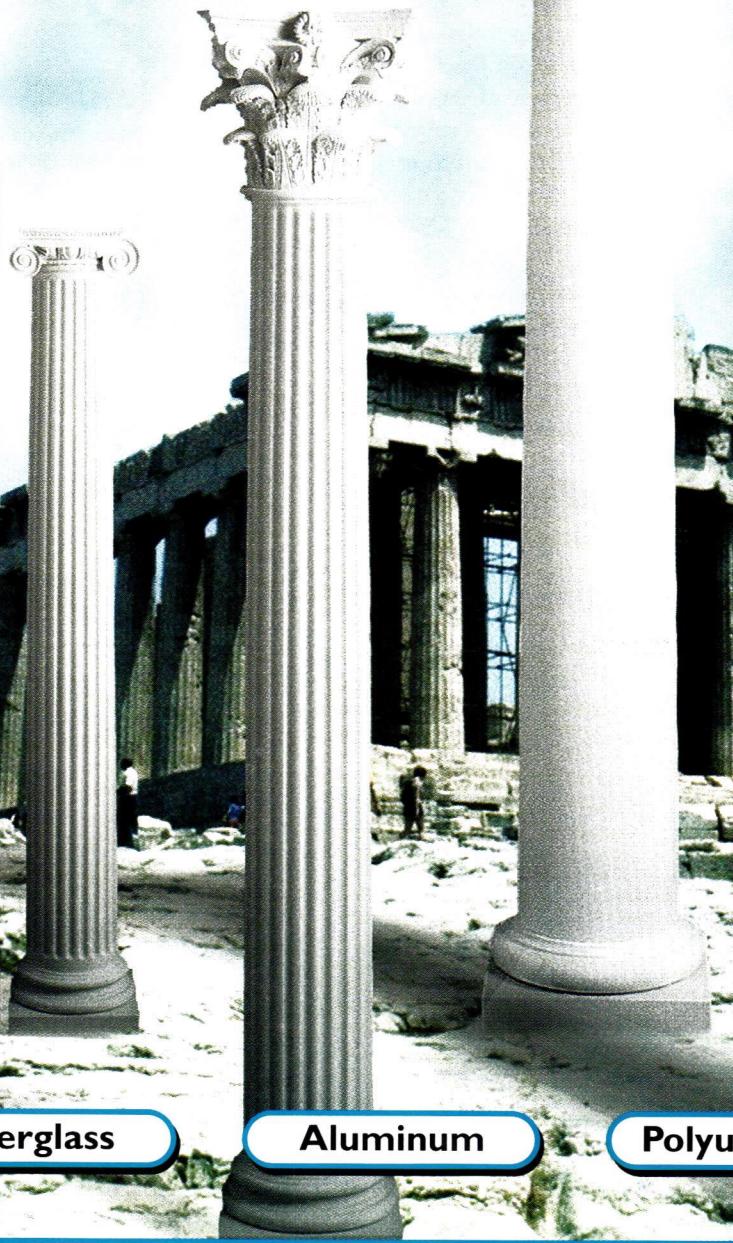


We Stock More Varieties of
COLUMNS

Than Rome and
Greece Combined



Now You Can
BUY DIRECT
From a Stocking Warehouse and
\$\$ SAVE \$\$



Wood Fiberglass Aluminum Polyurethane Polyethylene

All Available From Stock

FREE Cap and Base with Every Purchase • Please Inquire For Our Free 950+ Page Catalog



Architectural Products
by **Outwater** L.L.C.

East and West Coast Locations to Serve You Better

On The Web: www.outwater.com • e-mail: archpro@outwater.com
(Toll Free) 1-888-OUTWATER or 1-800-835-4400 • Fax 1-800-835-4403



Layers of Meaning

The buildings of Thomas Norman Rajkovich draw in viewers with eye-pleasing proportion and ornament, and then educate them with intellectual depths.

by Eve M. Kahn

It all can start with just an acorn. That is, to comprehend the architecture of Thomas Norman Rajkovich, you can begin by delving into details as tiny as carved seedpods. Every feature in this midwest-based classicist's work is imbued with layers of meaning: Every inch reflects some facet of the client's core values, echoes previous master-strokes in design history, and reinforces architecture's continued capacity to stir up joy and hope.

Consider, for example, an apparently simple brick-walled sunroom by Rajkovich (pronounced RYE-koe-vitch). Its bell-curved dome is based on traditional rooftops in the owner's native Sweden, and also pays tribute to the client's passion for the surrounding garden — the quarter-spherical room, a *trompe-l'oeil* sky scene painted on its ceiling, is meant to resemble a private mini-cosmos. And if you closely study a Rajkovich office at a Kohn Pedersen Fox office tower in downtown Chicago, you'll note he's transformed bland masonry dividers between windows into stout Doric piers, and rerouted ducts so that the former acoustic-tile ceiling is now an ennobling vault. The executive there can almost forget that other offices lie just inches overhead.

As for the aforementioned Rajkovich acorns: They turn up unexpectedly, for instance, in a dentil band around a gallery commemorating the life of the late Minnesota governor Rudy Perpich. The son of an iron-ore miner, Perpich became a widely beloved and progressive legislator — the acorns symbolize his maturing into a lofty figure from a humble background. They appear each time the dentil band turns a corner (McKim, Mead and White similarly used botanical devices, in their case pinecones, at these tricky points in classical architecture). But at a corner near a portrait of the governor as an overalls-clad young man, Rajkovich inserted just an acorn cap instead, implying that seeds drop and germinate, and perhaps thereby subliminally in-



Thomas Norman Rajkovich (center), with associates Kim Kuhlman (left) and Jason Andrew Montgomery



In one of many happy accidents that have furthered Rajkovich's career, he happened to meet this house's owner on a tour of structures by David Adler, Chicago's master of prewar eclecticism. Rajkovich highlighted the circa-1970 building's drab entrance with a coupled-column portico. Photo: Michael Tropea

spiring visitors with faith in their own potential.

"I have long believed that architecture, by delighting the senses and stimulating the intellect, can make a difference," he says, in his customarily thorough, didactic, bullet-point speech. (He can't resist the urge to educate even in casual conversation, he notes; he's not only taught Classicism on and off for a decade, but also both his parents are schoolteachers.) "I could never make just a pragmatic or pretty building, because it would be lifeless," he goes on. "The poetic possibilities of architecture are what keep me optimistic, and motivated. I'd do this work even if I couldn't make any money from it at all."

Growing Fast

His three-person office in Evanston, Ill., operates out of a 1918 limestone structure with a facade derived from Michelangelo designs; outside the window near Rajkovich's desk, Corinthian volutes curl 16 inches tall. He thinks about architecture "95% of my waking hours," he says, even when he's jogging his customary six-to-ten miles a day. He hasn't taken a vacation longer than four days in ten years, and most of his profits go into books for his 1,100-volume library. (He's scarcely invested in computers yet, and won't: The staff would much rather hand-mold their mockups.) He relaxes only when he spends time with his family: his wife Susan, a publishing marketing executive, and seven-year-old son, Thomas the Younger (who can already draw facades of elaborate Colonial landmarks from memory).

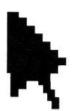
Rajkovich, at age 40, has raised the consciousnesses of dozens of clients about the virtues of subtlety-imbued Classicism, for sites ranging from urban blocks to horse country. What makes his swift rise in this rarefied field especially remarkable are the number of strange coincidences and strokes of luck he's encountered along the way. How many architects in the profession's history have won state-run international competitions before they've passed their licensing exams, and attracted their first major clients by nearly getting arrested for trespassing?

Deep Roots

The coincidences began at birth: October 8 — the anniversary of the Chicago Fire, which cleared the city for so much architectural experimentation, as well as the birthday of Paul Letarouilly, the 19th-

continued on page 8

www.restorationtrades.com



click here.

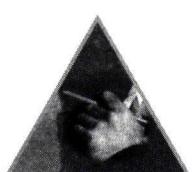


Get in the Picture.
Projects, People, Resources.
Now Organizing: CT & NY



THE RESTORATION TRADES EXCHANGE

in association with



THE GUILD

WRITE IN NO. 3112

century French architect who documented Rome. Rajkovich also shares a birth date with his maternal grandfather, Norman, a brick mason who gave young Thomas tours of structures he'd built around Hammond and Griffith, Ind. (Rajkovich remembers feeling awed by his grandfather's handiwork, and always wondering, "Why isn't his name on it?") His mother taught kindergarten in Indiana and his father, who taught art and art history, is a sculptor along Henry Moore abstract lines, as well as a versatile painter who amazed his child with sketches of roses that looked real and precise copies of Titians.

Thomas entered the University of Notre Dame (UND) as a committed Miesian, like his father, when the school was "a little adrift. All the faculty had different interests, although nobody was interested in traditional architecture. Traditional urbanism was considered o.k., as long as the buildings you put up were modernist. And you weren't encouraged to research historic precedent in libraries; if you found anything there that you liked, you had to abstract to death before you used it." His life-changing epiphany occurred during his mandatory third-year abroad at UND's Rome outpost. For a seminar on Italian Renaissance villas, he had to trudge out to Vignola's Villa Lante in the village of Bagnaia. "It was a cold spring day, I was underdressed, I hadn't eaten, the villa was a three-mile walk uphill from the train station, I was so uncomfortable. But when I

reached the top, my breath got taken away. I thought, 'Could anything be more beautiful?' And, 'You could build like this today.' Suddenly I was in a class on ideas, not history. Vignola's design is all about secondary and tertiary readings of Ovid's Metamorphosis, but I didn't know that then. I just knew it told me how to photograph it, I felt led around by the architect's ideas of how to experience it. I missed the train I was supposed to take back. I was a different person than I'd been."

Back in Rome and in South Bend, he began experimenting with traditional architecture; despite his professors' discouragements, "I was using masonry instead of glass, I introduced window surrounds, I articulated entranceways." He barely passed his senior-year critics with a proposal to tear down SOM's 1977 addition to the

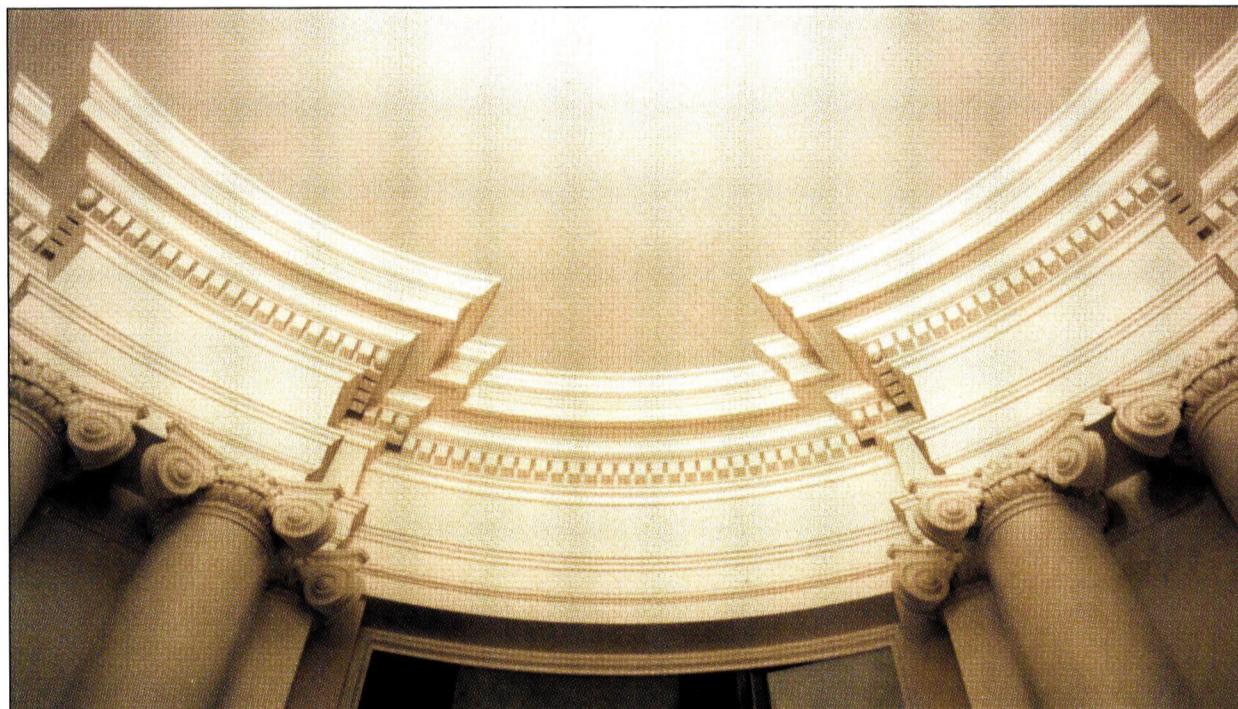


Rajkovich has proposed that Evanston, Ill., move its farmers' market into a Tuscan-columned hall, with vines for astragal moldings around the columns and trusses that end in carved farm implements. Photo: Michael Tropea

Palladian-style Art Institute of Chicago. An odd coincidence again: One of his first jobs after graduation was with Hammond, Beeby and Babka, adding on to that very Art Institute. The resulting Doric-columned courtyard, he says, now seems slightly awkward; the firm was in transition from postmodern ironic Classicism to purism. He himself was becoming ever more purist: he spent a year at the American Academy in Rome, with resident architect Leon Krier as an encouraging mentor. A few months after Rajkovich returned to Chicago, he and UND classmate David T. Mayernik bravely entered Minnesota's competition for its 36-acre Capitol grounds with a scheme of Classical bridges, outbuildings, and gardens.

They were 25 years old, they hadn't yet passed their professional exams, and they were competing against 20-person teams from firms like SOM. After a judging session under a Capitol dome that Cass

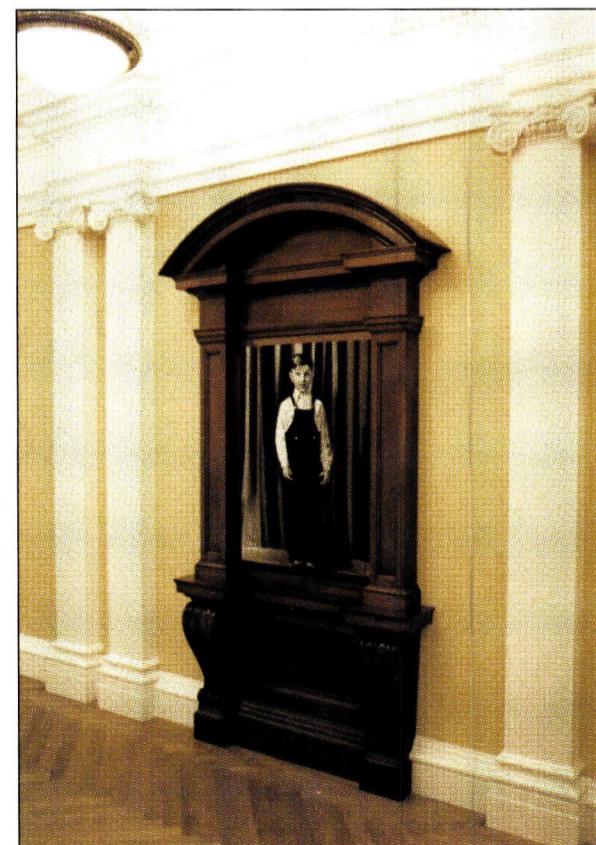
continued on page 10



Each time the dentil band in the Perpich memorial turns, Rajkovich inserted an acorn. (McKim, Mead and White similarly used botanical ornament, in their case pinecones, at these difficult junctures in classical architecture.) But in one spot, the acorn is missing, and just a cap remains — Rajkovich is suggesting that seeds germinate, and perhaps subliminally inspiring visitors with faith in their own potential. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich



The rotunda in the Perpich memorial evokes at once Michelangelo's work on St. Peter's, and the Cass Gilbert-designed Capitol of Minnesota, which was based on St. Peter's dome. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich



This portrait gallery, commemorating the life of the late Minnesota Governor Rudy Perpich, is laden with symbolism. The mahogany frame is based on a Michelangelo window surround for the Medici Palace in Florence; in fact, the whole room is meant to evoke Michelangelo's early years in provincial Florence, as a parallel to the governor's impoverished childhood in Minnesota's iron-mining country. The Ionic pilasters were selected because they are looser than Doric yet do not have the religious implications of Corinthian. The pairing of pilasters reflects the governor's conviction that his wife was his equal partner in governance. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich

Chart Your Company's Future Growth at . . .



The Numbers Don't Lie!

Investment in our country's aging building stock is strong and growing!

- ✓ More than **200,000 buildings** in the U.S. currently qualify for 20% federal rehabilitation investment tax credits, and some **30,000** more are being added to this roster each year.
- ✓ **45 states** now offer state tax incentives to enhance the ROI to developers and property owners for restoring historic structures.
- ✓ Contractors billed **147%** more work in reconstruction and renovation in 2000 than in 1999.
- ✓ Americans spend over **\$150 billion** to renovate their homes.
- ✓ AIA member firms reported **\$130 billion** in rehabilitation and renovation projects in 1999.

If you haven't yet made the multi-billion dollar R&R market, the core of your business growth strategy, it's time you did!

Meet the market at R&R—the premier industry event for professionals involved in restoring or re-creating historic building exteriors, interiors, landscapes and streetscapes.

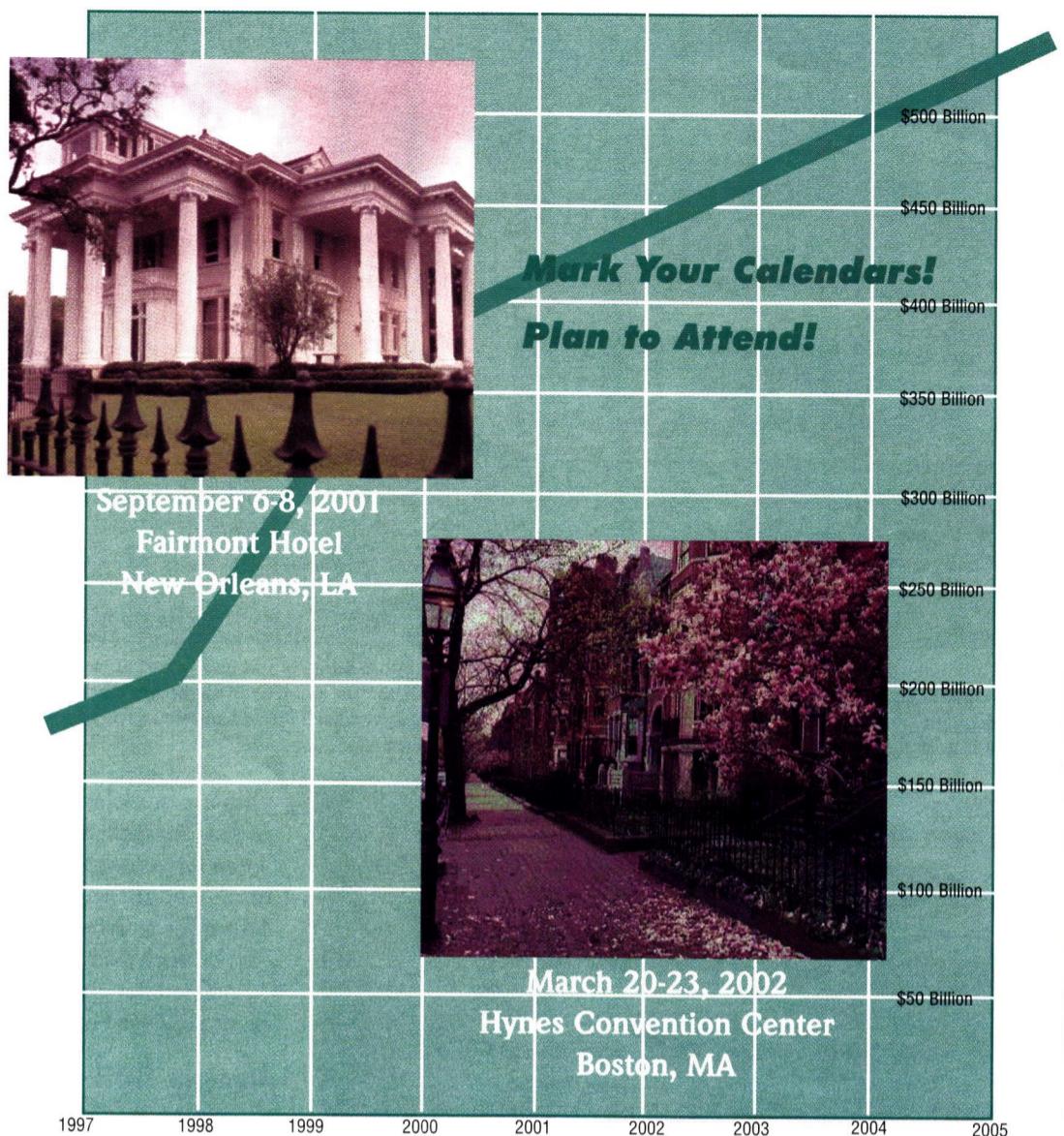
Contact us today for more information:

Tel: 800.982-6247 or 978.664-6455

Fax: 978.664-5822

Email: show@egixhib.com

www.restorationandrenovation.com



WRITE IN NO. 3380

THE INSTITUTE OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE SUMMER PROGRAM IN CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE 2001

JUNE 15 - JULY 28, 2001

· LEARNING · DESIGNING · BUILDING



This summer expand your architectural horizons! Spend six intensive weeks in New York City discovering the vitality of classical architecture and urbanism. Learning directly from practitioners, you will concentrate on subjects pertaining to classical architecture, including:

ELEMENTS OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

COMMUNITY PLANNING AND DESIGN

LITERATURE AND THEORY OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

PROPORTION IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

TRADITIONAL WASH-RENDERING TECHNIQUE

MEASURED DRAWING AND OBSERVATION

TRADITIONAL BUILDING, CRAFTSMANSHIP, AND MATERIALS

PRINCIPLES OF URBANISM

ORNAMENT FOR ARCHITECTURE

DRAWING AND PERSPECTIVE

Instruction culminates with a unique opportunity to work directly with a community in a design studio confronting a real project in New York City. Whether you are a student seeking to exercise your interest in classicism or a practitioner desiring to enhance your classical knowledge, the Institute's focused program will provide you with a unique and memorable learning experience. Be one of a select group of students who will benefit this summer from the Institute's talented faculty and prime studio location in SoHo.

For applications and catalogue please contact

THE INSTITUTE OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

225 Lafayette Street, Suite 1009, New York, NY 10012

telephone 917-237-1208 fax 917-237-1230 email institute@classicist.org www.classicist.org

Scholarships are generously provided by:

Chadsworth's 1.800.Columns • Curtis & Windham Architects • David Anthony Easton, Inc. • Eric J. Smith Architects, PC
• One West 54th Street Foundation • White River Hardwoods-Woodworks, Inc.

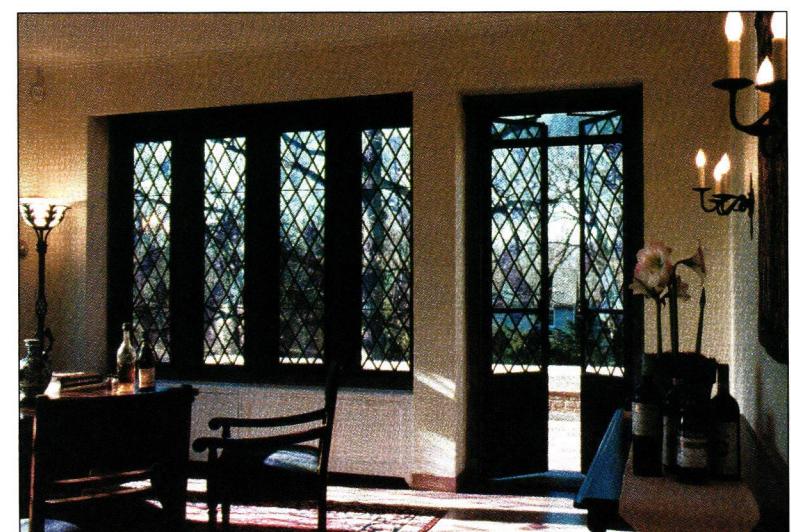
WRITE IN NO. 1340



When Rajkovich first visited this Tudor mansion, it belonged to a publishing company. He and an architect friend simply showed up and started wandering around, and were nearly arrested. But the incident brought his work to the attention of the subsequent owner, who turned the house, designed by renowned revivalist Harrie Lindeberg for the Armour family of processed-meat fame, into a company headquarters. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich



Rajkovich handled the house's redecorating as well, incorporating 17th-century furniture that the Armours had sold off with the house. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich



Rajkovich repaired water-damaged masonry, replaced missing casement panes, and removed partitions that had spoiled the rooms' original grand proportions. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich

Gilbert modeled after St. Peter's, with a jury including Krier, they won. Then Governor Perpich finished his terms, and the legislature shelved the \$20-million project — although the Rajkovich/Mayernik bridges, "modified beyond recognition," did eventually get built.

Fertile Soil

Rajkovich spent the next five years quietly in academia, first at the University of Illinois at Chicago and then at his alma mater (which Thomas Gordon Smith was remaking into the country's first and still most rigorous Classical program). In 1992 Rajkovich started his private practice after, of course, a coincidence: On a tour of houses by David Adler, Chicago's master of eclectic prewar mansions, Rajkovich just happened to meet the unhappy owner of a circa-1970 builders' house, who hired the architect to highlight the structure's entry with a double-pillared portico. Rajkovich then just happened to need dental work, and that client recommended a dentist whose other patients included a builder who happened to work on houses by Adler's close competitor, Harrie Lindeberg — so Rajkovich was able to launch a subspecialty of Lindeberg renovations. In 1996, Rajkovich was touring a Lindeberg house without quite having the owner's permission, and almost ended up hauled off to jail.

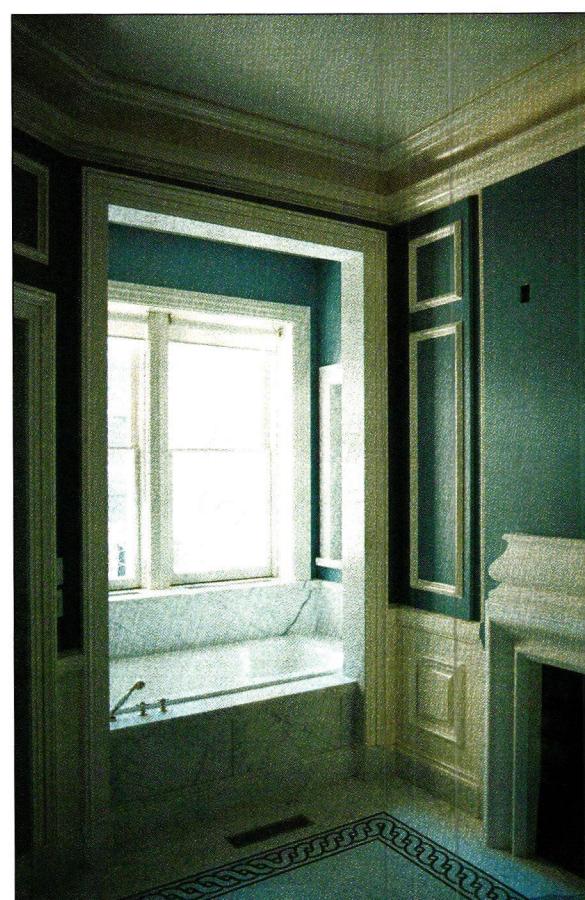
Well, to be exact, the Tudor mansion — built in 1916 by the Armour family of processed-meat fame, and still equipped with their collection of 17th-century furnishings — was then home to a publishing house. Rajkovich and a friend wandered in an open door, and stayed until the startled receptionist called the police and the security guard kicked them out — after taking Rajkovich's business card. A few months later, this piece of paper happened to end up in the hands of the house's deep-pocketed new owner.

"He's a wine importer," Rajkovich explains, "who wanted to turn the house into a new headquarters

for his company. The first time I met him, he asked me what color I'd paint a particular bedroom he'd be using as his office, and I said, 'sang de boeuf with a touch of Chianti.'" Apparently the right answer. The next week, Rajkovich started overhauling the mansion from its waterlogged masonry walls and smashed casement windows to its chopped-up vaulted rooms and frayed upholstery. Then the importer's son hired the architect to convert a bedroom in his Chicago townhouse into a semi-octagonal bathroom with fireplace (Rajkovich made the space recall "a minor chamber room in the heart of Paris," although he concedes "it's tough to work a lot of symbolism into a bathroom"). When word reached his increasingly busy office that Governor Perpich had died, he sent the family a condolence letter, and — although they'd previously commissioned a Gehry-like twisty sculpture for Perpich's grave — they hired him to create a Classical memorial to the governor in his hometown.

Like Allan Greenberg and John Blatteau's State Department reception rooms within a modernist building in Washington, Rajkovich's tribute to Pei

continued on page 15



For the son of the Tudor mansion's owner, Rajkovich converted a Chicago townhouse bedroom into a semi-octagonal bathroom retreat with a fireplace. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich



Each facet of the semi-octagon contains a major plumbing fixture, be it tub, shower, or (shown) sink. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich

If Your Direct Mail Advertising Is Missing The Target...



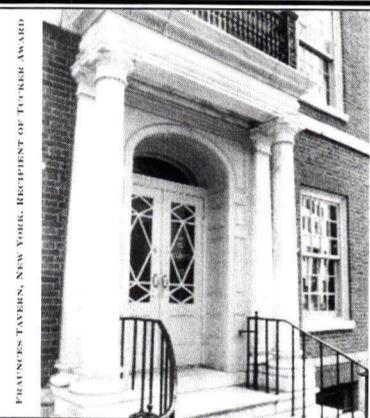
We Can Help. Let's Talk.



THE INFORMATION REFINERY®
Powerful Lists For Intelligent Marketers™
200 Route 17 Suite 5 • Mahwah, NJ 07430-1267
Phone: 201-529-2600 • Fax: 201-529-4030
800-529-9020

WRITE IN NO. 501

MASONRY



**ROBERT YOUNG
& SONS, INC.**
ESTABLISHED 1885

FABRICATION & INSTALLATION
OF
• MARBLE • GRANITE
• LIMESTONE • SLATE
OUR ON-PREMISE FABRICATION FACILITIES
ALLOW VERSATILITY WITH
• CUSTOM • DIVERSIFIED DISTINCTIVE
DESIGNS IN STONE.
PH: 973-483-0451
FAX: 973-483-0185
E-MAIL: ryoungandsons@aol.com

WRITE IN NO. 3122

French Limestone
Rossi S.A.
Paris, France
(Stock in U.S.A.)
Rossi U.S.A. Corp.
Tel: 708-386-0183 Fax: 708-386-0186
Email: rossiusa@worldnet.att.net
Quarriers • Fabricators
WRITE IN NO. 392

Your source for beautiful railings, entrance gates, driveway gates and decorative fencing.

Interior & Exterior Since 1955 Member NCMMA

Artistic Railings, Inc.
500 River Road, Garfield, NJ 07026
973.772.8540 973.772.4395 fax
Online @ www.artisticrail.com

WRITE IN NO. 3026

**FOR EASY
ACCESS TO
FREE
PRODUCT
LITERATURE**
FILL OUT
THE ENCLOSED POSTCARD
OR USE THE COUPON ON
PAGE 158.

DON'T PAINT YOUR RADIATORS

Paint drastically reduces the efficiency of steam & hot water radiators and wood enclosures are poor heat conductors.

Affordable Ace Radiator Enclosures...

- ◆ Offer durability of steel with baked enamel finish in decorator colors
- ◆ Keep drapes, walls & ceilings clean
- ◆ Project heat out into the room

FREE Estimates & Product Brochure

arsco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
3564 Blue Rock Road, Cincinnati, Ohio 45247

Write or phone for estimate:
1-800-543-7040 Toll-Free
1-513-385-0555 in Ohio (Collect)

WRITE IN NO. 8610

**WWW.
period-homes.com**

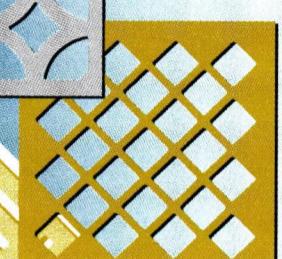
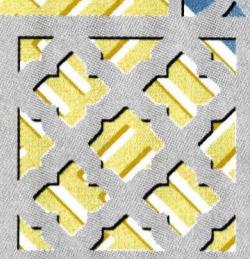
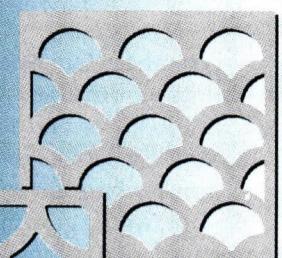
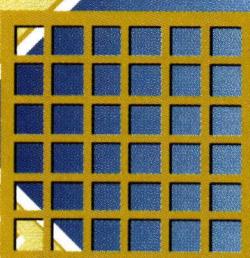
The Internet Gateway to Historical Products & Services for Residential Architecture

METALWORK



ARCHITECTURAL GRILLE

Custom Designed, Fabricated & Finished
Bar Grilles and Perforated Grilles



77-14th Street, Brooklyn, New York 11215
718-832-1200 / Fax: 718-832-1390
Toll Free # (outside NY) (800) 387-6267
Web: www.archgrille.com
E-mail address: archgril@connix.com
Division of Giumenta Corporation

WRITE IN NO. 9820

**SCHWARTZ'S
FORGE AND
METALWORKS**
Deansboro, NY 13328
(800) 339-9655

Custom Architectural Metals
Unique Design Solutions
Contemporary or Traditional

WRITE IN NO. 1218



BILL'S CUSTOM METAL FABRICATIONS
MAKERS OF HAND-FORGED ORNAMENTAL IRON

127 SULLIVAN LANE • WESTBURY, NY 11590
PHONE/FAX: 516 333-3562
www.ironcrafters.com

WRITE IN NO. 1270

The Refined Residence

The frantic pace of the Internet Age is causing more clients to select the unity and refinement of Classical architecture as the means to create an atmosphere of harmony and tranquillity in their personal dwelling space.

In a year when Rem Koolhaus is walking off with the Pritzker Prize, and Frank Gehry is the “name brand” architect of the moment, it’s ironic that the demand for design in the Classical tradition is higher than it’s been for many decades. Why, in the Internet Age, would growing numbers of people turn to ancient design norms to shape their personal dwelling space?

On closer examination, it is undoubtedly *because of* the Internet Age that the ancient forms are becoming increasingly relevant for our time. In an era of rapid change, it’s natural for people to seek out touchstones of stability; enduring values always convey psychic reassurance.

And if there’s any single characteristic that epitomizes Classical architecture, it is “enduring values.” The system of Classical design worked out over the centuries, beginning in ancient Greece and Rome more than 2,500 years ago, represents both the most highly developed system of architectural thought, as well as a priceless cultural legacy.

Throughout the last three-quarters of the 20th century, it was fashionable in most architectural circles to dismiss the Classical tradition as having nothing to teach a “modern” society. But just as Andrea Palladio during the Renaissance reached back to ancient Roman and Greek models to create a modern architecture for his time, so today a new generation of

designers is rediscovering the relevance of Classical design for the 21st Century.

The Temple of Tranquillity

When interpreted correctly, the principles of Classical design produce refined, ordered spaces that are layered with cultural resonance. But it requires rigorous training to manipulate Classical principles successfully. A lamentable number of today’s designers seem to think that sprinkling a few columns here and there creates Classical space. Nothing could be further from the truth; one can have a brilliant Classical design with nary a column in sight.

Classical space is defined not by the column, but rather by three underlying design principles: (1) *The Overall Plan* — the axes and planes that allow the elements of a design to be laid out in an ordered, rational, accessible fashion; (2) *The Elements* — this includes the components of the five canonical orders. Because the elements are the most visible, this is the part of Classicism that most neophytes seize upon, without any clear understanding of the other two concepts. (3) *The Relationships* — this encompasses the symmetries and proportions that relate all the elements distributed on the plan. In proper Classical design, the smallest molding bears a carefully thought-through relationship to the largest component in the structure. A truly realized Classical residence is “a world

within the world” — a small world of order within the larger world of chaos.

We start our annual review of Classical architecture with the story of Johnson Hall because it is an Early American house directly from the English Georgian (Classical) tradition — the type of building that so greatly informed the Colonial Revival buildings of the early-20th century, such as those designed by McKim, Mead, and White. The editors are also presenting recent projects from four design firms who are producing modern architecture in the Classical tradition. And in the Profile that starts on page 6, we spotlight an architect whose unusual skill in manipulating the Classical design vocabulary commanded him to the Editors’ attention. — Clem Labine

IN THIS SECTION

Recent Classical Projects	18
Decorating in the Classical Style	34
Columns & Capitals	42
Balustrades & Balusters	52
Stone Carving	55
Wood Carving	59
Decorative Painting	64
Tile & Stone	73
Murals & Mosaics	81

RESTORING A COLONIAL TREASURE

Interest in reviving the architecture of Colonial dwellings got its start at the Philadelphia Centennial Exhibition of 1876. Here is the story of Johnson Hall, a Colonial-era building that still serves as a model for any designer using Early American architecture as inspiration.

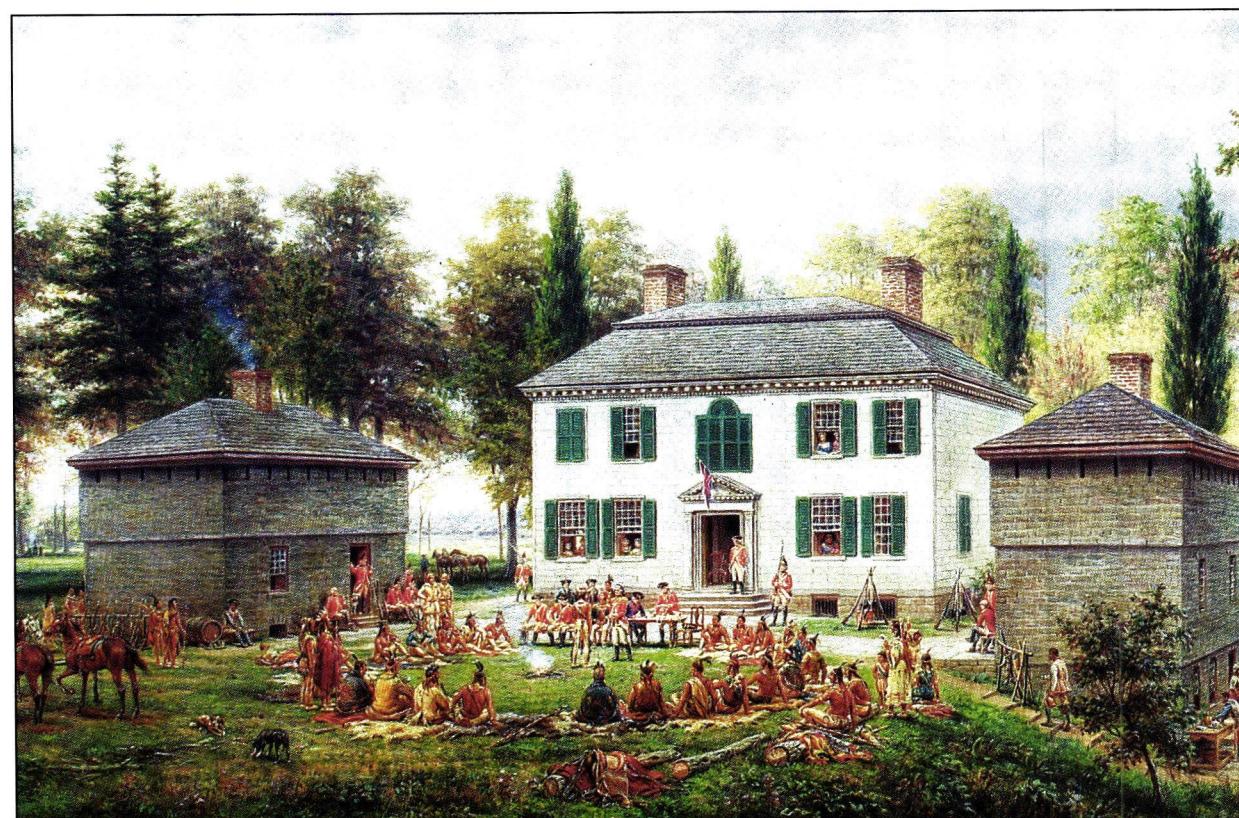
by Eleanor Mancusi

Few period homes have survived so turbulent a history with so little damage as N.Y. State landmark Johnson Hall. Sir William Johnson built the house in 1763 after his triumph at Lake George forever pushed the French back into Canada, and helped end the French-Indian wars. Confident in the hard-won peace, Johnson removed his family from the safety of his fortified homestead, Fort Johnson, into their new home: a stylish, but more vulnerable, Georgian manor flanked by two stone guardhouses. These stonehouses bear evidence that the gracious English lifestyle mimicked by the Johnsons on the wild frontier of Colonial America could quickly turn violent.

The Hall as Focal Point of Military Power

In subsequent years, William and his Mohawk Indian wife Molly further influenced New York politics through their management of Six Nations/British politics, both by marriage and by Johnson’s appointment as New York Colony’s first Superintendent of Indian Affairs. The Johnsons served as one of the earliest examples of American multi-culturalism, hosting European dignitaries as well as tribal representatives from as far away as the

continued on page 14



"Johnson Hall" depicts one of the famous Indian Councils and shows the Northwest elevation as it must have looked in the late 1700's. Oil on canvas, 1903, by Edward Lamson Henry (1841-1919), Albany Institute of History & Art.

RECLAIMED

DOUGLAS FIR
HEART PINE
REDWOOD
CYPRESS

POSTS & BEAMS
FLOORING
MOULDINGS
MILLWORK
FENCE PANELS

DULUTH (218) 727-2145

SEATTLE (206) 448-1982

DULUTHTIMBER.COM

WRITE IN NO. 112

**DULUTH
TIMBER
COMPANY**
SINCE 1985

Architectural Details

- Guaranteed!
- Largest Supplier
- Interior & Exterior
- Buy Direct & Save
- Amazing Selection

192 PAGE **MASTER CATALOG \$3**
(FREE with purchase of Porch Book)
130 usage photos! Extensive how-to info!
Also, 208p. **Porch Book \$6.95**
(includes FREE 192p. Catalog)
How to design, build, and
decorate your dream porch!
VINTAGE WOODWORKS
PO Box 39 MSC 3922
Quinlan, TX 75474-0039
903-356-2158 • www.vintagewoodworks.com

WRITE IN NO. 1061

**17th and 18th Century
Millwork**

Windows, Doors & Entryways
Raised Panel Walls
Old Glass, Moldings,
Wide Pine Flooring
Beaded & Feather edge boards
Send \$4.00 for brochure.

CUSTOM WOODWORKING
Maurer & Shepherd Joiners
122 Naubuc Avenue
Glastonbury, Connecticut 06033
(860) 633-2383

Custom Shutters**Interior and Exterior****Wholesale to the Public**

2 1/2" Moveable louver,
raised panel and fixed louver
shutters. Custom finished or
unfinished. Complete selection
of hardware.

Brochure \$1.00

Shutter Depot

Rt. 2 Box 157
Greenville, GA 30222
706-672-1214
www.shutterdepot.com

WRITE IN NO. 6830



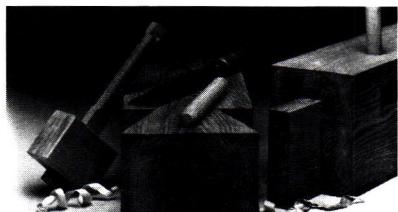
**WOODEN
FLOOR
GRATES**
From
2" x 10"
to 20" x 32"

3 floor models and baseboard model
unfinished or prefinished
Send \$2.00 for catalog and receive a \$5. coupon to:

GRATE VENTS

P.O. Box 471 • Crystal Lake, IL 60039-0471
Phone (815) 459-4306 Fax (815) 459-4267
E-mail: doug@gratevents.com

WRITE IN NO. 5040



**HUGH LOFTING
TIMBER FRAMING INC**

e-mail: hlofting@compuserve.com
web site: www.hughloftingtimberframe.com
For literature, enclose \$12.00
(610)444-5382

WRITE IN NO. 663

The Wood Factory

AUTHENTIC VICTORIAN
MILLWORKS

Screen Doors • Porch Parts
Custom Woodwork • Moldings
Ornamental Trim

Send \$2.00 for a Catalog

111 Railroad Street
Navasota, Texas 77868
Tel: (936) 825-7233
Fax: (936) 825-1791

WRITE IN NO. 7120



MON REALE™
Sculptured Hardwood
Mouldings

**Authentic
HAND-CARVED
Woodcarvings**

ONE SOURCE
for
EMBELLISHED HARDWOODS
MOULDINGS & ACCOUTREMENTS

WORLDWIDE DISTRIBUTION
Request Our Catalog
1-800-558-0119
Curved Work Our Specialty
www.mouldings.com

WRITE IN NO. 1099

**Timber Frame & Historic Preservation
Throughout the Northeast**

New & Old Houses and Barns •
Erecting, Dismantling, Moving •
and Structural Repairs

Paul A. Cigal ~ Builder
(860) 668-0382

Chestnut Oak Co.

WRITE IN NO. 106

Custom Stairs Since 1952

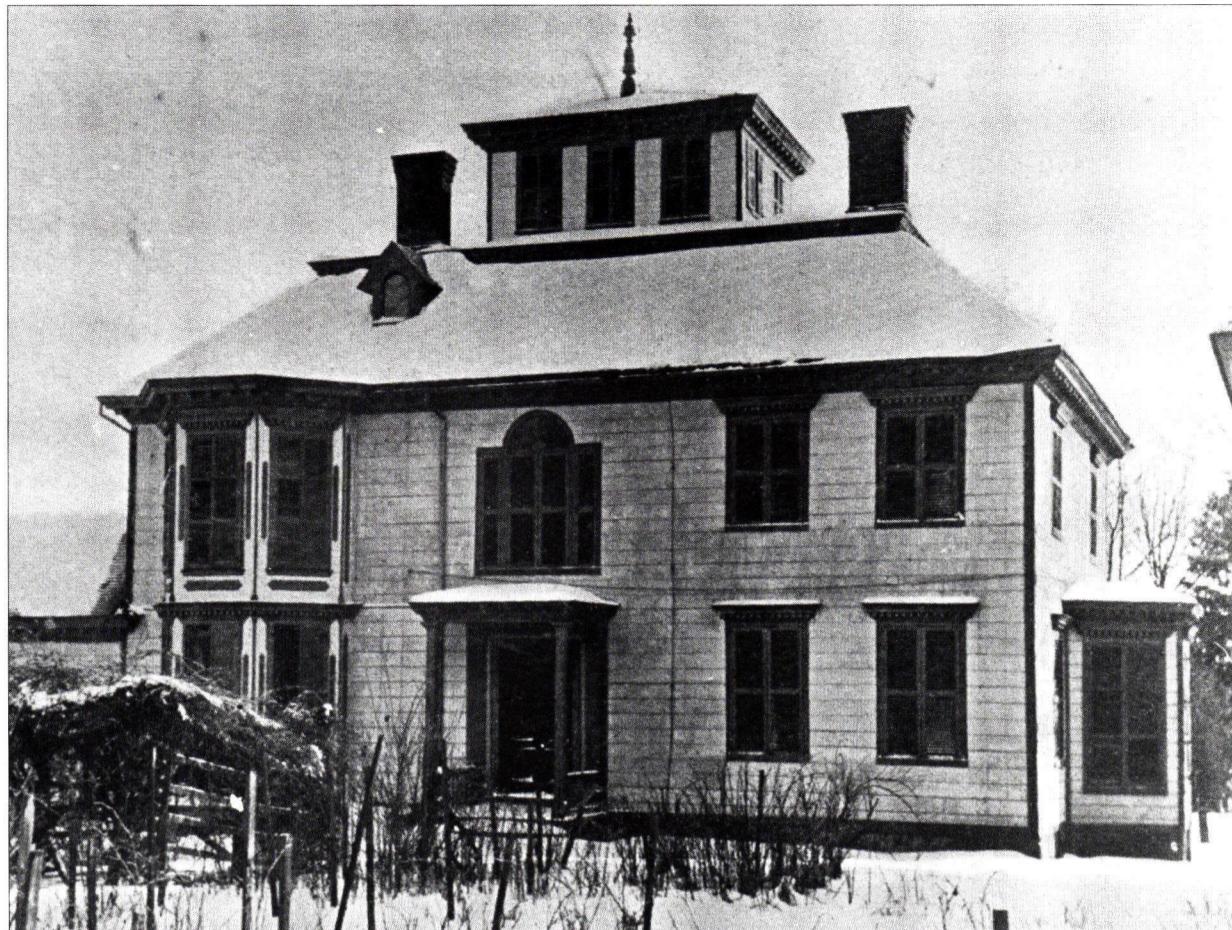
DESIGNERS OF PRESTIGIOUS STAIRS

- ARCHITECTURAL
- CIRCULAR
- ELLIPTICAL
- SPIRAL

PRODUCTION STAIR & RAIL SYSTEMS

DEER PARK
STAIRBUILDING & MILLWORK, INC.
51 KENNEDY AVE., BLUE POINT, NY 11715
631-363-5000 FAX: 631-363-2167

WRITE IN NO. 1107



The same northwest elevation is shown here in a 1907 photograph by Austin Engraving, Albany, N.Y., and published in Johnson Papers, Vol. 4, p. 364. Note the early Victorian add-ons to the Georgian manor. All archival photographs are courtesy of The N.Y.S. Office of Parks, Recreation, and Historic Preservation



A recent image showing Johnson Hall post-restoration. The attic dormers and cupola have been removed and once again show the clean Georgian lines and symmetries that were original to the house. Photo: Clifford Oliver Mealy

American Great Plains; they all came to Johnson's home to mix at fancy dinner parties, Masonic meetings, and Six Nations tribal councils that were attended by hundreds. George Washington called control of the Hudson River the key to this continent; Sir William Johnson controlled the Mohawk river, its largest tributary. He had but to give the order, and up and down the river, scores of Johnson's tribal neighbors were ready to fight to the death.

Surviving the Revolution

As Revolution fever pulsed like Drums along the Mohawk, Sir William evinced Tory sympathies, dying after a 1774 conference during which he encouraged loyalty to the crown despite recent land encroachments. After Johnson's death, his widow and their children left Johnson Hall to return to her former home in Canajoharie. In their absence, Johnson Hall was vandalized by the Third New Jersey Regiment, who were sent to Johnson Hall to arrest Sir William's loyalist son, Sir John Johnson. George Washington, fearing the possibility of a separate Indian war due to the intense loyalty of the Mohawks to the Johnson family, ordered a court martial of the Regimentalists and had the house sealed and guarded, an action that probably saved the Johnson Home from destruction during the war.

Architectural Affronts

Seized in 1779 by the State of New York as loyalist property, the Hall was placed at public auction and bought, first by the Talbots and then by the Akins/Wells family. Johnson Hall passed into a period of relative quiet after the Revolution; the next assaults it endured were architectural in nature. A fire destroyed the east flanker, and the addition of a Victorian cupola and awkward bay windows destroyed the Hall's clean Georgian lines. Further, a ballroom was created by demolishing the wall between the children's nursery and a front parlor. Fortunately, the home passed into the protective hands of New York State in 1906. Since then, ongoing efforts have slowly returned Johnson Hall to its pre-revolutionary appearance. The cupola was removed, the stone flanker was rebuilt, and luckily, the original wainscoting from the children's nursery wall was found nearby where it had been reused as paneling — aiding an easy re-creation of the house's original configuration.

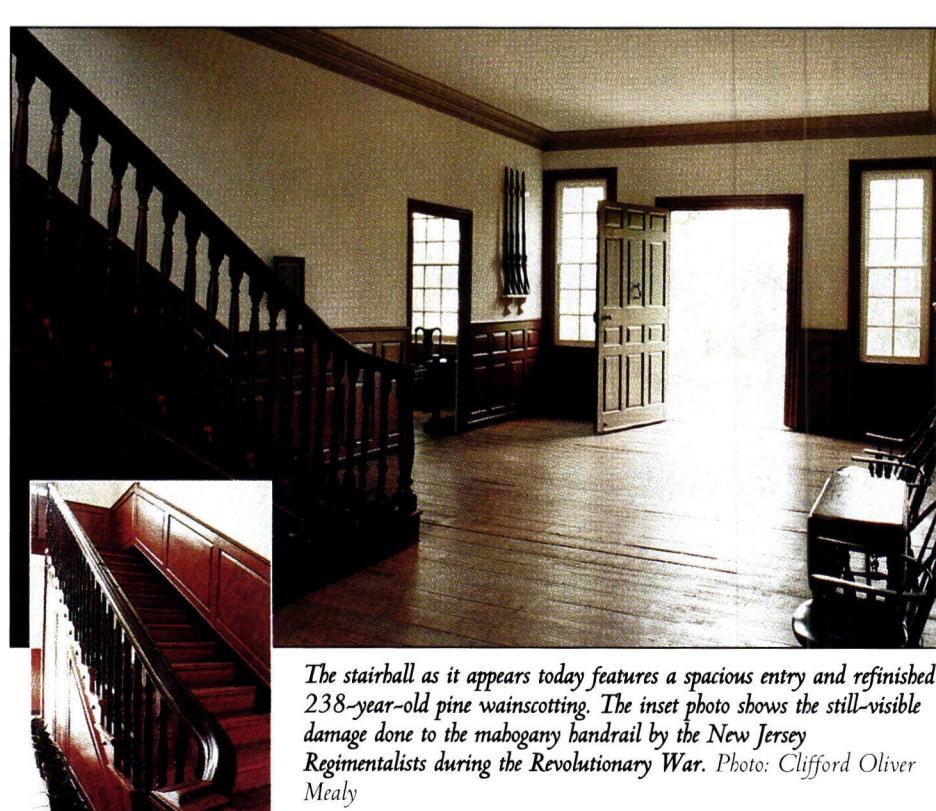
Historical Documentation Aids Restoration Effort

Wanda Burch, Site Manager of Johnson Hall, a State Historic Site owned and operated by the New York State Office of Parks, Recreation and Historic Preservation, has overseen recent efforts to restore the house to its 1774 appearance, aiming for a sensitive and appropriate historical interpretation. She

continued on page 16



The large entry stairhall as it appeared in 1883 had the typical Victorian assemblage of dark furniture and layers of patterned wall and floor coverings.



The stairhall as it appears today features a spacious entry and refined 238-year-old pine wainscoting. The inset photo shows the still-visible damage done to the mahogany handrail by the New Jersey Regimentalists during the Revolutionary War. Photo: Clifford Oliver Mealy

The Best of Both Worlds



A Process
Made Easier...

DESIGN FLEXIBILITY

For thirty years, we have been facilitating timber frame projects for hundreds of architects. An important part of our success is allowing the architectural plan to dictate the frame design.

... A Home Made Better.

QUALITY CRAFTSMANSHIP

While structural integrity is imperative, functionalism must be married to form. Our experienced designers and craftsmen ensure that each timber in the frame performs its job both structurally and aesthetically.

Working with
architects to design and
craft the most beautiful
timber frame homes
imaginable.

Vermont Timber Frames, Inc.

7 Pearl Street, Cambridge, NY 12816

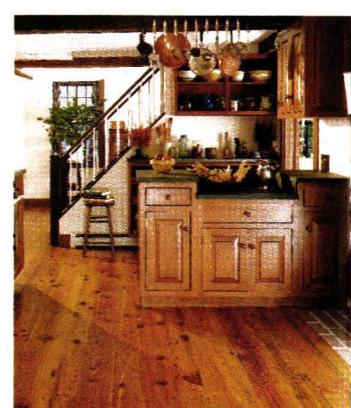
PH: 518-677-8860

FAX: 518-677-3626

Website: www.vtf.com
Email: jmgibbons@vtf.com



WRITE IN NO. 8540



Antique Pine



Country White Oak

"NEW ENGLAND CLASSICS"

The "Carlisle Floor" is a unique combination of family heritage and New England craftsmanship.



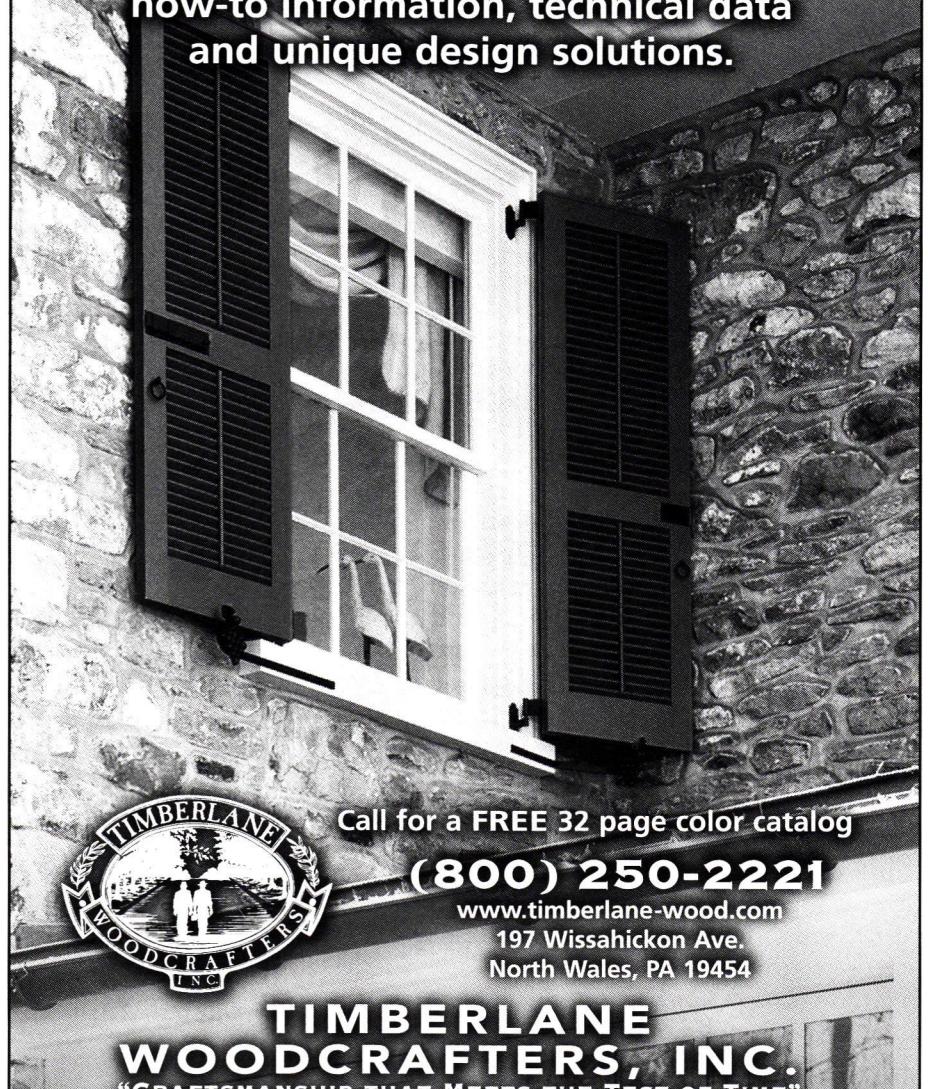
The Leading Name in Wide Plank Flooring Since 1966

www.wideplankflooring.com • 1-800-595-9663

WRITE IN NO. 5580

SHUTTERS

Timberlane's shutter catalog includes over 32 pages of photos & ideas, how-to information, technical data and unique design solutions.



Call for a FREE 32 page color catalog

(800) 250-2221

www.timberlane-wood.com

197 Wissahickon Ave.

North Wales, PA 19454

**TIMBERLANE
WOODCRAFTERS, INC.**
"CRAFTSMANSHIP THAT MEETS THE TEST OF TIME"

WRITE IN NO. 1056

Martha's Victorian Millwork

Your Millwork Source
Profile Catalog \$5.00

JUST FOR YOU

Since 1978

2014 Broadway - Everett, WA 98201

www.marthasmillwork.com
Toll Free 866-258-1744

WRITE IN NO. 5051

is quick to point out that any currently conducted restoration cannot logically be termed "authentic." However, her careful work has been guided by a wealth of historical documentation. Excavation for a 1993 gas line to the house afforded the opportunity for an extensive archeological survey, which revealed numerous historical details of Johnson's daily domestic life.

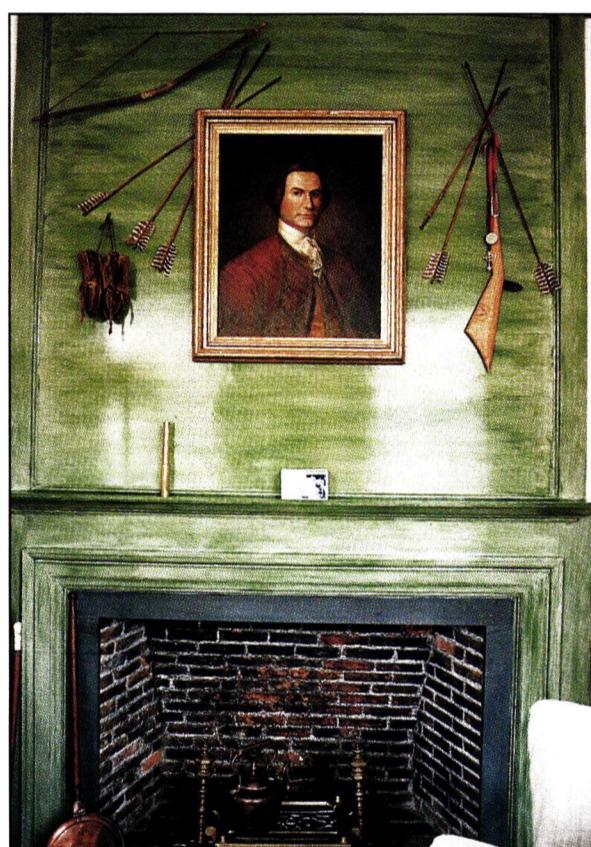
Further restoration was guided by a fortuitously extensive probate inventory taken in 1774, describing the contents of each room, down to the number of silver spoons. One bedroom (where the New York Governor most certainly stayed) was decorated with expensive scarlet russet fabric (a blend of silk and wool that has no equivalent today). Two northwest bedrooms across the hall were more rustic, with buffalo skins on the bed and Colonial rose blankets for decoration. The Johnsons had a bedroom to make their guests comfortable regardless of their background. These bedrooms have been faithfully re-created. Though all of the original furniture had been sold at auction, a few pieces originally owned by Johnson have been tracked down and successfully repurchased.

Period Repainting

One of the curator's most ambitious projects, now halfway done, is the historically accurate repainting of the interior. Labs performed stereo binocular



The dining room after restoration displays the combination of Indian artifacts and high English style which was typical of Johnson Hall, according to a surviving probate inventory and archeological digs. The rich paint color is documented by intensive paint analysis and room descriptions in the inventory. Photo: Clifford Oliver Mealy



Lab analysis revealed that Sir William's bedroom/office was originally a vivid apple-green that had been stippled and glazed. The traditional use of linseed oil-based formulas and boar's hair brushes, though time-consuming, produced a high-gloss, textured effect. Liberty Paint of Athens, N.Y., suppliers of 18th- and 19th-century historic "colours," continues to contribute their expertise to the Johnson Hall restoration. Photo: Clifford Oliver Mealy.

microscopic examination of small pieces of wood-work and found trace layers of all paint colors ever used in each room. An analysis report prepared by Conservator Deborah Gordon provided the detective work necessary to choose amongst the various strata. In general, the conservators were guided by three principles: (1) References by the 1774 probate inventory to a "white" and a "blue" parlor; (2) Comparison to a paint analysis done in 1978 on Fort Johnson in Amsterdam, N.Y., which gave prior indication of Sir William's decorating taste; (3) A Furnishing Plan for Johnson Hall drafted by Wanda Burch, which quotes from Sir William's correspondence with his purchasing agents, requesting textiles in deep, rich shades of blues, reds, and purples. Based on evidence of Sir William's taste, the conservators recommended restoration of the bolder colors rather than paler ones when both were found in the lowest layers of the paint stratigraphy. (The later American preference for pastels belongs more properly to the Federal Style.)

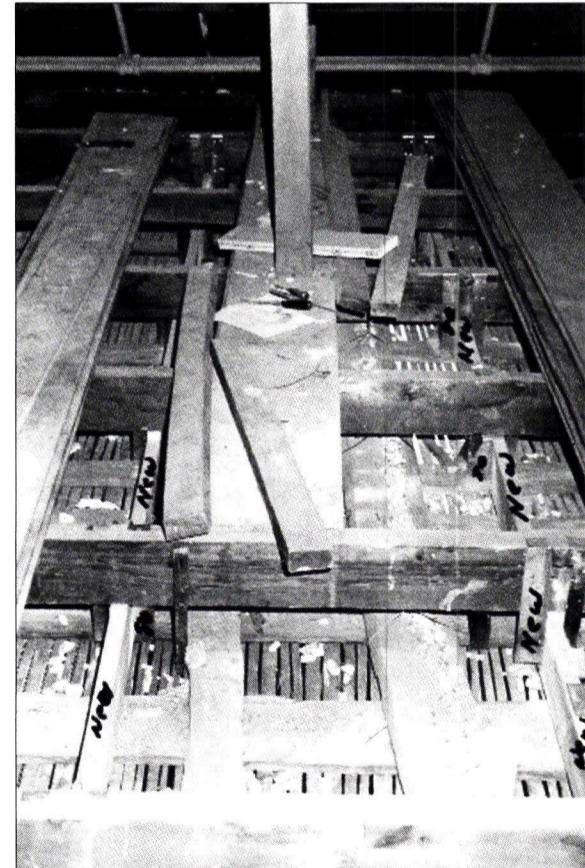
The 238-year-old pine wainscoting, which extends all the way up from the entrance hall through the landing of the second floor, has now been regained to its original mahogany color. The large Palladian window had its trim restored to its original beige. An upstairs bedroom, site of many Masonic meetings, has been returned to a dark ochre. One notable exception to these dignified hues is Sir William's bedroom/office; the lab revealed the original color to be a bright glazed verdigris, an almost-Californian beach-boy-green, where the technique of stippling or dabbling was chosen to create a puffed-cloud effect. The team repainted using 18th-century linseed oil-based formulas. Although expensive and requiring literally weeks to dry, linseed oil paints produce an incredible sheen. The use of boar's hair brushes left faint trace marks that added further texture.

Other recent projects involved finding replacement glass for period windows so thick and blotched one could barely see through them; a source was finally found in France. Carpeting was recently ripped up so that visitors could walk the same wide beam planks as Sir William did. However, double-hung plaster ceilings are still in enviable perfect condition, to this day smoother than those in dwellings one quarter their age (this author's home included) and a testament to the expertise of the craftsmen who built the Hall.

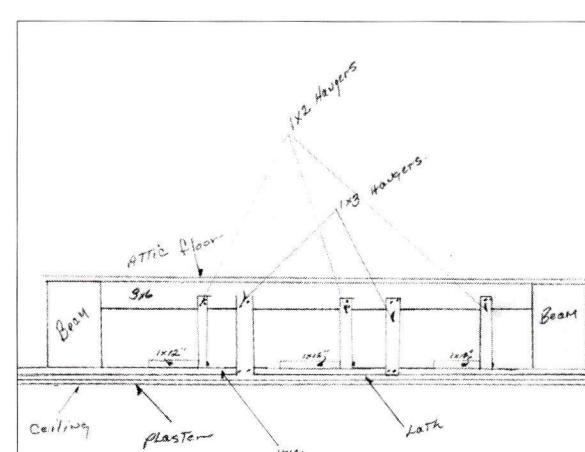
One scar on the face of the home's tranquil beauty will probably never be repaired. The legendary marks and gashes left by looting Regimentalists on the magnificent bannister still remain to be caressed by the curious hands of visiting schoolchildren. ♦

Thanks to Wanda Burch, Clifford Mealy, Tim Donabue, and Ted Lafforthun of the New York State Office of Parks, Recreation, and Historic Preservation for their expertise and help with this story. Thanks also to Sarah Bennett at The Albany Institute of History and Art.

FOR MORE INFORMATION about visiting Johnson Hall or attending the Annual 18th Century Market Fair on June 9 & 10, 2001 (hayride, crafts, food, 18th-century encampment, etc.), please call 518-762-8712.



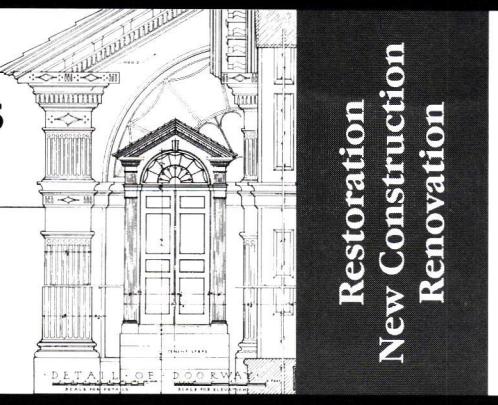
The double-hung, or suspended ceiling original to the house was in good condition but needed some additional support and insulation at the time of restoration. This photograph with the attic floor taken up shows how the ceiling is "hung" to give and take with the movement of the house. The first course is plaster, followed by hand-split wood lath that is attached to 1-in.-x-12-in. boards. The modern metal hangers are vertical members attached to girders and beams. Photo and diagram courtesy of Ted Lafforthun of the New York State Parks Commission, Albany, N.Y.



Historic Doors

Hendricks
Woodworking

P.O. Box 139 Kempton, PA 19529
Phone 610/756-6187 Fax 610/756-6171



WRITE IN NO. 3570

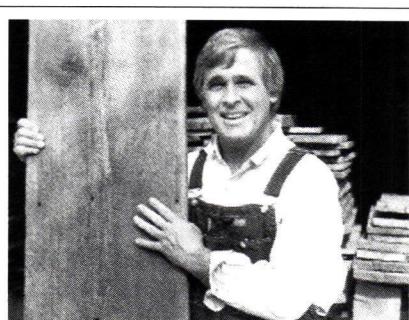
WWW. period-homes.com

*The Internet Gateway
to Historical Products
& Services for
Residential Architecture*

PERIOD HOMES

maintains the central Website for historically styled products and services on the Internet. There's more information and links to historical products than you'll find on any other site.

*Log onto —
and then Bookmark
www.period-homes.com*



Joe Rizzo, Proprietor Country Road Associates Ltd.
"AUTHENTIC 19th C. BARNWOOD
IS MY BUSINESS"

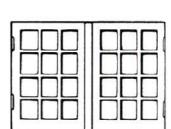
- FLOORING: Chestnut, Pine, Oak, Heart Pine, Hemlock, Cherry Spruce & Hickory
- Random widths from 3" - 20"
- BARNSIDING: faded red, silver-gray & brown
- HAND-HEWN BEAMS: up to 13" wide, Random Lengths

Large quantities available
Deliveries throughout the USA
COUNTRY ROAD ASSOCIATES LTD.
63 Front St., P.O. Box 885,
Millbrook, NY 12545
Open Tues.-Sat. 10-4 Sun. & Mon. by Apt.
845-677-6041 Fax 845-677-6532
www.countryroadassociates.com

WRITE IN NO. 7480

DOORS & WINDOWS

WOOD WINDOWS & DOORS



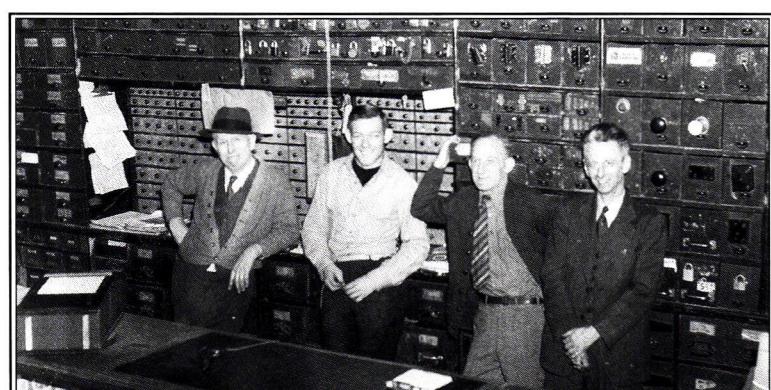
- Replacement sash - any size or layout. Circle, Oval, Gothic, or Cottage. Custom mouldings, Doors — raised panel shutters.
- Raised wall panels, Bookcases, TV wall units with foldback doors. Hard and soft lumber for sale.
- Insulated glass units made to order. Straight or circular stairs & wood railings.

"Come see for yourself — Pride still exists in Quality Workmanship"

DRUMS SASH & DOOR CO., INC.

392 WEST BUTLER DRIVE, P.O. BOX 207, DRUMS, PA 18222
PHONE (570) 788-1145 • FAX (570) 788-3007
website: www.drumssashanddoor.com
E mail: woodworking@intergrafix.net
CATALOG AVAILABLE

Have you ever dreamed of finding an old-house hardware store filled with original stock?



www.wmjrígby.com

WM. J. RIGBY CO.
73 ELM STREET COOPERSTOWN, NY 13326
PH: 607-547-1900 • FAX: 607-547-5939

WRITE IN NO. 8410

The Barn People

2218 US Route 5 North • Windsor, VT 05089

Ph: 802-674-5898 Fax: 802-674-6310

www.thebarnpeople.com

Vintage Vermont Barn Frames and outbuildings dismantled, restored, and reassembled on your choice site anywhere in the U.S. Built from three-hundred-year-old trees by hands that took the time to do things right. These time-proven structures come in a wide variety of shapes and sizes and make excellent dwellings, great room additions, studios, garages, guest houses, and oddly enough. . . barns. Since 1974 people have called or written. Please do so.

*Feasibility Studies,
Consulting, Restoration,
Preservation, and Stabilization*

WRITE IN NO. 440



EARLY
NEW ENGLAND
RESTORATIONS

*Acquires 17th & 18th Century Houses
and Barns Often Slated For Demolition,
Dismantles, Relocates and Restores Them
To Their Original Splendor*

PROJECT MANAGEMENT • CUSTOM BUILDING
FULL TIME STAFF OF HIGHLY SKILLED CRAFTSMEN & ARTISANS
FULL INVENTORY OF ANTIQUE FLOORING, BEAMS & HARDWARE

*Offering "The Best of Both Worlds" By Maintaining
Historical and Architectural Integrity While
Integrating The Most Comfortable and
Energy Efficient Systems Available.*

273 PENDLETON HILL ROAD • NORTH STONINGTON, CONNECTICUT 06359
phone 860-599-4393 e-mail: ENER1@AOL.COM fax 860-599-4403

WRITE IN NO. 2768

www.period-homes.com

Classical Meets Residential

The following four projects represent excellence in traditionally styled residential architecture with a special attention to Classical principles.

PROJECT: Addition and Renovation of Long Island Home, East Moriches, N.Y.

ARCHITECT: Cameron Cameron & Taylor Design Associates, LLC, Brooklyn Heights, N.Y.

CONTRACTOR: Keith Chan, Case CDE Contracting, New York, N.Y.

Located on a choice site with a view of the Moriches Inlet, the owners of this 1920s two-story framed house initially requested that the architects redesign the awkward interior stair and reposition and replace the existing windows. Cameron Cameron & Taylor of Brooklyn, N.Y., an office that specializes in classically inspired architecture and interiors, quickly discovered that, even though the existing house had good bones, the proportions of the plan were inefficient and the exterior presence was dwarfed by oversized shingle siding, as well as by the beautiful, exposed site. To give the clients the stair and presence they wanted, the architects rethought the entire plan, which altered the project scope into a complete renovation of the exterior and interior with the addition of a sunporch.

Spacious with its new expansive curves and medallion-capped 19-ft. ceiling, the new stairhall became the nucleus of the house. Adjacent to the front entry hall, the stairhall is on axis with the cozy library and a bay window that looks over the back portico. The rooms on the main floor at the back of the house are connected enfilade by open doorways that lead the visitor from the living room, through the library and dining room, to the den and finally the sunporch beyond. All these rooms are afforded sweeping views of the bay and are filled with light.

During construction. There was no sense of style or proportion to the original rear, bay-side elevation of this East Moriches house with screened-in porch, oversized exterior shingle siding, and unfortunate single-pane windows. Although the clients originally requested window replacement and the redesign of the interior stair, the program expanded to include the complete renovation of the interior and exterior of the house.



After construction. The stature of this year-round residence is clearly defined by the completed elevation with new clapboard siding; the double height, 4-columned portico; the dormers added to the attic story; the appropriate windows and shutters; the new sunporch; and the Chippendale-inspired rail. The columns were handmade by job supervisor Mike Amandola of the contracting firm Case CDE Corp. The craftspeople on the job took pleasure in the detailed work not often specified by other architects. All post-renovation photographs by Peter Peirce Photography.



The redefined side entrance became a lovely trellis-covered porch with room for a bench or two. The clients are able to drive right up to the porch, which opens to the mudroom/laundryroom and offers protection to the clients when unloading.



A glimpse into the exterior room of the rear portico — with its bluestone pavers and detailed woodwork — offers a welcome extension of the house.

continued on page 20



MAINTENANCE FREE, OPERABLE, EXTERIOR SHUTTERS • EXCLUSIVELY FROM J & L SHUTTERS, INC. • PERMEX™

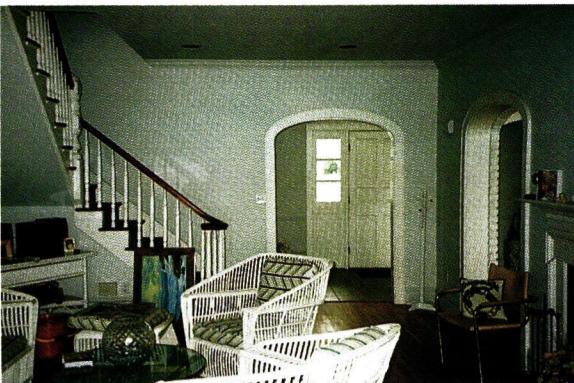
PERMEX™
Exclusively from J&L Shutters
3119 Fleetbrook
Memphis, TN 38116
(800) 238-2888
(901) 452-7067 FAX
www.jlshutters.com

Dade County tested hurricane shutters
Completely synthetic with aluminum reinforced styles and rails
Resilient to warping, cracking, and splintering
10 year paint warranty backed by Sherwin-Williams®

WRITE IN NO. 8054

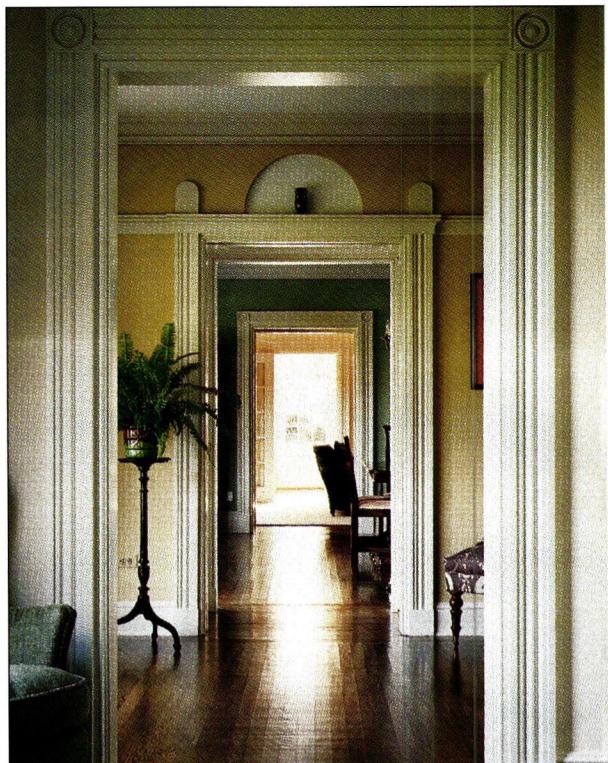


After. Now a lovely room through which to pass, the stairhall adjoins the front entry and is on axis with the library and rear portico. The new semicircular stair was built offsite and largely installed in one piece. The decorative bracket detailing beneath the landing reinforces the Greek Revival inspiration of the overall design. The stock decorative elements in the frieze and on the ceiling are from Decorators Supply and add a defining touch to the seashell-colored room.

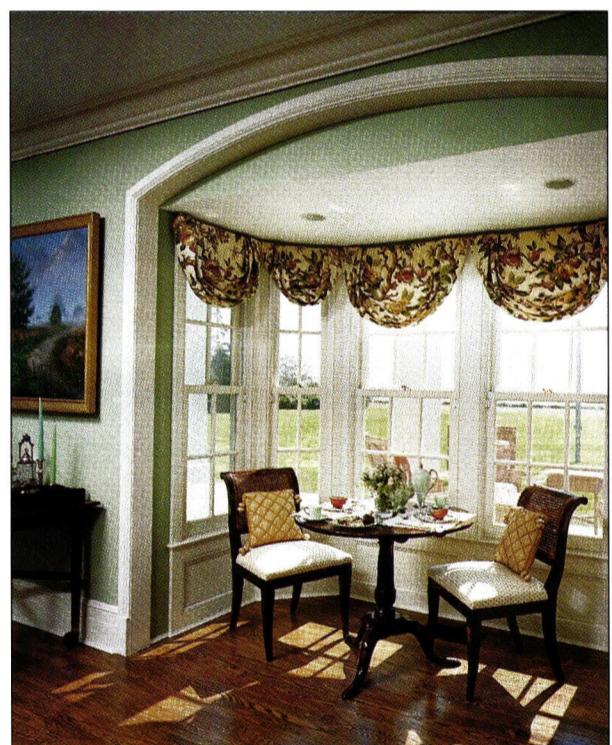


Before. The original narrow stair with scant head clearance was located within an ill-defined space used as a hodgepodge family room and for traffic through the house. The owners were not happy having to duck coming down the stair and were uncomfortable with the scale of the room. The architects quickly realized that the existing stair was the symptom of a poorly developed plan and recommended altering the interior plan to accommodate the desired stair as well as lend an overall ease throughout the house.

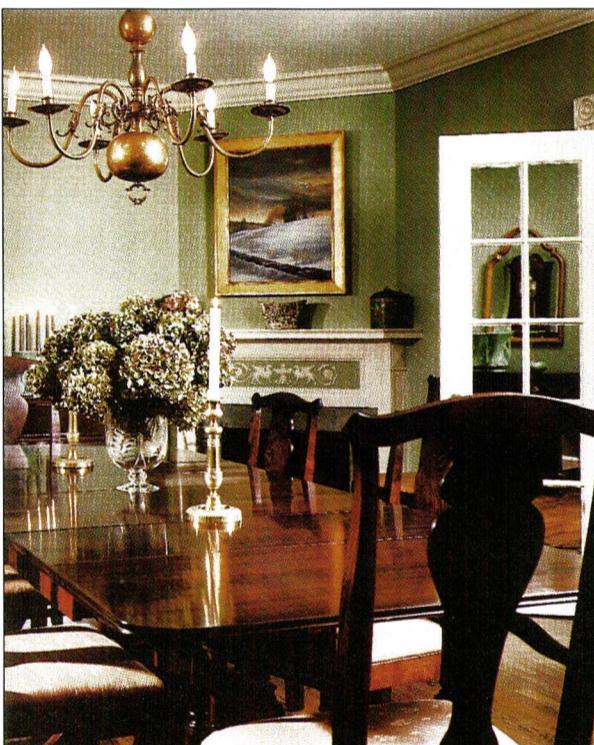
Decoration of the interior was as important as the dimensions of the portico columns, the scale of the new windows, and the details of the Chippendale-inspired rail that tops the front entry, sun porch, and back portico. Warm colors and furnishings complement the architecture without overwhelming it or the inhabitants. The firm was able to meet the clients' expectations with a livable house that could support a lot of family activity while still achieving a finely detailed interior with subtle use of color and texture. ♦



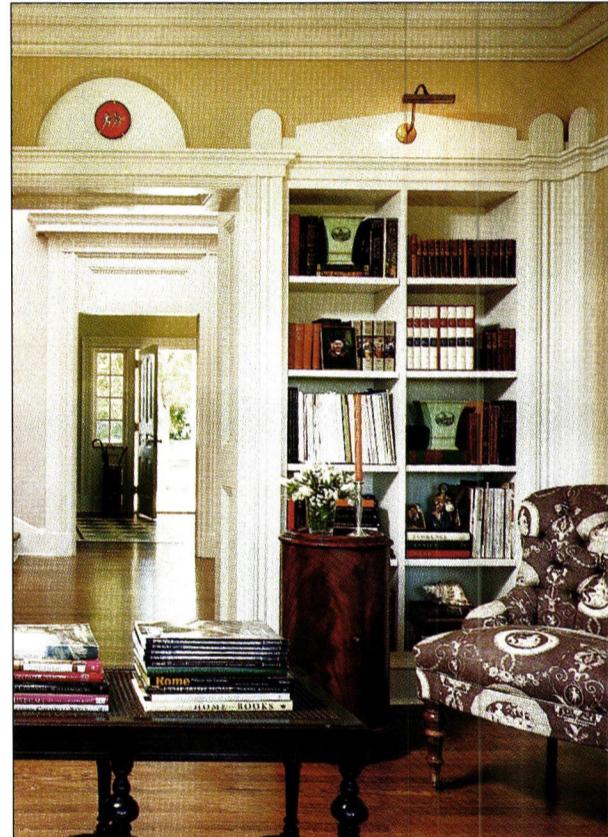
Rooms at the rear of the house flow from one well-defined space to the next, and all have windows that look out to the Bay. Here the viewer looks from the living room through the library, dining room, and den, to the sunporch beyond. The wood trim around the doorways is articulated by a combination of custom and stock components.



In the dining room, a breakfast table is set up in the bay window looking out over the portico to an expanse of lawn. Each bay window (the other is in the library) creates a valuable interior space, and their roofs provide exterior decks for the two baths at the second story.



The dining room boasts a fireplace with a newly designed mantel and surround with panel inset by Decorators Supply. The French doors are paneled with mirrors to block the view of the kitchen and offer an elegant finish to the room.



This interior view from the library looks through the stairhall to the front entrance. Featured in this intimate room are two ample bookcases on either side of the door opening, with a bay window seat opposite. Here, as throughout the house, the woodwork and detailing are inspired by the Greek Revival period.



The now-comfortable living room is planned to accommodate singular repose or group entertaining. The original wood surround of the fireplace was retained to fit the repositioned chimney breast, though the mantelshelf is new. The drapery in this room and throughout the house is by L. Porch Studio.



The kitchen features an enameled cast-iron sink, handmade tiles for the backsplash, a limestone counter, and satin-nickel hardware. The cabinets were decoratively painted by set designer James Cameron, who also created the entry-hall floor cloth.

Kayne & Son Custom Hardware
100 Daniel Ridge Road, Dept. PH, Candler, NC 28715
(828) 667-8868 or (828) 665-1988
Fax # (828) 665-8303

HINGES
Catalogs \$5.00
Reproductions
Restorations/
Repairs
Blacksmiths/
Conservators
• Cast Brass/Bronze
• Forged Steel, Brass
Interior/Exterior Builders
Household Hardware
Fireplace Tools/Accessories
• Locks • Keys Warded
Furniture Hardware Recast

Visa/MC

JM

Joseph Millworks
Manufacturers of
Custom Doors,
Windows & Millwork
37123 Hansen Lane
Baker City, OR 97814
Ph/fax: 541-894-2347

WRITE IN NO. 488

Authentic Antique Hardware

- One of a Kind
- No Reproduction
- Door Hardware
- Furniture Hardware
- Door Knockers
- Curtain Tie-backs
- Twist Bells

**Eugenia's
Antique Hardware**

5370 Peachtree Rd. • Chamblee, GA 30341
(800) 337-1677 (770) 458-1677 Fax (770) 458-5966
website: eugeniasantiquehardware.com
e-mail: eugeniashardware@mindspring.com

ARCHITECTURAL ACCENTS

Cupolas
Belfries
Steeple
Wood Screen Doors

www.woodscreendoors.com
www.cupolaconstruction.com

WRITE IN NO. 5032

Traditional Shutter Hardware

James Peters & Son, Inc.
MANUFACTURERS OF HARDWARE
1936 North Front Street Philadelphia, PA 19122
Phone: 215-739-9500 Fax: 215-739-9779
Sold through hardware distributors

WRITE IN NO. 1240

E.R. BUTLER
SEE OUR FULL PAGE AD ON THE INSIDE BACK COVER.

WRITE IN NO. 2260

the finest
Custom Windows & Doors
large scale projects are our specialty

MICHAEL REILLY DESIGN

4062-701 Grumman Blvd. Calverton, NY 11933 Phone: 631.208.0710 Fax: 631.208.0711

WRITE IN NO. 9210

ADAMS ARCHITECTURAL WOOD PRODUCTS

Traditional Storms, Screens and Sash; Mortise and Tenon—no finger jointing.

Individually handcrafted to your specifications.
Quick turnaround. Cost? Less than you think.

Call **1-888-285-8120** to speak with one of our specialists.

300 Trails Road, Eldridge, IA 52748
www.adamsarch.com • fax 319-285-8003
Formerly Midwest Architectural Wood Products LTD.

WRITE IN NO. 1265

TRADITIONAL DOORS GARAGE, BARN & CUSTOM

Carriage house doors, electric motorized overhead operation. Traditional swing out and sliding barn doors. Clear kiln dried Western Red Cedar, Redwood, or Honduras Mahogany, other species available. True divided-lite windows with restoration glass, insulated glass, or to spec. Cabinet-grade joinery. Radius-top doors to match arched openings. Custom entry doors fabricated to match garage doors. Featured on This Old House's Dream House in Milton, MA.

HAHNS WOODWORKING COMPANY, INC.
109 Aldene Road, Roselle, NJ 07203 • Ph (908) 241-8825 • Fax (908) 241-9293
VISIT OUR NEW, EXPANDED WEBSITE: www.hahnswoodworking.com
E-mail: info@hahnswoodworking.com

Color catalog available with many design ideas.

WRITE IN NO. 6640

PROJECT: Exterior Renovations & Interiors of Colonial Revival Home, Riverside, Conn.

ARCHITECT: Hilton-VanderHorn Architects, Greenwich, Conn.

INTERIORS: Katherine Cowdin, Inc., Greenwich, Conn.

LANDSCAPE DESIGN: GroPro Landscaping, Greenwich, Conn.

CONTRACTOR FOR PHASE II; KITCHEN, FAMILY ROOM: O'Neil Construction, Greenwich, Conn.

When looking for a new family home, the clients were searching for a distinctive residence in an established neighborhood, near the waterfront of Long Island Sound. However, given the scarcity of land available in the Greenwich area and the exorbitant cost of the finest real estate, the clients



This oval window at the front entry is an accent feature that provides light into the stair hall beyond and allows for viewing of arriving guests. The asymmetrical use of the one window aligns with the off-center stair hall inside.

decided to explore buying and renovating an existing home. After locating a 1960s builder house, but before bidding on it, the clients consulted with Greenwich-based Hilton-VanderHorn Architects to determine whether the house had the potential to become the home they desired.

Known for designing fine traditional residences that seamlessly integrate the modern amenities required by their clients, Hilton-VanderHorn concluded that the basic volumes of the existing house would accommodate a traditional Colonial design. To transform the house into a refined and elegant home, the exterior was re-proportioned and detailed to recall the typical Colonial houses found in New England. The low-pitched roof was removed, the attic plates raised, and a new, higher-pitched wood roof was installed, all of which allowed for re-proportioning of the facades and development of a classical cornice.

The exterior cornices were based on classical precedents using the *Architectural Treasures of America* series and the *American Vignola* as references. For the facade, a five-bay scheme was chosen featuring a new portico with a triple window above, which is flanked by two

Front elevation before (left). The clients were looking for a house with stature and classical details, but when they came up short, they refocused their quest for an existing home with potential. This Riverside, Conn., 1960s spec house with its unseemly stick columned front, lonely front door, and undefined roof inspired Hilton-VanderHorn Architects and their clients to re-create a house with real presence.

After (above). The renovated elevation provides a very different scene. The majority of the project scope was to re-create the exterior beginning with the roof, which was removed and raised to make room for a cornice. The pitch was also increased to create a more substantial third floor that was further defined by the addition of dormer windows and an extended brick chimney. The windows were repositioned and the classically referenced portico completed the new face. Landscaping by Peter Grunow of GroPro Landscaping, Greenwich, Conn., complements the new elevation with a welcoming stone walkway and new plantings.

The entrance portico (right), scaled in proportion to the facade, features columns by Somerset Door and Column Company, which support an entablature that reflects the main exterior cornice. Inspiration for the exterior cornices were based on classical precedents found in the *American Vignola* and the *Architectural Treasures of America* series. Though the cornice is custom, the portico windows and dormer cornices are primarily composed of stock mouldings by Brockway-Smith Company (Brosco), Interstate/Lakeland Lumber, and Center Lumber Company.

— All photos courtesy of Hilton-VanderHorn Architects



Before (above). This view shows the existing cornice, as Chuck Hilton says, "simply trimmed out, lacking both depth and detail."

After (right). He continues, "The new cornice is proportioned to the scale of the house. The cornice mouldings are based on classical precedents. They add scale, detail, and depth to the facade. The new half-round copper gutter is installed to maximize the view of the cornice mouldings."

pairs of windows to either side. Three new dormers and an extended new brick chimney accent the roof. As a focal point, the portico's columns support an entablature with a modillioned cornice topped by a decorative railing. The new windows with custom casings, head cornices, and paneled shutters further enliven the front elevation.

continued on page 24



**WWW.
period-homes.com**

*Internet Gateway
to Historical Products*

PERIOD HOMES

maintains the central Website for historically styled products and services on the Internet — products used for restoration, renovation, and new construction projects. There's more information and links to historical products than you'll find on any other site.

AMONG THE FEATURES:

- Searchable Product Database with 112 product categories
- 371 companies listed and indexed in the Product Database
- 162 Online product brochures
- Links to 272 Companies and related Organizations
- In-Depth Product Report of the Month
- Lists of Topics in Past and Future Issues
- Most-Requested Articles Online
- E-Mail Order Form for Product Literature

*Log onto —
and then Bookmark
www.period-homes.com*

Can a cabinet knob be beautiful? We think so.

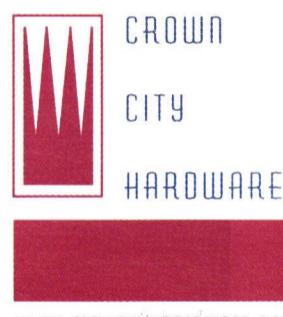


From our Crystal Collection

For over 80 years, we at Crown City Hardware have thought of all of our hardware as beautiful. Everything from hand-hammered craftsman pieces to finely detailed door knobs in virtually every architectural style.

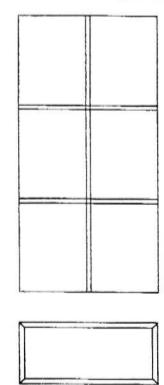
To obtain our new 400 plus page catalog, please send \$6.50 (refundable with purchase, add \$3.00 for rush delivery) to: Crown City Hardware • 1047 N. Allen Ave Dept. 09SP1 • Pasadena • CA • 91104

"Get lost in the Details"



www.crownicityhardware.com

WRITE IN NO. 432



H·I·C

WINDOW & DOOR Co.
Specialty Door Panels Shipped All Over The U.S.

Let us quote your next fenestration project
Sash and doors are available in any type wood or muntin size or configuration.

www.homeideacenter.com
216 Seaboard Lane, Franklin, TN 37067
(615) 371-8080 Fax: (615) 377-3385

This is just an example of what is available in our custom door collection.

WRITE IN NO. 1067



LINCOLN WINDOWS

FOR EASY ACCESS TO FREE PRODUCT LITERATURE

FILL OUT THE ENCLOSED POSTCARD OR USE THE COUPON ON PAGE 158.

Infinite Design Flexibility • Fire Rated Doors • Solid 1-Piece Construction

DETAILS MATTER

Custom Dimensions • Radius and Arch Tops • Environmentally Responsible

SQUARE 90° CORNERS

"SMOOTH" BOLECTION PANEL DESIGN

"RAISED" BOLECTION PANEL DESIGN

"FLAT" BOLECTION PANEL DESIGN

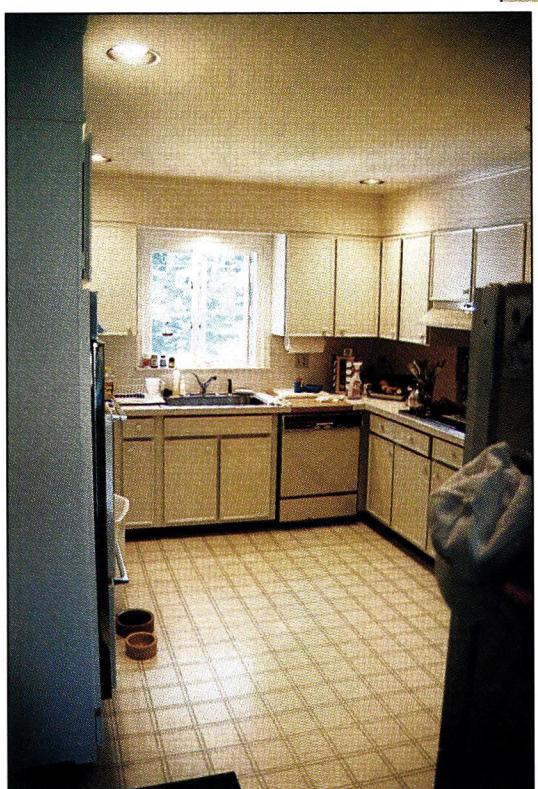
"FLUTED" BOLECTION PANEL DESIGN

BOLECTION™ DOOR P.O. Box 21786 • Greensboro, NC 27420

t 336-851-5208 • f 888-511-5209 • www.bolectiondoor.com

Superior Acoustic Properties • Quick Delivery • Smooth, Paintable Surface

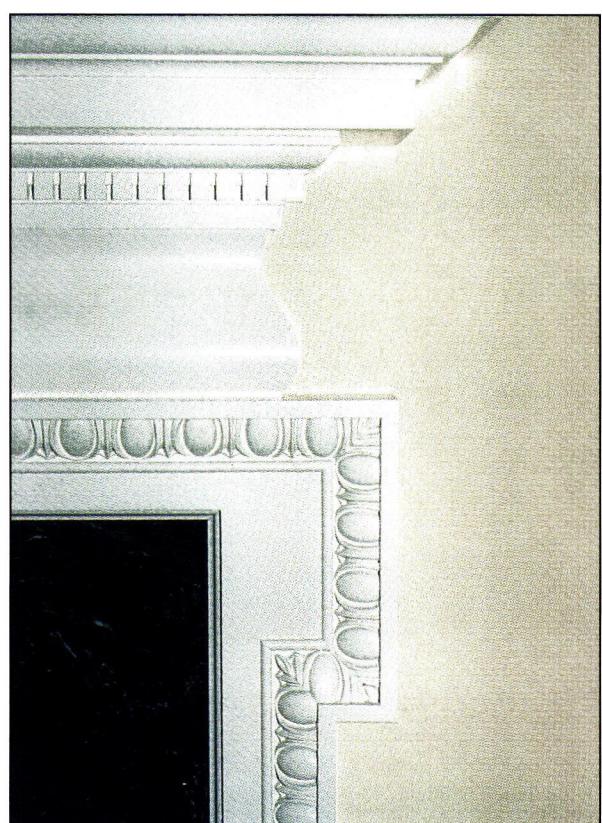
WRITE IN NO. 519



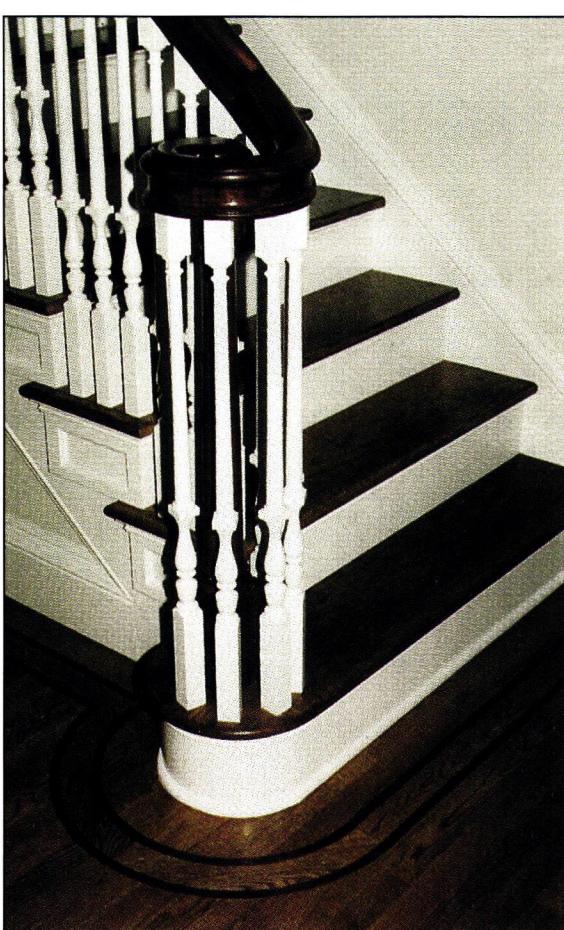
On the interior, to organize the plan of the original rooms, a three-story center stair hall, complete with custom-designed mahogany handrails and turned balusters, was cut through the center of the house. All the rooms have been renovated and two large third-floor bedrooms and a bath were added beneath the new roof. ♦



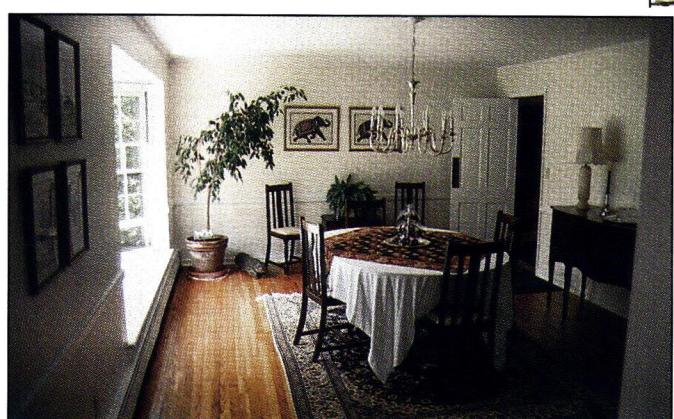
Kitchen before (inset) and after (above). The Kitchen/Breakfast room was rearranged in order to free up the outside back-elevation wall that houses the new breakfast bay. The kitchen work area is directly across from the bay with a work island in between. Custom-made cabinets are traditionally styled with exposed-hinge doors and drawers framed by fixed stiles. Granite countertops and glazed upper cabinets complete the cabinetry as built-in furniture.



This mantel surround is richly designed and ornamented to become the focus of a long living room. The eared architrave that frames the new marble surround includes an egg-and-dart moulding by Decorators Supply Corporation. The bolection frieze above and the denticulated cornice that it supports add further interest and detail.

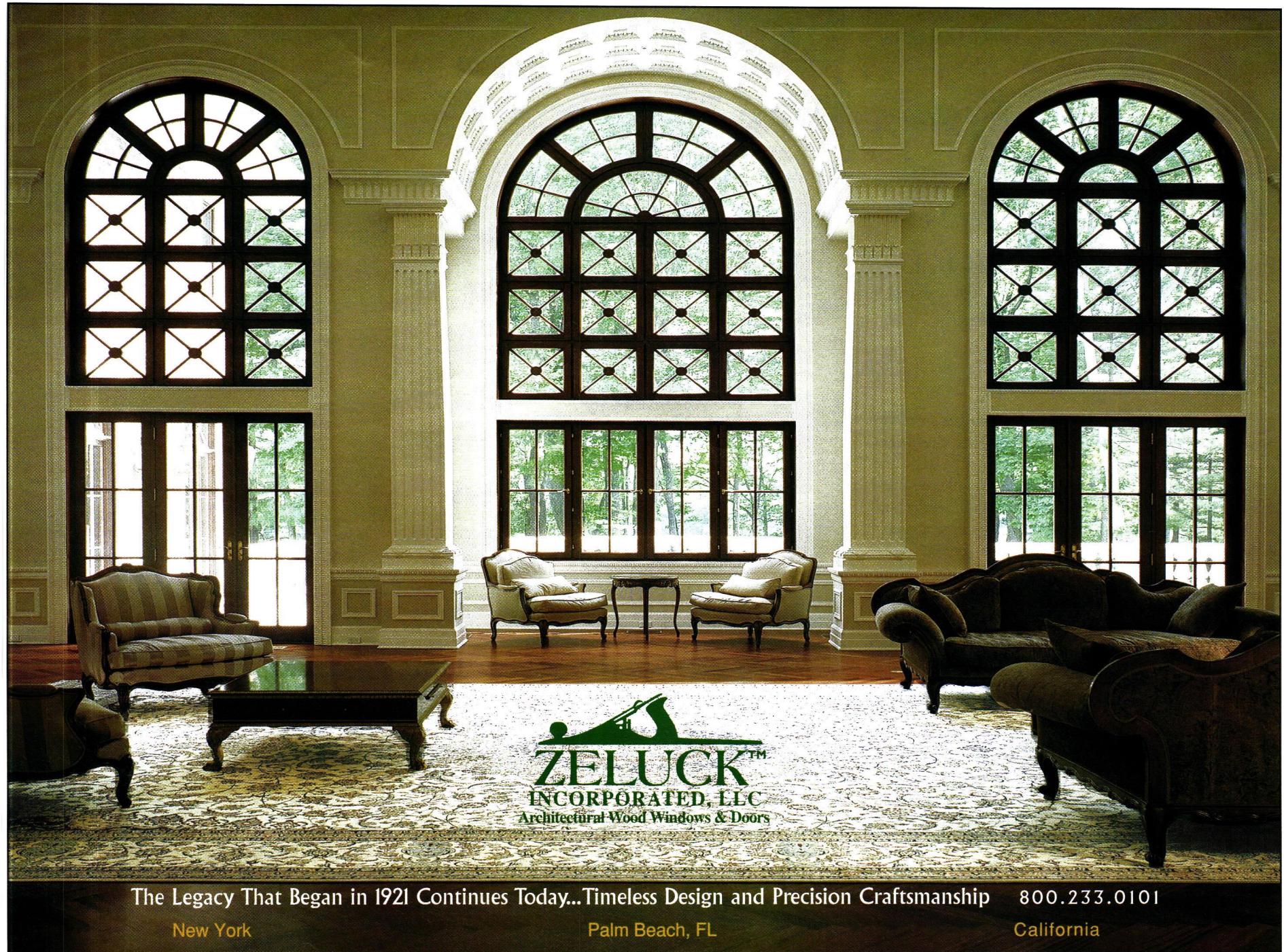


The new three-story interior stair serves to unify the original plan. Says project architect Chuck Hilton, "Colonial and Georgian precedents inspired the custom-designed stair. The turned corner and base newel posts, like the handrail, are of mahogany, and are designed like a column similar to those of the portico. Intricately turned balusters are three to a tread and have tall bases that correspond to the height of the adjacent riser."



Dining room before (above) and after (right). The Before shot shows the existing room that featured a bay oddly placed to one side of the space. The renovated and decorated room now features two double-hung windows that replace the bay on the front facade and evenly distribute and modulate incoming light, as well as allow for a more-comfortable furniture plan. A new cornice, paneled wainscot, and base provide the details needed to add scale and intimacy to the room.






ZELUCK™
 INCORPORATED, LLC
 Architectural Wood Windows & Doors

The Legacy That Began in 1921 Continues Today...Timeless Design and Precision Craftsmanship 800.233.0101

New York

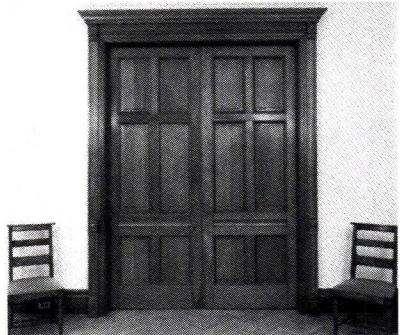
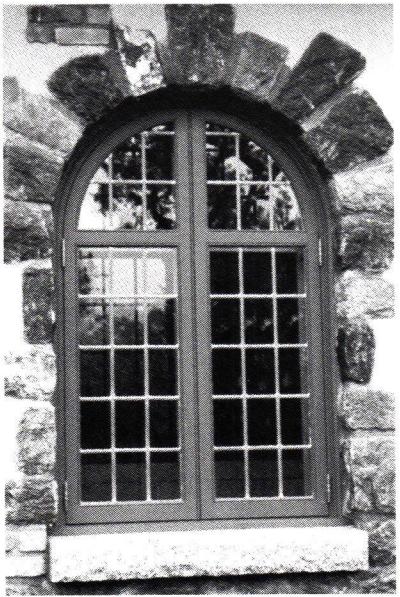
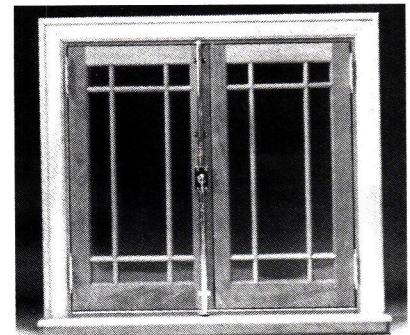
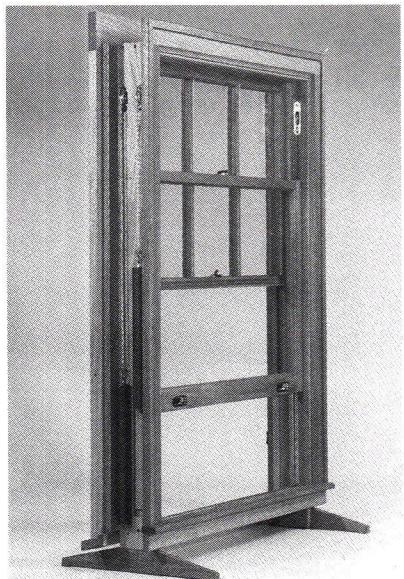
Palm Beach, FL

California

WRITE IN NO. 6920

History Repeats Itself At WOOD WINDOW WORKSHOP

UNCOMPROMISING QUALITY AND CRAFTSMANSHIP



Manufacturers of Custom Wood Windows & Doors
 Value Engineered to Meet the Most Demanding Specifications
 1-800-724-3081 Fax 315/733-0933
 A division of: Kershaw Zalewski Associates, Inc.
 839 Broad Street, Utica, New York 13501

WRITE IN NO. 9640

DOOR HARDWARE BY: *D. C. Mitchell*



CALL OR SEND FOR FREE INFORMATION TO:

D. C. MITCHELL

8 E. HADCO ROAD • WILMINGTON, DE 19804
 PHONE 302 998 1181 FAX 302 994 0178

WRITE IN NO. 2800

PROJECT: Renovation and Redecoration
of a 1930s New York City Apartment.

ARCHITECT: John B. Murray, AIA —
formerly of Ferguson Murray &
Shamamian, now of John B. Murray
Architects LLC, New York, N.Y.

CONTRACTOR: Scott Tucker — formerly
of Clear Cut Construction, Inc., now of
Avatar Construction, Inc., New York,
N.Y.

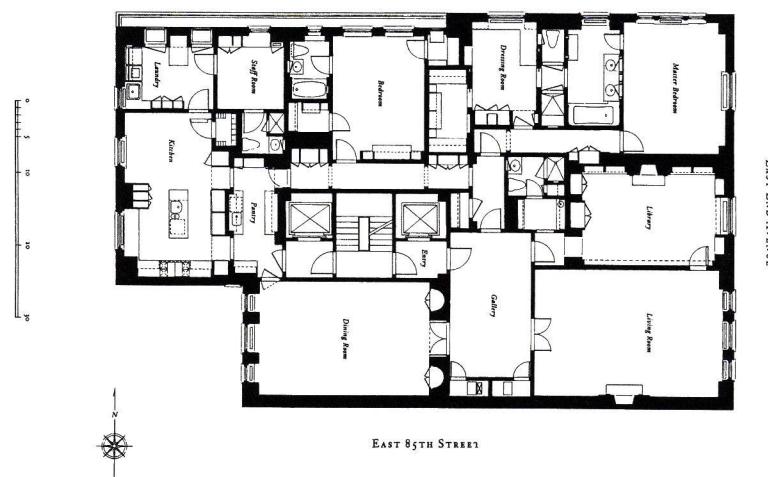
INTERIOR DECORATION: The late Hedi
Kravis of Cullman & Kravis, Inc., New
York, N.Y. Sheryl Vandermolen,
project manager.

Located in a 1930s apartment house designed by the notable architect Charles Platt, this New York residence has extensive views of Carl Shurz Park and the East River. By the time the clients purchased the apartment, however, most of its details had been lost in previous renovations. In this recent renovation by John B. Murray Architects, the general floor plan was retained but nearly all the rooms were completely renovated and then redecorated by Cullman & Kravis, Inc. The owners, with three college-age children, were giving up a larger residence and hoped to retain the grace and charm of a grand home, comfortable for themselves and for entertaining, but without pretense.

To achieve a timeless, wholly comprehensive traditional scheme that would be fresh, spacious, and uncluttered, John Murray and Cullman & Kravis took



The newly designed eat-in kitchen imbues warmth and functionality with a wide-plank white oak floor, American cherry cabinetry, and Juperana granite countertops. The clients requested a green opaque glass for the over-cabinets, which was achieved by combining green handmade glass with a pane of etched glass. The metals are all satin nickel and the light fixtures are from Ann Morris, N.Y. The decorator specified two diameters of the same fixture: two 14-in. lamps over the island workspace and four smaller 12-in. lamps for general lighting. The stems were kept to a minimum to avoid compromising the 9-ft. ceiling height. All photographs by Durston Saylor



The floor plan of the approximately 4000-sq.ft. East Side apartment was generally retained in the renovation. Note the entry off the elevator into the entry gallery, which serves nicely as the central circulation space.

their cues from the architecture of the building and the clients' collection of antiques. Many pieces of furniture kept by the clients were re-upholstered and re-shaped. The colors — golds, blues, and greens, with accents of cream and rose — were selected to lend continuity throughout the apartment. New architectural features, beginning with the entry gallery, include an uplighted cove ceiling, new overdoors and trim elements, and French-polished mahogany doors. The gallery serves as the central circulation space



This view of the library fireplace shows the flat-panel design which gives a more-understated air in this formal room. To accommodate the narrow 2-in. panel and to match the wood, special back plates for the sconces had to be fabricated.



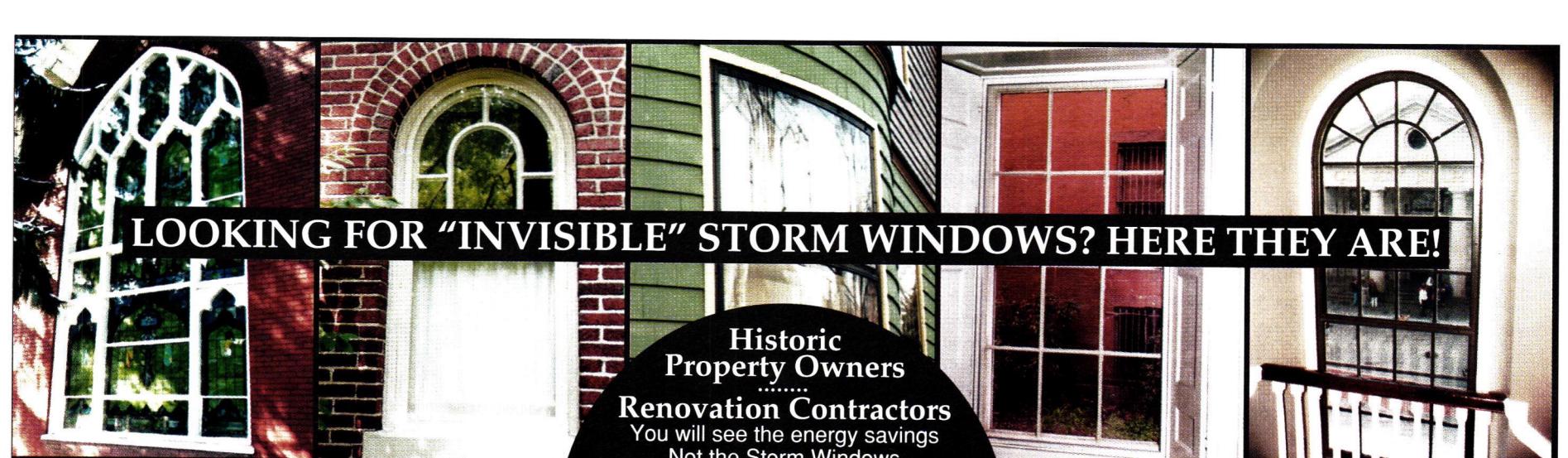
Wanting a comfortable but rich quality for the paneled library, the architect and clients selected Ponderosa pine in a honey brown that would not be too overwhelmingly masculine. Eischenhart Mills built all the components for the room, including the denticulated cornice, custom mantelpiece, and television cabinet, which were hand-finished by Mark Adams of R. Mark Adams, Inc., East Lempster, N.H. The mahogany door to the right is pine on the library side and connects to the living room. Though not original to the apartment, the door facilitates the flow of entertaining and allows additional natural light to enter the room.

for the apartment with doors leading to the living room, dining room, library vestibule, and bedroom halls.

The dining room echoes the delicate Adamesque ornament and detail typical of the building, with a new Federal-style cornice punctuated with mutuas and pearls; the wainscot; overdoor; and china display cabinets. The similarly detailed library was fully paneled in a hand-finished Ponderosa Pine, which was also used for the denticulated cornice, custom mantelpiece, and television cabinet. To maximize space for this two-bedroom apartment, the library was designed to also function as a completely private third bedroom, complete with a shower in the powder room and a large guest closet.

The new master bath is colored by Giallo Sienna marble for the shower, wainscot, and floors. The client preferred to keep the relatively small existing bedroom

continued on page 28

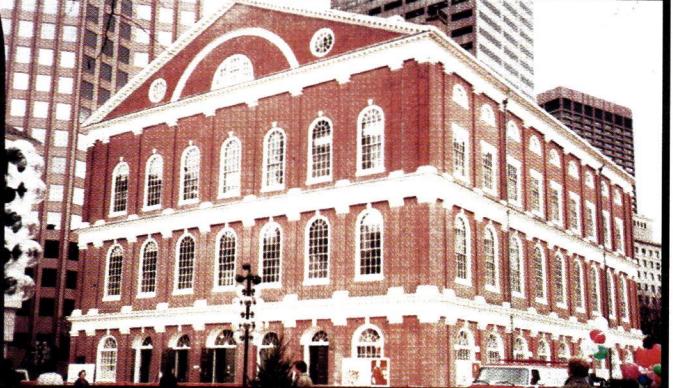


LOOKING FOR "INVISIBLE" STORM WINDOWS? HERE THEY ARE!

**Historic
Property Owners**
Renovation Contractors
You will see the energy savings
Not the Storm Windows
Match Any Color
Match Any Shape
Inside or Outside Mounted
Inside or Outside Removable
Screen and Glass
Fixed-Magnetic-Sliding-Lift Out

ALLIED WINDOW, INC.
2724 W. McMicken Avenue
Cincinnati, Ohio 45214
(800) 445-5411 (TOLL-FREE)
(513) 559-1883 (FAX)
www.alliedwindow.com
"Where custom work is standard"

WRITE IN NO. 690



**WWW.
period-homes.com**
*Internet Gateway
to Historical Products*
**PERIOD
HOMES**

maintains the central Website for historically styled products and services on the Internet —products used for restoration, renovation, and new construction projects. There's more information and links to historical products than you'll find on any other site.

AMONG THE FEATURES:

- Searchable Product Database with 112 product categories
- 371 companies listed and indexed in the Product Database
- 162 Online product brochures
- Links to 272 Companies and related Organizations
- In-Depth Product Report of the Month
- Lists of Topics in Past and Future Issues
- Most-Requested Articles Online
- E-Mail Order Form for Product Literature

*Log onto —
and then Bookmark
www.period-homes.com*

Wood Screen Doors

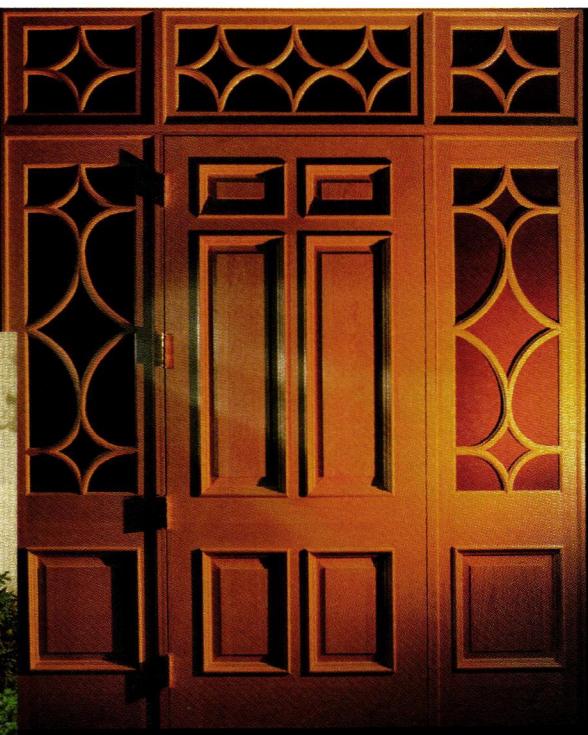


Coppa Woodworking Inc.

1231 Paraiso Ave., San Pedro, CA 90731 310-548-5332 Fax: 310-548-6740 www.coppawoodworking.com

WRITE IN NO. 9600

Make **SUN-DOR-CO** your source
for custom doors and frames



SUN-DOR-CO
1.800.835.0190

WRITE IN NO. 5720

but indulge in a sumptuous bath and dressing area. Further remodeling occurred in the kitchen and pantry, which now feature custom cherry cabinetry and Juperana granite countertops. The pantry was fitted with a 300-bottle wine closet and a restored wooden freezer door. Extensive new lighting, sound, and mechanical systems were installed throughout the apartment, cleverly designed by the architect to be concealed from view, but accessible for servicing. ♦

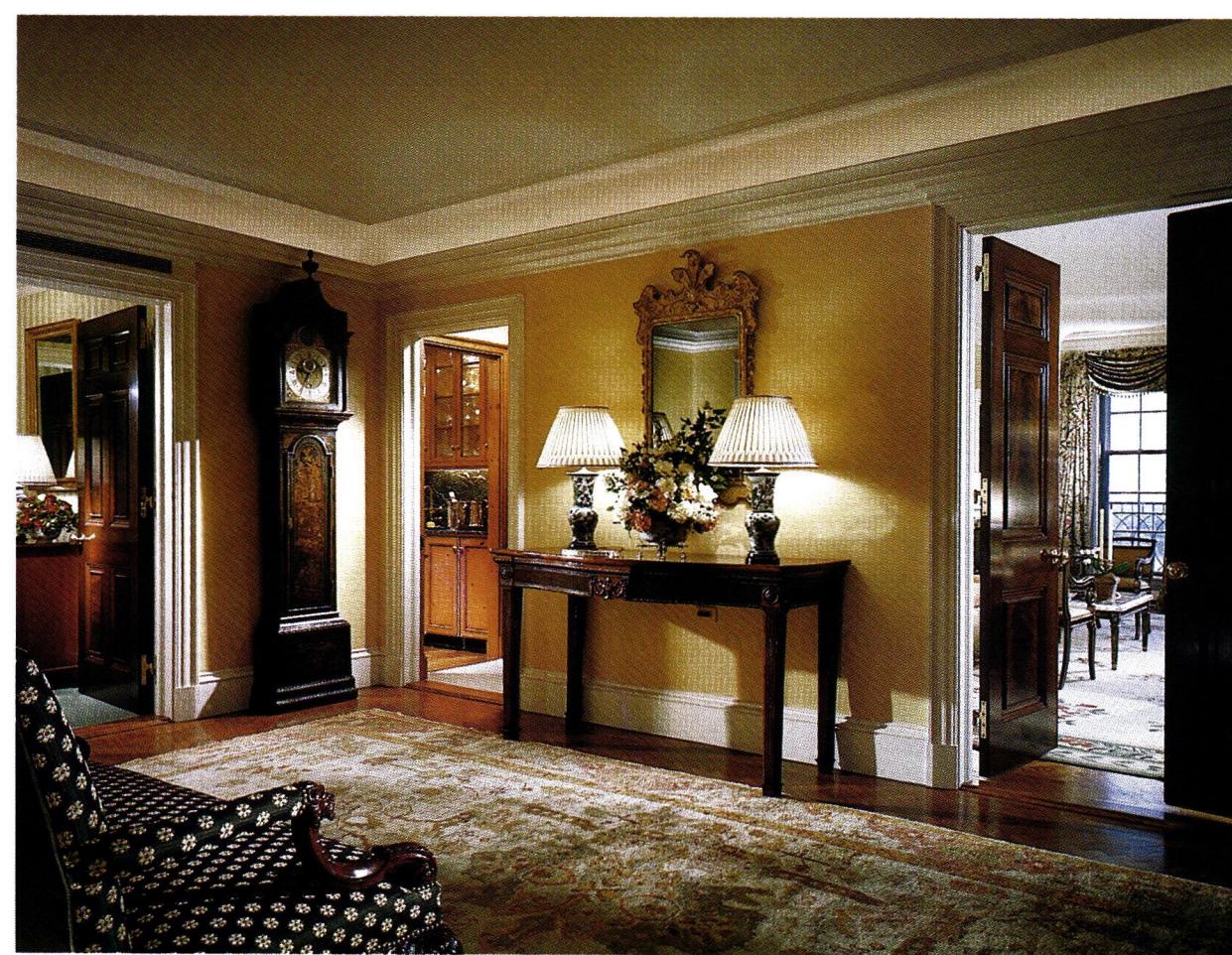


The dining-room overdoor is composed of wood elements and the cornice was drawn in place in plaster. The "pearl," however, is actually wooden beads strung together. Like jewelry for the room, these Adamesque details add layers and depth to impart a high finish.

Giallo Sienna marble cut from a single block graces the floor, walls, counter, and shower of the new master bath. The use of one kind of stone creates serenity in the room, offset by the use of sparkling brass fixtures. The cornice is again site-drawn plaster and the lighting is concealed in etched-glass panels recessed into the wall around and between the mirrors and medicine cabinets. Another clever detail: The radiator cover is really a storage cupboard.



The dining room also features gentle incandescent lighting with direct light, gallery-style, for the owners' collection of Audubon prints. Overlooking a center court, and receiving little natural light, the room's decoration enhances the intimate feeling of the space. A moody and rich atmosphere is further achieved by the steel-wool finishing on the green walls.

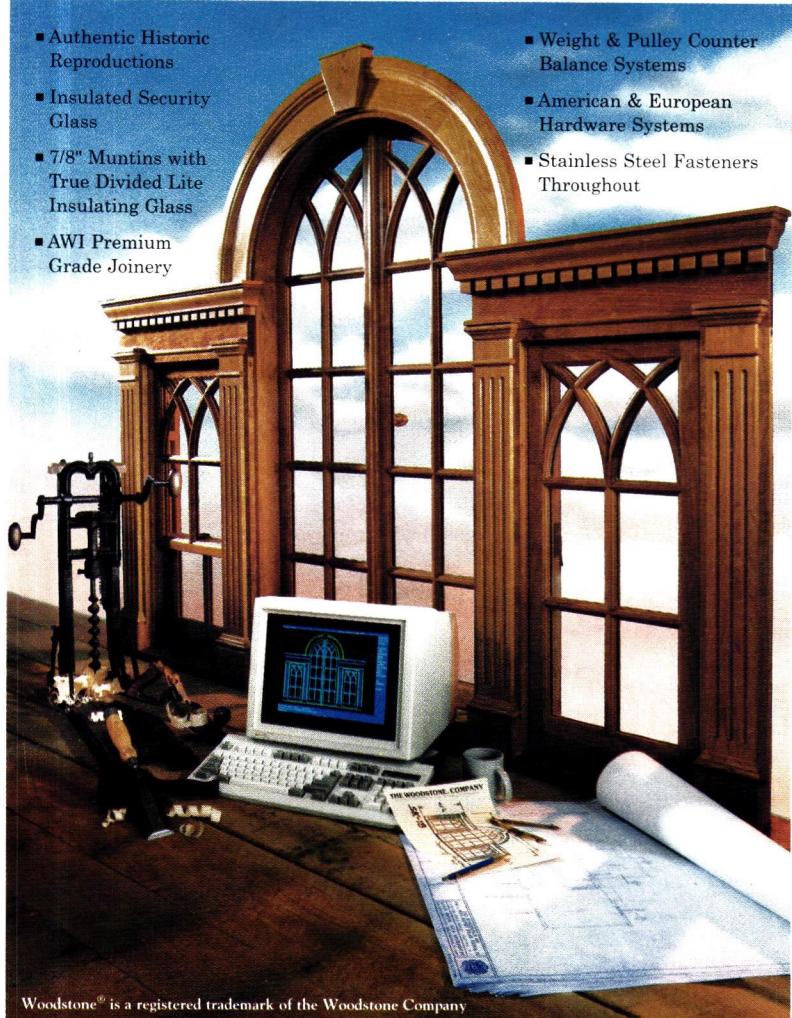


The entry gallery ingeniously hides air handlers and air-conditioning systems behind custom trim and woodwork. Dropping the ceiling to accommodate the required HVAC became an opportunity to create the hand-drawn plaster cove, but eliminated the possibility of using a chandelier or pendant light. Instead, the clients were very interested in the concept of indirect lighting if it could give the warm, inviting quality of lamp light. This effect was achieved using tiny, low-voltage, incandescent bulbs. Note the hierarchy of the doorways that lead to the living room, library vestibule/wetbar, and master-suite hall.



Looking down this narrow hall to the master bedroom, the linen closet on the right is roomy enough to also store luggage. To preserve symmetry, some of the doors are false and do not open. The extraordinary detail in this small space (the ceiling had to be lowered for ductwork) had to be just right. Note the care in the design of the pilasters to the sides of the door, the wainscot, and cornice. The mirrored doors, a Cullinan & Kravis trademark, bring natural light from the bedroom's East River view into the 20-ft.-long hallway.

CUSTOM MADE TRADITIONAL & CONTEMPORARY
HIGH PERFORMANCE WOODEN WINDOWS & DOORS



Woodstone® is a registered trademark of the Woodstone Company

WOODSTONE

For Brochures: Please send \$4.00 for shipping and handling
Dept. TB, Box 223, Westminster, Vermont 05158
Phone 802-722-9217 Fax 802-722-9528

E-Mail: sales@woodstone.com, Web: http://www.woodstone.com

WRITE IN NO. 8430



*The leading educational resource for
the classical tradition in architecture*

When you become a member of the Institute of Classical Architecture, you not only support its educational mission but also gain access to the Institute's wide range of programs and publications:

- Annual Journal: THE CLASSICIST
- Annual Conference
- Lecture and Salon Series
- Travel Programs
- Summer Program in Classical Architecture
- Book Series

Basic professional-level membership in the Institute is \$50; higher levels of membership are available that support its ongoing educational programs. Send check directly to the Institute at the address below, or for more details log onto the Institute website at

www.classicist.org

THE INSTITUTE OF
CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

225 Lafayette St., Suite 1009
New York, NY 10012

Telephone (917) 237-1208 Fax (917) 237-1230
e-mail: institute@classicist.org
website: www.classicist.org

WRITE IN NO. 1340

ENTER A WORLD OF ELEGANCE



Manufacturers of
Handcrafted
Doors and Millwork



WRITE IN NO. 1350

Canton, MI 48187
734.414.7100
Toll free 1.877.414.7400
www.heritagedoorusa.com

WWW. period-homes.com

The Internet Gateway
to Historical
Products & Services
for Residential
Architecture

J&L SHUTTERS

❖ See ❖
our full page
full color ad
on page 19

WRITE IN NO. 8054

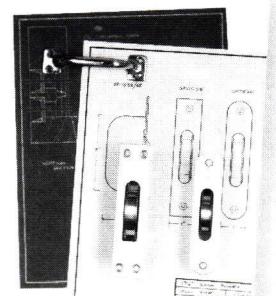
Sash pulleys, sash chain, brass sash locks
and lifts; cremone bolts, casement hardware,
and brass screen door hardware.

It's all in our new Catalog.

Our greatly expanded catalog includes clear
photos, dimensions, and application and
specifying information for all of our hardware.
Call us today to request your copy.

PHELPS COMPANY
ARCHITECTURAL SPECIALTIES

sash pulleys
sash chain
brass sash locks and lifts
cremone bolts
casement hardware
brass screen door hardware



PHELPS COMPANY
ARCHITECTURAL SPECIALTIES

Phone 802-257-4314
Fax 802-258-2270

WRITE IN NO. 6001

PROJECT: Renovation of a "Georgian"/Ranch House, Charlotte, N.C.
ARCHITECT: Milton Wilfred Grenfell, R.A., and Marianne Cusato, Grenfell Architecture, Charlotte, N.C.
CONTRACTOR: Queen City Builders, Charlotte, N.C.
INTERIOR DECORATION: Morrison Brown Interiors, Charlotte, N.C.
LANDSCAPE DESIGN: William Scott White, Charlotte, N.C.

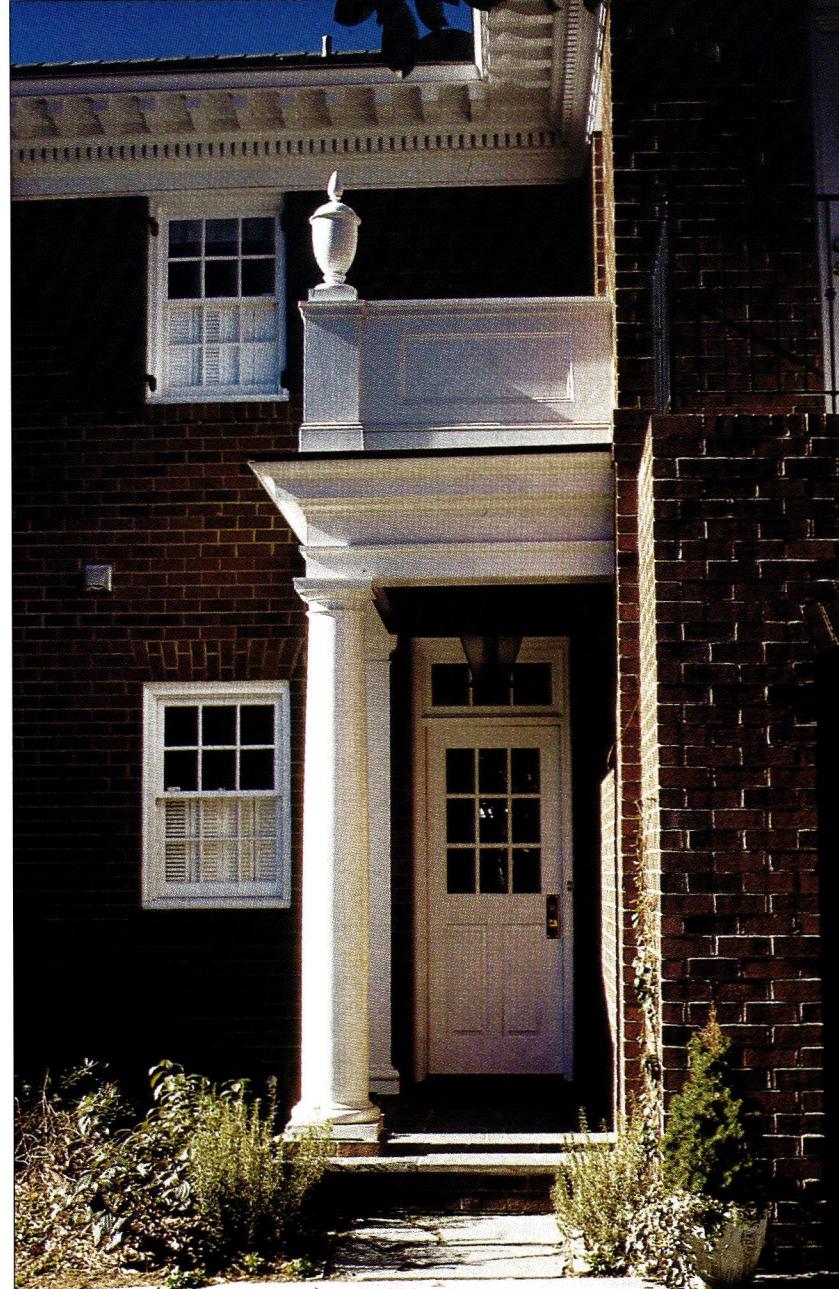
made to appear less so by using a full Corinthian cornice of modillions and dentils. The second-story, quasi-French-style segmental window was replaced with a rectangular glass-paned door that opens onto an iron-railed balcony. The balcony is supported by an Ionic portico that shelters the south-facing front door. Lastly, the sparsely detailed, "short and fat" recessed front doorway was replaced with pilasters, leaded-glass and transom lites, well-membered raised paneling, and compo swags and medallions.

continued on page 32

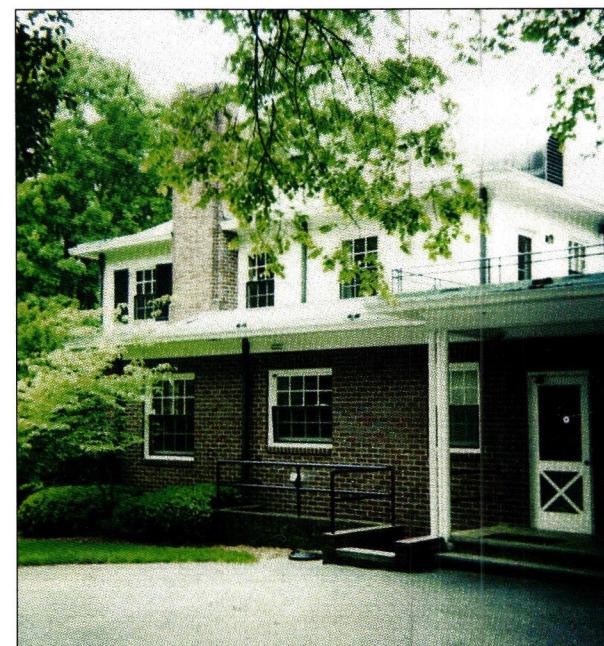
The original house was an ungainly Georgian and ranch fusion built in 1951. The two-story mass was divided into a board-and-batten second floor with brick below. Short, wide window proportions and the broad, overhanging flat-roof eaves all gave the house a horizontality and plainness unpleasantly at odds with its Georgian gestures. The clients hoped that with an addition and renovation, the house could have a new life. The couple entertains often and also needed accommodations for their art and furniture collections.

Grenfell Architecture of Charlotte, N.C., is a small firm that incorporates the graceful traditional architecture of the South into their work, as well as well-researched historical precedent. When Grenfell first saw the house, he drew a rough sketch of the front elevation to show the clients one make-over option. Remarkably, according to Grenfell, the finished house closely resembles that initial drawing.

To transform the exterior appearance of the house, the architect's first move was to continue the brick veneer up for two full stories, using a projecting belt course to mask the old-to-new brick transition. The window scheme was significantly altered with more windows, all strongly vertical in proportion to further reduce the former horizontality. The broad "Wrightian" roof eaves were



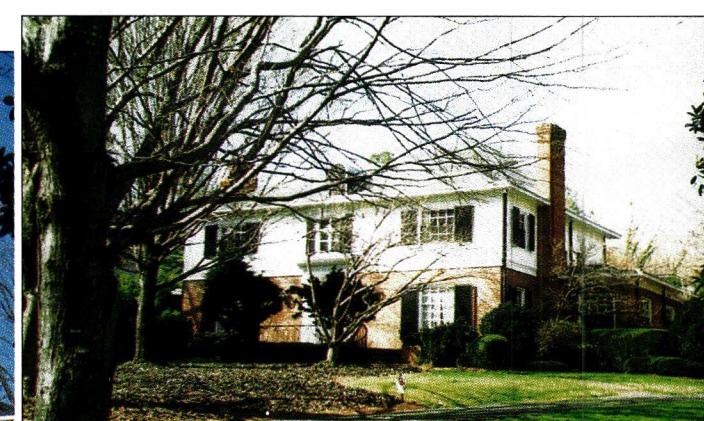
After. The back door remained in its original position but is now embellished and articulated by an urn-topped Tuscan portico. A gracious bay window (top photo) was added to engage the garden and to allow light into the adjacent kitchen.



Before. This image shows the side elevation and back entrance from the driveway prior to the renovation. The clients wished to add more space to the second floor, which was simply done by adding a story to the flat-roofed, single-story wings. The top photo shows the same section after renovation.



Before (inset). This 1950s Georgian/ranch combo was purchased by a couple intending to renovate, enlarge, and accommodate a collection of antique Georgian furniture, as well as an array of paintings and sculpture. *After (above).* The same house is shown after renovation was completed by Grenfell Architecture and landscaped by William Scott White. To diminish the old horizontality, the brick veneer was continued up the full two stories. The addition of more-vertically proportioned windows now punctuates the elevation, and a full Corinthian cornice helps create an elegant, welcoming exterior. All photos courtesy of Grenfell Architecture.



The Architect on Classicism: A charge often lobbed at classicism by the uninformed is that it is formulaic and inflexible. Fulfilling complex residential program requirements within the confines of an addition/renovation shows that this is manifestly not so. As this project demonstrates, the classical language can make graceful the awkward, adorn the plain, make articulate the confused, strengthen the relationship between house and garden, and accommodate the Owner's program.

— Milton Wilfred Grenfell

TRADITIONAL EXTERIOR SHUTTERS IN MAHOGANY



- ❖ RAISED PANEL
- ❖ LOUVERED
- ❖ CUT-OUTS
- ❖ REPRODUCTION
- ❖ COPPER CAPS
- MORTISE & TENON CONSTRUCTION
- WEST SYSTEM EPOXY
- RABBETING AND BEADING
- FIXED-CONTROL RODS
- SHUTTER HARDWARE
- WARRANTY

www.kingsland-shutters.com

KINGSLAND
Architectural Millwork

7 COLEBROOK RD.
NORFOLK, CT 06058
860-542-6981
FAX: 860-542-1752

WRITE IN NO. 196



Hand-Crafted
Hardware Of
Uncompromising
Quality For
Todays'
Discerning
Enthusiast.

PO Box 161
Marceline MO 64658
Tel: 660-376-2481
Fax: 660-376-4076

**CRAFTSMEN HARDWARE
COMPANY, LTD**



www.craftsmenhardware.com

WRITE IN NO. 6980

NANZ[®]



The **No 1209** knob, designed in the late 19th century, exhibits a cool restrained elegance anticipating the Style Moderne in France by perhaps two decades. The knob is available in 2", 2-1/4", 2-1/2", and 3" diameters, as well as 3/4", 1", 1-1/4", and 1-1/2" diameters suitable for cabinetry. Finishes include burnished nickel, dark oxidized bronze, burnished brass, polished chrome, and antique silver. Fax a request for our \$20 catalogue featuring over one hundred handles.

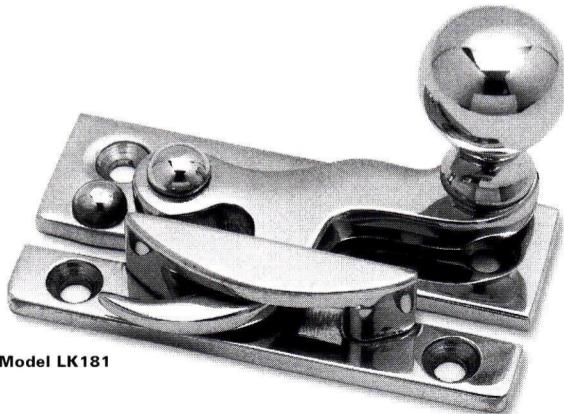
www.nanz.com

©2001 Nanz Custom Hardware Inc 20 Vandam St New York NY 10013 Tel 212 367 7000 Fax 212 367 7375 By Appointment.

WRITE IN NO. 1150

**FOR EASY ACCESS TO
FREE
PRODUCT LITERATURE**
FILL OUT THE ENCLOSED POSTCARD OR USE THE COUPON ON PAGE 158.

traditional pattern sash lock



Model LK181

Our model LK181 is a traditional pattern sash lock especially suited for applications requiring a narrow strike plate, i.e. sash with insulating glass. A beautifully elegant lock, in polished cast brass with a turned finial.

PHELPS COMPANY

ARCHITECTURAL SPECIALTIES
Phone 802-257-4314 Fax 802-258-2270

WRITE IN NO. 6001

As mentioned, the program called for more space on the second floor, which simply entailed adding a story over the existing flat-roofed, one-story wings. On the ground floor, a keeping-room bay was added to

engage the garden and to capture the morning light for the adjacent kitchen. The rear-door location remained as it was, but was articulated by an urn-topped Tuscan portico. This step-down in hierarchy from the richer Ionic formal front portico to the simpler Tuscan at the everyday back entrance imparts a legibility to the house that did not exist previously. This clearly intentioned renovation radically redefines the overall existing structure. The decoration by Morrison Brown Interiors and gardens by William Scott White further strengthen and enhance the architectural intent. ♦



The interior millwork — fireplace mantels, door and window casings, paneling, etc. — was replaced, augmented, or enriched throughout the "public" downstairs living spaces. For example, ordinary cased openings connecting the front foyer to adjacent living and dining rooms had transom architraves added, to which were applied beautiful and evocative ornament. Urns and a garlanded fruit basket denote the dining-room entrance, and the garden-sided living room is suitably adorned with a basket of flowers.



Before. The clients wanted the indifferently detailed screen porch at the rear of the house to be converted into a conservatory from which they could enjoy a hedge of prize camellias.



This view shows an urn over the Tuscan portico at the back entrance, which imparts a quiet everyday simplicity that differs from the richer, more-formal front portico.



After. An attenuated order of pilasters was applied to the solid members of the infill multi-paned fenestration. This delicate detailing avoided the aesthetic and acoustic barrenness usually found in a screened-porch close-in job.

ARCHITECTURAL FANS



WOOLEN MILL FAN COMPANY
290 WOOLEN MILL ROAD
NEW PARK, PA 17352
PH/FAX 717-382-4754
e-mail: woolenmill@earthlink.net
www.architecturalfans.com

WRITE IN NO. 316

Age Enhanced™
Antique Wood Floors

CHRISTOPHER HESS, Inc.

CUSTOM ANTIQUE WOOD FLOORING
meticulously hand crafted to exacting
standards milled on our premises: oak, eastern
white & yellow pine, chestnut, hemlock (kiln dried)

Call for current prices and availability

Hewn beams • Barn Board • Original House Flooring

610-760-9533

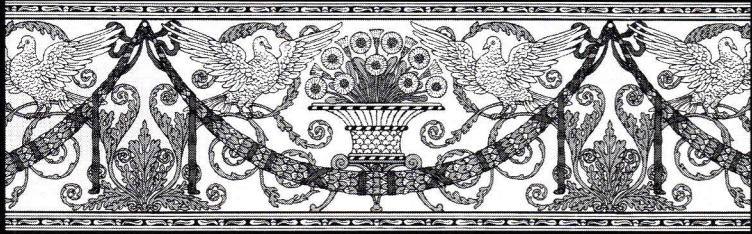
WALNUT PORT, PA 18088
Member N.W.F.A.
"Quality, not production"

WRITE IN NO. 1275

Hand Printed ART WALLPAPER



Birchwood Frieze from our Arts & Crafts Collection



Adelphi Frieze from our Victorian Collection

Available by Mail Order Complete Catalog: \$12.00

BRADBURY & BRADBURY
P.O. Box 155-L Benicia, Ca. 94510 (707) 746-1900 bradbury.com

WWW.
period-homes.com

The Internet Gateway
to Historical Products
& Services for
Residential Architecture

PERIOD
HOMES

maintains the central Website
for historically styled products
and services on the Internet.
There's more information and
links to historical products than
you'll find on any other site.

Log onto —
and then Bookmark
www.period-homes.com

WATERLOX
FINISHES

LEGENDARY WOOD FINISHES



Quality. Authentic. Natural Beauty.
Hand Made. Easy to Use. Historic.

From Guinness Pubs to the floor next door, our finishes
have been enhancing hardwood floors for over 83 years.

The Hawkins family has been manufacturing wood finishes
for four generations, since 1916. Our hand-made blend of
Tung Oil and special ingredients give you the hand-rubbed
look off the end of a brush. Our products provide superior
penetration, protection and beauty to residential, institutional
and commercial wood surfaces, and are easy to use and maintain. Choose from satin, semi and high gloss.

The Waterlox legend continues with our fine line of oil and
waterborne urethanes made from the very best ingredients.
Choose from satin or gloss.

For more information, please visit us online at www.waterlox.com or call us at 1.800.321.0377.



Worldwide Finishing Solutions

WRITE IN NO. 8064

Crushed Stone
by TexStōn™

The TexStōn Company
Showroom & Offices
8239 Remmet Avenue
Canoga Park, California 91304
1-800-788-7113 fax 818-227-4852
email: texstonco@msn.com
www.texston.com

Venetian Plasters made with
natural earth minerals.

TexStōn™ has reinvented decorative surface plasters that turns "plain old walls" into works of art! With TexStōn's unique plaster finishes, interior and exterior surfaces can be transformed to appear rugged and antique or modern and contemporary.



TexStōn™-Marmorino™ has a high marble content. This plaster provides a wide range of design possibilities, from a smooth contemporary look to an ancient antique wall effect. It's also ideal for bathrooms with its high breathing capacity and resistance to moisture.

TexStōn™-Veneciano™ Veneciano produces a smooth finish with translucent properties that provides a natural glamour and an iridescent look, making the range of creative possibilities endless. It is suitable for creation of decorative finishes, such as antique, matte, or glossy surfaces.

TexStōn™-Terra™ allows textures ranging from a fine suede look to the distressed look of an ancient building. TexStōn-Terra contains unique polymer glues which contributes to its superb adhesion, workability and improved flexibility which prevents unsightly cracks and repels water, yet allows the wall to breathe.

TexStōn products are offered in a wide range of decorator colors and are also available as a non-tinted base that allows tints, colorwashes and other decorative finishes.

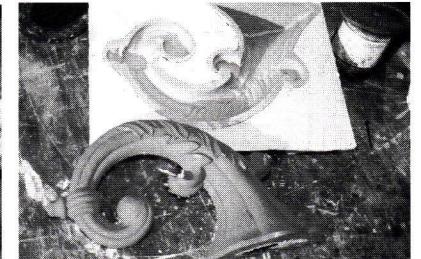
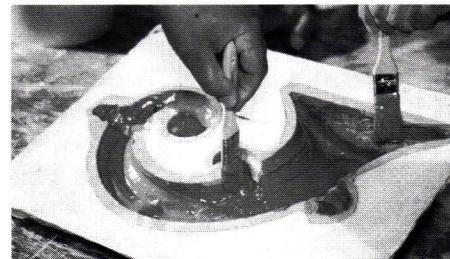
Venetian Plasters are conveniently packaged in 1-gallon (5kg) or 5 gallon (25kg) pails. TexStōn also offers workshops, tools and certification programs for trade professionals.

WRITE IN NO. 922

Have You Tried
The New Brush-On 40 Mold Rubber?

It's the latest addition to our popular Brush-On Line. With great tear strength and abrasion resistance, Brush-On 40 has been described by more than one pro as "the best on the market, hands down." Offering the convenience of a one-to-one mix ratio, Brush-On 40 holds a vertical surface like no other mold rubber. And Brush-On 40 will last & perform in production like no other rubber. **Free Samples & Technical Help:**

SMOOTH-ON
TOLL-FREE:
800-762-0744

Easton, PA 18042 Fax: 610-252-6200 www.smooth-on.com

Architectural elements being made for the restoration of Manhattan's Russian Tea Room. **duoMatrix-G** system is mixed with Brass Powder and brushed into a Smooth-On rubber mold. It is then backed up with straight **duoMatrix-G** and glass fiber, yielding a strong, lightweight decorative item ready to be polished and mounted.

Plaster With . . .
An Attitude!

duoMatrix-G
+

Alpha Gypsum

duoMatrix

It's What's New
In Polymer
Modified
Gypsum
& Concrete.

- Makes Gypsums Much Stronger.
- Suitable For Exterior Applications.
- Reduces Drying Time.
- Great For Cold Cast Metal Effects.

Toll-free: (888) 765-9835

2000 St. John St. Easton, PA 18042
Tel. (610) 252-5800 Fax: (610) 252-6200

Free Samples & Technical Help Available! • Also, Ask About Moldmaking & Casting Seminars.

WRITE IN NO. 650 FOR SMOOTH-ON & 811 FOR DUOMATRIX

A TALE OF TWO COLUMNS: CLASSICAL VS. COLONIAL REVIVALS

Many clients, including design professionals, have Style Questions that arise at some point in a restoration when an aesthetic decision has to be made and all parties concerned are tired of asking each other, "and what do YOU think?" Here are some guidelines for two styles, often confused.

by Dan Cooper

A typical scenario involves determining what sort of floor covering is appropriate for the completely inappropriate wallpaper that has already been hung. We've seen house museums undertake exhaustive paint analysis and then reject the findings because the Prussian Blue they discovered didn't match the drapes or some prospective donor's conception of what The Withering Elms should look like.

We in the historic-design and -product trade are constantly being asked what is correct for a given period. A frequently posed Style Question is: "My house has columns. How do I tell the difference between Greek and Colonial Revival, and how do I design the interior for it?"

It's surprising how many people in our field still possess the quaint, revisionist Ye Olde Colonial mentality that's been rattling around since the 1920s. They truly believe that the average citizen of 1830 was walking around on ratty oriental rugs laid upon polished hardwood floors surrounded by white walls.

Let's start with a quick overview of the Classical and Colonial Revivals.

From the 1820s through the 1850s, the United States was thoroughly under the sway of the aesthetics of Ancient Greece and Rome. It was a unified movement that influenced architecture, furnishings, sculpture, and painting. This Classical (or Greek) Revival was a fairly "pure" architectural style; while there were Roman, Etruscan, and briefly even Egyptian motifs introduced into the blend, it was a promotion of Classical design in the built environment.

The basic architectural form of the period was derived from the massings of ancient Greek temples. The typical Greek Revival structure is one or two stories tall and capped with a front-facing gable that may or may not have (depending on budget and design) fairly massive columns supporting it. All design elements and fenestration are symmetrical, although in smaller and moderately sized dwellings the front entry may be placed off to one side in order not to bisect the front parlor. Interior finish and furnishings all mimicked Grecian design motifs as well to create a cohesive theme. Granted, as in any historic period, only the wealthy could afford a home that was completely decorated in a specific style, so furnishings from previous periods in more modest homes would appear piecemeal. At this point in time, however, the vast majority of new work was in the Grecian manner.

The Colonial Revival reflected America's reminiscence of its formative ancestry and began in the mid 1870s as the Centennial approached. This use of Early American elements in contemporary design continued well into the first quarter of the 20th century. Because there were many other styles in vogue at various points during this half-century, the architecture and furnishings of the Colonial Revival are far less pure and often crossbred with such eclectic influences as Stick, Shingle, and Craftsman/Mission styles, and the Aesthetic Movement.

As the mania for the Colonial Revival swept the country, many existing houses were updated to keep abreast of the trend. The most prevalent of these upgrades was the addition of a sweeping wraparound



This Wilbraham, Mass., veterinarian's clinic, designed by Jean Dunbar, utilizes early-19th-century Classical furniture and interior treatments. The wallpaper uses Classical motifs. Photo: Michael Gordon

covered porch whose roof was supported with wide columns of a Classical order. Up until the last decades of the 19th century, front porches were usually small stair landings, so it is very common to see Federal, Greek, Gothic, and Italianate houses featuring this fashionable, expansive Queen Anne/Colonial porch adorned with additional trim, such as corbels and brackets characteristic of this latter period.

Another Colonial Revival retrofit was the addition of Palladian or Adamesque oval windows. On the house's interior, early-19th-century trim might have been remodeled, such as having the fancy corner blocks on doors and windows removed, and a molded Colonial pediment installed in its place. One of the commandments of historic preservation has always been "Thou shalt not destroy good old work." Remember, that Colonial Revival porch or paneled library has now been a part of a home for over 100 years and is worthy of preservation, even if the structure itself is much older.

When faced with the task of restoring or re-creating an interior of one of these two periods, it is best to familiarize oneself with the elemental difference between Classical and Colonial interiors before proceeding with construction or selecting products.

A word of advice: Do not automatically assume that products touted as "historic" are accurate reproductions. They may have been grossly re-scaled or given a contemporary color palette. And that is why they won't work with the more authentic and well-researched products. Also bear in mind that in the 19th century, many more colors and patterns were employed in interior design for a richer look; decorators of today are much more conservative.

Interior trim of the Classical Revival was almost always of paint grade, with the exception of handrails and some balustrades. Door and window casings were at least five or six inches wide, if not upwards of eight inches in grander homes. They could be deeply molded or flat 1-in.-x-6-in. stock, depending on the purse of the builder. Window and door pediments or lintels were often peaked or corniced. Baseboards were substantial, and chair rails had fallen from fashion, allowing the wall treatments to run from floor to ceiling.

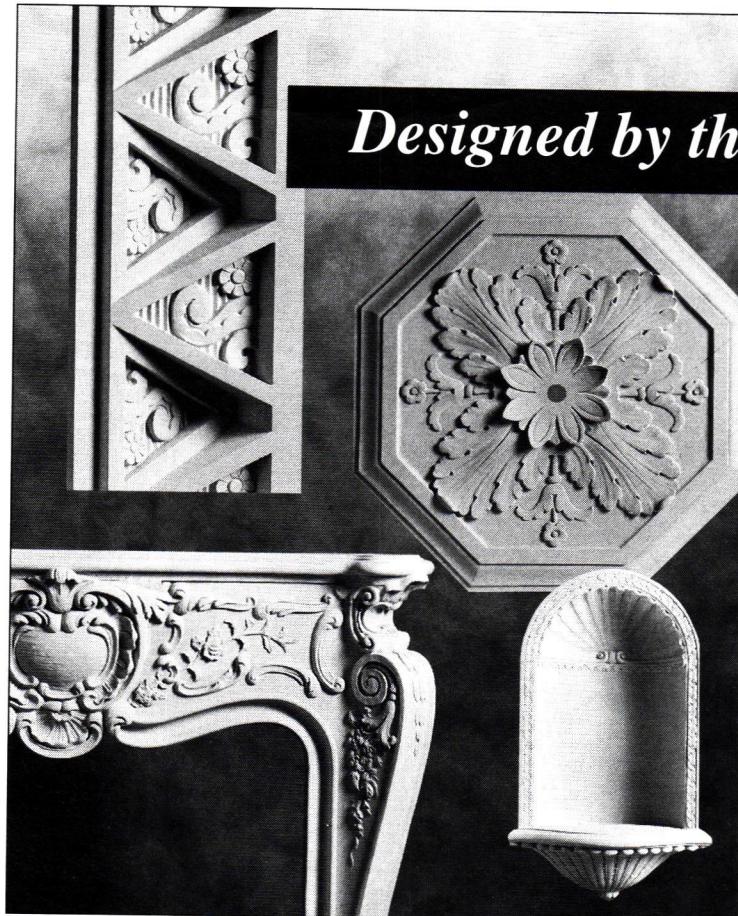
Colonial Revival woodwork could still sport the vestigial corner-blocks with bulls-eye turnings of the late-Victorian period or have a molded lintel. While Classical doors were constructed of four vertical panels (two-over-two), Colonial doors evolved into five horizontal panels. Ceiling moldings were standard in both styles, although Classical interiors had heavy crown moldings, while Colonial interiors might just as easily have had a simple picture molding. Colonial Revival trim is usually made of finish-grade mahogany, cherry oak, or stained poplar. At the turn of the century, white enameled woodwork had become popular in some homes, especially on the upper floors, but it was still considered prestigious to have natural woodwork in the public areas.

The color palettes of both periods varied in several ways and for a variety of reasons. First, bear in mind that interior lighting of the early-19th century was usually a precious few candles or oil lamps. The brilliant colors often seen on the soft furnishings were tempered by the lack of illumination. By the time the Colonial Revival had rolled around, lighting had improved greatly with the invention of gas lamps

continued on page 36

**FOR EASY
ACCESS TO
**FREE
PRODUCT
LITERATURE****

**FILL OUT
THE ENCLOSED POSTCARD
OR USE THE COUPON ON
PAGE 158.**



Designed by the ages. Crafted by hand.

Fischer & Jirouch has been hand-crafting plaster ornaments by the same methods for nearly 100 years. We use only traditional plaster in replicas of our 1,500 designs from a variety of periods. Architects, tradespeople, and do-it-yourselfers rely on our pieces to enhance their exterior and interior projects. We also offer custom reproduction.



Hand-crafted Fischer & Jirouch ornaments are as easy to work with as wood and authentic throughout. *Send for our 144-page catalog (\$10 US, \$15 Canadian, no credit cards accepted).*

No P.O. boxes. Street address only for UPS shipping.



THE FISCHER & JIROUCH CO.
4821 Superior Ave. • Cleveland, Ohio 44103
Tel. (216) 361-3840 FAX (216) 361-0650
www.fischerandjirouch.com

WRITE IN NO. 1960

The Original
**TIN CEILINGS
AND WALLS**

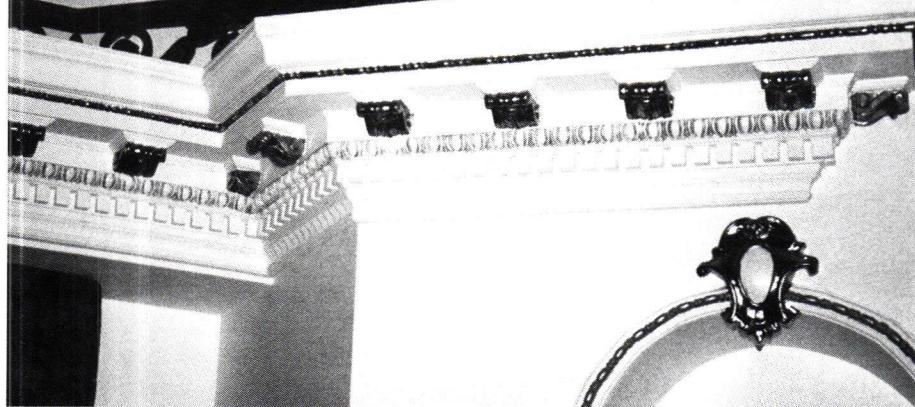
- ◆ 35 Patterns available 2' x 8' & 2' x 4'
- ◆ Brass, copper, and chrome
- ◆ Steel and pre-painted white
- ◆ Lay-in panels in 2' x 4' & 2' x 2'
- ◆ 15 cornice styles
- ◆ Pre-cut miters
- ◆ Stainless Steel for kitchen backsplashes
- ◆ Center medallions
- ◆ Send \$1 for brochure
- ◆ Call for technical assistance

aa-abbingdon affiliates, inc.
Dept. PH 2149 Utica Ave. Brooklyn, NY 11234 • 718-258-8333 • Fax: 718-338-2739 • www.abbingdon.com

WRITE IN NO. 8920

Classic Plaster Studios, Inc.

ARCHITECTURAL PLASTER AND
POLYMER MODIFIED GYPSUM PRODUCTS



www.clasplas.com 1-800-633-9553

WRITE IN NO. 2522

GOOD TIME STOVE CO.

A Family Business since 1973

Genuine Antique Stoves

Restored With Love...
for the Warmth of your Home
& the Heart of your Kitchen
www.goodtimestove.com

Ask for Sara, the Stove Princess
Toll-Free 1-888-282-7506

Conversions to Gas & Electric
Available to all Models



Open by Appointment

Prop. Stove Black Richardson and his beautiful daughter, Sara, the Stove Princess

SPRING 2001 • 35 • PERIOD HOMES

SPECIALTIES

STONE MAGIC Dallas Call for a catalog.
800-597-3606
fax: 214-823-4503

Or visit our website:
stonemagic.com

FACTORY DIRECT PRICING
NATIONWIDE DELIVERY
OTHER CAST STONE PRODUCTS AVAILABLE



WRITE IN NO. 9067

Old World Stoneworks

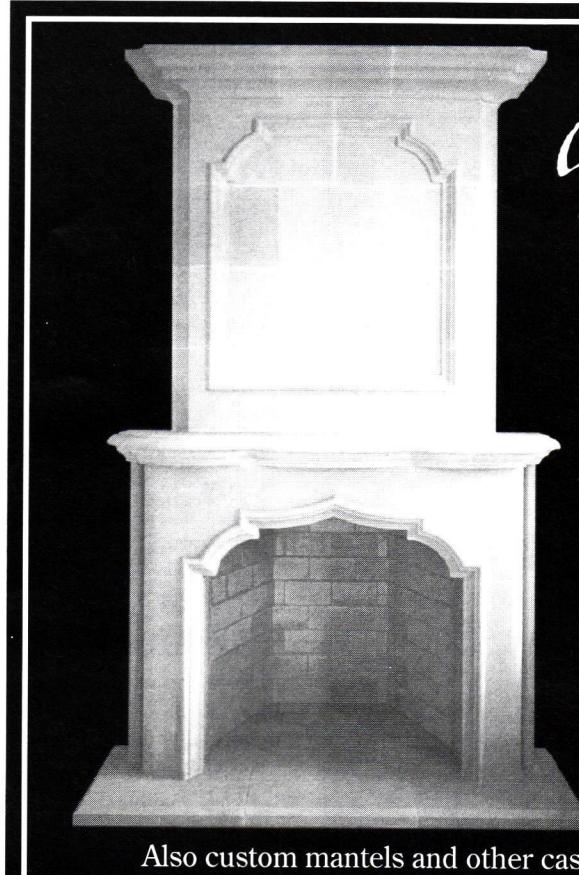
Introducing our
new line of
cast stone mantels

Write or call
for free catalog

800-600-8336

5400 Miller Ave.
Dallas, TX 75206

www.oldworldstoneworks.com



Also custom mantels and other cast stone products.

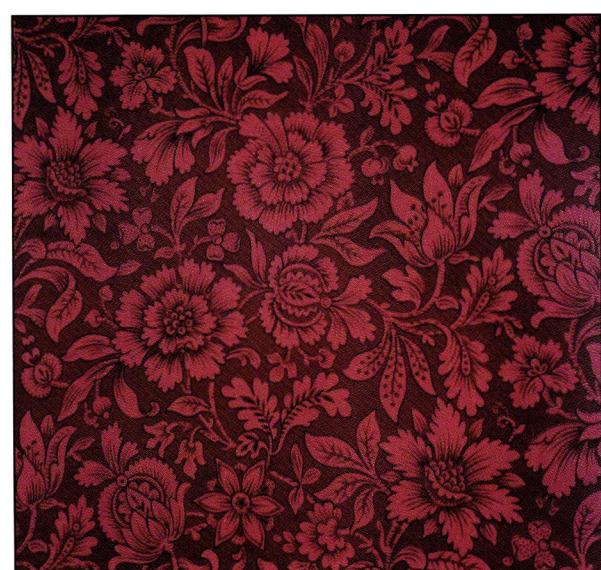
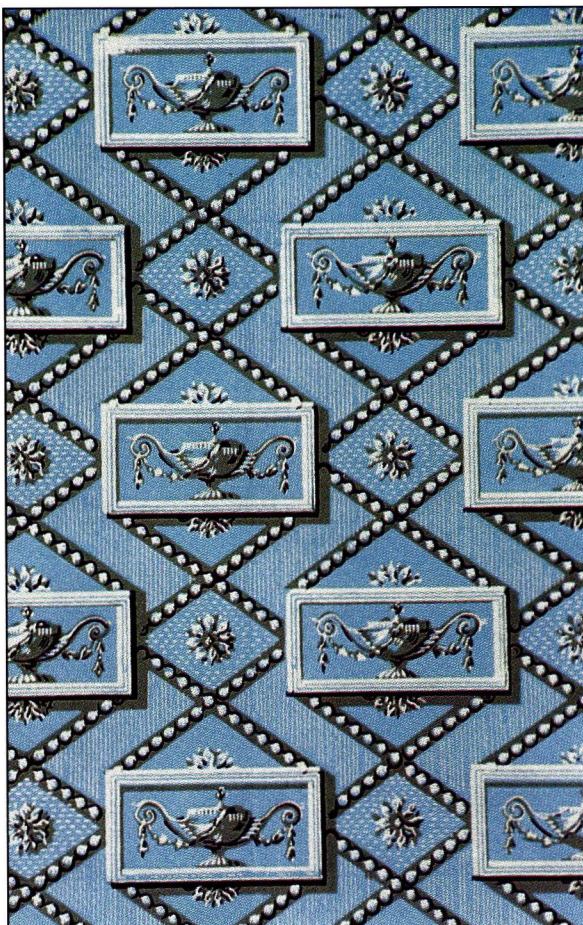
WRITE IN NO. 282



The parlor furnishings at the Billings Farm and Museum in Woodstock, Vt., display the eclecticism of the Colonial Revival. Note the softer hues of the wallpaper and carpet. The paisley shawl adds a touch of the exotic. Photo: Billings Farm and Museum



The carpet on the top reflects the bold scale and classical elements of a carpet appropriate to a Greek Revival interior. The 1890s carpet on the bottom, while Classical in motif, is much more delicate and lighter in feel.



Shown clockwise from top left: *Arbella*, a Colonial Revival paper by J. R. Burrows, has a much more muted palette that works with the brighter interior illumination of the 1890s; *Laurel & Urn Wall*, and *Greek Key Border*, both from Adelphi Paperhangings (www.adelphipaperhangings.com) show the three-dimensionality typical of early-19th-century block prints; *Coleman Bower*, another J. R. Burrows paper, employs the rich jewel tones with Colonial and Aesthetic Movement motifs that were so popular at the turn of the century.

and early electrical lighting. While the colors of the Classical interior appear bright, if not gaudy to us, the colors of the Colonial Revival draw upon the Aesthetic and Arts & Crafts movements, which were softer and more organic. Rich jewel tones also appear, but they were more somber than their predecessors.

Flooring materials underwent one of the most distinctive changes in the 19th century. The floors of public rooms in the Classical period were carpeted, either with ingrain or Brussels carpets woven in narrow widths and sewn together. Wilton carpets, the cut-pile version of Brussels, did exist, but they were twice as expensive, hence they were not frequently seen until the second half of the 19th century when improvements in technology reduced their cost. These carpets were run wall to wall, and occasionally had matching borders. It should be noted at this time that Oriental rugs were so rare as to exist only among the extremely wealthy, and furthermore, finished hardwood floors were not yet in vogue.

The Colonial Revival was ushered in during an era when wall-to-wall carpet was falling from favor. Many reformers and designers, Charles Eastlake being the most notable, began promoting the apparently healthful aspects of easily cleaned hardwood floors adorned with area rugs that could be taken out and beaten. Reasonably priced Oriental rugs were now available, although Wilton, Brussels, and

continued on page 38

COAL-EFFECT FIREPLACES

- Victorian tiled fireplaces
- Period mantels
- Period ranges & coordinated refrigerators

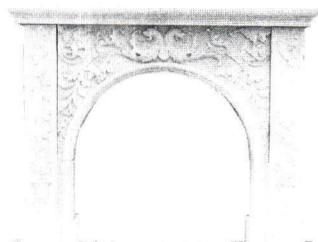
**800-264-8181
931-526-8181**

Custom Fireplaces & More

1611 E. Spring St.
Cookeville, TN 38506
fireplace@multipro.com
www.customfireplaceandmore.com



WRITE IN NO. 5011

VICENZA STONE SCULPTURES**ROSSATO GIOVANNI srl**

P.O. Box 524 - 36100 VICENZA - ITALY
e-mail: info@vicenzastone.com - www.vicenzastone.com

WRITE IN NO. 6110

**HAZELMERE
MANTEL**
*Country Charm
or
City Elegance*

Excellent selection of traditional designs at affordable prices. All mantels sized to your specifications.

Crafted by Hazelmere Mantel Company
www.hazelmere-ind.com
604-574-7814 Fax 604-574-3304
Unit 1 - 5422 176 St Surrey BC Canada V3S-4C3

WRITE IN NO. 276

**GERALD SICILIANO
SCULPTURE SERVICES**

STUDIO DESIGN ASSOCIATES

- 9 Garfield Pl. Bklyn. NY 11215 tel/fax. 718.636.4561

WRITE IN NO. 187

**Arts & Crafts
Period Textiles**

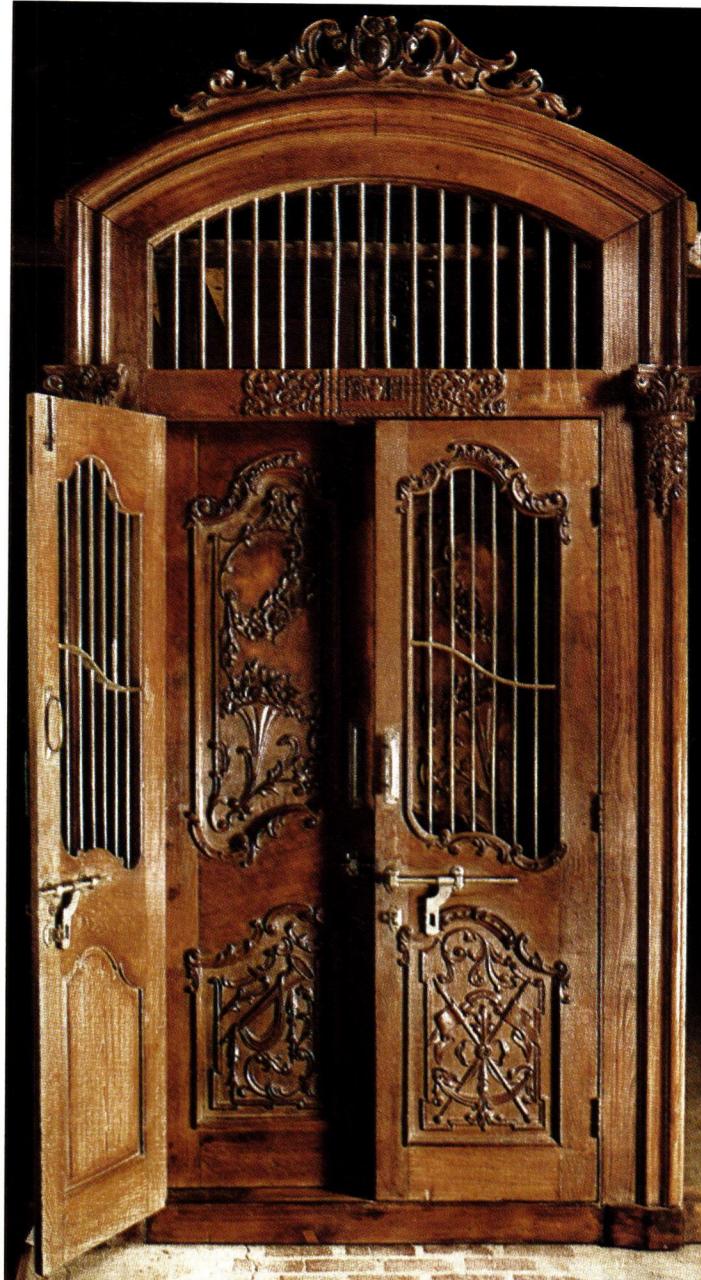
Current production of turn-of-the-century design linens
Curtains • Pillows • Yardage
Table scarves • Bedspreads
Custom work • Embroidery kits
Free brochure or \$10 catalog with color photos and fabric samples.

5427 Telegraph Avenue, #W2
Oakland, California 94609
www.TextileStudio.com
510-654-1645

WRITE IN NO. 8230

**WWW.
period-homes.com**

The Internet Gateway to Historical Products & Services for Residential Architecture

ERON JOHNSON ANTIQUES, LTD.

Hebald

FURNITURE • ACCESSORIES • GARDEN • ARCHITECTURAL

LARGEST SELECTION OF DECORATIVE ARCHITECTURAL ARTIFACTS IN THE WEST

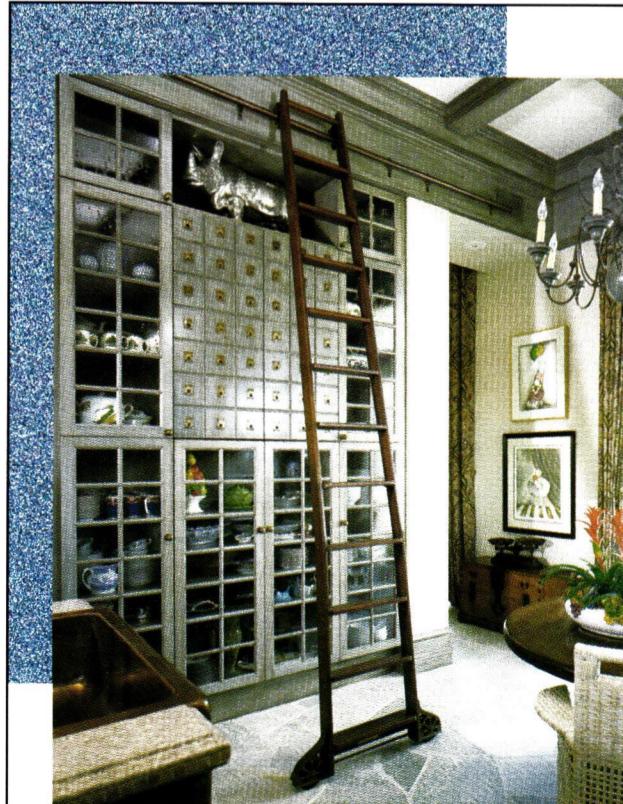
451 North Broadway • Denver • Colorado • 80203

tel: 303-777-8700 • fax: 303-777-8787

www.eronjohnsonantiques.com

VISIT OUR ONLINE CATALOGUE FEATURING OVER 2500 ITEMS

WRITE IN NO. 3153

FURNISHINGS

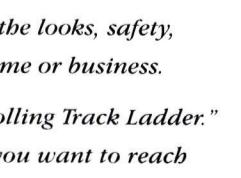
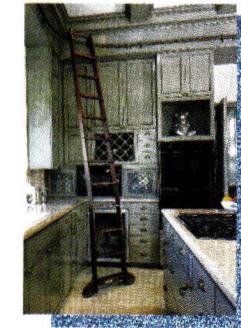
Maple wood Rolling Ladder with custom stain.

Reaching New Heights

Nothing adds a touch of class and utility like a Rolling Ladder from Alaco. The perfect blend of form and function, Alaco's Rolling Ladders are ideal for kitchens, libraries, restaurants, dens, wine racks, storage areas and many other residential and commercial applications.

These beautiful ladders enhance the looks, safety, convenience and value of any home or business.

Find out about "The Designer's Rolling Track Ladder." Call Alaco to discuss the heights you want to reach with your project.



ALACO
Rolling Ladders

5167 'G' Street • Chino, CA 91710-5143 • (888) 310-7040
Web site: www.alacoladder.com

WRITE IN NO. 1282

ingrains were still very popular often as bordered area rugs situated in the midst of hardwood floors. From a design point of view, it should be remembered that the pattern repeats of the earlier rugs were often much larger than later patterns.

The differences between wall coverings for the two periods are fairly easy to distinguish as well: Classical papers, usually French or American, were often printed in large, bold scales and bright hues. Motifs were often of Classical/architectural elements, swagged fabrics, or abstract geometrics and would feature shadow lines that gave the impression of three-dimensionality. Scenic papers, including murals that spanned the entire circumference of the room, also appeared frequently. Large, complex borders or friezes, also with trompe l'oeil elements, were also very popular.

Wallpapers of the Colonial Revival reflected the softer, now better-illuminated palette that included the tertiary hues and rich jewel tones of the 1880s through 1900. Patterns were smaller and not always purely Classical, and could also contain a blend of late Aesthetic Movement, Arts & Crafts, and Tudor motifs. The use of borders was on the wane, and although they were found in some frequency, they could just as well be much narrower, even as little as four inches.

Central chandeliers existed in the Classical period, as did wall and table sconces. As mentioned previously, they provided much less illumination than those made after the advent of gas or electricity. Gaslight was the prevalent form of lighting during the Colonial Revival, with the then-unreliable electric lamp appearing in more-affluent dwellings. These fixtures were mostly brass or nickel plated, although there



A protoypical Classical Revival (a.k.a. Greek Revival) facade, top. The symmetrical massing replicates that of an ancient Greek temple. Note the massive Ionic columns supporting the front-facing gable. Above, this Colonial Revival porch displays a frequently seen addition to an older house: a single-story structure with more delicate columns that span the entire front of the dwelling. Photos: Chadsworth Columns

were some iron pieces that reflected the hand-wrought look of the Craftsman style.

Window treatments of the first half of the 19th century were usually heavy and ornate, with the popular treatments including side drapes and valances. During the Colonial Revival, these became simplified into flat panels or just lace hung on rods.

Furniture of the 1830s was also heavy in scale, and the prevailing style was called Empire. Pieces for public areas of houses feature highly figured mahogany veneers, along with some walnut and bird's-eye maple. Scrolls, columns, and Acanthus leaves adorned matched suites of furniture. The Colonial Revival reflected eclecticism, with more-casual groupings of mismatched furniture constructed of mixed materials, including wicker or rustic hickory, as well as wood. It was not at all unusual to see a Mission desk next to a colonially inspired chair. There was also a bit of levity as one will see chairs fabricated from the parts of an old spinning wheel or an actual spinning or flax wheel placed in a parlor for strategic effect.

In a nutshell, think of the Classical Revival or Greek Revival as drawing from a singular source. Despite economic status, the desired effect was always grand and formal. Conversely, the Colonial Revival, even in an affluent setting, was intended to be more casual and reflective of various influences. ♦

A DESIGN WORKSHOP
NEW WEST
CONTEMPORARY AND TRADITIONAL WESTERN STYLE FURNISHINGS
CODY, WYOMING • \$3 COLOR BROCHURE • 1-800-653-2391 • WWW.NEWWEST.COM

WRITE IN NO. 726

Gaby's Shoppe
MANUFACTURER OF
Fine Wrought Iron Furniture
& Drapery Hardware
Made in USA by European Craftsmen

- RESIDENTIAL
- COMMERCIAL • CUSTOM
- Color Catalog \$35.00

Send request on company stationery to:
Gaby's Shoppe
13311 DRAGON ST • DALLAS TX 75207-4047
www.gabys.com
Fax: (214) 748-7701
Toll Free (800) 299-GABY

WRITE IN NO. 2520

MECHANICAL

For your discriminating taste

German Silver Sink Co.

offers this beautiful reproduction.*

A functional work of art in
Timeless Handcrafted Elegance.

5754 Lodewyck Detroit, MI Phone (313) 882-7730 Fax (313) 882-7739
Email GSSC@MSN.COM or GERMAN SSC@AOL.COM

* Kitchen faucet provided by DORN BRACHT

WRITE IN NO. 426



Leaded Glass Dome Ceiling Specialist

Over 20 years experience making art glass domes
TRADITIONAL DESIGNS EXCEPTIONAL COLOR EXCELLENT QUALITY
TOP QUALITY STEEL FRAMES ROUND, OVAL, RECTANGULAR 8, 12, 16, & 20 FOOT SIZES

Call or write for color photos and information

LARRY ETZEN STUDIO

P.O.Box 22341, KC, MO 64113 816-523-3978 Fax 816-523-5782

WRITE IN NO. 1267

CONVEYING SYSTEMS

ELEVATOR?

We Rise To The Occasion Beautifully!

Build value, style and function into their investment while building your profit. Call our Sales Department for details.

CEMCO LIFT
ELEVATOR SYSTEMS

Toll Free: 1-800-962-3626
Web Site: www.cemcolift.com
P.O. Box 500 • 2801 Township Line Road
Hatfield, PA 19440-0500
Tel: 215-703-0358 Fax: 215-703-0343
e-mail: sales@cemcolift.com

WRITE IN NO. 3250

FOR EASY ACCESS TO
FREE
PRODUCT LITERATURE

Fill out the enclosed postcard or use the coupon on page 158.

Sunflower Showerhead

Large Diameter
Fits standard plumbing

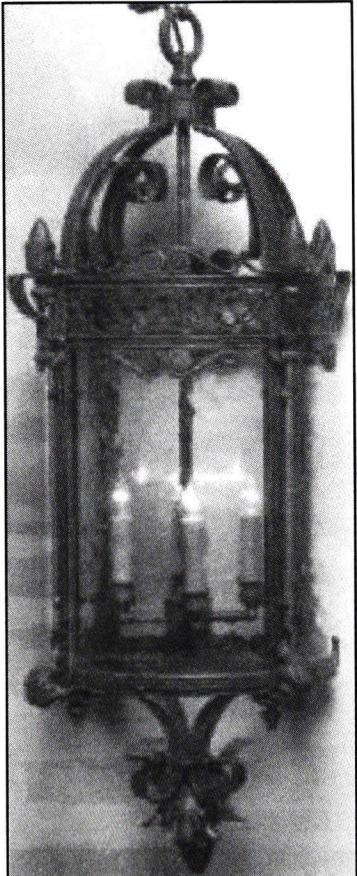
Chrome, Brass Nickel or Gold from \$150

Information: P.O. Box 4218-C Seattle, WA 98104
(206) 722-1232 (FAX) 722-1321
<http://www.deweuya.com/deweuya>

WRITE IN NO. 2940

HANNS DUUS
BLACKSMITH, INC.

Excellence
in
Lighting



Decorative & Theme Lighting

73 Industrial Way
Buellton, CA 93427

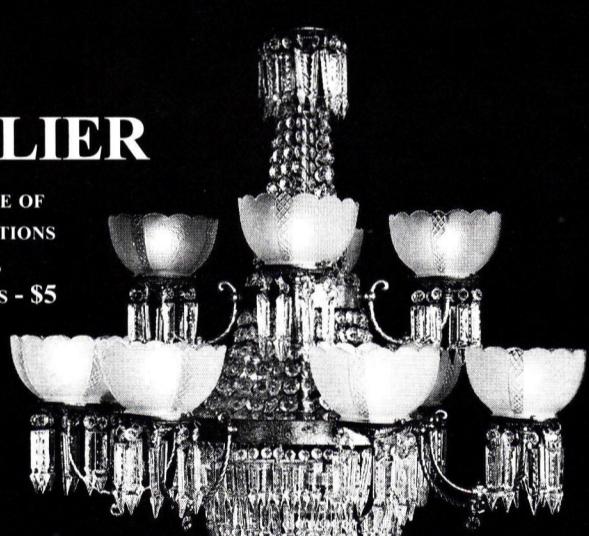
805-688-9731

Fax 805-688-1793

WRITE IN NO. 8041

KING'S CHANDELIER

COLOR CATALOG AVAILABLE OF
OUR VICTORIAN REPRODUCTIONS
AND TRADITIONAL CRYSTAL
CHANDELIERS AND SCONCES - \$5



PO BOX 667, DEPT TB, EDEN NC 27289
PHONE: 336-623-6188 FAX: 336-627-9935
CRYSTAL@VNET.NET WWW.CHANDELIER.COM

WRITE IN NO. 5280

Sweetness and Light



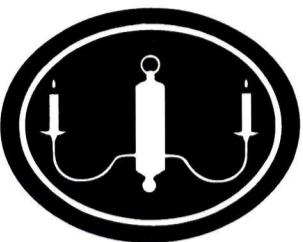
New Lighting
Antique Lighting
Custom Lighting
Lighting Restoration

Conant Custom Brass
★ Working Wonders with Metal & Light™ ★

270 Pine Street • Burlington, Vermont 05401
ph 1 . 800 . 832 . 4482 • fax 1 . 802 . 864 . 5914
www.conantcustombrass.com

WRITE IN NO. 620 FOR LIGHTING & 5050 FOR METALWORK

AMERICA'S
OLDEST MAKERS
OF COLONIAL AND
EARLY AMERICAN
LIGHTING FIXTURES



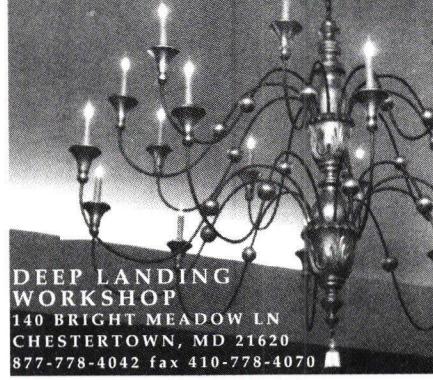
AUTHENTIC DESIGNS

93 The Mill Road
West Rupert, Vermont 05776
(802) 394-7713

Catalogue available

WRITE IN NO. 60

DROP DEAD ELEGANCE
CUSTOM LIGHTING



DEEP LANDING
WORKSHOP
140 BRIGHT MEADOW LN
CHESTERTOWN, MD 21620
877-778-4042 fax 410-778-4070

WRITE IN NO. 809

if

you'd like to order a
gift subscription
for a colleague,
just fax us at
(718) 636-0750

REPRODUCTION ELECTRIC LAMPS

Museum Quality by **FERROWATT**®

Available Exclusively in **BOTTI Carbon and Tungsten Filaments**



CALL TOLL FREE 1-800-669-9137

Telephone: 813-654-7339 Fax: 813-654-7058
www.aamsco.com E-mail: bobr@aamsco.com

Ideal for Museums, Historic Restorations, Hotels, Period Homes and Theaters
EXPORT LAMPS AVAILABLE IN ALL VOLTAGES AND BASES
Exclusive distributor AAMS CO, 501 South Falkenburg Rd, Unit 1-A, Tampa, FL 33619

WRITE IN NO. 2240

www.period-homes.com
Internet Gateway to Historical Products
PERIOD HOMES

maintains the central Website for historically styled products and services on the Internet — products used for restoration, renovation, and new construction projects. There's more information and links to historical products than you'll find on any other site.

AMONG THE FEATURES:

- Searchable Product Database with 112 product categories
- 371 companies listed and indexed in the Product Database
- 162 Online product brochures
- Links to 272 Companies and related Organizations
- In-Depth Product Report of the Month
- E-Mail Order Form for Product Literature

Log onto — and then Bookmark —
www.period-homes.com



**FOR EASY ACCESS TO
FREE
PRODUCT LITERATURE**

FILL OUT THE ENCLOSED POSTCARD OR USE THE COUPON ON PAGE 158.

LUMINARIA



An extensive selection of authentic antique light fixtures, inspired reproductions and custom designs all available on-line. To request a catalogue, or place an order, telephone: 1-800-638-5619.

Explore a world of lighting at:

WWW.LUMINARIALIGHTING.COM

WRITE IN NO. 336

WEB ADDRESS BOOK WEBSITE ADDRESSES OF ADVERTISERS IN THIS ISSUE

A&M Victorian Decorations	www.aandmvictorian.com
AA-Abbingdon Affiliates	www.wabbingdon.com
Aardvark Antiques	www.aardvarkantiques.com
Adams Architectural Wood Products	www.adamsarch.com
Agrell & Thorpe, Ltd.	www.agrellandthorpe.com
Allied Window	www.unvisiblestors.com
Am-Dia	www.victorianmarketplace.com
American Slate Co.	www.americanslate.com
Anything But Plain	www.anythingbutplain.com
Architectural Accents	www.cupolaconstruction.com
Architectural Grille	www.archgrille.com
Architectural Iron Designs	www.archirondesign.com
Architectural Paneling	www.apaneling.com
Architectural Products by Outwater	www.outwater.com
Architectural Sculpture & Restorations	www.architecturalplaster.com
Architectural Timberworks	www.architmb.com
ARK II Timber Frames	wwwark2timberframe.com
Arsc Mfg. Co.	www.warrowsmfg.com
Artistic Railings	www.artisticrail.com
Arts & Crafts Period Textiles	www.textilestudio.com
Authentic Designs	www.authentic-designs.com
Badger Village Blacksmithing	www.badgervillage.com
Ball & Ball	www.ballandball-us.com
Baltica	www.baltica.com
Barn People	www.thebarnpeople.com
Bear Creek Lumber	www.bearcreeklumber.com
Berger Bros. Co.	www.bergerbros.com
Bevelo Gas & Electric Lights	www.bevelo.com
Bill's Custom Metal Fabrications	www.ironcrafters.com
Bird-B-Gone	www.birdbgone.com
Bird-X	www.bird-x.com
Bolection Door	www.bolectiondoor.com
Boston Turning Works	www.bostonturningworks.com
Bradbury & Bradbury Art Wallpapers	www.bradbury.com
Brass Baron	www.brassbaron.com
Carlisle Restoration Lumber	www.wideplankflooring.com
Casa Di Murano	www.casadimurano.com
CemcoLift/LGIS America	www.cemcolift.com
Certain Teed Roofing Products	www.certainteed.com
Chadsworth's 1,800 Columns	www.columns.com
Champlain Stone, Ltd.	www.champlainstone.com
Charleston Lighting & Mfg.	www.charlestonlighting.com
Chimney Pot Shoppe	www.chimneypot.net
Christopher Thomson Ironworks	www.christhompson.com
Classic Gutter Systems	www.classicgutters.com
Classic Lighting Devices	www.classiclightingdevices.com
Classic Plaster Studios	www.clasplas.com
Claystone	www.claystone.com
Color People	www.colorpeople.com
Conant Custom Brass	www.conantcustombrass.com
Conrad Pickel Studio	www.pickelstudio.com
Coppa Woodworking	www.coppawoodworking.com
Copper House	www.thecopperhouse.com
Coppersmythe, Josiah R.	www.rcoppersmythe.com
Copperworks of Don Miller	members.aol.com/gutterarts
Country Road Associates, Ltd.	www.countryroadassociates.com
Craftsmen Hardware Co.	www.craftsmenhardware.com
Crescent City Iron Supply	www.crescentcityironsupply.com
Crosswinds Gallery	www.netvanes.com
CS Conservatories	www.creativestructures.com
Cumberland Woodcraft Co.	www.cumberlandwoodcraft.com
Custom Home Accessories	www.copperweathervanes.com
Customlights.com	www.customlightstyles.com
Dahlhaus Lighting	www.dahlhaus-lighting.com
Davitt Garden Design	www.gardenviews.com
Decorative Outdoor Products	www.decorativeoutdoorproducts.com
DecorativeIron.com	www.decorativeiron.com
Designs in Tile	www.designsintile.com
DHS Designs	www.dhsdesigns.com
DMS Studios	www.dms-studios.com
Drums Sash & Door Co.	www.drumssashanddoor.com
Duluth Timber Co.	www.duluthtimber.com
Durable Slate Co.	www.durableslate.com
E.R. Butler & Co.	www.erbutler.com
Echeguren Slate	www.echeguren.com
Edile, Ltd.	www.edile.com
EGI Exhibitions	www.restorationandrenovation.com
Eron Johnson Antiques	www.eronjohnsonantiques.com
Escort Lighting	www.escortlighting.com
Eternit	www.eternitusa.com
Eugenia's Antique Hardware	www.eugeniaantiquehardware.com
Evergreen Slate Co.	www.evergreenslate.com
Faubourg Lighting	www.faubourglighting.com
Faux Effects	www.fauxfx.com
Fine Architectural Metalsmiths	www.iceforge.com
Fischer & Jiroch	www.fischerandjiroch.com
Florentine Craftsmen	www.florentinecraftsmen.com
Flower Framers	www.palaver.com/flowerframers
Frank Morrow Company	www.frankmorrow.com
Fresh Fish Ceramic Tiles	www.freshfishtiles.com
Gaby's Shoppe	www.gabys.com
GAF Materials Corp.	www.gaf.com
Gerald Siciliano	www.concentric.net/~gsstudio
Good Time Stove Co.	www.goodtimestove.com
Gough & Bros. SnoGuards	www.snoguard.com
H.I.C. Window & Door Co.	www.homeideacenter.com
Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.	www.haddonstone.com
Hahn's Woodworking Co.	www.hahnswoodworking.com
Handelman Studios	www.stevenhandelmanstudios.com
Hazelmere Industries, Ltd.	www.hazelmere-ind.com
HB&G	www.hbgcolumns.com
Hendricks Woodworking	www.historicdoors.com
Hilltop Slate	www.hilltopslate.com
Historical Arts & Casting	www.historicalarts.com

Casa Di Murano, Inc.

The Finest Custom Designs From Venice, Italy



• Bronzes

• Mirrors &

• Chandeliers

• Sculptures

• Fine Furnishings

- Decorative Accessories
- Gift Registry
- Elegant Clocks
- Wedding Favors

151 Second Avenue
Brooklyn, NY 11215
(718) 369-9885

www.casadimurano.com
e-mail: VizzBiz@aol.com

WRITE IN NO. 2619

EVERGREEN STUDIOS

V. MICHAEL ASHFORD
6543 ALPINE DR. SW
OLYMPIA, WA 98512
360.352.0694
www.evergreenstudios.com

\$3.00 for color catalog

WRITE IN NO. 5030

www.period-homes.com

The Internet Gateway
to Historical Products
& Services for
Residential Architecture

COLUMNS: REPAIR VS. REPLACEMENT

Because architectural columns can be made in an array of rot-resistant materials today, it changes the variables in the repair-vs.-replace equation. Here are some guidelines from a consultant that some call "Mr. Column."

by John Leeke

Classically styled columns have always lent a certain grace and dignity to American homes—until the paint peels, decay sets in and they look more like the crumbling ruins of ancient Rome. That is how Bill Durden felt when he assumed responsibility for the care and maintenance of his family's home in McDonough, Ga. The Scamozzi capitals of his front-porch columns were crumbling away and one decayed Attic-style base looked more like a flat tire. But Mr. Durden's real worry was one shaft, which was loose and threatened to fall. Local tradespeople came by to poke at the soft decayed wood with their pocket knives and recommend column replacement. Mr. Durden began calling column manufacturers to determine the replacement cost for four of his 23-ft.-tall columns. Then he realized that repairs might make more economic sense, as well as preserve some of the historic character of his family home.

In mainstream building construction and remodeling the usual reaction to deteriorating columns is complete replacement. In the field of historic preservation we have a tenet to save original material if possible. When parts are ripped out of a building and discarded, it often results in a significant loss of the building's historic character. Effective repair methods and procedures have been developed to save wood columns. Sometimes these methods can be implemented at a lower cost than replacement.

Assess Structural Conditions

Before beginning any work on your columns, take an overall look at the situation to determine how the columns relate to the rest of the building and its substructure. Answer the following questions:

What is the condition of the porch foundation? What appears to be deep piers may only be stones laying on top of the ground. Brick piers may have loose and crumbling mortar.

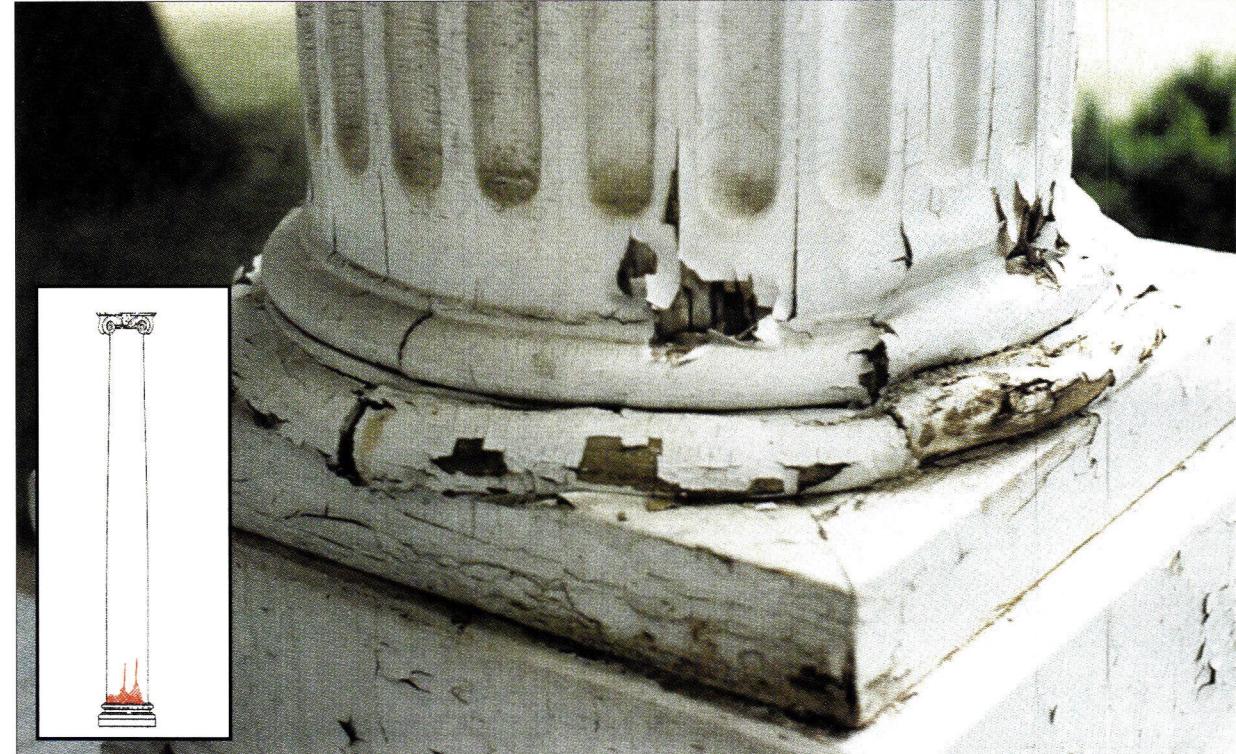
Are joists, sills and other structural members of the floor sound and providing adequate support for the deck? The only way to know is to get under there with a flashlight and check it out. The front facing of the pedestal may have to be removed to check for decay in the structural sill directly behind it.

What is the condition of the flooring? Check for boards weakened by decay and for loose or splintery boards.

Does the structural span above the columns sag between them? Timbers may be decayed and weak. Dark streaks and peeling paint may be evidence of excessive moisture due to a gutter leak above. If this is the case, remove entablature boards for a visual inspection of the timbers beneath. If you find decay, the structural members may be compromised. Seek expert advice to make a complete assessment of the situation.

Column Assessment

First determine what your columns are made of and how they are constructed. Older columns may be stone, concrete, plaster, or more commonly wood. Most wood columns are made of staves just like a barrel, but smaller diameter columns may be made of a solid tree trunk. Column damage is most commonly found in the base parts and the lower end of shafts. Water and sunlight are the most significant causes of column damage. Columns on outside corners are more exposed to the destructive effects of the weather.



REPAIR: The square plinth of this 23-ft.-tall column has only limited decay, but could be replaced with a new aluminum plinth of the same size that incorporates ventilation. The round base is substantially decayed and will need to be replaced. Decay is eating its way up into the shaft (see inset drawing that shows extent of decay). Because less than 1% of the shaft is rotted, it can be repaired at a lower cost than replacement.

There are several ways to tell if your wood columns need attention. It's easy to see sprung staves or large cracks and chunks of rotten wood that have fallen away, but there are more subtle clues to the conditions beneath the surface.

The first line of defense against excessive moisture is a continuous film of paint covering all surfaces. Even hairline cracks allow water to soak in and cause paint to peel down to bare wood. This type of peeling occurs near breaks in the film, at opened joints of wood, or where the film has been scratched or scraped. Paint that's peeling away from bare wood is a sure sign of high moisture within and possible decay.

Peeling also occurs over large areas because there is too much moisture within the whole interior of the column shaft. When water vapor cannot escape through the paint film easily enough, paint is pushed right off the wood. There may be too much moisture in the wood or the paint film may be too thick to let moisture pass out. A paint film thicker than .025 in. (about the thickness of twelve pages of this magazine) tends to block the passage of moisture.

Wood Decay

Continuous high moisture leads to fungus decay that weakens the wood. Use an awl or ice pick to check for decay. Stab the pick in at an angle and pry up a small piece of wood. Sound wood will break out in long fibrous splinters, but decayed wood will come up in short chunks. Or, push the pick straight into the wood. If it can be forced into the wood more than 1/4 in., suspect decay.

Sometimes a thin layer of solid wood at the surface hides extensive decay deep within. Check for this condition by rapping the surface with the ice-pick handle. A dry hollow sound may indicate decay near the surface. A lower ring to the sound may indicate decay deep within. Solid wood in sound condition gives a solid "thunk." Don't be confused by the solid ring of hollow shafts that are in good condition.

The final test for decay is to drill a hole and examine the wood chips. Dark brown, black, or gray chips indicate high moisture and probable decay. Be cau-

tious not to weaken structural members when drilling test holes.

Decay is common near the bottom of the shaft or in the base and plinth. Look for decay any place two wood surfaces meet and are not protected from water; for example, along or within cracks and checks, or behind moldings. Always suspect decay in hollow columns that do not have ventilation openings at top and bottom.

Quantifying Your Options

I usually recommend making the repair-vs.-replace decision on a column-by-column basis. Repairs often cost less than replacement. Begin by comparing the cost of complete replacement with the cost of repairs. For replacement costs be sure to include shipping, and the cost of installation, in addition to the cost of the column itself. A new 12-in.-diameter-by-8-ft.-tall wood column installed might cost between \$900 and \$1,800.

The cost of repairs is more difficult to determine. It depends largely on the skill, knowledge, and experience of those who will do the work. If you spent \$400 for materials and new parts plus 15 hours of labor at \$35/hr., costs would be under \$1,000. This could be enough to restore the completely decayed end of a shaft and replace a stave or two, or replace a base and plinth with long-lasting aluminum — either of which would be less than the cost of a new column.

Saving authentic historic material may be important to your project if the structure has particular historic significance. On some museum houses a higher cost for preservation is justified. More often replacement with new materials to provide the original appearance is appropriate. Whether you repair, replace, or preserve the columns depends largely on the budget and the goals of the project.

Workers without column experience can attempt paint removal and recoating, or minor repairs when the structural integrity of the column is not involved. More-complex projects that demand temporary structural supports and removal of columns require

continued on page 44



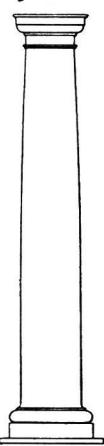
Go to hbgcolumns.com
to learn more

P.O. Box 589 Troy, Alabama 36081 • 800.264.4HBG ext.6553 • fax 334.566.4629 attn: CD-ROM • www.hbgcolumns.com

WRITE IN NO. 380

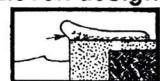
Molds Unlimited by Mandish Research Int'l

Column molds
many sizes!



Visit our web site!
www.mandish.com

Let us bid on your custom molds
42 years service to the building industry.



Eleven designs!
Swimming Pool coping molds....

Balustrades over
100 designs

5055 State Rd. 46
Mims, FL 32754
email: plastic@digital.net

PH: 321-267-2561 FAX: 321-268-1972

WRITE IN NO. 875

Architectural Columns & Balustrade Systems

- Fiberglass (FRP)
- Polymer composites
- Custom fabricated PVC



MANOR STYLE
NATIONAL DISTRIBUTOR
800-325-2188

WRITE IN NO. 703

HB&G's new free CD-ROM gives you access to handy CAD drawings of columns, porch posts, railings and more. They're quality products and easy to work with. Created from strong, durable synthetics, PermaCast™ columns, PermaPosts™ and PermaPorch™ railings from HB&G are made to last a lifetime.



With our new CD-ROM, you can also:

- Review a catalog of all products, dimensions, sizes, installation and pricing.
- Review actual product installations on real-time video.
- View CAD drawings.

FREE CD-ROM

HB&G's CD-ROM makes designing easier, and lets you enhance your working drawings with attractive architecturally correct components placed wherever you want them.

FOR A FREE CD-ROM CONTACT:



Columns and Balustrades

- Fiberglass Columns
- Marble/Resin Columns
- Wood Columns
- Synthetic Stone Balustrades & Columns
- Cast Stone Balustrades, Columns & Architectural Details
- Polyurethane Balustrades & Moldings

Details make the Difference

Call 800.963.3060
Fax 770.962.6988
www.meltonclassics.com



WRITE IN NO. 4100

BUYING GUIDE TO BALUSTRADES & BALUSTERS

painting. Radius stairs and railings available. Write in No. 4100

Mohamad Wood Turning Co.
718-417-0025; Fax: 718-417-0021
www.mohamadwoodturning.com
Brooklyn, NY 11206

Specializes in custom wood spirals, turnings, balusters, and columns in all classical styles; load-bearing for interior or exterior use. Can furnish fluting, reeding, rope twists, and custom carving. Fractional columns available. Wood; 18 in. dia. x up to 10 ft. high. Write in No. 50

North American Stone Company
972-562-9992; Fax: 972-562-0794
www.northamericanstone.com
McKinney, TX 75070

Manufactures custom architectural cast-stone elements. Products include fireplace mantels, columns, balustrades, landscape elements, entry systems, pavers, fountains, planters, urns, caps, benches, tables, exterior and interior elements; residential and commercial work, restoration work. Design assistance available. Write in No. 754

R. Walsh Gate & Railing
715-442-3102; Fax: 715-442-6002
www.robertwalsh.com
Pepin, WI 54759

Shop offers hand forged ornamental ironwork of a classical nature. Options include: original artwork, colors, textures, dipped and baked finishes, detailing in gold leaf or bronze, repoussé, and more; 20 years experience. Ornamental gates, railings, fencing; work in wrought iron/steel. Write in No. 898



Fine hand-crafted Vicenza stone architectural elements, such as these balusters, are the specialty of ROSSATO GIOVANNI. Write in No. 6110

Rossato Giovanni, srl/ Vicenza Stone Sculpture
011-39-0444-928499; Fax: 39-0444-928711
www.vicenzastone.com
36100 Vicenza ITALY MVI 002134

Classic statues, fireplaces, consoles, columns, bench-seats, balls, pineapples, balustrades, fountains, vases, more. Hand-carved in Vicenza stone. Columns round, conical, fluted, and twisted-shaft; heights in multiples of 10 ft. Custom and antique mantels in Vicenza stone or marble. Write in No. 6110

Savannah Classics
800-830-8044; Fax: 912-898-0613
www.stonemantelsonline.com
Savannah, GA 31410

Cast-stone architectural elements including door surrounds, treads and risers, band courses, and balustrading. Stock and custom mantels in cast stone.

Schwartz's Forge & Metalworks, Inc.
315-841-4477; Fax: 315-841-4694
P.O. Box 205, 2695 Rte. 315
Deansboro, NY 13328

For 22 years, this architectural-metal company has designed and produced stair railings/balustrades, gates, doors, and fences. Also railings, stairs, lighting, hardware, sculpture, registers & grilles. Metals include wrought iron/steel, bronze, & brass. Write in No. 1218



STONE LEGENDS' classically styled Otterwood II balustrade is manufactured in cast stone.

Stone Legends
800-398-1199; Fax: 214-398-1293
www.stonelegends.com
Dallas, TX 75217

Cast-stone architectural elements, handmade using precision tooling. Factory-direct pricing for elements such as balustrades, columns, fountains, pavers, steps, signs, wall caps, and landscape and garden ornament. Custom casting.



STONEX's architectural precast-concrete balustrades mark the transition point between landscape and house. Write in No. 507

Stonex Cast Products
732-938-2334; Fax: 732-919-0918
www.stonexonline.com
Farmingdale, NJ 07727

Baluster and rail system; quoins, window sills & surrounds, wall copings, splash blocks, pier caps, and much more in cast stone; seven styles of balusters; curved railings available. Write in No. 507

Superior Moulding, Inc.
800-473-1415; Fax: 818-376-1314
5953 Sepulveda Blvd.
Van Nuys, CA 91411

Array of standard and non-standard moldings and related finish materials in any size, style, shape, and species; short turnaround times. Cornice moldings, columns & capitals, mantels, door & window surrounds, ceiling medallions, ornamental ceilings, niches & domes, & brackets & corbels in foamed polymer & vacuum-formed polymer. Write in No. 138

Texas Metal Industries, Inc.
800-222-6033; Fax: 800-472-3807
www.txmetal.com
Crandall, TX 75114

Ornamental aluminum castings: outdoor furniture and lighting, gate and fence components, mailboxes, hardware, finials, and balustrades. Also, cast-aluminum fountains, lampposts, and urns. Write in No. 9430



TULSA CASTINGS offers several lines of standard precast balusters and railings as well as custom designs.

Tulsa Casting Co.
918-665-1272; Fax: Same as phone
9770 E. 55th Pl.
Tulsa, OK 74146

Architectural precast manufacturer specializing in sills, arches, lintels, quoins, fireplaces, pier caps, balustrades, columns, address blocks, signage, wall coping, and watertables. Five models in cast stone, and custom designs available; 3 handrails available, all radius types.

Wiemann Ironworks
918-592-1700; Fax: 918-592-2385
www.wiemanniron.com
Tulsa, OK 74104

Since 1940, firm designs, fabricates, and installs fine forged architectural and ornamental metalwork for a national market. Residential and commercial. Custom finishes. CAD services. NOMMA's most award-winning metal fabricator. Curved & straight metal stairs, balusters, railings, & newel posts. Metals include brass, bronze, aluminum, steel, and copper. Total project management. Write in No. 1223

Wood Factory
936-825-7233; Fax: 936-825-1791
III Railroad St.
Navasota, TX 77868

Historically accurate millwork reproductions, interior & exterior: doors, screen doors, gingerbread, benches, gazebo parts, finials, cresting, fancy-cut shingles, stair parts, railings, porch parts, more. Custom mantels a specialty. Specializes in porch and newel posts, as well as balusters, railings, brackets, corbels, and exterior embellishments to replicate turn-of-the-century architecture. Can duplicate original samples or work from pictures & drawings. Write in No. 7120

www.period-homes.com

*Products & Services
for the Residential Market*

STONE CARVING TODAY

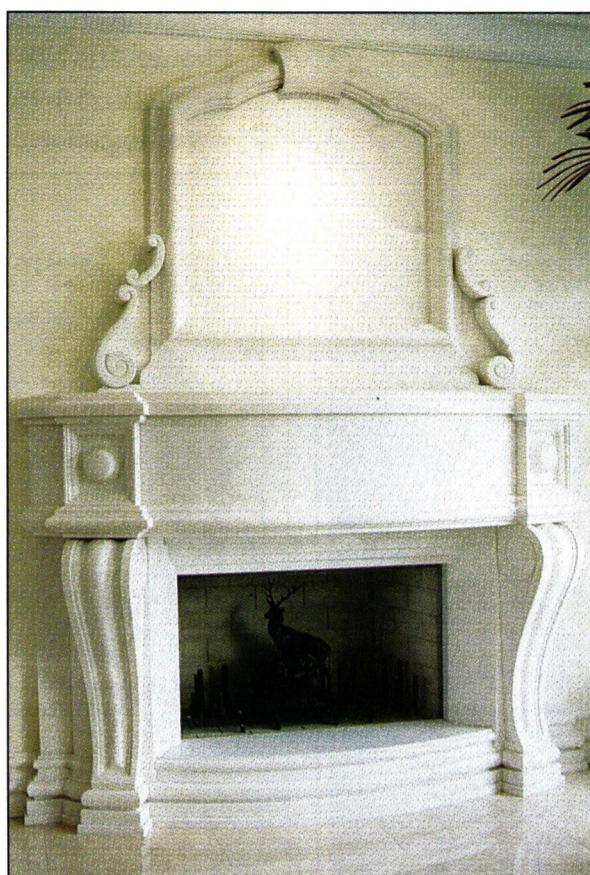
Master stone carvers have been enjoying a rock-solid U.S. market for residential applications. At least that's what stone carvers are reporting in this survey.

by Leslie Jay

Bob Ragan, owner of Texas Carved Stone L.P., could be speaking for the industry as a whole when he says, "it's been incredible." At his Florence, Texas, firm, which primarily makes fireplaces and ornamental entryways, "the past year was one of the best years we've ever had. It's all we can do to keep up."

Other carvers across the country have similar stories to tell. "We've been busy and increasingly busy," observes Ian Agrell, owner of Agrell & Thorpe Ltd., a Mill Valley, Calif., shop that turns out fireplaces, door surrounds, columns, and capitals. "We're booked through 2001." How does he account for the onslaught of business? "There's been a resurgence of interest in the Classical look, combined with a healthy economy. Even in a modern-looking house, people enjoy having one handmade, Paganini piece."

Unless there is a prolonged recession, expert craftspeople can expect their services to remain in demand. This country boasts few traditionally trained stone carvers. "In England, there are too many artisans for the work," says Nick Fairplay, whose eponymous firm in Oberlin, Ohio, creates architectural and landscape elements. "Here, we don't have enough people to do it." (It's no accident that many of today's carvers acquired their skills in Europe, says French emigre Francois Gillard, president of Limestone Concept, Inc., in Los Angeles, Calif. "There is no

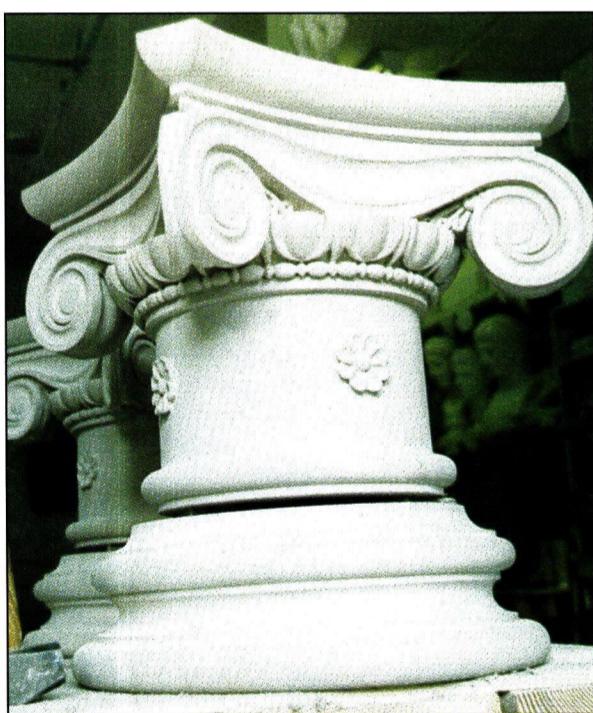


Limestone Concept, Inc., can carve fireplaces in any style, from ornate to simple.

To compare prices and products from different suppliers, get samples. Agrell points out that one quarry's "Kansas sunstone" may be the same material sold by a competitor under another name. And don't hesitate to request a range of color, especially if the piece is supposed to complement a particular palette. "That's very important for interior designers," says Fairplay.

When it comes to the actual design process, most carvers can work from pictures or sketches. Because of the labor involved, the more elaborate the piece, the greater the price; at the low end, expect to pay at least \$3,000 for a plain limestone fireplace, and many multiples of that for a more-intricate variant. Tricks of the trade include adapting ornaments to the budget, such as substituting simple foliage for leaves that are highly segmented. "People have become more educated about design and style," says Gillard. "They're not as likely to mix periods or ask for stuff that isn't nice."

For architectural elements, the craftsman creates dimensionally exact drawings that will be used for cutting the stone. Depending on the pattern, some of the preliminary shaping may be done by machine. It's good practice for everyone involved, from the architect to the installer, to study the drawings carefully before work begins. "What's approved is what gets done," declares Ragan. For statues, the standard method is to make a model. Siciliano starts with a miniature clay version, then graduates to full size in



Agrell & Thorpe's portfolio includes pieces such as capitals created for the governor's mansion in Utah. All of these works are in limestone.

school in the U.S. where you can learn three-dimensional geometrical design.")

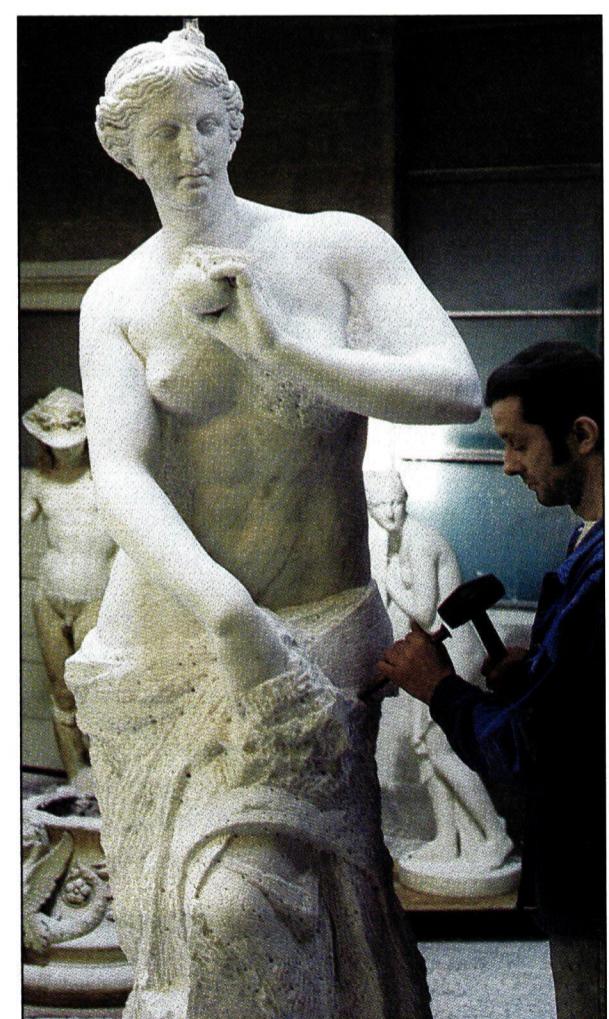
Consequently, most established carvers find that their niche, like their material, is sturdy. According to Brooklyn, N.Y.-based figurative sculptor Gerald Siciliano, owner of Studio Design Associates, "People who are going to buy it are going to buy it. They have the taste, they have the money, and they have the space in which to put it."

Allocating and preparing that space can present distinct challenges. Stone's weight has to be carefully supported. This task can be especially tricky when retrofitting, say, a marble mantelpiece around a second-story hearth — the floor may need extra beams. The same holds true of outdoor installations; proper subgrade reinforcement will prevent the piece from sinking or falling over. "Get an engineer involved," recommends Gillard.

While you're at it, double-check all the building codes relevant to the site. Gillard, whose company produces everything from fireplaces to fountains, notes that, in California, "pieces have to be attached with steel supports, because of earthquakes."

Another factor to consider is the time of year. Although carving stone is not a seasonal affair, excavating the raw material is. "It depends on how much you want and when," says Fairplay. "Lots of quarries close down for the winter. The order may not be processed for six to eight weeks — or even twelve." That's before the carver has even begun his or her efforts. The delay may be merely inconvenient. But if the piece is structurally significant rather than decorative, its absence can halt construction.

Apart from availability, the choice of stone hinges on where it's going to be placed and, of course, the client's taste and budget. "Granite is very popular," comments Siciliano. "It's virtually indestructible. You can put it anywhere, indoors or out." Marble is less expensive. Limestone, the most affordable option, varies in density. A case in point: Texas Carved Stone, as its name implies, relies on rock quarried within the state. However, "for northern climates, we prefer Indiana limestone," notes Ragan. "It's denser and stands up to pollution better." Conversely, lighter, more-porous stone, which is easier to carve, may be better suited for many interior uses.



Venus de Milo is well-armed in this version, as Nick Fairplay roughs out the drapery. The statue, of white Carrara marble, measures 32 in. x 32 in. x 84 in.



Texas Carved Stone drew on natural themes to make this rustic-limestone fireplace for a log house in Colorado.

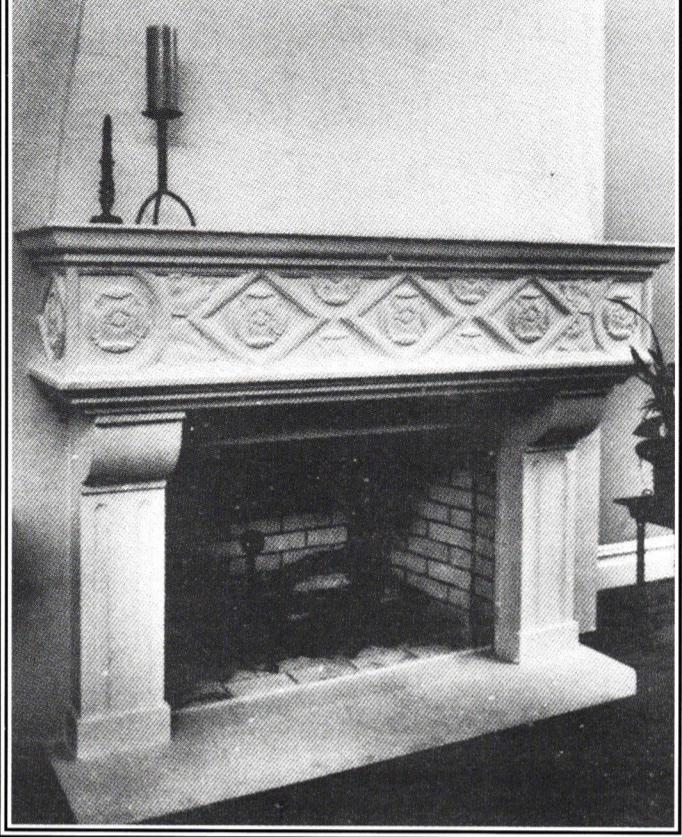
Styrofoam. "It's easy to work and easy to transport," he reports. He knows of other sculptors who are equally comfortable enlarging on a scaled-down model.

To keep clients informed, many artisans take photographs. "That's why God created digital cameras," says Siciliano. Whenever possible, Agrell prefers to

continued on page 56

HAND-CARVED CUSTOM STONE FIREPLACES

• LIMESTONE • MARBLE • GRANITE



DMS STUDIOS

5-50 51ST AVENUE, LONG ISLAND CITY, NY 11101
(718) 937-5648 FAX (718) 937-2609
EMAIL: dmsstudios@mindspring.com
FOR CATALOG, VISIT OUR WEBSITE AT
WWW.DMS-STUDIOS.COM

WRITE IN NO. 9100

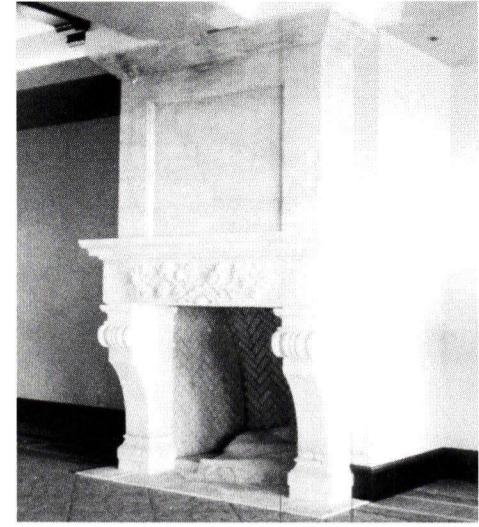
STONE CARVING TODAY, continued from page 55

Limestone Concept, Inc.

Antique Reproductions
Fireplaces & Fountains

Import
French Limestone
Antique Fireplaces,
Terra Cotta & Roof Tiles

1438 S. Robertson Blvd.
Los Angeles, CA 90035
Phone: 310-278-9829
Fax: 310-278-9651
www.limestoneconcept.com



WRITE IN NO. 5390

GERALD SICILIANO SCULPTURE SERVICES



9 Garfield Pl. Bklyn. NY 11215 tel/fax. 718.636.4561

WRITE IN NO. 187

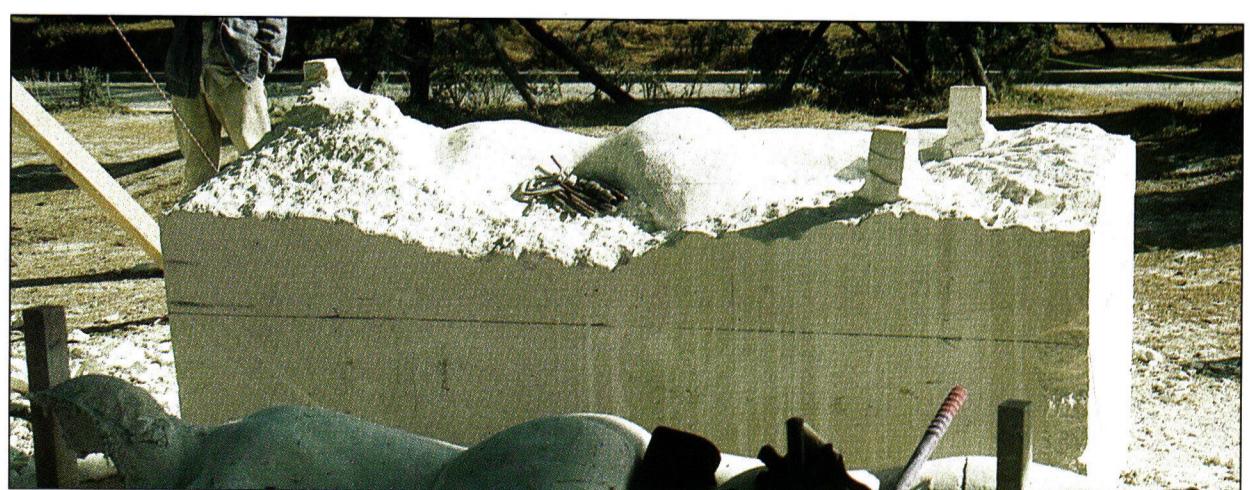
**WWW.
period-homes.com**
The Internet Gateway
to Historical
Products & Services
for Residential
Architecture



This grand staircase is an example of Limestone Concept's exterior work.



Detail of a fireplace panel, realized in limestone by Nick Fairplay.



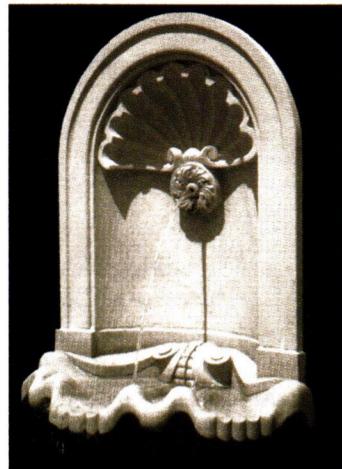
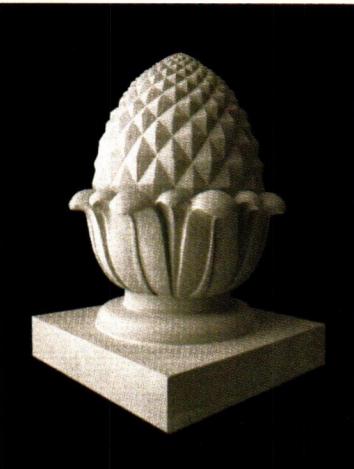
In a process known as "pointing" — plotting a piece in three dimensions from a full-size model — Gerald Siciliano creates a female figure in Italian dolomitic limestone.

have people come to his shop towards the end of the project, so they can check it out for themselves. "If they don't like it, they can say so there." He often finds himself explaining that color variations and chisel marks are integral to hand-carved stone.

Shipping is generally billed separately. If the piece is being carted by itself in a truck, it can probably rest on pallets. When two or more pieces are riding together, each should probably be crated separately, which raises the fee. Siciliano has been known to shoot a video to illustrate how a work should be lifted and placed. Some items will travel better in a slightly unfinished state. For example, Fairplay backs up a statue's arms with bridges (remnants of stone that will be removed later).

Carvers are unlikely to handle installation themselves. Instead, they number the separate parts and supply instructions for setters. Be sure to ask the shop to save stone dust and send it along as an additive for the filler. Some carvers mix the dust with lime and cement; others combine dust and thinset. A third recipe of dust and epoxy should be limited to interior installations; because stone is porous and the glue is not, an epoxy-based filler may eventually fail in an outdoor environment. ♦

TEXAS-CARVED-STONE



Texas Carved Stone, L.P. produces architectural and sculptural, hand-carved limestone pieces. Projects range from restoration carving on century-old buildings to ornamental stonework for commercial and residential settings.

We create original designs or can work from architectural drawings or photographs. Please call, write, or visit us on the web for additional information and pricing.

Texas Carved Stone, L.P.
6621 Hwy. 195
Florence, TX 76527
Ph. (254) 793-2384
Fax (254) 793-2693
www.texascarvedstone.com



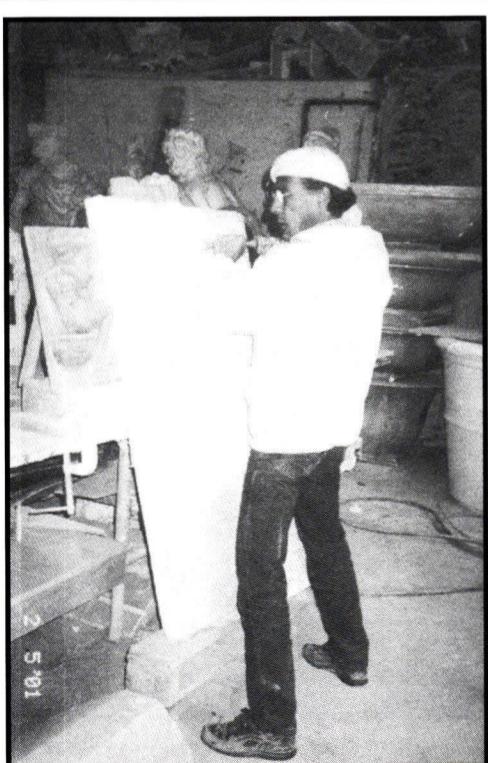
WRITE IN NO. 1055

MANUEL PALOS SCULPTURE SERVICES

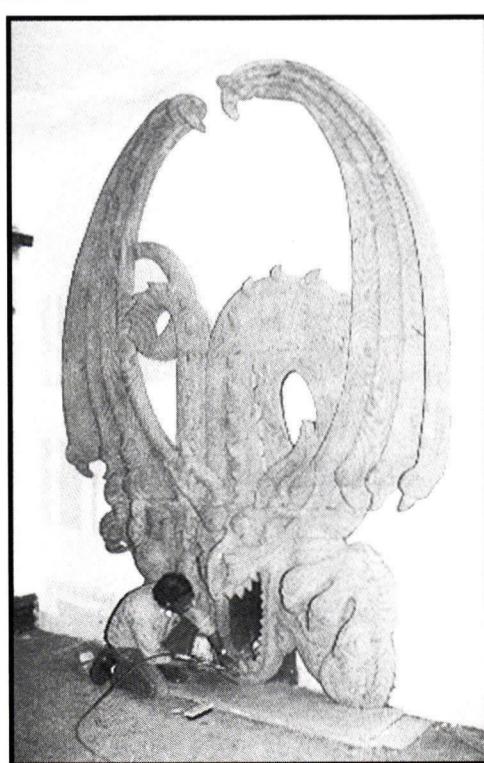
1330 Donner Avenue • San Francisco, CA 94124

(415) 822-8034 fax (415) 822-9280

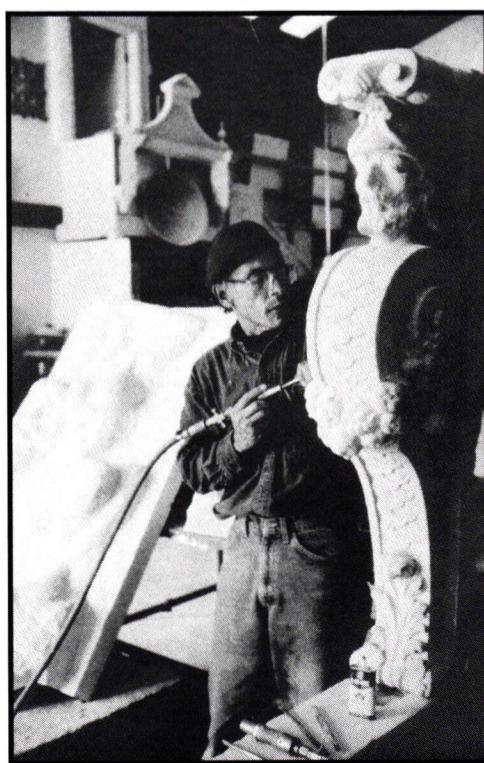
E-mail: mpalossculp@aol.com



Various projects in marble



10x13 foot Black Stone Dragon Fireplace
for Actor Nicholas Cage's
San Francisco residence



One of a pair; Limestone Irish Warriors
for fireplace

Manuel Palos is a sculptor and craftsman. He has been featured on the Home and Garden TV show, and in an article in the May 1998 issue of *This Old House*. His work is marble, stone, bronze, terra cotta, plaster, and various fiberglass based materials have gained him international recognition.

Mr. Palos holds workshops in Carrara, Italy in spring, San Francisco, in the summer, and Puerto Vallarta, Mexico in the winter months. If you or your group are interested in availability of space or would like more information, please contact us for a program.

WRITE IN NO. 2759

BUYING GUIDE TO STONE CARVING

About This Buying Guide

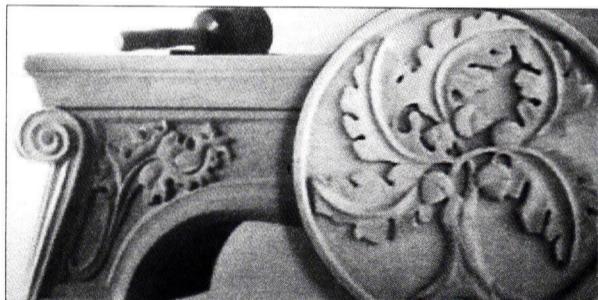
To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted suppliers of Stone Carving in our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 11 suppliers you'll find on this page because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.



ARTE IN STONE
hand-carved
this elegant
fireplace in
Cantera
stone.

Arte in Stone
480-515-0028; Fax: 480-515-0029
www.arteinstone.com
Scottsdale, AZ 85255

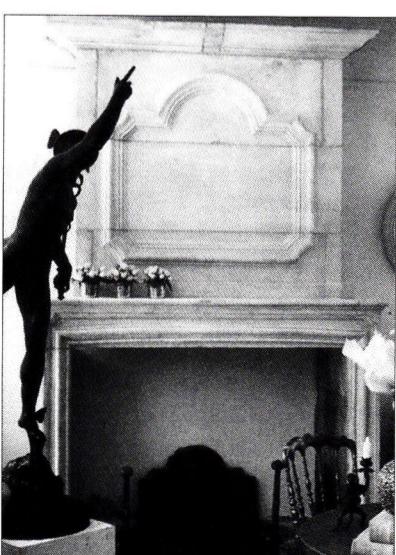
Custom and hand-carved stone; fireplaces, fountains, columns, entryways, balustrades, figurative sculpture, and architectural details. Work with architects, designers, home builders, and home owners. Inventory of Cantera tiles, planters, fountains, and yard furnishings.



This detail shows a hand-carved French limestone mantel and oak leaf medallion by ATELIER JOUVENCE.

Atelier Jouvence Stonecarving, Inc.
312-492-7922; Fax: 312-492-7923
www.atelierjouvence.com
Chicago, IL 60616

Native French stonemason specializes in hand-carved, custom-designed fireplaces, windows and door surrounds, fountains, staircases, architectural & garden ornamentation, and restoration work. Carving done in French and American limestones. Also offering a full line of French limestone tiles.



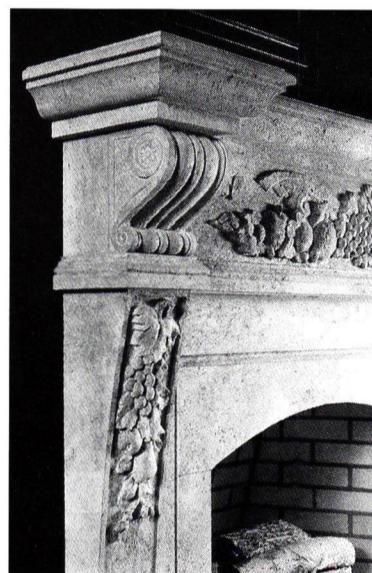
DHS DESIGNS
offers a selection of
hand-carved period
French limestone
mantels in styles
dating from the
16th to the 19th
centuries. Write in
No. 773

DHS Designs
410-280-3466; Fax: 410-280-8729
www.dhsdesigns.com
Annapolis, MD 21401

Carved French limestone mantels, 16th to 19th c. Also, architectural artifacts; antique garden ornaments (18th- to 20th-c. statuary, fountains, urns, benches), antique continental furniture and decorative arts. Write in No. 773

Dixie Cut Stone & Marble, Inc.
888-450-2858; Fax: 517-777-8791
P.O. Box 264
Bridgeport, MI 48722

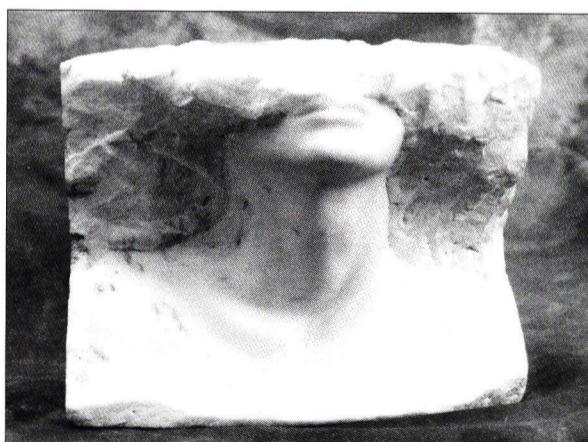
Firm has carved natural stone since 1960. Custom limestone fireplaces; carvings, fountains, door and window surrounds, entryways, balusters, columns, and signs; stone includes Indiana buff limestone, Texas cream, and Mankato gold.



The detailing on this hand-carved stone fireplace is typical of the work of DMS STUDIOS. Write in No. 9100

DMS Studios
718-937-5648; Fax: 718-937-2609
www.dms-studios.com
Long Island City, NY 11101

Historically accurate, hand-carved marble and limestone fireplace mantels and other architectural and landscape ornament, including statuary and fountains; entryways, balustrades, columns & capitals. Also specialize in one-of-a-kind and custom projects that require high levels of artistic skill and experience. Write in No. 9100



GERALD SICILLANO sculpted this evocative piece, "Kaye," in Carrara Statuario. It measures 9 in. x 14 in. x 11 in. Write in No. 187

Gerald Siciliano/Studio Design Associates
718-636-4561; Fax: Same as phone
www.concentric.net/~gsstudio
Brooklyn, NY 11215

Custom and commissioned sculpture in classical and modern styles meticulously crafted in the highest-quality materials. Durable and elegant pedestal, wall-mounted, garden, and plaza sculpture on time and within budget in limestone, marble, granite, and all carvable stones. Write in No. 187

Hawk Brothers
607-724-3914; Fax: 607-771-0368
104 Bevier St.
Binghamton, NY 13904

Masonry-supply yard with a variety of stone products;

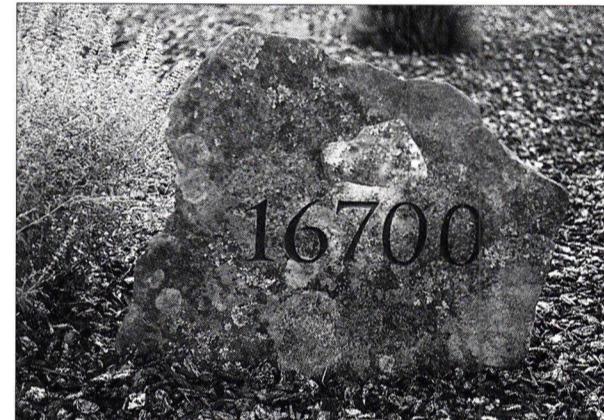
hearth, mantel, tread, landscape stone, benches, monuments, and sculpture. New products include "watercatchers" for gardens.

Limestone Concept, Inc.
310-278-9829; Fax: 310-278-9651
www.limestoneconcept.com
Los Angeles, CA 90035

Hand-carved limestone fireplaces, fountains, columns, balustrades, capitals, mantels, benches, ornament, garden statuary, sculptures, French limestone slabs & tiles, antique terra cotta. Natural-stone flooring; quarry tile; limestone. Write in No. 5390

Manuel Palos Sculpture
415-822-8034; Fax: 415-822-9280
1330 Donner Ave.
San Francisco, CA 94124

Full-service sculptural studio: Carving, moldmaking, and casting expertise. Commissions for classic and figurative stone carving in marble, granite, and limestone. Sculpture in bronze, stone, gypsum cement, plaster, and FRP. Write in No. 2759



This unique address stone with in-built light was hand-carved by Shawn Tibbs of PIETRA STONWORKS.

Pietra Stoneworks
505-771-1370; Fax: 505-771-1086
www.pietra-stone.com
Algodones, NM 87001

Landscape lighting hand-carved from natural stone. Each light is a unique functional work of art. Also, custom fountains, stone carving and turning, granite, basalt, limestone, moss rock, etc.

Stone Forest
505-986-8883; Fax: 505-982-2712
www.stoneforest.com
Santa Fe, NM 87504

Hand-carved granite fountains, garden ornament, and bath and kitchen sinks. In marble and granite. Write in No. 1108



This intricate floral design was hand-carved from limestone by TEXAS CARVED STONE. Write in No. 1055

Texas Carved Stone, L.P.
254-793-2384; Fax: 254-793-2693
www.texascarvedstone.com
Florence, TX 76527

Fabrication of hand-carved ornamental limestone: mantels, entries, fountains, architectural elements. Carvers are capable of working in any period or style. Custom mantels in carved limestone. Write in No. 1055

BUYING GUIDE TO WOOD CARVING

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted suppliers of Wood Carving in our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 21 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

ACMI, Inc., Moulding & Millwork
229-888-3303; Fax: 229-888-9245
www.americancustommillwork.com
Albany, GA 31706



ARCHITECTURAL PANELING specializes in finely detailed hand-carved decorative pieces such as this festoon. Write in No. 6490



Camcraft 3-D, Inc.
713-858-3814; Fax: 281-980-6405
www.wooddesigner.com
Sugar Land, TX 77479

Custom woodcarving firm specializes in computer-controlled architectural-relief carving; can turn a 2-D sketch into a high-value 3-D product. Available in all domestic and exotic woods. Elements include architectural ornaments, doors, paneling, molding, and signage.



Classic Architectural Specialties
800-662-1221; Fax: 972-552-9054
www.casdesign.com
Forney, TX 75126

Supplier of architectural components; complete packages for exteriors, from millwork to street lights. Interior/exterior columns & capitals in all the Classical orders; mantel & novelty columns in urethane, resin, wood, fiberglass. Cornice moldings, columns & capitals, door & window surrounds, ceiling medallions, ornamental ceilings, niches & domes, & brackets & corbels in polymer.



These pieces represent a fraction of the extensive range of architectural and ornamental carvings available from CUMBERLAND WOODCRAFT. Write in No. 1310

Cumberland Woodcraft Co.
800-367-1884; Fax: 717-243-6502
www.cumberlandwoodcraft.com
Carlisle, PA 17013

Since 1975 company has offered hundreds of hand-crafted architectural embellishments in a variety of premium hardwoods. Select from ornate carved corbels, moldings, capitals, and appliques. Classic carved mantels, cabinetry and paneling is our specialty. Write in No. 1310



Michael A. Dow of DOW WOODCARVING carved this capital in Honduras mahogany. The quarter at the base of the capital indicates the scale of detail and intricacy in the carving.

Dow Woodcarving
207-363-7924; Fax: Same as phone
www.archcarving.com
York, ME 03909

Architectural & ornamental hand-carving in wood; all styles, classical to contemporary. Gilding. Architectural, nautical, & ornamental carving; restoration of antique carving; model-making for the cast-stone industry. Carved wood elements include column capitals, carved doors, signage, turnings, and architectural ornament.



Fagan Design & Fabrication, Inc.
203-937-1874; Fax: 203-937-7321
44 Railroad Ave.
West Haven, CT 06516

Custom hand-turned columns, cylinders, rope twists, spirals, etc. Also, capitals and other carvings. Can produce exact duplicates for restoration; hardwoods a specialty. Write in No. 8210



Goodwin Associates
716-248-3320; Fax: 716-387-0153
P.O. Box 18605
Rochester, NY 14618

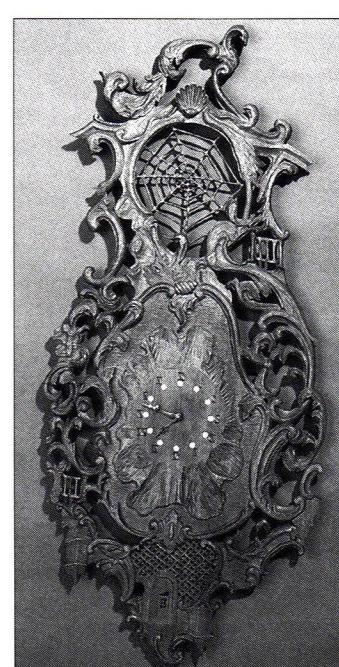
Wood carvings: corbels, centers, corners, drops, swags, scrolls, small capitals & rosettes. Traditional, embossed & sculptured millwork. Coordinating profiles available in curved resin. Embossed MDF. Write in No. 806



HAFELE's line of corbels complements the firm's full range of ornamental wood carvings.

Hafele America
336-889-2322; Fax: 336-431-3831
www.hafeleonline.com
Archdale, NC 27263

Moldings including dentil, egg & dart, or rope moldings; embossed or carved; species include maple, oak, cherry, or beech. Also, hardware and low-voltage halogen lighting for cabinets and furniture. Machine- and hand-carved.



This clock, in an idiosyncratic Rococo style, was carved from a single piece of mahogany by BORIS KHECHOYAN.

Khechoyan, Boris
314-843-3236; Fax: 314-843-3912
7658 General Grant Ct.
Saint Louis, MO 63123

Woodcarver specializes in Gothic, Baroque, Rococo, Em-

BUYING GUIDE TO WOOD CARVING

pire, Classical, and Modern carving. Inlaid work. Elements include carved doors, architectural details, column capitals, carved paneling & moldings, fireplace mantels, restoration of antique woodcarvings.



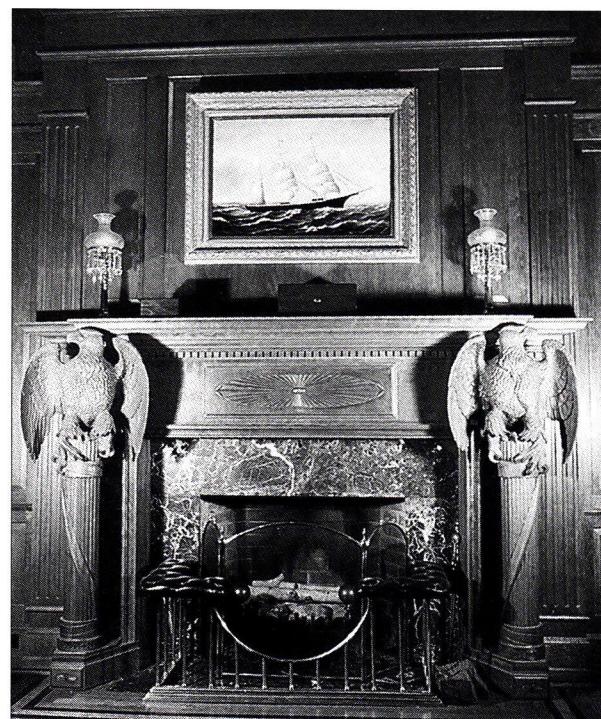
This foliate wood sconce is typical of the extraordinary work of master woodcarver DIMITRIOS KLITSAS. Write in No. 7380

Klitsas, Dimitrios - Fine Wood Sculptor
413-566-5301; Fax: 413-566-5307
www.klitsas.com
Hampden, MA 01036

Custom carving of wood architectural elements, both interior and exterior, including furniture (all periods), fireplace mantels, stairs, chandeliers, moldings, sculpture, column capitals, carved doors, paneling & moldings, signage, and other specialty carvings. Wood capitals. Write in No. 7380

Koch, Ken - Woodcarving
505-771-1320; Fax: 505-821-5491
www.kkwoodcarver.com
Bernalillo, NM 87004

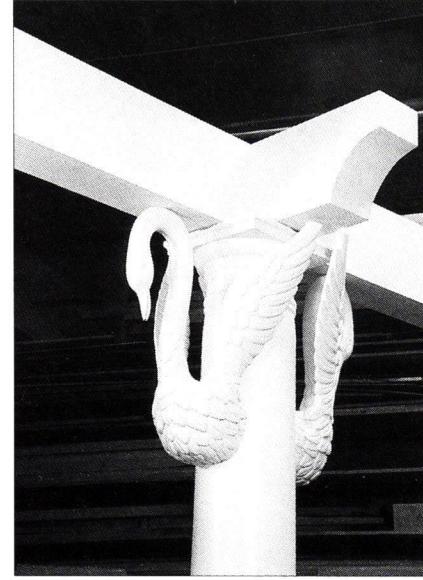
Custom designed and carved doors, furniture and architectural elements. Scenic, figurative and wildlife motifs. Southwestern to Art Nouveau and traditional styles. Write in No. 8055



R. Stephan Toman of SONRISE WOODCARVING STUDIO designed and carved this striking fireplace surround. The eagles are 29-1/2 in. tall and were carved "in the round." Write in No. 4030

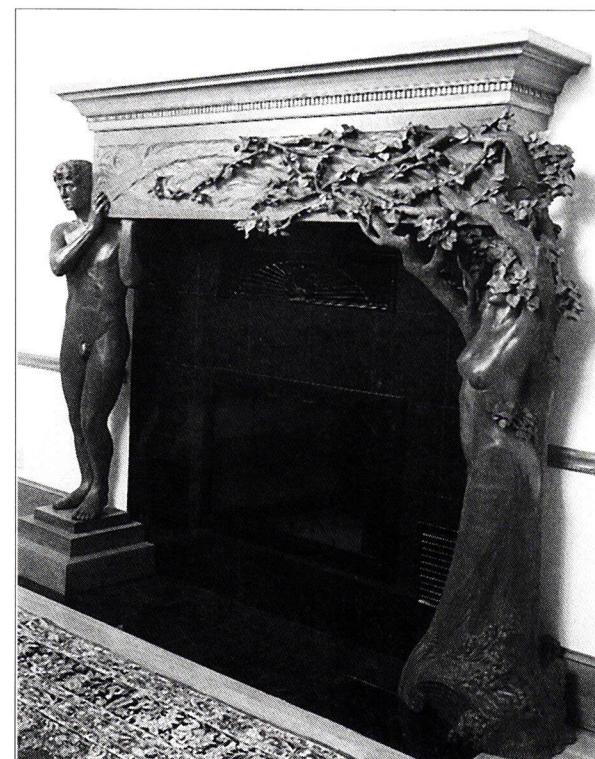
Sonrise Woodcarving Studio
845-331-8692; Fax: 914-339-3188
www.sonrisewoodcarving.com
Kingston, NY 12401

Specialty woodcarver of architectural elements (mantels, moldings, entryways, furniture, doors), ecclesiastical carving; replication and restoration of antique carved pieces; decorative carvings, "High" and bas-relief carving. Yacht interiors on nautical carvings. Custom mantels in carved and milled wood. Catalog \$4. Write in No. 4030



Superior Moulding, Inc.
800-473-1415; Fax: 818-376-1314
5953 Sepulveda Blvd.
Van Nuys, CA 91411

Array of standard and non-standard moldings and related finish materials in any size, style, shape, and species; short turnaround times. Cornice moldings, columns & capitals, mantels, door & window surrounds, ceiling medallions, ornamental ceilings, niches & domes, & brackets & corbels in foamed polymer & vacuum-formed polymer. Write in No. 138



Joe Valasek of VALASEK WOOD SCULPTURE sculpted the figures at either end of this extraordinary mantelpiece from cherry.

Valasek Sculpture & Design
541-302-6973; Fax: Same as phone
2580 Chula Vista Blvd.
Eugene, OR 97403

All types of carving and sculpture. Specialist in large, carved wooden landscape reliefs using a unique engineering method which eliminates splitting and facilitates shipping. Relief series produced using a hand/machine method for doors, signage and architectural carvings. All woods.

Ward Kane Wood Carving
802-297-2672; Fax: 802-297-2646
P.O. Box 213
Bondville, VT 05340

Custom wood carving, stone carving, sculpture, and carved furniture. Elements include hand carvings, architectural ornament, sculpture, carved doors, carved paneling & moldings, furniture, brackets, and more.



This rustic mantel features bear, fox, fish, and other wildlife — all hand-carved by FREDERICK WILBUR.

Wilbur, Frederick - Woodcarver
804-263-4827; Fax: 804-263-5958
P.O. Box 425
Lovingston, VA 22949

Woodcarver specializes in traditional decorative carving for interiors and exteriors: furniture, mantels, moldings, friezes, column capitals, doors, paneling & moldings, rosettes, and heraldry. Creates original designs and historically accurate reproductions.

Wood Reflections, Inc.
888-647-2600; Fax: 805-693-8876
www.woodreflections.com
Atascadero, CA 93423

Produces custom hand-carved and hand-crafted wood doors, mantels, cabinets, furniture, and wall carvings. Designs range from rustic Western to elegant traditional styles.



WOODLINE's
20-3/4-in.-tall
corbel is available
in oak, alder, or
poplar. Write in
No. 5240

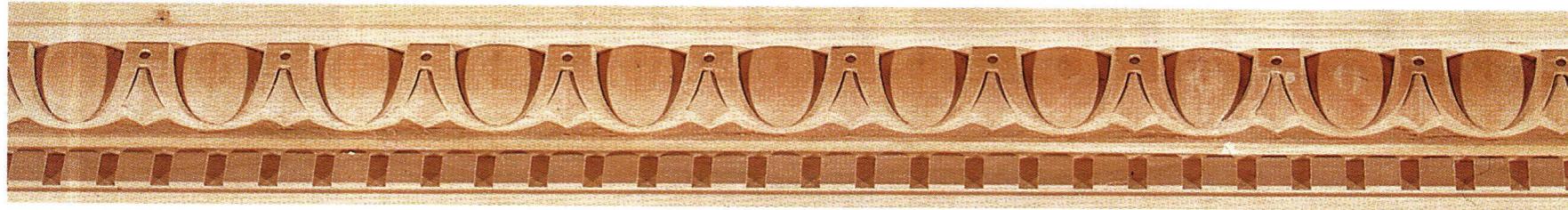
Woodline Co.
562-436-3771; Fax: 562-436-8891
1521 W. 14th St.
Long Beach, CA 90813

Architectural wood products: wood carvings and corbels, stair parts, finials, balusters, newel posts, rosettes, columns, capitals, and posts. All made in oak, poplar, and alder; special orders in other species available. Write in No. 5240

www.period-homes.com
*Products & Services
for the Residential Market*

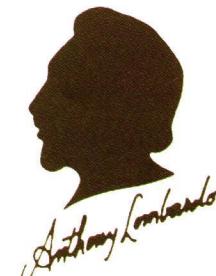
MOLDINGS, MANTELS & HAND CARVINGS

ALL AVAILABLE IN WALNUT, MAHOGANY, CHERRY, OAK, MAPLE & POPLAR



WALNUT
MAHOGANY
CHERRY
MAPLE
OAK etc.

www.apaneling.com

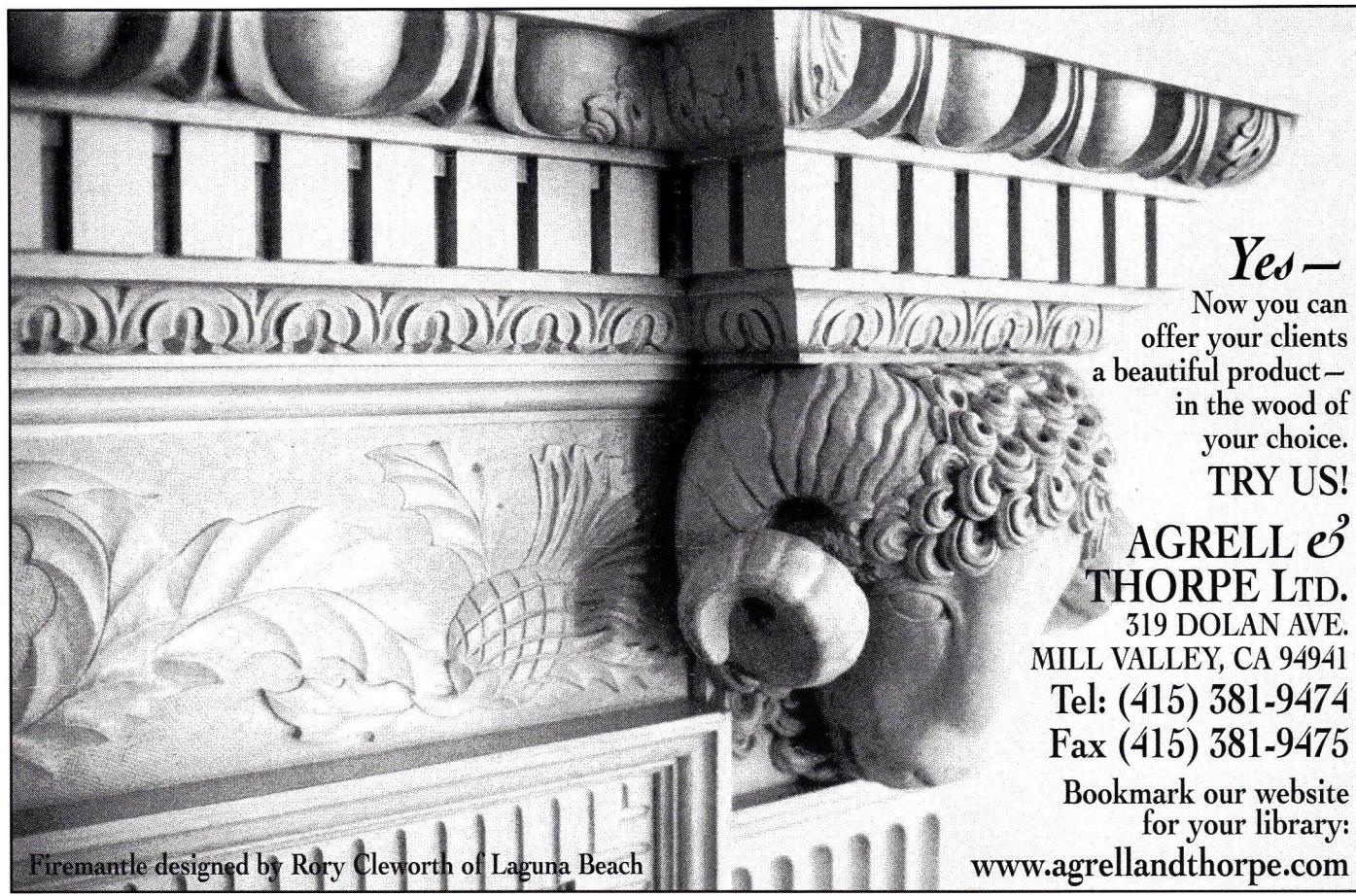


ARCHITECTURAL PANELING, INC.

979 Third Ave., New York, NY 10022

(212) 371-9632 Fax: (212) 759-0276





Firemantle designed by Rory Cleworth of Laguna Beach

WRITE IN NO. 90

Yes —
Now you can
offer your clients
a beautiful product —
in the wood of
your choice.

TRY US!

**AGRELL &
THORPE LTD.**

319 DOLAN AVE.
MILL VALLEY, CA 94941

Tel: (415) 381-9474
Fax (415) 381-9475

Bookmark our website
for your library:
www.agrellandthorpe.com

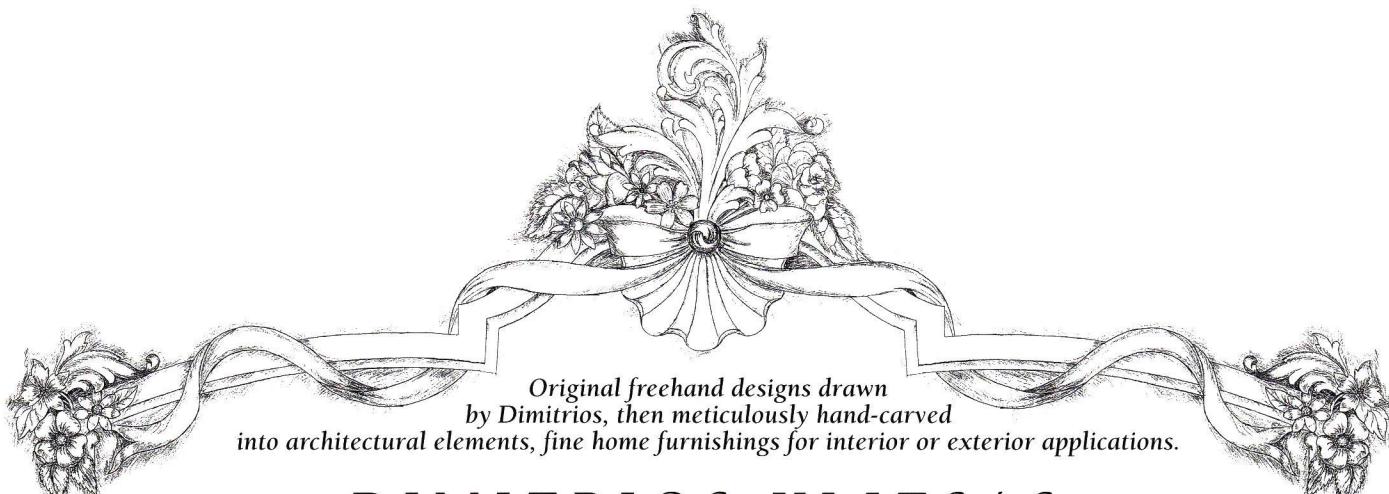
KEN KOCH WOODCARVING
e-mail: ken@kkwoodcarver.com
www.kkwoodcarver.com
fax: 505-821-5491 ph: 505-771-1320

Scenic carvings to make your
entry truly unique, memorable &
representative of your passions.

WRITE IN NO. 8055

**Architectural
Products
by
Outwater**
*see our full page
full color ad on page 5.*

WRITE IN NO. 5008



Original freehand designs drawn
by Dimitrios, then meticulously hand-carved
into architectural elements, fine home furnishings for interior or exterior applications.

DIMITRIOS KLITSAS

Fine
WOOD
SCULPTOR

Master Wood Carver

UNIQUE, ONE OF A KIND COMMISSIONS TO
COMPLIMENT ANY STYLE HOME!

FINE WOOD CARVING WORKSHOPS
Beginner • Intermediate • Advanced
Work at your own level with individual attention



378 North Road, Hampden, MA 01036 (413) 566-5301 • FAX (413) 566-5307 • www.klitsas.com

WRITE IN NO. 7380

VICTORIAN TRADITIONS

Now...Order Online www.cumberlandwoodcraft.com

Victorian Gingerbread, carvings, turnings and more, in solid hardwoods.
Period Mantels, Vanities, Wall Units, Bars, Backbars and Entertainment Centers.
Complete custom design service also available.
Interior and exterior restoration projects our specialty.

Standard Screen/Storm Doors. Custom Screen/Storm Doors, too.

1-800-367-1884 P.O. Drawer 609, Carlisle, PA 17013 • Dept. 242
E-mail sales@cumberlandwoodcraft.com

Send \$5.00 for full-color catalog with hundreds of products
Free to the Trade

Cumberland Woodcraft Co., Inc.

WRITE IN NO. 1310

R. STEPHAN TOMAN
master woodsculptor
SONRISE
WOODCARVING STUDIO

Serving since 1986

SONRISE WOODCARVING STUDIO offers Exceptional Custom Craftsmanship in the Old World and American Woodcarving and Woodworking Traditions Spanning Western Stylistic History from Refined Classical Reproductions to Unique Contemporary Furnishings and Sculpture for a New Millennium

In addition to fine handcarving and custom furniture Sonrise Woodcarving Studio has expanded its masterpiece services to include

- Premium Moldings and Architectural Millwork -
- On Site and Shop-crafted Cabinetry -
- Spectacular Entryways, Doors and Windows -
- Handfinished Machine Multiples of Custom Designs -

Phone #: 845-331-8692 Address: 111 Hurley Avenue
Fax #: 248-479-5272 Kingston, NY 12401

E-mail: sonrisewoodcarvingstudio@pobox.com
Visit the Gallery on the Web at www.sonrisewoodcarving.com

Complimentary Text Brochure available (with Glossy Photo-pack add \$6.00)

WRITE IN NO. 4030

**WWW.
period-homes.com**
*Internet Gateway
to Historical Products*
**PERIOD
HOMES**

maintains the central Website for historically styled products and services on the Internet —products used for restoration, renovation, and new construction projects. There's more information and links to historical products than you'll find on any other site.

AMONG THE FEATURES:

- Searchable Product Database with 112 product categories
- 371 companies listed and indexed in the Product Database
- 162 Online product brochures
- Links to 272 Companies and related Organizations
- In-Depth Product Report of the Month
- Lists of Topics in Past and Future Issues
- Most-Requested Articles Online
- E-Mail Order Form for Product Literature

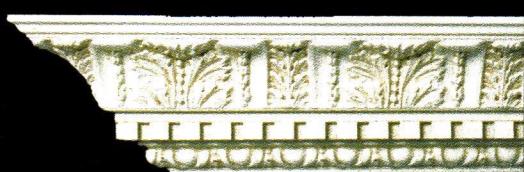
*Log onto —
and then Bookmark
www.period-homes.com*



SUPERIOR MOULDING INC.

We specialize in a full line of mouldings and quality finish materials including elegant hand crafted carvings.

5953 Sepulveda Boulevard
Van Nuys, CA 91411
818-376-1415 Fax 818-376-1314
800-473-1415



WRITE IN NO. 138

BECOME A MEMBER OF
THE INSTITUTE OF
CLASSICAL
ARCHITECTURE

*The leading educational resource for
the classical tradition in architecture*

When you become a member of the Institute of Classical Architecture, you not only support its educational mission but also gain access to the Institute's wide range of programs and publications:

- Annual Journal: THE CLASSICIST
- Annual Conference
- Lecture and Salon Series
- Travel Programs
- Summer Program in Classical Architecture
- Book Series

Basic professional-level membership in the Institute is \$50; higher levels of membership are available that support its ongoing educational programs. Send check directly to the Institute at the address below, or for more details log onto the Institute website at

www.classicist.org

THE INSTITUTE OF
CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE
225 Lafayette St., Suite 1009
New York, NY 10012

Telephone (917) 237-1208 Fax (917) 237-1230
e-mail: institute@classicist.org
website: www.classicist.org

WRITE IN NO. 1340

- Hand-Carved Quality
- Corbels
- Finials
- Columns & Capitals
- Newel Posts & Balusters



- Call or Fax for Free Catalog
- Special orders welcome
- Custom Designs, Patterns, and Wood Species Also Available

WoodLINE
Manufacturers of fine Wood Products

1521 W. 14th Street, Long Beach, CA 90813
Tel: (562) 436-3771 Fax: (562) 436-8891

WRITE IN NO. 5240

MORE CHOICES IN VENETIAN PLASTER

The continuing popularity of Venetian plaster wall finishes is spawning two major trends: a proliferation of products and applicators serving a broader clientele, and sophisticated variations created by artisans. Our tips from insiders on quality workmanship and products will help you choose from a crowded field.

by Kim Lovejoy

Venetian plaster, stucco Veneziano, marmorino, encaustic — do these words conjure up visions of aged stucco walls in earth tones, or perhaps smooth, polished translucent plaster surfaces? "Venetian plaster" is a generic American term for modern versions of Italian plasters offered by numerous distributors under a host of trade names and applied by decorative painters and specialized plasterers in residential and commercial interiors.

For centuries, northern Italy has been a center for extraordinary plasterwork, including the exquisite polished "marmorino" made from aged lime putty and marble dust. These labor-intensive finish plasters demand exacting skills perfected over years of practice. They set to a hard, durable finish over months of curing and must be applied to an absorbent substrate like stucco, plaster or masonry.

Roughly two decades ago, new synthetic plasters that were much easier to use were developed in northern Italy and employed in swanky commercial interiors in cities there. Made primarily of plaster, marble dust, pigment, and acrylic resin in a water base, the material could be applied quickly on surfaces like painted drywall found in new construction. Instead of a gradual lime-plaster cure, the synthetic plasters dry by evaporation, with hardness determined by the resins. In the hands of decorative painters using special tools it yields surfaces with a rich depth of color, subtle modulations, and a silky sheen.

"Encaustics" with buffed wax coatings gained their name from their visual connection to ancient hot wax painting.

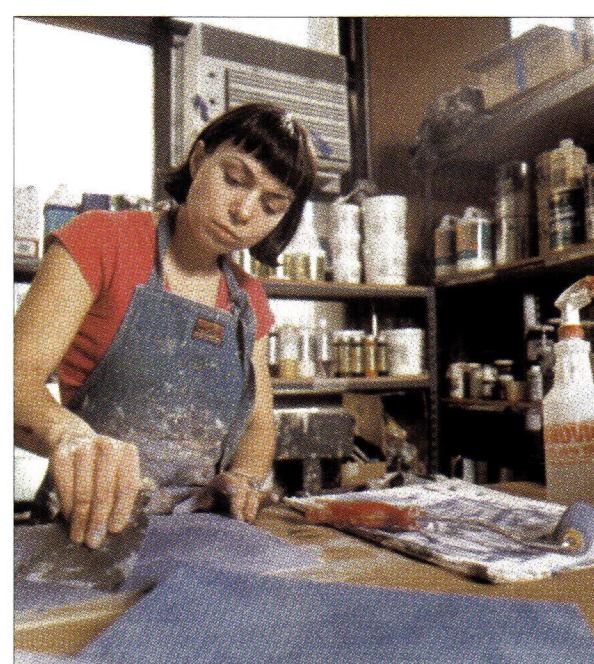
These materials caught the attention of decorative painters from North America studying and traveling in Italy in the 1980s. Various European products were gradually imported by distributors in the U.S. and Canada; most are sold by the bucket in different color bases for tinting by the artisan or in premixed colors. "Kolcaustico," introduced by Sepp Leaf Products and now distributed by Rosebrand, is said to have been the first Venetian plaster manufactured in the U.S. and has gained a loyal following for its ease of use, with a consistency like mayonnaise.

The versatility of the synthetic Venetian plasters and encaustics afforded freedom for artistic imaginations. Pigments, metallic powders, sands, crushed or powdered stone and waxes can be added to achieve many different effects. The material can be rolled on, brushed on like paint, incised, burnished with thin metal blades, combed, stenciled, embossed, distressed, coated with tinted wax, glazed, and stained. Venetian plaster finishes have become very popular in both high-end residences and commercial interiors as a textured finish with a lustrous sheen and depth of color, without a strong pattern.

An influx of new products from Europe in the last few years features lime-based "natural" plasters incorporating slaked lime and aggregates such as



Bunny Williams Design chose red Venetian plaster applied by EverGreene Painting Studios to make a bold statement in a New York townhouse. The surface is burnished and waxed for a silky sheen and resistance to soiling. Photo: O Whitney Cox



Melissa Hart of EverGreene Painting Studios demonstrates the use of a thin metal blade or spatula, one of the steps in making a conventional synthetic Venetian plaster finish on a sample board. Photo: O Whitney Cox

crushed limestone and marble dust, usually with polymer resins in the mix so that they adhere to a sealed surface. These materials handle and cure differently than the synthetics. Among them are the Texston Company's "Texston-Venetian" and "Texston-Marmorino," imported from Israel and used extensively on the West Coast; the Dolci & Les Trois Matons product line distributed by Designed Finishes in Boise, Idaho. Keim Mineral System's "Venetian," which is being introduced this year, should spark curiosity as an entree from the venerable German manufacturer of high-quality mineral paints. Some cementitious products with various stone, sand and mineral aggregates are being marketed with the finer Venetian plasters. They have a coarser, thicker texture and weathered appearance, like stone or stucco.

With all of these manufactured products on the market, can you still get old-fashioned Italian plastering done in North America? Yes, but not everywhere. SourceLists in *Traditional Building and Period Homes* are a good place to look for ornamental plasterers. Boro Plastering in N.Y. is one example of an established firm in the U.S. that is experienced at marmorino finishes in high-end residences. Owner Gary Annino made a distinction between modified Venetian plaster products that decorative painters can handle, and materials that require artisans skilled in the trowel trades of fine lime plasterwork.

How to Choose an Artisan and Evaluate Workmanship

With the proliferation of products and classes around North America, anyone can try their hand at Venetian plaster finishes and go into business. Interior designers tend to develop long-term relationships with individual artisans and established firms who provide reliable quality work. "The field is getting flooded by applicators," reports Gary Annino. "Clients look for the lowest price, but I urge them to consider that they'll be looking at the wall for a long time. Few people know what a quality job looks like."

Consider your aesthetic expectations and your budget. Are you looking for an off-the-shelf finish with less expensive products, or a meticulous original design using the finest materials? How can you choose the right person for your project among the host of artisans and contractors? The following pointers come from discussions with veteran decorative painters and managers at EverGreene Painting Studios, Boyd Reath and Boro Plastering in New York.

Track Record, Longevity and Professionalism.

Does the firm have a record of quality workmanship, supported by references? Choose artisans with substantial experience using the products shown on their samples, so they fully understand its properties and

continued on page 66

The largest selection of genuine gold and metal leaf for the gilder.

The source for KOLCAUSTICO,
the designer's choice for Venetian Plaster



The craftsman's source for leaf and gilding materials.

Call to discuss your next gilding project.

381 PARK AVENUE SOUTH, NEW YORK, NY 10016
212-683-2840 Fax: 212-725-0308 Orders 1-800-971-7377

WRITE IN NO. 2880

E D I L E

True Venetian Plasters

stucco veneziano

marmorino

marminto

grassello lime plaster

antica calce



LICENSED DISTRIBUTOR

toll free 1 888 878 6102

WRITE IN NO. 8049

Boro Plastering Corporation

* PLAIN * TINTED
* VENETIAN & ORNAMENTAL PLASTERING
* WORLD CLASS RESIDENCES

ESTABLISHED 1937

1182 BROADWAY, NEW YORK, NY 10001
TEL: 212-684-3242 FAX: 212-684-3243

WRITE IN NO. 825

THE INSTITUTE OF
CLASSICAL
ARCHITECTURE
and
SOTHEBY'S
INSTITUTE OF ART
present

FOUR VIEWS OF THE CLASSICAL INTERIOR 1769-2001

WEDNESDAY, JUNE 20
Mr. David Garrard Lowe
The Gilded Realm: Stanford White's Classical Interiors

WEDNESDAY, JUNE 27
Mr. John Blatteau
American Classical Interiors:
Past, Present and Future

WEDNESDAY, JULY 11
Mr. J. Thomas Savage
Restoring a Pre-Revolutionary
Classical Masterpiece: The Miles
Brewton House in Charleston

WEDNESDAY, JULY 18
Mrs. Bunny Williams
Classical Influences In My
Rooms and Gardens

*Each lecture to begin at 7pm, preceded
by a cocktail reception at 6pm*

SOTHEBY'S INSTITUTE OF ART
1334 York Avenue at 72nd Street • New York City
Lecture \$25; \$80 for the series; free for Members of The Institute of Classical Architecture
For further information or to reserve seats, please call
The Institute of Classical Architecture at (917) 237-1208

Create Beauty
with Faux Effects®



Faux Effects, Inc. Manufacturing Office Headquarters, Vero Beach, Florida



Create Custom
Decorative Effects...

- Color Washing
- Marbles
- Old World
Textures
- Crackles
& Ageing
- Verdigris
- Metallics



Browse the complete
product selection at
The Faux Store.
Choose from superior
waterbase decorative
finishing materials and
helpful books & tools.

Shop forAqua™
Products
“On-Line”

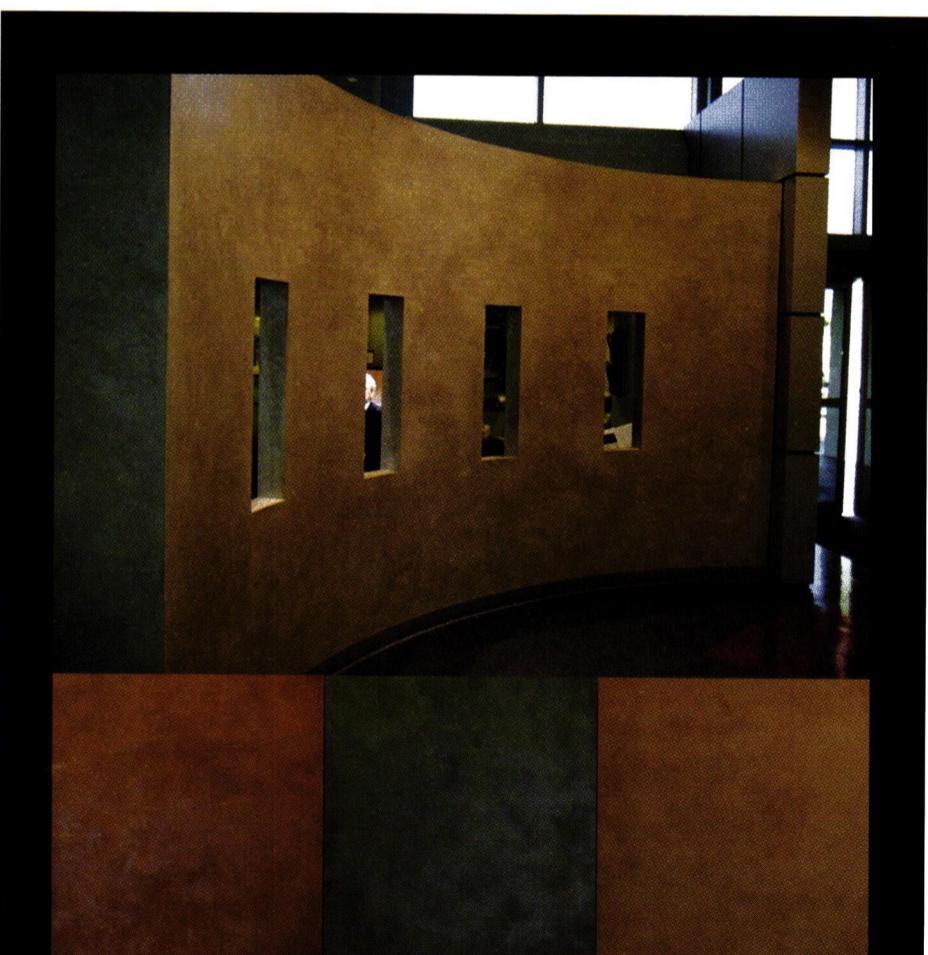
OPEN 24 HOURS
EVERY DAY!
www.fauxstore.com



FAUX EFFECTS INC., • 1-800-270-8871

• www.fauxfx.com • www.aquafinishing.com

WRITE IN NO. 4690



Hopper Finishes

www.hopperfinishes.com

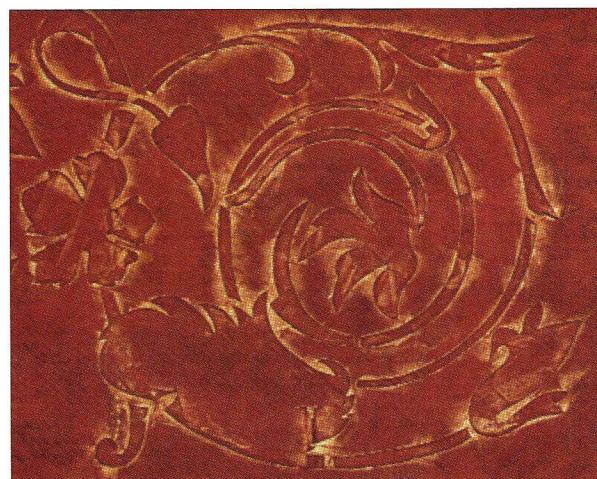
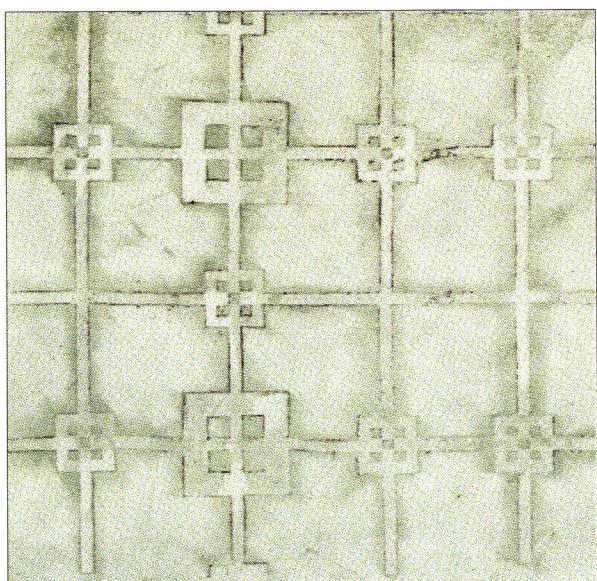
302 S. 30th Street

Phoenix AZ 85034

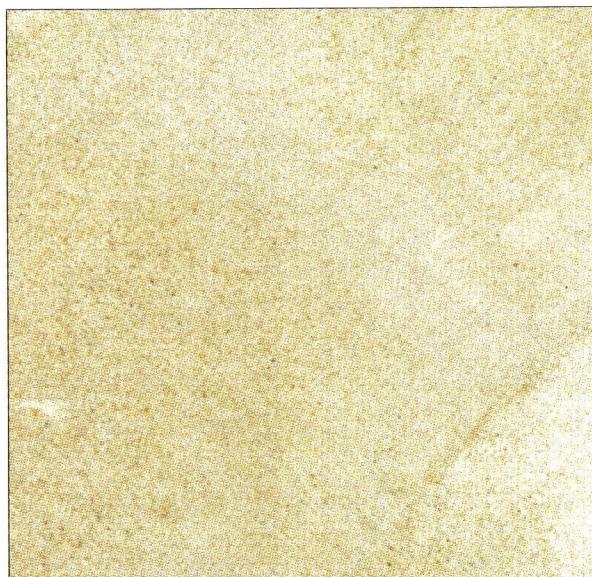
Phone 602.273.1338

The leading installer and importer of fine specialty plaster finishes
including Algalite Plasters, Tierrafino Natural Earth Clays, and Hopper Venetian Finishes.

WRITE IN NO. 8066



Top to bottom: A selection of original encaustic plaster finishes developed by artists at EverGreene Painting Studios: a stenciled Chinese tile pattern with a tinted wax coating; a foliate pattern in relief highlighted by gold wax; an aged stone look; a burnt orange stenciled pattern with green undertones.



TexSton-Veneciano is a product for interior use by artisans to produce the typical Venetian plaster look of smooth translucency resulting from multiple thin layers of material applied using thin blades.



TexSton-Marmorino, distributed by the TexSton Company in tinted or custom colors, is made from crushed marble, lime, sand and acrylic polymers—a modern version of polished stucco that can be applied to resemble natural stone.

are confident of its performance. Inquire about business practices and behavior on the job site: Do the artisans show up when they say they will, complete work according to the schedule, and clean up after themselves? Is the firm properly insured? Will they be around to repair and match the finish if it is damaged? The artisan should keep records of the formulation used for each job.

Evaluating the Quality of Completed Work. A small sample panel doesn't tell you anything about the artisan's technique in a room. Try to visit actual jobs completed by the same artisans, although access to private residences can be difficult — or at least ask about standards of workmanship. Photographs rarely capture the depth of color and refinement of details. Look at the consistency of the finish across walls and rooms — depth of color, consistent texture or pattern, and sheen. You should see the effect achieved by multiple thin layers, not thick globs. Another revealing sign of skill is the neatness of edges at ceiling and wall corners, window surrounds, and moldings. Built-up ridges are sloppy.

Custom Capabilities. Does the artisan have limited experience based on courses and packaged materials, or the ability to custom-design and color-match a finish to suit your decor?

Evaluating Samples. People begin choosing finishes by looking at a selection of small samples on rigid boards. Choose from materials that are suitable for the substrate and environmental conditions at your site. The artisan's samples give you a glimpse of his or her techniques, versatility and skill with different materials, and taste. If you see a finish you like, find out if it's practical within your budget, and if the artisan has the capacity to produce that kind of finish consistently on a wall. Typically, a client has an effect in mind, sees a sample he or she likes, and asks for a version in a color and texture to match the decor of a room. The artisan will then make custom samples for that job. Samples should be evaluated after drying because the color changes. Also look at the effect on sheen of protective sealers that may be recommended for certain products (see "Maintenance and Repair" below for more information).

Once approved and specified, the sample panel, or a larger sample executed on a wall, is the standard for the rest of the job. The artisan is responsible for matching the color tonalities and textures of the approved sample.

Staffing the Job. Does the firm have experienced artisans available when you need them? If it is a large job, can they produce consistently high-quality finishes over a large area in the time frame you require?

Costs

The major factor affecting the price per square foot is the labor to set up, apply the finish, and clean up. The cost of materials is secondary but can be a decisive influence — a middle-of-the-road imported

Venetian plaster can cost \$50-\$60 for a gallon covering about 200 square feet; with pigments, metallic powders, and tools on top of that. Here's what artisans tell us about pricing jobs.

Prep Work. The client needs to know what level of prep work is required and what it will cost. Decorative painters expect to start their work after the surfaces have been prepared by a straight painter. Most materials are applied over a clean, dry surface sealed with a flat latex primer tinted to match the color of the specified finish. It's easy in new construction — sheetwork with taped seams, skim coated, sanded, and primed is a good surface. The smoother and shinier the finish, the smoother the wall surface has to be before application. Anne Reath of Boyd Reath points out that in an old house with plaster walls and beat-up woodwork, the cost of prep work can be prohibitive. "Most owners have a vision in their mind of Venetian plaster walls with a smooth sheen. But think about how walls and woodwork will be juxtaposed. I recommend a rustic, distressed look if surfaces aren't going to be in mint condition."

Complexity of Finish. Taking a conventional bladed finish using one color of synthetic Venetian plaster in several layers as a yardstick, several decorative painters in New York indicated that an average price range for this kind of basic job is \$15-\$17 per square foot. Add more for extra colors, metallics, and special patterns. Very fancy finishes may be priced in the \$25-\$30/sq.ft. range or higher depending on the situation. \$6-10/sq.ft. is considered low-end. Lime plaster finishes that require more laborious techniques are priced higher per square foot than jobs using products that are quicker to apply. And different localities have different price scales.

Materials. Specific treatments and the materials used to create them vary considerably in cost, coverage, method of application, and durability. Protective coatings are recommended for some products, either for aesthetic purposes or for protection. Dean Sickler of Duncan Studios in Chatham, N.J., advises that a sealer is a necessity for cheaper synthetic Venetian plaster products with a lower resin content that may never harden to a strong surface and may wash off with water.

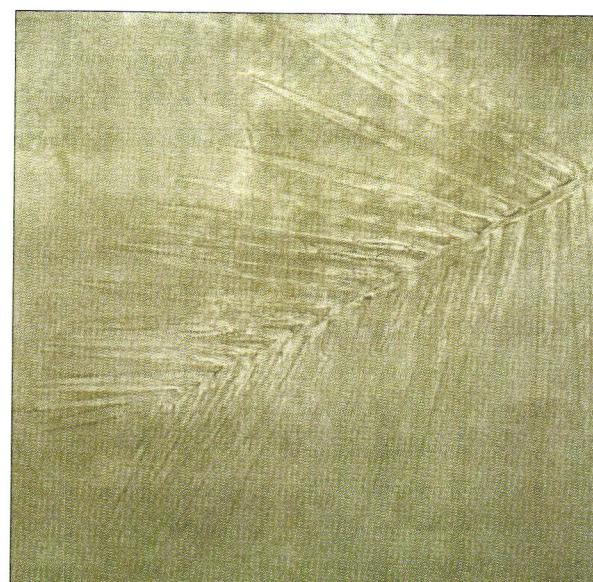
Size and Complexity of Surfaces. Interiors with many windows, corners and details that require careful edges, or a small job like a bathroom, will cost more per square foot than large expanses.

Maintenance and Repair

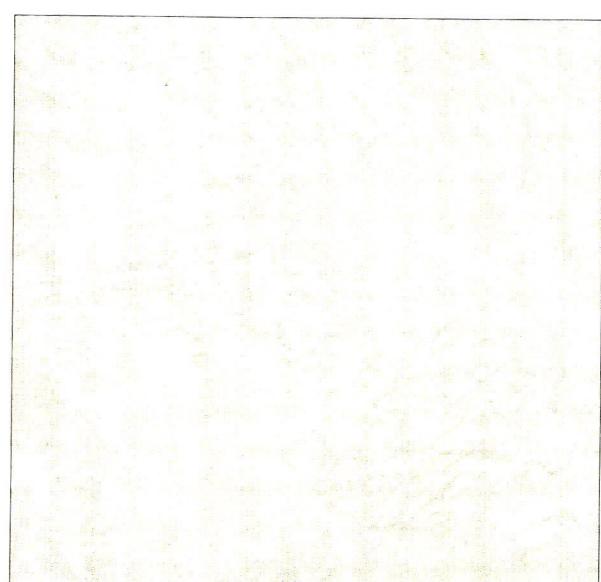
"The questions most frequently asked by clients are about maintenance," reports Robin Roi of EverGreene Painting Studios, who has been creating Venetian plaster finishes for twenty years. An uncoated finish dries to a hard surface that is durable, but tends to absorb water and dirt. Fingerprints can leave a grimy build-up and splashes can stain. For protection and easy maintenance,



Touch's of Illusion applied a decorative textured finish throughout the staircase and common areas of a residence in the Chicago area.



"Eve," one of the wallpapers in Studio E, Inc.'s Venetian Plaster/Encaustic Collection, won an award for design excellence from Design Journal in 2000



"Venetian Stone" is Ritins Studio's newest product, available in subtle colors and textures that emulate weathered or polished limestone, sandstone, or stucco.

sealants are recommended for some products.

For example, encaustic finishes are typically designed to be coated with one or more coats of a special wax, buffed by hand or machine for sheen. It usually can be wiped clean easily with a soft rag dampened by plain water, or a mild solution of water and liquid soap. If desired, every few years a new coat of wax can be applied and buffed. In the Kolcaustico product literature, a water- or oil-based sealer is recommended to protect against prolonged exposure to moisture, abrasion, rough treatment, and cleaners that contain ammonia. Ritins Studio of Toronto often applies a clear satin acrylic top-coat with a spatula and burnishes it.

Ask the artisan and review product literature about cleaning and repair methods for the particular products you are considering, before making a final choice of finish. Ease of maintenance and replacement could be an important factor, depending on the function of the room and the length of time you expect to keep the finish.

Repairs. Damage to wall surfaces from impact (scratches and gouges) or liquids (leaks from the exterior or stains that penetrate a coating) require professional repair. The area must be sanded down and the finish re-applied by an experienced artisan to match the existing colors and technique, Robin Roi explains. This is one reason why it's advisable to choose a firm that is likely to be around in the future and keeps records of its formulas for each job. The expense of repairs should also influence where Venetian plaster is applied; the safest bet is locations where the walls are unlikely to be scraped or stained.

Replacement and Reversibility. Eventually an owner may want to change to a different wall surface. You should ask at the outset what would be involved if you wanted to change to different color, paint over a finish or remove it entirely. For instance, a wax coating must be stripped by wiping with mineral spirits or paint thinner before the wall can be painted. Complete removal of a finish applied directly to the wall requires sanding and scraping.

Venetian Plaster is Available on Wallpaper, Too

EverGreene Painting Studios, Inc., has made Venetian plaster available on wallpaper through its new product development company, Studio E, Inc. The "Venetian Plaster/Encaustic Collection" is one of four collections of couture wallpapers hand-painted by Studio E's artists in New York. Layers of tinted Venetian plaster are applied to heavy paper to achieve a rich translucence and subtle color modulations, exactly like finishes applied directly to a wall. Thirty-nine patterns and colors evoke aged stucco, smooth stone, raw woven silk, snakeskin, and florals, made by rubbing, tooling, embossing, polishing, and buffing.

"Our ability to create custom colors and patterns and produce them quickly in our New York studio appeals to architects and interior designers who want a distinctive look," says Studio E's President,

Christina Grinnell. "In our first year of business, fifty per cent of our orders were custom." The wallpapers are designed for use in both contract and residential interiors from traditional to contemporary. Studio E's "Encaustic Collection" is available through the trade and can be seen at designer showrooms nationwide; for locations call Studio E at (212) 244-2800.

Wallpapers are a convenient and less costly alternative to the effort of contracting for an artisan, offering the ease of shopping from a showroom for hand-painted decorative finishes and ordering by the roll for shipment anywhere with short lead times. Of course, you still need to hire a professional paper-hanger. It can be removed and changed at a whim, more easily than a finish applied directly to the wall. And if you have the foresight to purchase extra wallpaper when you buy rolls for a room, you'll have some of the same batch on hand to replace a run if your wall gets damaged.

Current Trends

Both Andrejs Ritins in Toronto and Robin Roi of EverGreene in New York cited the current popularity among designers of "very minimal looks in neutral colors — umpteen shades of beige." Pearlescent and metallic finishes, made by adding mica or metallic powders to synthetic Venetian plaster, are also a dominant theme. James Prochnik of Modeworks in New York says that his clients have been asking for "layers of light and dark, a more minimal look, with less texture and more emphasis on luminosity and sheen."

"Every client wants something unique," says Ms. Roi. "Even though we have hundreds of samples in our studio, we always come up with something special for each interior." When neutral beiges and creamy whites are chosen, she gives them a distinctive, tactile character with subtle textures and sheen. Embossed, stenciled and inlaid finishes are a specialty of Ms. Roi, who manipulates materials to suggest ghostlike, emerging patterns. Her wish? That more clients would choose vivid colors, taking advantage of the richness and depth that can be achieved with these materials: soft or fresh greens, Mediterranean blues and terra cottas are her favorites.

Ritins Studio of Toronto is another major decorative-painting studio that has been developing new techniques and formulations, currently focusing on weathered-stone effects. "People like the antique, worn look," according to Andrejs Ritins. "Some architects and designers consider highly burnished conventional Venetian plaster slick, commercial and overexposed." Ritins' honed, "sueded down" surface, made by sanding with 1200 grit and left unwaxed, is popular among clients in his area who want something different.

"Venetian Stone" is the newest addition to the Ritins Studio Series of water-based products for artisans, offered for the first time in spring 2001. The stucco-like material with an aggregate additive resembles aged limestone or sandstone. It can be



A sanded, suede-like finish is a specialty of Ritins Studio of Toronto, shown here on the flat walls. Ritins' "Venetian Stone" finish was applied on the moldings.

applied quickly to both flat and curved surfaces (including moldings and columns) using a spatula, roller, brush, or sprayer, and burnished with a blade. Ritins' products also include release plasters with integral colors to achieve the effect of crumbled, aged marble or smooth, polished marble — rather like a faux scagliola with aged portions. See the website, www.ritins.com, for more information about the studio, products and workshops.

The infinite variations possible with Venetian plaster products in the hands of decorative artists suggest that these finishes will continue to appeal to an audience attuned to contemporary design trends: the desire for individuality and the hand-made; sensuous textures; transparency and translucency. The versatility of these products in achieving surfaces that look old or new — from weathered stone to pearlescent white or lustrous red — bridges boundaries between contemporary and traditional settings. The greatest challenge to the designer is choosing among the ever-growing array of products, retinue of artisans, and variations in treatments. ♦

Acknowledgements: Jeff Greene and Robin Roi, EverGreene Painting Studios, New York; Christina Grinnell, Studio E, Inc., New York; Andrejs Ritins, Ritins Studio, Toronto; James Prochnik, Modeworks, New York; Gary Annino, Boro Plastering, New York; Jim Boyd and Anne Reath, Boyd Reath Studios, New York; Gary Dulock, Touch's of Illusion, Chicago; Dean Sickler, Dundean Studios, Chatham, NJ; The TexSton Company.

BUYING GUIDE TO VENETIAN PLASTER

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted suppliers of Venetian Plaster in our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 11 suppliers you'll find on this page because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

Boro Plastering Corp.
212-684-3242; Fax: 212-684-3243
1182 Broadway
New York, NY 10001

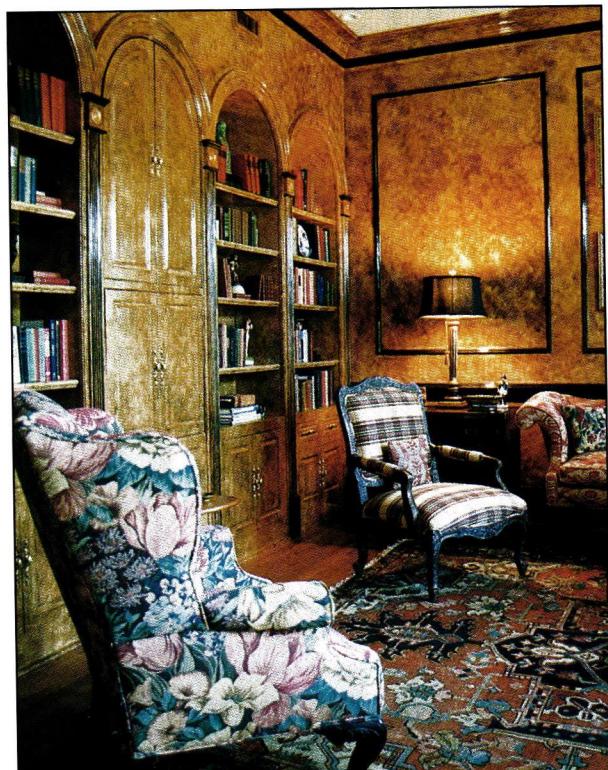
Founded in 1937, plasterers of distinctive residences: specializing in run-in-place crown moldings, cast ornamental moldings, groin vault and barrel ceilings, domes, niches, conventional 3-coat plastering, and veneer plastering. Write in No. 825

Edile, Ltd.
416-462-9101; Fax: 416-462-1485
www.edile.com
Toronto, Ont., CANADA M4K 1A2

Distributor of San Marco products for Venetian plaster and European stuccos. Marmorino, grassello, marminto, stucco veneziano, and more. Write in No. 8049

EverGreene Painting Studios
212-244-2800; Fax: 212-244-6204
www.evergreene.com
New York, NY 10001

Studio with extensive experience in paint restoration, and design and execution of trompe l'oeil, fine art, exterior murals. Paint research, analysis, documentation; scagliola, sgraffito, ornamental plasterwork, Venetian plaster. Conservation. Write in No. 2460



FAUX EFFECTS offers specialized product lines for Venetian plaster as well as for faux and decorative painting and gilding. Write in No. 4690

Faux Effects, Inc.
800-270-8871; Fax: 561-778-9653
www.fauxfx.com
Vero Beach, FL 32960

Custom waterbase products; plaster lime wash; decorative and faux-finishing products. Custom pigmented canvas murals and imprints. Designer workshops in FL, NY, NV, KY, IL, WA, CA, TX, NE. Versatile Venetian Gem plaster products and systems. Everything from distressed plasters to high-gloss contemporary plasters, including metallic and iridescent. Write in No. 4690



HOPPER FINISHES has been one of the leading importers and manufacturers of plaster finishes in the U.S. for more than 60 years. Write in No. 8066

Hopper Finishes
602-273-1338; 602-275-5933
www.hopperfinishes.com
Phoenix, AZ 85034

One of the leading boutique manufacturers and importers of specialty plaster finishes in the U.S. This 60 year old family business has served major architectural and design firms because of its ability to meet "visual demands" of clients such as the Getty Museum or the Escada Boutiques. Representing Algalite lime plasters and paints for Milan, Italy; Tierrafino natural clay plasters for Amsterdam; Hopper venetian finishes from Phoenix, AZ. Write in No. 8066

Kremer Pigments, Inc.
212-219-2394; Fax: 212-219-2395
www.kremer-pigmente.de
New York, NY 10012

Paint raw materials for historic & contemporary finishes, from traditional European earth pigments and plant dyes to oils, waxes, resins, & glues. Specializing in materials for lime wash, natural surfaces, decorative plaster. Venetian plaster, colorants and pigments, stucco products, and wax products. Write in No. 4910

Odyssey Designs
212-410-2973; Fax: 212-410-2996
49 E. 96th St. Ste.7c
New York, NY 10128

Venetian plaster specialists; work in large-scale areas. Special wall treatments, Venetian plasters, and decorative painting services.

Old Pueblo Adobe Co.
520-744-9268; Fax: 520-744-8057
www.oldpuebloadobe.com
Tucson, AZ 85743

Authentic Southwestern building materials: adobe, vigas, latillas, hand-hewn timbers, corbels, carved posts, mantels, saguaro ribs, ocotillo fencing, flagstone, antique doors, and Mexican antique furnishings and accessories.



SEPP LEAF PRODUCTS' range of finishing products includes a huge array of gilding materials and gold leaf, as well as their popular Kolcaustico line of Venetian plaster. Write in No. 2880

Sepp Leaf Products, Inc.
800-971-7377; Fax: 212-725-0308
www.seppleaf.com
New York, NY 10016

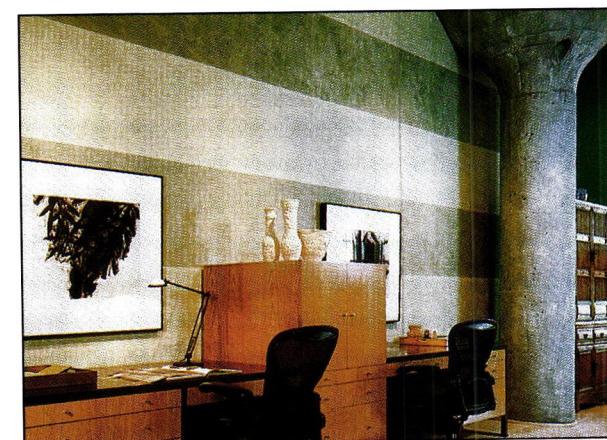
Suppliers of KOLCAUSTICO for Venetian plaster, MIXOL universal tints, LIBERON waxes and finishing products, and BONUM surface finishing tools. Full range of genuine gold, silver, and metal leaf; mica powders, gilding supplies, and tools. Consultation services for architectural gilding and the use of all products are available. Venetian plaster workshops. Write in No. 2880



The range of architectural surfaces available from THE TEX-STON CO. includes this muted Venetian plaster. Write in No. 922

The Texston Company
818-768-7676; Fax: 818-768-6773
www.texston.com
Canoga Park, CA 91304

Architectural surfaces and surfacing processes; Venetian plaster workshops. Products including Marmorino plaster, Venetian plaster, colorants & pigments, plaster tools, stucco products, and wax products. Write in No. 922



WILLEM RACKE STUDIOS used Grasello plaster in horizontal stripes for this loft project in San Francisco.

Willem Racke Studio
415-252-1341; Fax: 415-252-7259
www.willemrackestudio.com
San Francisco, CA 94103

Specialists in applying marmorino and grassello plaster finishes in a wide variety of colors. Can create special stenciled effects using plaster. Decorative-painting services.

**For BULK REPRINTS of ARTICLES OR ADS from this issue, CONTACT:
THE REPRINT DEPT.
(800) 259-0470**

BUYING GUIDE TO DECORATIVE PAINTING

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted Decorative Painters & Muralists in our database of companies suitable for our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 30 artisans you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.



ANN HOOE's collection of decorative stencils includes #144, an ornamental cartouche measuring 16 x 39 in. Write in No. 8046

Ann Hooe, Ltd.
847-853-1056; Fax: 847-853-1057
P.O. Box 9
Winnetka, IL 60093

Manufacturer of unique designer stencils for interior decoration; wide variety of stencils are available for use on walls, ceilings, floors, and furniture, including a large selection of grid patterns. Catalog \$5. Write in No. 8046

Anything But Plain
281-444-2070; Fax: 281-444-2081
www.anythingbutplain.com
Houston, TX 77066

Licensed school of decorative finishes for professionals and non-professionals. Products include Aqua Finishing Solutions, scaffolds, ladders, stencils, & books. Write in No. 8047

Art Essentials of NY, Ltd.
800-283-5323; Fax: 914-368-1535
P.O. Box 38
Tallman, NY 10982

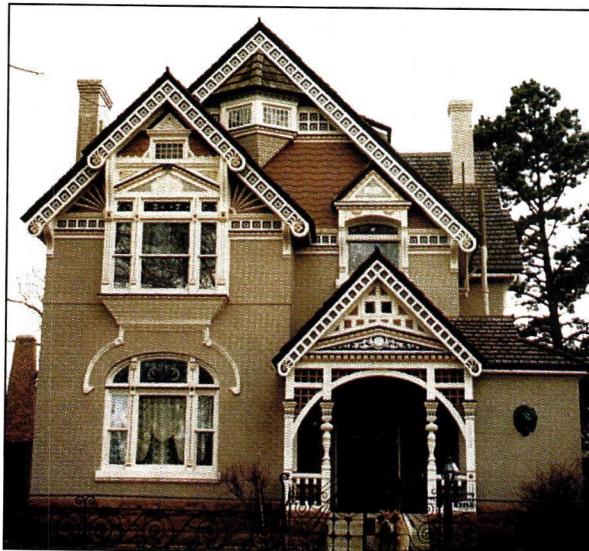
Importer and national distributors of gold leaf, metal leaf, and leafing accessories; also, distributors of 22K sign-gold vinyl.

Cheryl Parsons Designs
305-663-3232; Fax: 305-663-4737
6740 SW 117 St.
Miami, FL 33156

Custom murals, trompe l'oeil, and ceiling paintings on canvas for simple installation in residential and commercial properties. Also, specialty finishes and wall treatments: glazing, ragging, strie, color washing, faux finishes. Write in No. 8048

Color People
800-541-7174; Fax: 303-308-0123
www.colorpeople.com
Denver, CO 80205

Custom exterior color schemes for houses, businesses, Main Streets, and townscapes; consultation through photos via mail; some on-site consulting. Write in No. 5470



THE COLOR PEOPLE designed the period paint scheme for this historic residence in Denver, Colo. Write in No. 5470

Dianne Warner Studio
212-639-9006; Fax: 212-888-9519
1495 Third Ave.
New York, NY 10028

Studio produces murals and painted floors. Floors are painted to resemble inlaid European floors and are long-lasting and resilient. Wall & ceiling murals, frescoes, trompe l'oeil, and painted floors. Write in No. 903

Easy Leaf Products
800-569-5323; Fax: 877-386-1489
www.easyleaf.com
Los Angeles, CA 90038

Wholesale supplier of both genuine and composition gold-leaf products; full range of gilding accessories and related products; in stock for immediate delivery.

Edile, Ltd.
416-462-9101; Fax: 416-462-1485
www.edile.com
Toronto, Ont., CANADA M4K 1A2

Distributor of San Marco products for Venetian plaster and European stuccos. Write in No. 8049



This hand-painted and gilded sideboard, encaustic wall, and trompe l'oeil mosaic floor are all the work of EVERGREENE PAINTING STUDIOS. Write in No. 2460

EverGreene Painting Studios
212-244-2800; Fax: 212-244-6204
www.evergreene.com
New York, NY 10001

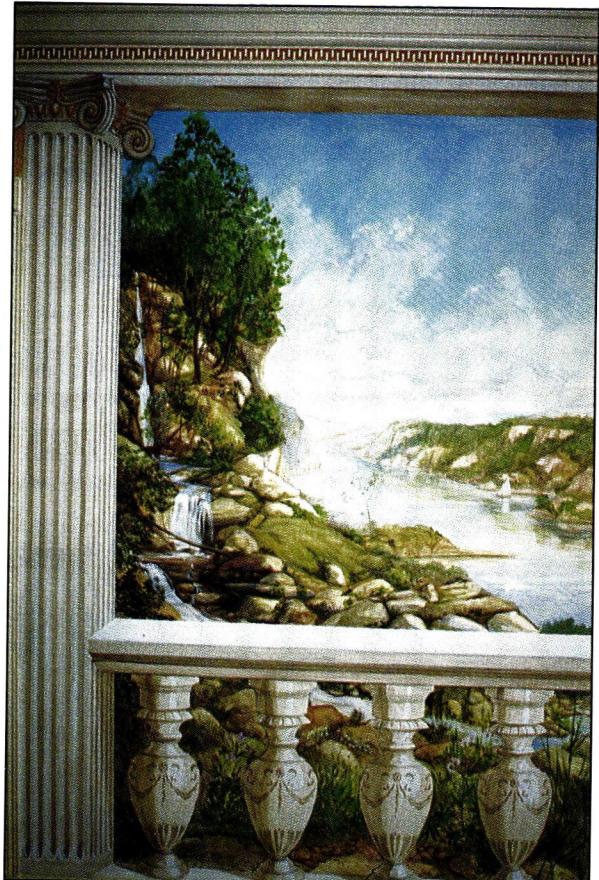
Studio with extensive experience in paint restoration, and design and execution of trompe l'oeil, fine art, exterior murals. Paint research, analysis, documentation; scagliola, sgraffito, ornamental plasterwork. Conservation. Write in No. 2460

Faux Effects, Inc.
800-270-8871; Fax: 561-778-9653
www.fauxfx.com
Vero Beach, FL 32960

Custom waterbase products; plaster lime wash; decorative and faux-finishing products. Custom pigmented canvas murals and imprints. Designer workshops in FL, NY, NV, KY, IL, WA, CA, TX, NE. Versatile Venetian Gem plaster products and systems. Everything from distressed plasters to high-gloss contemporary plasters, including metallic and iridescent. Write in No. 4690

♦ ♦ ♦
Faux Like A Pro
617-254-8898; No Fax
www.fauxlikeapro.com
Brookline, MA 02445

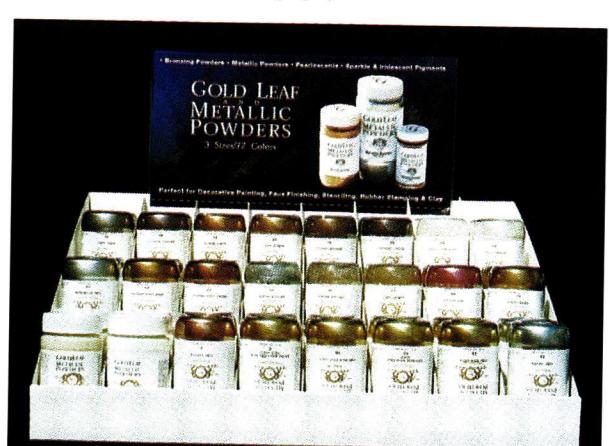
A proprietary line of water-based faux-finish and decorative-painting products. Professional-quality glaze, Venetian plasters, metallic paints, crackle systems, brushes, tools, books, videos and more.



This landscape with trompe l'oeil details was painted on canvas by James Gloria of JAMES GLORIA/DECORATIVE ARTS.

Gloria Decorative Arts
570-897-5880; Fax: Same as phone
1965 Totts Gap Road
Bangor, PA 18013

Creating custom murals on-site or on canvas for installation. Murals for walls, ceilings. Scagliola inlays. Frescoes.



Comprehensive lines of metallic powders, pigments, and gilding supplies are available from GOLD LEAF & METALLIC POWDERS.

BUYING GUIDE TO DECORATIVE PAINTING

Gold Leaf & Metallic Powders, div. of NEI
888-465-3716; Fax: 877-386-1489
www.goldandmp.com
Los Angeles, CA 90038

Full range of bronze and mica powders; 80 different powders to give finishers a wide variety of colors and shades. Powders are easy to use and can be mixed with acrylic, shellac, varnish, wax, and lacquer. For gilding, graining, stenciling, faux finishes, glazing, and more.

◆◆◆
Grand Illusion
973-770-0206; Fax: 973-627-3909
6 Altenbrand Ave.
Mount Arlington, NJ 07856

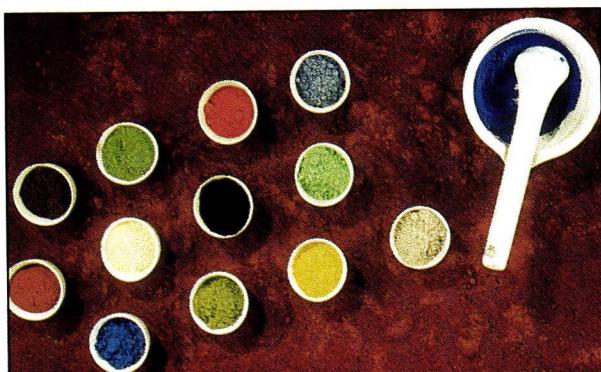
Design and execution of murals, trompe l'oeil, frescos, exterior murals, geometric & pictorials, floors & walls, painted on site or on canvas. Also, decorative painting and project consultation. Worldwide travel. Write in No. 4770

◆◆◆
Guided Imagery
650-324-0323; Fax: 650-324-9962
2995 Woodside Rd., #400
Woodside, CA 94062

Specializing in trompe l'oeil murals. Serving the hospitality, architectural, and design markets, they combine ancient methods and today's state-of-the-art computer technologies to create compelling artistic environments. ADEX and Kodak innovator awards for our limited edition Mural collections & artistic borders. Write in No. 2527

◆◆◆
Heidi Holzer Design & Decorative Work
203-831-9559; Fax: 203-831-8229
205 Liberty Square, 3rd floor
East Norwalk, CT 06855

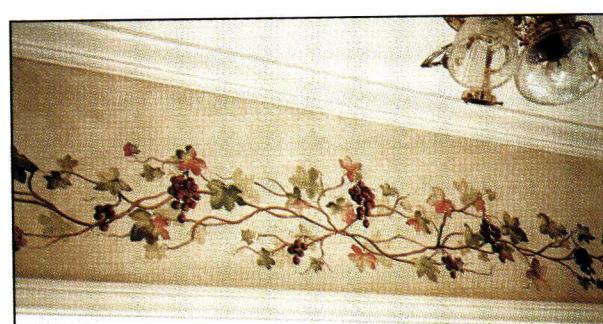
Studio specializes in custom finishes utilizing Venetian and other plaster techniques, faux stone, floor designs, gilding of ceilings and trim, aged finishes, and all other faux finishes. Gilding, graining, stencils, faux finishes & glazing, Venetian plaster, paint conservation, and specialty-plaster techniques.



The range of natural-earth pigments, and other traditional painting and finishing materials, available from KREMER PIGMENTS is enormous. Write in No. 4910

◆◆◆
Kremer Pigments, Inc.
212-219-2394; Fax: 212-219-2395
www.kremer-pigmente.de
New York, NY 10012

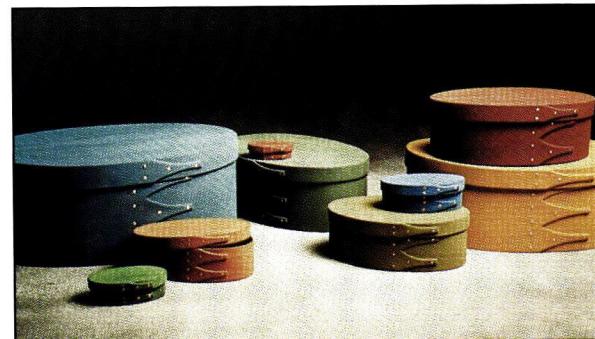
Paint raw materials for historic & contemporary finishes, from traditional European earth pigments and plant dyes to oils, waxes, resins, & glues. Specializing in materials for lime wash, natural surfaces, decorative plaster. Venetian plaster, colorants and pigments, stucco products, wax products, and lime washes. Write in No. 4910



LYNN BREHM DESIGNS creates stencils for decorative accents, such as this botanical design, and trompe l'oeil effects.

Lynn Brehm Designs
888-744-3699; Fax: Same as phone
www.natural-accents.com
Carlsbad, CA 92009

Exquisite decorator stencils for creating murals, accenting rooms, and decorative effects. Also, how-to videos on clouds and stenciling. Wall/ceiling murals, trompe l'oeil, children & whimsical murals.



These Shaker boxes were painted with authentic milk paint from THE OLD FASHIONED MILK PAINT CO. Write in No. 5880

◆◆◆
Old Fashioned Milk Paint Co.
978-448-6336; Fax: 978-448-2754
www.milkpaint.com
Groton, MA 01450

Genuine milk paint, available in 16 colors, including barn red, mustard, Lexington green, federal blue, oyster white, pitch black. Just add water and mix to desired consistency for use as a wash, full cover coat, or for stenciling. Write in No. 5880

◆◆◆
Optic Nerve Art Corp.
614-876-1994; Fax: 614-876-2216
www.opticnerveart.com
Columbus, OH 43228

Interior and exterior fine decorative painting, murals, and trompe l'oeil. Manufacturer of custom wallcoverings. Specialties include gilding, faux finishes, lettering, encaustic, and historical sculpture and frame reproductions. Write in No. 8058

◆◆◆
Past Perfect
508-429-7752; Fax: 508-429-5997
1212 Washington St.
Holliston, MA 01746

Historically informed painted finishes, interior-decoration consulting, and color schemes. Custom murals and stenciling. Re-creation and restoration of painted surfaces on walls, architectural elements, and furniture. Gilding, graining, faux finishes, historically-appropriate color schemes, murals. Specializes in Rufus Porter-style American folk murals.

◆◆◆
Real Milk Paint Co. / Siever Products
800-339-9748; Fax: 215-538-5435
www.realmilkpaint.com
Quakertown, PA 18951

Centuries-old traditional formula consisting of 14 vibrant colors of real milk paint authentically reflects the color palette of the Early American settler. The environmentally safe water-based formula will last over two weeks after mixing earthy colors. Write in No. 8059

◆◆◆
Reed's Gold Leaf
615-865-2666; Fax: 615-865-1903
www.rframe.com
Madison, TN 37115

Gold-leafing supplies, instruction videos, instruction books; also, hands-on classes.

◆◆◆
Rutter Decorative Painting Studios, Lynne
415-282-8820; Fax: 415-282-8275
www.lynnrutter.com/
San Francisco, CA 94107

Design and production of fine-art murals; trompe l'oeil; intricate stenciling, decorative & faux finishes, using a variety of media and techniques. Specialist in the restoration and re-creation of historic painted ornament. Wall and ceiling murals. Write in No. 4710

◆◆◆
Sepp Leaf Products, Inc.
800-971-7377; Fax: 212-725-0308
www.seppleaf.com
New York, NY 10016

Suppliers of KOLCAUSTICO for Venetian plaster, MIXOL universal tints, LIBERON waxes and finishing products, and BONUM surface finishing tools. Full range of genuine gold, silver, and metal leaf; mica powders, gilding supplies, and tools. Consultation services for architectural gilding and the use of all products are available. Venetian plaster workshops. Write in No. 2880

◆◆◆
The Texston Company
818-768-7676; Fax: 818-768-6773
www.texston.com
Canoga Park, CA 91304

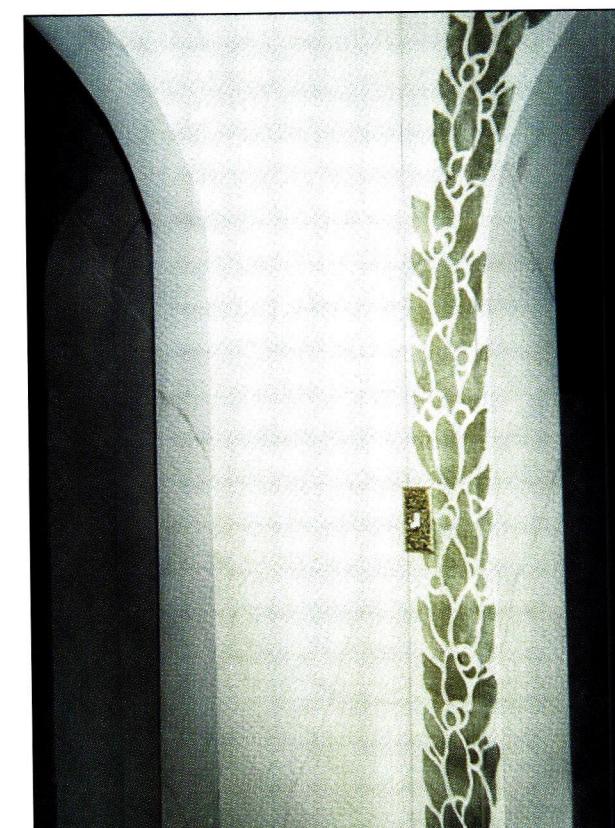
Architectural surfaces and surfacing processes; workshops on these techniques, including Venetian plaster. Products including Marmorino plaster, Venetian plaster, colorants & pigments, plaster tools, stucco products, and wax products. Write in No. 922



Classical elements are combined with the floral and the figurative in THOMAS STREET STUDIOS' decorative-ceiling design.

◆◆◆
Thomas Street Studio
401-724-3300; Fax: 401-724-3369
163 Exchange Street
Pawtucket, RI 02860

Creates images from small, highly detailed panels to large-scale murals. Work includes figurative, realistic, landscape tile. Wall & ceiling murals, trompe l'oeil, & faux finishes.



A 1920s Art Deco rose stencil from TOUCH'S OF ILLUSIONS is seen here on a faux-stone entryway. Write in No. 2221

◆◆◆
Touch's Of Illusions
708-453-2230; Fax: 708-453-2231
7442 W. Grand Ave.
Elmwood Park, IL 60707

Specialist in the restoration and preservation of the decora-



Authentic Colonial and Shaker Finish
The Original - Nothing else even comes close!
 IN POWDER FORM ADD WATER AND MIX
 16 DEEP, RICH COLORS
*environmentally safe - non-toxic - odor free
 easy to use - long wearing - won't fade*
 Our web site is a treasure trove. See the colors, examples and tech.data at www.milkpaint.com.
The Old-Fashioned Milk Paint Company, Inc.
 Dept. PH P.O. Box 222 Groton, MA 01450-0222
 Telephone (978) 448-6336 FAX (978) 448-2754

WRITE IN NO. 5880



W.H. Coe, Inc. is a supplier, both nationally and internationally, of 10K - 24K gold leaf products. Gold, silver, copper, aluminum and imitation gold are available in rolls or books (surface or patent) along with rota gilding supplies. Technical support is also available.

W.H. Coe, Inc.
 50 Love Lane, Hartford, CT 06112
 860-524-8811
 fax: 860-249-5934
www.whcoe.com

WRITE IN NO. 399



WRITE IN NO. 5470

Touch's of Illusion Inc.
 • Painting and Restoration •
 • Specializing in the Art of Faux •
 • Preservation and Discovery of Architectural Decorative Finishes •
 Theaters • Churches
 Murals • Marbleizing • Gold Leafing
 Woodgraining All Types of Painted Finishes
GARY DULOCK
 Phone: 708-453-2230 Fax: 708-453-2231
 7442 W. Grand Avenue Elmwood Park, IL 60707
 E-Mail: amx007@aol.com

WRITE IN NO. 2221



WRITE IN NO. 4910

**WWW.
 period-homes.com**
 The Internet Gateway
 to Historical
 Products & Services
 for Residential
 Architecture

WRITE IN NO. 8059

GOT?

Real Milk Paint
 1800's Formula Hand Made in
 Bucks County, PA
 Real Milk Paint has brought the vibrant colors of the past to the present. Available in 14 traditional colors. Environmentally safe. Non-toxic, Long shelf-life, Weather resistant and Non-fading. FREE Brochures available upon request.
 800-339-9748
www.realmilkpaint.com

SPRING 2001 • 71 • PERIOD HOMES

EVERGREENE
 PAINTING STUDIOS INC

*Innovations in
 Decorative Painting
 inspired by the past*

EverGreene Painting Studios, Inc. is an atelier of fine artists who create original finishes for beautiful environments--from the jewel-of-a-room to large public spaces nationwide

Contact EverGreene to discuss how decorative finishes can enhance your interior

450 W. 31st Street, 7th Fl.
 New York, NY 10011
 212.244.2800 Fax 212.244.6204

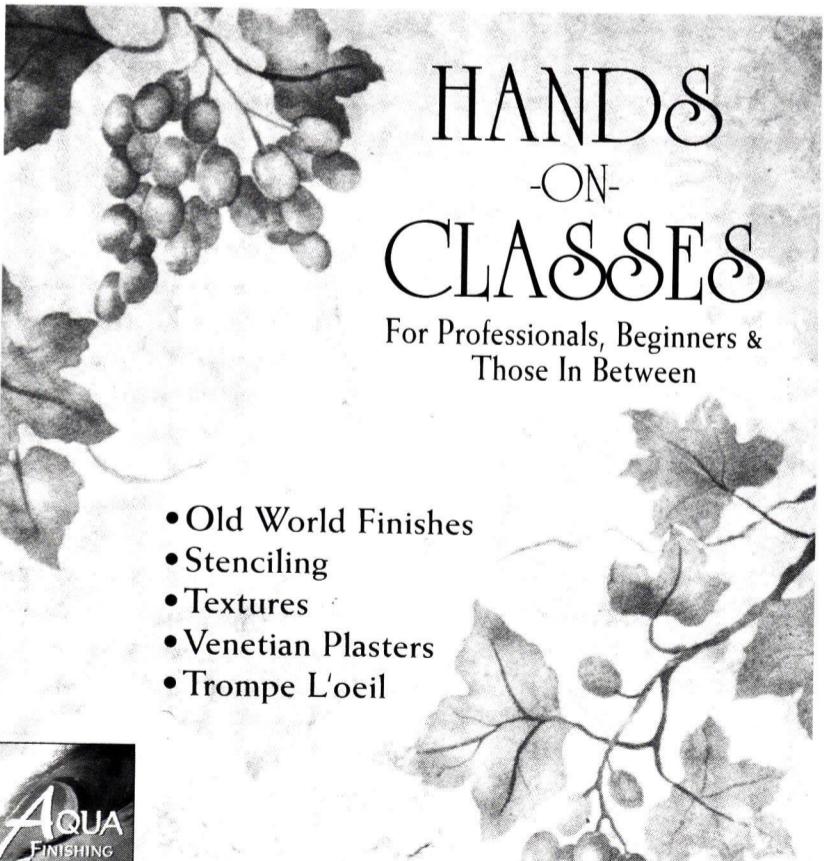
323 South Blvd.
 Oak Park, IL 60302
 708.358.1642 Fax 708.358.1656

E-mail info@evergreene.com
www.evergreene.com

WRITE IN NO. 2460



ANYTHING BUT PLAIN
 SCHOOL OF DECORATIVE FINISHES



**HANDS
 -ON-
 CLASSES**

For Professionals, Beginners &
 Those In Between

- Old World Finishes
- Stenciling
- Textures
- Venetian Plasters
- Trompe L'oeil



Call for class schedule
 281-444-2070 FAX: 281-444-2081
www.anythingbutplain.com

NATIONALLY REOWNED TEACHERS
 LICENSED TRAINING CENTER • MEMBER OF ASID, TAID, & SALI
 CERTIFIED ARTISAN • HOUSTON, TX

WRITE IN NO. 8047

BUYING GUIDE TO DECORATIVE PAINTING



This classical trompe l'oeil bust, which features intricate faux-marble effects, is the work of VIGINI STUDIOS.

tive finish on architectural elements and the design of interior faux finishes. Also gold leafing, murals, wood graining, marbleizing. Write in No. 2221

Vigin Studios, Inc.
210-212-6177; Fax: 210-212-6183
www.viginstudios.com
San Antonio, TX 78215

Specialist in the classical techniques of mural painting and trompe l'oeil. Internationally recognized school offering faux-finishing workshops worldwide. Comprehensive line of water-based paint products and artists' materials. Hosts of International Decorative Painters Conference in 2002.

W.H. Coe, Inc.
860-524-8811; Fax: Same as phone
www.whcoe.com
Hartford, CT 06112

Supplier of German, Italian, and American leaf products: gold, silver, aluminum, varigated and compo. Rolls also available in gold, silver and compo as well as gilding supplies. Free catalogue and technical support. Write in No. 399



Gilding supplies of the highest quality are the specialty of W.H. COE. Write in No. 399

WEB ADDRESS BOOK

A&M Victorian Decorations	www.aandmvictorian.com	DMS Studios	www.dms-studios.com	Nichols Bros. Stoneworks, Ltd.	www.nicholsbros.com
AA-Abbingdon Affiliates	www.abbingdon.com	Drums Sash & Door Co.	www.drumssashanddoor.com	NIKO Contracting Co.	www.nikocontracting.com
Aardvark Antiques	www.aardvarkantiques.com	Duluth Timber Co.	www.duluthtimber.com	Nixalite of America	www.nixalite.com
Adams Architectural Wood Products	www.adamsarch.com	Durable Slate Co.	www.durableslate.com	Nocera Art Tile	www.art-tile.com
Agrell & Thorpe, Ltd.	www.agrellandthorpe.com	E.R. Butler & Co.	www.erbutter.com	Normandy Imports, Ltd.	www.normandyimports.com
Allied Window	www.invisiblestorms.com	Echeguren Slate	www.echeguren.com	North American Stone Company	www.northamericanstone.com
Am-Dia	www.victorianmarketplace.com	Edile, Ltd.	www.edile.com	North Prairie Tileworks	www.handmadetile.com
American Slate Co.	www.americanslate.com	EGI Exhibitions	www.restorationandrenovation.com	Northern Roof Tile Sales Co.	www.northernrooftile.com
Anything But Plain	www.anythingbutplain.com	Eron Johnson Antiques	www.eronjohnsonantiques.com	Old California Lantern Co.	www.oldcalifornia.com
Architectural Accents	www.cupolaconstruction.com	Escort Lighting	www.escortlighting.com	Old Fashioned Milk Paint Co.	www.milkpaint.com
Architectural Grille	www.archgrille.com	Eternit	www.eternitusa.com	Old World Stoneworks	www.oldworldstoneworks.com
Architectural Iron Designs	www.archirondesign.com	Eugenia's Antique Hardware	www.eugeniasantiquehardware.com	Olde Mill Lighting Ltd.	www.oldemillighting.com
Architectural Paneling	www.apaneling.com	Evergreen Slate Co.	www.evergreenslate.com	Optic Nerve Art Corp.	www.opticnerveart.com
Architectural Products by Outwater	www.outwater.com	Faubourg Lighting	www.faubourglighting.com	Passaic Millwork	www.resourcenet.com/pami.htm
Architectural Sculpture & Restorations	www.architecturalplaster.com	Faux Effects	www.fauxfx.com	Pave Tech	www.pavetech.com
Architectural Timberworks	www.archtimb.com	Fine Architectural Metalsmiths	www.fischerrandjirouch.com	Period Lighting Fixtures	www.periodlighting.com
ARK II Timber Frames	www.ark2timberframe.com	Fischer & Jirouch	www.florentinecraftsmen.com	Pine Hall Brick	www.pinehallbrick.com
Arasco Mfg. Co.	www.arscomfg.com	Florentine Craftsmen	www.palaver.com/flowerframers	Private Garden Greenhouse Systems	www.private-garden.com
Artistic Railings	www.artisticrail.com	Flower Framers	www.frankmorrow.com	R. Walsh Gate & Railing	www.robertwalsh.com
Arts & Crafts Period Textiles	www.textilestudio.com	Frank Morrow Company	www.freshfishtiles.com	Renaissance Conservatories	www.renaissance-online.com
Authentic Designs	www.authentic-designs.com	Fresh Fish Ceramic Tiles	www.gabys.com	Romancing The Woods	www.rt-winc.com
Badger Village Blacksmithing	www.badgervillage.com	Gaby's Shoppe	www.gaf.com	Roof Tile & Slate Co.	www.claytile.com
Ball & Ball	www.ballandball-us.com	GAF Materials Corp.	www.concentric.net/~gsstudio	Rossato Giovanni — Vicenza Stone Sculpture	www.vicenzastone.com
Baltica	www.baltica.com	Gerald Siciliano	www.goodtimestove.com	Lynne Rutter Decorative Painting Studios	www.lynnrutter.com
Barn People	www.thebarnpeople.com	Good Time Stove Co.	www.sno-guard.com	Sandwich Lantern	www.sandwichtlantern.com
Bear Creek Lumber	www.bearcreeklumber.com	Gough & Bros. SnoGuards	www.homeideacenter.com	Scotia Slate Products, Ltd.	www.scotiaslate.com
Berger Bros. Co.	www.bergerbros.com	H.I.C. Window & Door Co.	www.haddonstone.com	SculptureWorks	www.sculptorjohnston.com
Bevolo Gas & Electric Lights	www.bevolo.com	Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.	www.hahnswoodworking.com	Seibert & Rice	www.seibert-rice.com
Bill's Custom Metal Fabrications	www.ironcrafters.com	Hahn's Woodworking Co.	www.stevenhandelmanstudios.com	Sepp Leaf Products	www.seppleaf.com
Bird-B-Gone	www.bird-b-gone.com	Handelman Studios	www.hazelmere-ind.com	Shutter Depot	www.shutterdepot.com
Bird-X	www.bird-x.com	Hazelmere Industries, Ltd.	www.hbgcolumns.com	Slate and Copper Co.	www.slateandcopper.com
Bolection Door	www.bolectiondoor.com	HB&G	www.historicdoors.com	Smooth-On	www.smooth-on.com
Boston Turning Works	www.bostonturningworks.com	Hendricks Woodworking	www.hilltopslate.com	Sonrise Woodcarving Studio	www.sonrisewoodcarving.com
Bradbury & Bradbury Art Wallpapers	www.brADBURY.com	Hilltop Slate	www.historicalarts.com	Southern Aluminum Company	www.saf.com/persys
Brass Baron	www.brASSBARON.com	Historical Arts & Casting	www.hughloftingtimberframe.com	Spartan Architectural Columns	www.architectural-columns.com
Carlisle Restoration Lumber	www.wideplankflooring.com	Hugh Lofting Timber Framing	www.copperlamps.com	Stone Forest	www.stoneforest.com
Casa Di Murano	www.casadimurano.com	Hutton Metalcrafts	www.indital.com	Stone Magic Mfg.	www.stonemagic.com
CemcoLift/LGIS America	www.cemcolift.com	Indital, USA	www.islandpostcap.com	Stonex Cast Products	www.sunbilt.com
CertainTeed Roofing Products	www.certainteed.com	Island Post Cap	www.jlsutters.com	Sunflower Showerhead Co.	www.deweyusa.com/deweyusa
Chadsworth's 1.800.Columns	www.columns.com	J&L Shutters	www.jsussmaninc.com	Sunshine Rooms	www.sunshinerooms.com
Champlain Stone, Ltd.	www.champlainstone.com	J. Sussman	www.jenkinspublishing.com	Swan Secure Products	www.swansecure.com
Charleston Lighting & Mfg.	www.charlestonlighting.com	Jenkins Publishing	www.kalehdesign.com	Tanglewood Conservatories, Ltd.	www.tanglewoodliving.com
Chimney Pot Shoppe	www.chimneypot.net	Kaleh Design Collection/Stone	www.kayneandsoncustomhardwareinc	Tartaruga Design	www.tartarugadesign.com
Christopher Thomson Ironworks	www.christhompson.com	Kayne & Son Custom Hardware	www.kingsland-shutters.com	Teal Cedar Products	www.tealcedar.com
Classic Gutter Systems	www.classicgutters.com	King's Chandelier Co.	www.kingsland-shutters.com	Texas Carved Stone	www.txmetal.com
Classic Lighting Devices	www.classiclightingdevices.com	Kingsland Co. Doors & Windows	www.kingsland-shutters.com	The Information Refinery	www.constructionlists.com
Classic Plaster Studios	www.clasplas.com	Kingsland Co. Shutters	www.kingsland-shutters.com	The Millwork Store	www.millworkstore.com
Claystone	www.claystone.com	Dimitrios Klitsas—Fine Wood Sculptor	www.klitsas.com	The Texston Company	www.texston.com
Color People	www.colorpeople.com	Koch Woodcarving	www.kkwoodcarver.com	Tile Roofs	www.tileroofs.com
Conant Custom Brass	www.conantcustombrass.com	Kremer Pigments	www.kremer-pigmente.de	Timberlane Woodcrafters	www.timberlanewoodcrafters.com
Conrad Pickel Studio	www.pickelstudio.com	Leeland's Slate Roof Repair	www.landels.com	The Information Refinery	www.inforefinery.com
Coppa Woodworking	www.coppawoodworking.com	Limestone Concept	www.limestoneconcept.com	Trellis Structures	www.trellisstructures.com
Copper House	www.thecopperhouse.com	Liner Rolpanit	www.linrol.com	Tropic Top/Symbol	www.thatchart.com
Coppersmythe, Josiah R.	www.jrcoppersmythe.com	London Tile Co.	www.londontile.com	Vande Hey-Raleigh Mfg.	www.vhr-roof-tile

Stone-Floor Restoration

Architects, designers, and others who require the services of a stone contractor are often confused as to what to look for or what questions to ask. The terminology used by stone professionals can be like trying to learn a new language. The following is a brief introduction to this terminology and an understanding of the process that may be used in restoration work.

by Frederick M. Hueston, *The National Training Center for Stone and Masonry Trades*

So your client's marble is dull, scratched, and in major need of help! Out come the Yellow Pages; you call several marble refinishers and set up a few appointments. How hard can it be? You'll get a few estimates, check some references, and select a professional to do the job. And then the fun begins. The first professional tells you the floor needs to be ground flat in order to be fixed properly. The second professional tells you he can hone and polish it — no grinding required. The third professional tells you he only needs to recrystallize the marble to make it look like new. Now that you're totally confused, how do you determine who's right? What's the difference between grinding and honing? What are polishing and "recrystallization"? This article will arm you with enough knowledge of these terms to help you ask the right questions. Once you are familiar with the processes used to restore marble and stone, we will provide some guidelines and suggest some questions to ask the stone contractor.

Why Does Stone Shine?

When stone becomes dull and scratched, it obviously loses its shine and luster. At this time the stone needs to be refinished and polished to restore the shine it had originally. Why does stone shine, and how can a lost shine be recovered?

All stone is taken from the earth in the form of raw blocks. Explosives, large saws, and specialized equipment are used to extract the stone from the earth. The stone blocks are then cut into thinner, more-easily-handled pieces called slabs. The slab itself is then processed, depending on the intended use of the stone. It may be given a high shine and shipped to a stone fabricator who will ultimately turn it into a table, vanity top, or whatever; or it may be transformed by some very expensive and sophisticated equipment into tiles for installation on floors or walls.

GRIT-SIZE TABLE

The following table lists some of the most common grit sizes used in the stone industry.

GRINDING					HONING / POLISHING												
16	24	36	60	120	220	400	600	800	1,800	2,000	3,000	3,500	5,000	8,500			

The deep shine we see on polished stone is achieved by rubbing the stone with a series of abrasive materials. The process is very similar to sanding a piece of wood. The stone is rubbed with a coarse, abrasive grit, followed by finer and finer grits until the stone becomes smooth. The scratches left behind from one grit are removed by the next, creating finer and finer scratches. The process continues until the scratches are microscopic. The shine on the stone is achieved by abrading the surface to the point at which it becomes extremely smooth and starts to develop some reflectivity. The shine on the stone is thus a product of optics. This same optical property can be observed on a pond. When the wind is blowing and the surface of the pond is wavy, it becomes difficult to see a reflection; when the air is still and the pond is calm, a deep reflection can be observed. So in order to achieve a deep shine on stone, all that really needs to be done is to smooth it until it shines.

Sounds simple enough, doesn't it? Unfortunately, the techniques employed to achieve this degree of smoothness require special knowledge and training. This is not friendly territory for the do-it-yourselfer. To help clear up the confusion, let's define some terms, then move on to the all-important issue of selecting a stone professional.

Grinding

Grinding is the process by which the surface is aggressively sanded to remove large stocks of the stone. This process is usually recommended when stone tiles are uneven. *Lippage* is the term given to uneven tiles that are set higher than one another. Grinding is recommended when the lippage exceeds 1/16 in. or if one desires a completely flat floor.

There are some very good reasons for grinding a stone floor flat. A flat floor is easier to maintain since there will be no lips where dirt can accumulate. The grinding process, if performed correctly, will also eliminate depressed grout joints; the grout will be even with the tile's surface so that dirt and grime can't accumulate. A completely flat floor eliminates all unevenness, giving the floor the illusion of being monolithic (one piece). Most stone flooring installed prior to the 1950s was ground flat immediately after installation. Note: A stone floor does not necessarily have to be ground to remove scratching; a skilled craftsman can repair it without grinding.

Just as there are several good reasons for grinding, there are also some disadvantages. Grinding is very time-consuming and expensive; with some hard stones, such as granite, it can take an entire day to grind 50 sq.ft. The grinding process is



Shown: a highly polished travertine lobby floor. This floor was honed and polished using the powder-polishing method described.

also be quite messy. Honing is performed to remove scratches but will not remove lippage (uneven tiles). It can, however, round the edges of the stone, giving a smoother finish to the edge. The honing process is usually achieved with the use of diamond abrasives, although some contractors prefer silicon-carbide bricks or screens. Which abrasive is used is not as important as the skill level of the craftsman. Honing can leave a stone floor with very little shine, although some stones

continued on following page

also very messy. Copious amounts of water are needed to grind a stone floor and produce a heavy slurry of stone and water. If adjacent areas such as carpet, wallpaper, baseboards, etc., are not protected properly, water damage may occur.

Before deciding on grinding, all the above considerations must be carefully weighed. Discuss the options with the stone specialist.

Honing

Honing is the process of smoothing the stone with the use of abrasives. Although not as aggressive as grinding, it does require the use of water and can



Marble flooring can last a very long time if maintained properly. This marble floor is in the U.S. Capitol building, and thousands walk across its surface every day. The floor dates back to the time of John Adams and before!

will acquire a satin-like luster at very high hones.

You may hear the contractor talk about grit sizes when discussing the honing-and-grinding process. The table on page 73 will serve as a guide to grit sizes. The lower the number, the more aggressive the grit. Generally, grinding is what takes place using any grit of 60 or below; honing begins at 120 and proceeds upwards. A skilled craftsman will generally stop at a 400 or 600 on marble before polishing. With granite, it is usually necessary to proceed through to the highest grit. Some craftsmen may choose to polish with diamond abrasives to the highest grit, producing a very high polish, while others may choose to switch from a diamond to a powdered abrasive (see next section). Whichever method is chosen, the final result is what counts.

Polishing

As previously discussed, the high shine observed on stone is the result of smoothing it with fine abrasives. Most craftsmen will use diamond abrasives to hone the stone, then switch to a powdered abrasive to achieve the final polish. Powdered abrasives contain superfine crystals of aluminum oxide or tin oxide. These powders

dimpled appearance; the stone will have a molten, plastic shine. This burned appearance is commonly called "orange peel," for reasons that are obvious to anyone who sees it. If the craftsman orange-peels the floor, he will have to re-hone the floor to remove it. On the other hand, if too little powder is used, the final polish may not be achieved. A good craftsman will be familiar with the powder-polishing technique.

Recrystallization

The term *recrystallization* has entered the language of the marble-polishing field to describe a process used to maintain a shine on marble surfaces. Recrystallization can also be called *vitrification* or incorrectly called *marble polishing*. The procedure has been used in the United States since the 1970s, and has generated some controversy among the experts. Before we discuss the pros and cons of this process, we need to take a look at what it actually entails.

The recrystallization process consists of spraying a fluid onto the marble floor and buffing it in with steel wool under a standard buffering machine. The steel wool generates heat through abrasion and the chemical reacts with the marble, producing a new compound on the surface of the stone.

Sounds simple enough, so why the controversy? Proponents of the process claim the new compound that's formed protects the surface of the stone, adds shine, and may even harden the stone, increasing its wear. Opponents of the process claim that this new compound blocks the stone's ability to "breathe," traps moisture, and causes the stone to rot.

Both sides have put forward convincing arguments, but at this time, the jury's still out. If you opt for recrystallization, it is extremely important that the process be carried out only by trained craftsmen who are thoroughly familiar with it.

One additional note: The recrystallization process can only be applied to marble and limestone. Recrystallization *cannot* be used on granite, quartzite, and sandstone.

Which Process to Choose

It is very difficult for an untrained eye to evaluate your marble floor. Contact a reputable stone refinisher, ask the right questions, and check references. The remainder of this article will offer guidelines to help you select the right contractor.

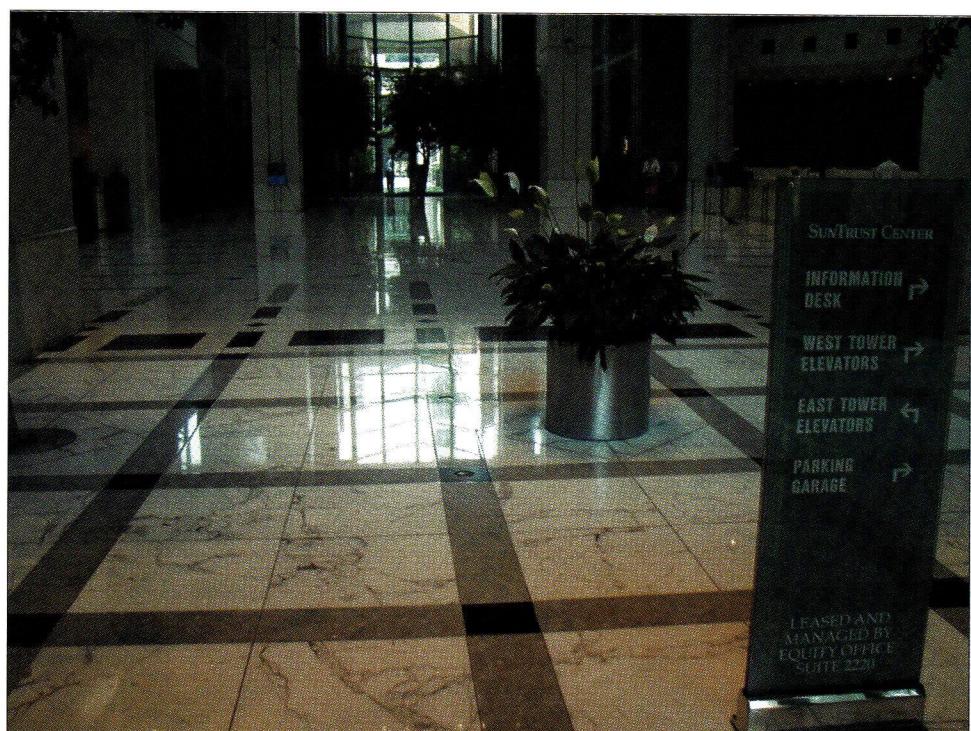
Hiring A Professional

Hiring a professional stone contractor can be difficult. A careful reading of this article should give you enough background to know what a professional is talking about. Here are some points you should definitely cover before arriving at any decision:

I. Before calling any contractor, ask around. Have any of your clients had their marble/tile done recently? Who did it, and were they happy? Call your local stone/tile suppliers and ask whom they'd recommend



All stone flooring is fabricated from blocks extracted from a quarry. Here is a quarry in Carrara, Italy.



Shown: a highly polished marble floor in a high-traffic office building. To keep this floor shiny, the proper maintenance program must be employed.

are usually white, but can be yellow, brown, gray, or black.

The abrasive powder is worked into the stone with a floor machine (buffer) using water and cloth or polyester fiber pads. The powder is worked into a slurry until a polish is achieved. The craftsman removes the slurry with a wet-vac or mop and rinses the floor to remove excess powder. It's a relatively simple procedure, but it requires a good deal of practice for several reasons. Many polishing powders contain a compound known as oxalic acid, which is used to speed the polishing process, but if too much powder is used, the stone can burn. A burned floor has a characteristic

Stone-Maintenance Tips

- Clean stone floors only with neutral cleaners or stone soaps.
- Never use cleaners containing acids (i.e. bathroom cleaners, grout cleaners, tub and tile cleaners).
- Never use vinegar as a cleaner.
- Dust mop floors often to extend life of shine.
- Pick spills up immediately by blotting with a white paper towel or rag.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners, such as Soft Scrub.
- Call a professional restoration company if you experience problems.

for this type of work. Some of the stone/til associations may provide recommendations. And, of course, there is always the Yellow Pages.

2. Once you have located several companies, schedule appointments to receive estimates. Almost every contractor I know will provide a free estimate.

3. When the contractor arrives, explain your concerns and what you are trying to achieve. After all, your client will have to live with the floor every day; the contractor is seeing it for the first time. Give the contractor as much information as possible. What is used to clean the floor? Has the floor been polished? Is there any wax or coating on the floor? If it's a new installation, the contractor will also need to know what materials are on the floor now. Any information will help him decide how to fix the problem.

4. Once the contractor has determined what is needed, ask him or her to explain the procedure that will be used. Are there other options? Reread the section on restoration and polishing and ask specific questions. What polishing process will be used, etc.? A competent contractor should be more than happy to answer any question you may have.

5. A word on negotiating price: Among contractors, as in any occupation, personalities vary widely. Some contractors will negotiate; others will stick to their guns, although if you mention that you are getting two additional estimates, even stubborn contractors may sharpen their pencils. Above all, make sure you're comparing apples to apples. If one contractor is only going to polish and the other is going to grind, the difference in price will be considerable.

6. If possible, obtain a demo or sample. Ask if a free demo can be performed; have it performed in a representative area. It will indicate what the final job will be like. Be reasonable, however; don't expect a contractor to perform a demo if the job is too small.

7. Ask for references, and check them. Many contractors in all fields have references, but you'd be surprised how rarely they are actually checked. Call at least three and ask if the contractor did a good job. Were there any problems, and were they corrected? Were the contractor's employees professional?

8. Does the contractor carry insurance? Ask for proof. Have him show you a certificate of insurance, or, if the job is large enough, have his insurance company send you one. Be sure he carries liability and workers' compensation insurance. Any reputable company will carry both.

9. Once you choose a contractor, schedule the job. Don't be surprised if the contractor is booked for several weeks. Be patient; a good contractor will be busy, and you will have to wait your turn. If you absolutely must have it done now, ask him if he'll book you if he gets a cancellation.

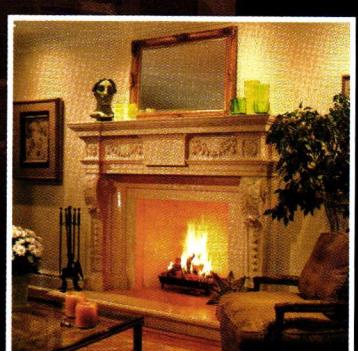
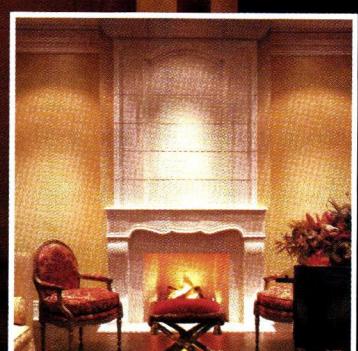
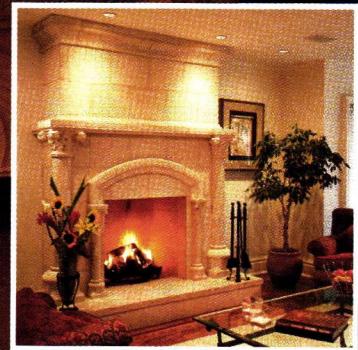
10. Gut feeling — are you comfortable with the contractor? This is much more important than you might think.

Even the best contractors can make mistakes. The difference between a good contractor and a bad one is the willingness to correct those mistakes. ♦

Frederick M. Hueston is a certified stone-restoration specialist and architectural conservator. His company, NTC Enterprises, Inc., of Longwood, Fla., offers consulting on all types of stone and tile installations. Mr. Hueston serves as the Publications and Seminar Director for the Marble Institute of America. He is director of The National Training Center for Stone & Masonry Trades, which offers training seminars, consulting services, installation inspections, specifications and expert witness testimony. Mr. Hueston is the author of over a dozen books on stone, tile care, and restoration, and he has produced several videos on marble polishing and restoration. To reach Mr. Hueston or NTC Enterprises, call 407-834-4800, fax 407-834-6610 or visit their website at www.ntc-stone.com

CORTINA STONE™

MANTLEPIECES & ARCHITECTURAL DETAILS



Tartaruga showroom shown in Indiana Buff with the Sunbury shown in Marone



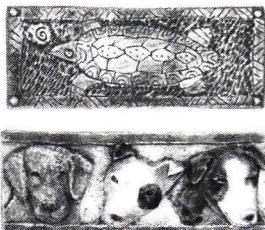
T A R T A R U G A D E S I G N

www.tartarugadesign.com • TEL: (416) 762-0418 • FAX: (416) 762-0232

WRITE IN NO. 5024

Margaret Licha Designs

Handcrafted Wall Tiles



tel/fax: 916-652-7233
www.margaretlichatile.com

WRITE IN NO. 8057

Nocera Art Tile

CLASSIC DESIGN ♦ PAINTINGS
MOLDINGS ♦ BORDERS
FIREPLACE TILE
♦ BY HAND ♦

New: FRESCO COLLECTION

www.art-tile.com
570-729-7946

WRITE IN NO. 6100

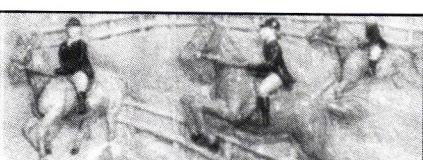
North Prairie Tileworks

Handmade ceramic tile featuring reproductions, chair rails custom colors, reliefs, mosaics, hand painted and accent pieces.

Call or write for a free brochure

612 871-3421 • Handmadetile.com
2845 Harriet Ave South, Mpls, MN 55408

WRITE IN NO. 793



Gooseneck Designs

Designers and Manufacturers
of Handmade Custom Tile



2020 Hughes Shop Road • Westminster, Maryland 21158
tel: 410.848.5663 fax: 410.781.6313 email: goose@qis.net

See us at Coverings Booth #4703
See our photo in the Portfolio Section

WRITE IN NO. 1297

TRADITIONAL DUTCH TILES

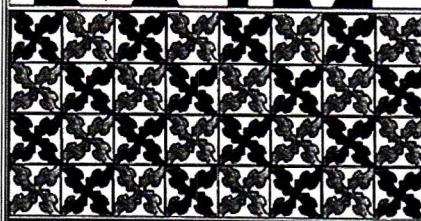
BLUE - SEPIA - POLYCHROME
HANDMADE & HANDPAINTED

AMSTERDAM CORP.

P.O. BOX 397
LITCHFIELD, CT
06759
(P) 860-567-1350
(F) 860-567-1141

WRITE IN NO. 3158

NATIVE



TILE & CERAMICS
CUSTOM HANDMADE DECORATIVE TILES
IN THE SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA TRADITION.
Call for a showroom near you 310-533-8684

WRITE IN NO. 570

LONDON TILE CO.



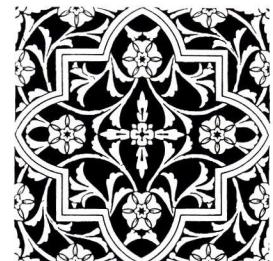
Warmth, Elegance
& Beauty Tough
Enough to Take It.

Earth and fire are wedded in old-fashioned kilns to create a product with natural subtleties of shade, shape and color, and grace and beauty of classic architectural character.

Their natural, kiln-fired charm can stand up to the most demanding commercial, institutional or residential traffic areas.

WRITE IN NO. 500

■ Arts & Crafts Tiles ■ Gothic Revival Tiles



Designs In Tile™

Box 358 • Dept PH • Mt Shasta • CA • 96067
530/926-2629 Color Brochure \$3
www.designsintile.com

■ Neo-Grec Tiles ■ Murals ■ Art Deco Tiles

WRITE IN NO. 250

■ De Morgan Tiles ■ Foliate Tiles ■ Folk Tiles

BUYING GUIDE TO TILE & STONE

About This Buying Guide

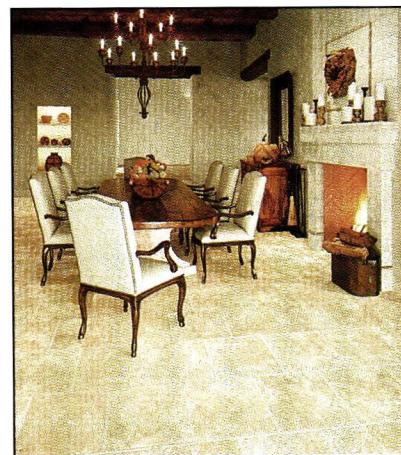
To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted Tile & Stone suppliers from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 51 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.



This beautifully painted ceramic-tile kitchen mural was created by ADRIANO.

Adriano Tile Company
919-967-0946; Fax: 919-942-3619
P.O. Box I
Carrboro, NC 27510

Studio designs and produces handmade, hand-painted ceramic tile for a variety of custom residential and commercial uses.



AMERICAN MARAZZI's Cheyenne floor tile re-creates the look and feel of natural stone.

American Marazzi Tile
972-226-0110; Fax: 972-226-2263
www.am-marazzi.com
Sunnyvale, TX 75182

Glazed ceramic floor and wall tile: rustic, marbleized, and limestone finishes. 12x12, 16x16, 18x18, and 20x20 floor tile; wall tile in 6x6 and 8x10; borders available to complement floor tile.

American Slate Co.
800-553-5611; 92; Fax: 925-977-4885
www.americanslate.com
Walnut Creek, CA 94596

Source of a comprehensive range of quarry-direct slate for roofing and flooring-tile applications. Nationwide shipping. New natural slate; slate-color matching for repairs and restoration. Write in No. 2723

Amsterdam Corp.
860-567-1350; Fax: 860-567-1141
P.O. Box 397
Litchfield, CT 06759

Handmade and hand-painted Dutch tiles made as they were 300 years ago. Colors include blue, sepia, and polychrome. All traditional designs and borders. Custom tiles available, all historically correct. Write in No. 3158



Hand-painted tile from AMSTERDAM CORP. are made in Holland using traditional methods, designs, and colors. Write in No. 3158

Brittany & Coggs
603-742-5122; Fax: 603-742-5174
1 Washington Center, #308
Dover, NH 03820



BRITTANY & COGGS' fine hand-molded ceramic tiles may be combined in any number of decorative motifs.

Full line of hand-molded decorative relief art tile, glazed with an ancient, five-part glazing technique. Many of the glazes match with natural stone. Wall and fireplace tile.



Cera-Mix Studios
512-263-5018; Fax: 512-263-5019
www.cera-mix.com
Austin, TX 78733

High-end contemporary tiles: wall, fireplace, mural, pictorial-mosaic. Over 170 pattern and color combinations. Hand-painted tile.

Champlain Stone, Ltd.
518-623-2902; Fax: 518-623-3088
www.champlainstone.com
Warrensburg, NY 12885

Guillotined and hand-split granite, quartzitic sandstone, and limestone for building veneer, wall stone, flagging, step slabs, and landscape boulders. Natural-stone pavers and flooring. Lintels and hearth pieces. Write in No. 4270



CLAYSTONE's 6x6-in. Mocha Colorstain tiles with contour trim are topped by a spring-leaf patterned splash cap. Write in No. 7940

Claystone
805-388-5248; Fax: 805-388-7298
www.claystone.com
Camarillo, CA 93012

Large handmade architectural tiles in terra cotta and brick red. Also available in 8 earth-tone, color-stain finishes and various glazes. For wall trim, casings, fireplaces, floors. High-end glazed tiles for kitchens & bathrooms, counters & splashbacks. Many styles and sizes. Write in No. 7940

CO.EM Ceramics
847-480-7407; Fax: 847-480-7417
650 Dundee Road, #275
Northbrook, IL 60062

Italian porcelain tile for all commercial and residential uses, floors and walls. Line includes authentic-looking stone replicas in natural, polished, and textured finishes. Trim and special pieces are available for all series. Floor tile.



D&W CERAMICS' animal-motif feature tiles and checkerboard design in earth tones stand out in this kitchen-island application.

D&W Ceramics
303-739-2962; Fax: 303-739-0916
10255 East 25 Avenue, #11
Aurora, CO 80010

Manufacturers of handmade stoneware and earthenware tile, from high-fired stoneware used in swimming pools and exterior locations to delicate earthenware decorative tiles. Custom work, murals, wall, floor, fireplace, countertops.

Designs in Tile
530-926-2629; Fax: 530-926-6467
www.designsintile.com
Mt. Shasta, CA 96067

Specialist in English & American Arts & Crafts tiles & murals. Coordinated borders & field patterns. 3"x6" subway tile/trim. Historic mosaic flooring. Hand-crafted faience tile. Custom murals. Projects design & consultation available. Write in No. 250



B E C O M E A
M E M B E R O F
T H E
I N S T I T U T E
O F
C L A S S I C A L
A R C H I T E C T U R E
The leading educational resource for the classical tradition in architecture

When you become a member of the Institute of Classical Architecture, you not only support its educational mission but also gain access to the Institute's wide range of programs and publications:

- Annual Journal: THE CLASSICIST
- Annual Conference
- Lecture and Salon Series
- Travel Programs
- Summer Program in Classical Architecture
- Book Series

Basic professional-level membership in the Institute is \$50; higher levels of membership are available that support its ongoing educational programs. Send check directly to the Institute at the address below, or for more details log onto the Institute website at www.classicist.org

T H E
I N S T I T U T E
O F
C L A S S I C A L
A R C H I T E C T U R E
225 Lafayette St.
Suite 1009
New York, NY 10012
Telephone (917) 237-1208
Fax (917) 237-1230
e-mail:
institute@classicist.org
website: www.classicist.org

WRITE IN NO. 1340

North American Stone Company, Inc.

Architectural Cast Stone Manufacturers

Fireplace Mantels
Balustrade Systems
Columns • Signage
Caps • Copings
Keystones
Address Blocks
Exterior Elements
Interior Elements
Residential
Commercial
Restoration



WRITE IN NO. 754

**WWW.
period-homes.com**

*Internet Gateway
to Historical Products*

**PERIOD
HOMES**

maintains the central Website for historically styled products and services on the Internet —products used for restoration, renovation, and new construction projects. There's more information and links to historical products than you'll find on any other site.

AMONG THE FEATURES:

- Searchable Product Database with 112 product categories
- 371 companies listed and indexed in the Product Database
- 162 Online product brochures
- Links to 272 Companies and related Organizations
- In-Depth Product Report of the Month
- Lists of Topics in Past and Future Issues
- Most-Requested Articles Online
- E-Mail Order Form for Product Literature

*Log onto —
and then Bookmark
www.period-homes.com*

ROOFING & FLOORING SLATE!

Large inventory of unique and beautiful floor and roof tiles, flagging, sandstone quartzite and dimensional slabs. Imported from India, China, Brazil, Africa and U.S.

Echeguren Slate, Inc.

Nationwide Shipping: (800) 922-0701
www.echeguren.com

WRITE IN NO. 7220



CLAYSTONE

Architectural Ceramics

for THE HOME

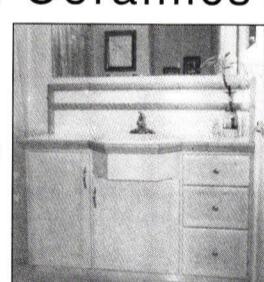
Inside & Out

Call or fax for free catalog

805-388-5248

805-388-7298

www.claystone.com



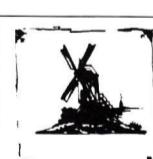
WRITE IN NO. 7940



Fresh Fish
Ceramic Tiles

Norma Hanlon • Kirsten Hanlon
4728 Aldrich Avenue So. Minneapolis, MN 55409
Norma's Studio (612) 824-3325
Kirsten's Studio (612) 824-7604
Fax: (612) 824-1235 www.freshfishtiles.com

WRITE IN NO. 8051



**Genuine
Delft
Tiles**

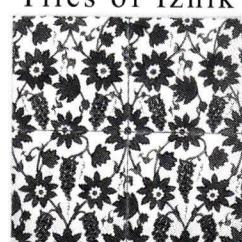
26 different series in Delft Blue or Polychrome, Plain Tiles to match for fireplace, kitchen, backsplash, coffee tables.

Send \$1.00 for brochure
Dutch Products & Supply Co.
166 Lincoln Avenue
Yardley, PA 19067
215-493-4873

WRITE IN NO. 3140

Traditional Turkish Designs for today's Homes

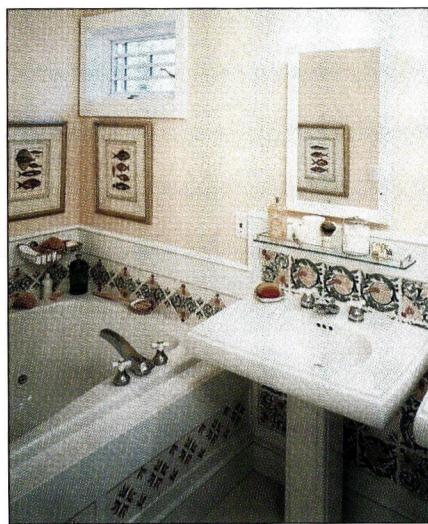
Tiles of Iznik



Decorative tiles, borders, trim
Grape Vine - gr252
Timok International
P.O. Box 13161 □ La Jolla, CA 92039
Tel:(858) 677-0740 www.tilesofiznik.com

WRITE IN NO. 2627

BUYING GUIDE TO TILE & STONE



DESIGNS IN TILE supplied the decorative Victorian foliate tile for this bathroom. Write in No. 250

DMS Studios
718-937-5648; Fax: 718-937-2609
www.dms-studios.com

Long Island City, NY 11101

Historically accurate, hand-carved marble and limestone fireplace mantels and other architectural and landscape ornament, including statuary and fountains. Also specialize in one-of-a-kind and custom projects that require high levels of artistic skill and experience. Write in No. 9100

♦ ♦ ♦
Durable Slate Co.
800-666-7445; Fax: 614-299-7100
www.durableslate.com
Columbus, OH 43201

Manufactures slate for flooring, walls, fireplaces, pools, patios, and countertops. Naturally weathered and long lasting, the material is obtained from reclaimed slate roofing. Available in a variety of color combinations. Write in No. 3720

♦ ♦ ♦
Dutch Products & Supply Co.
215-493-4873; Fax: Same as phone
166 Lincoln Avenue
Yardley, PA 19067

Genuine Delft tiles for fireplace or kitchen backsplash; in Delft blue, multicolor, plain, or crackle glaze finish. Write in No. 3140

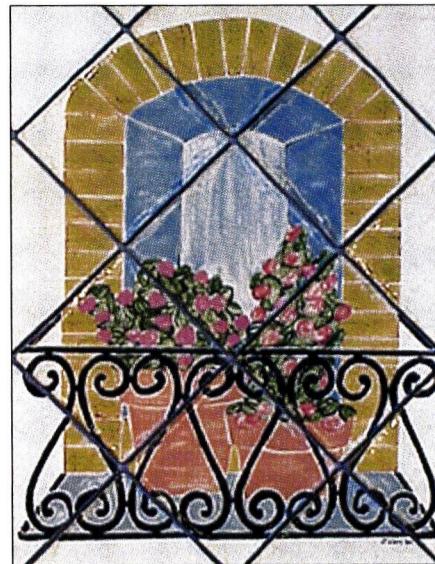


The flooring used in this kitchen is Brazilian Multicolor slate tile from ECHEGUREN SLATE. Write in No. 7220

Echeguren Slate, Inc.
415-206-9343; Fax: 415-206-9353
www.echeguren.com

San Francisco, CA 94107

Importer and distributor of extensive line of slate, sandstone, and quartzite products; has tiles from 6x6 in. to 24x24 in. Also, flagging, pavers, dimensional slabs, and roofing. New natural slate, salvaged slates, slate-color matching; slate-roofing handbook (\$25). Write in No. 7220



This hand-painted niche from **FEATURE TILE** was created on diagonally set 4-in. commercial tile.

Feature Tile
831-475-4602; Fax: Same as phone
www.featuretile.com

Soquel, CA 95073

Handmade terra-cotta tiles using press mold. The 3x6-in. matte tile liners are relief-carved to give the look of antique stone. Also available in gloss glazes on buff clay. The 4-1/4" bas-relief series includes sea creatures, shells, and animals. Hand-painted murals on commercial tile. Majolica tiles. Cuerda seca tiles in the Arts & Crafts style.



FRESH FISH created these whimsical ceramic relief tiles in insect and animal motifs. Write in No. 8051

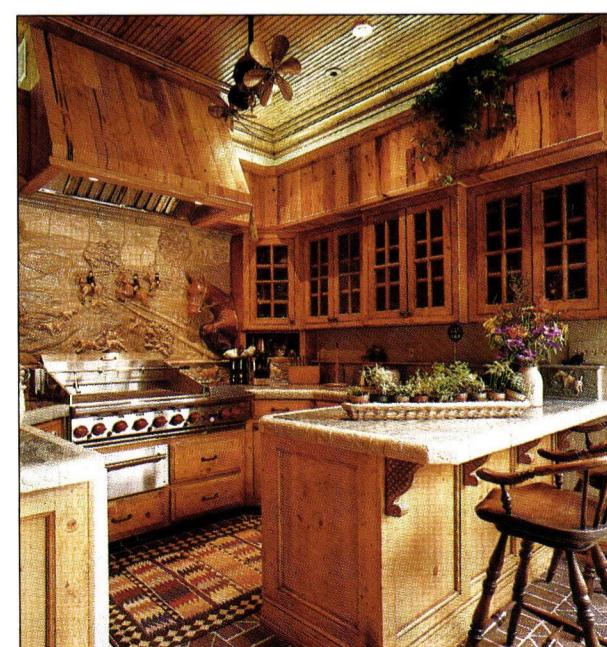
Fresh Fish Ceramic Tiles
612-824-3325; Fax: 612-824-1235
www.freshfishtiles.com

Minneapolis, MN 55409

High-fire relief decorative tile with images from nature, including flowers, fruits, and vegetables, pond creatures, farm animals, celestial images, and a coffee and tea series. Designs are perfect for kitchen and bath accents. Brochure information available on website. Write in No. 8051

♦ ♦ ♦
Gerald Siciliano/Studio Design Associates
718-636-4561; Fax: Same as phone
www.concentric.net/~gsstudio
Brooklyn, NY 11215

Custom and commissioned sculpture in classical and modern styles meticulously crafted in the highest quality materials. Durable and elegant pedestal, wall-mounted, garden, and plaza sculpture on time and within budget. Write in No. 187



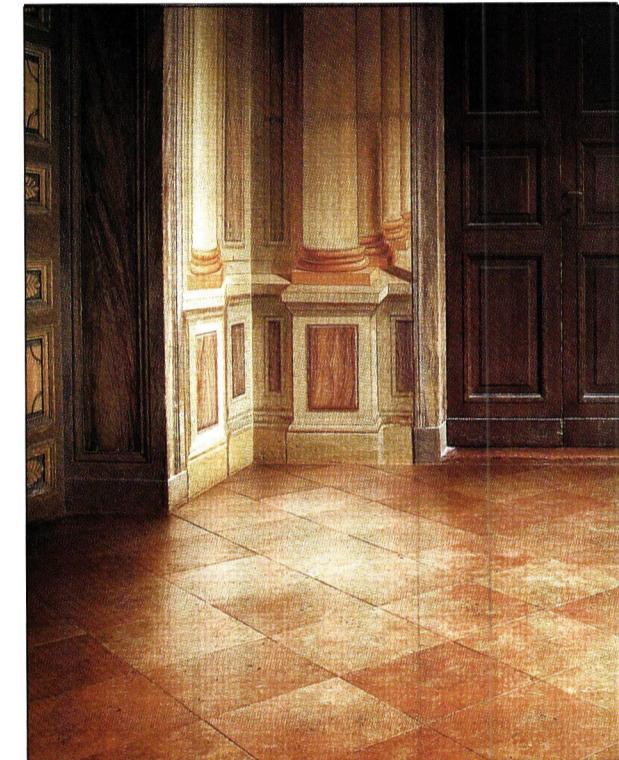
This finely sculpted ceramic-tile backsplash is typical of the custom work of **GOOSENECK DESIGNS**. Write in No. 1297

Gooseneck Designs
410-848-5663; Fax: 410-751-6313
2020 Hughes Shop Road
Westminster, MD 21158

Designer and manufacturer of site-specific architectural ceramics and custom tile for interior and exterior, residential and commercial applications. Also, sculptural relief functional works of art. Wall, floor, fireplace, mural tile; exterior fountains. Write in No. 1297

♦ ♦ ♦
Hilltop Slate, Inc.
518-642-2270; Fax: 518-642-1220
www.hilltopslate.com
Middle Granville, NY 12849

New York-Vermont natural roofing slate and flagstones in all colors, textures, sizes; semi-weathering and unfading shades. Specialists in color matching and roofing slate for restoration. Traditional slate-roofing tools available. Write in No. 9950



LARIA-EDIMAX offers a huge range of high-quality ceramic tile for both interior and exterior applications.

♦ ♦ ♦
Laria-Edimax
516-287-9033; Fax: 516-287-9034
150 Bedford Rd., Apt. 8D
Chappaqua, NY 10514

Porcelain tile for renovation and new construction; frost-proof, stain- and chemical-resistant; excellent for high-traffic areas. Interior and exterior tile.

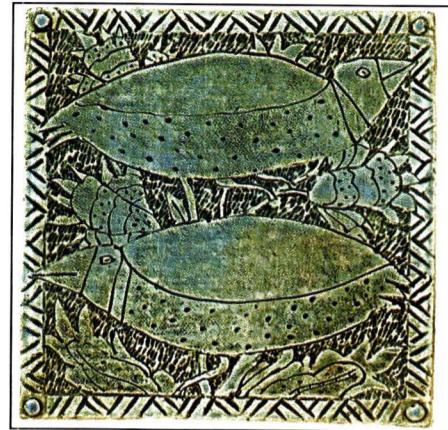


LARKSPUR's Mardi Gras series of handmade and hand-painted tiles are colorful accents to this installation.

♦ ♦ ♦
Larkspur Art Tile
303-681-2877; Fax: 303-681-6795
www.larkspurarttile.com
Larkspur, CO 80118

BUYING GUIDE TO TILE & STONE

Tiles created from original, carved plaster molds; hand-painted, glazed, and fired in studio kilns. Delicate and beautiful, one-of-a-kind art tile for kitchens, baths, and fireplaces.



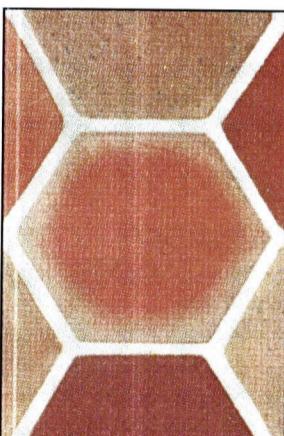
This 6x6-in., primitive bird-motif wall tile was designed by MAR-GARET LICHA. Write in No. 8057

Margaret Licha Designs
916-652-7233; Fax: Same as phone
www.margaretlichatile.com
Orangevale, CA 95662

Custom hand-crafted flat and relief wall tiles inspired by the decorative arts. Stylized birds and flowers, other subjects include the jungle, the barnyard, and family pets. Write in No. 8057

Limestone Concept, Inc.
310-278-9829; Fax: 310-278-9651
www.limestoneconcept.com
Los Angeles, CA 90035

Hand-carved limestone fireplaces, fountains, columns, balustrades, capitals, mantels, benches, ornament, garden statuary, sculptures, French limestone slabs & tiles, antique terra cotta. Natural-stone flooring; quarry tile; limestone. Write in No. 5390



LONDON TILE supplies a wide range of unglazed and frost-proof tile pavers with a vitreous shale body. Write in No. 500

London Tile Co.
419-929-1551; Fax: 419-929-1552
www.londontile.com
New London, OH 44851

Manufacturer of distinctive, handmade tiles for any residential or commercial application. Also, custom tile work. Wall, floor, fireplace, and countertop, exterior-paving, and non-skid tile. Write in No. 500



Vibrant relief tile for use on both floors and walls is a specialty of LUTZ CUSTOM TILE.

Lutz Tile, Inc.
253-840-5011; Fax: 253-840-8545
www.lutztile.com
Puyallup, WA 98372

Art studio manufactures wall and floor tiles; high-definition relief tile: field, borders, buttons, fruits & vegetables, seashells, ivy, and floral. Wall, floor, and fireplace tile.



The checkerboard patterns in this installation consist of Violet/Oyster and Nautilus seashell tiles from LYRIC TILE.

Lyric Tile Co.
207-326-9622; Fax: 207-326-9608
www.lyrictile.com
Brooksville, ME 04617

Hand-crafted seashell and natural-stone accent tiles; all shell tiles are made from natural materials. Decorative accent tiles.

Mazzucchelli Marmi
303-530-7230; Fax: 303-530-7250
www.danbymarble.com
Boulder, CO 80301

Owners and suppliers of Vermont Danby white marble and Vermont verde-green marble. Can supply cut-to-size in many materials. Floor tile, wall tile, cut to size.

Metro Inter Co.
215-753-1904; Fax: 215-753-1906
8113 Germantown Ave.
Philadelphia, PA 19118

Reproduction of Roman mosaic panels, borders, and inserts. Also, custom work made with natural stones for walls and floors. All work is handmade. Pictorial mosaics, geometric mosaics, murals; hand-painted. Write in No. 2821

Michael R. Golden Design
212-645-3001; Fax: 212-645-3003
37 West 20 St., #303
New York, NY 10011

Design, fabrication, and installation of both pictorial and decorative marble and glass mosaics. Artwork for client approval.

Monarch Ceramic Tile
800-BUY-TILE; Fax: 972-266-0475
www.monarchceramictile.com
Mesquite, TX 75185

Domestic manufacturer of glazed ceramic and porcelain tile in an array of sizes, ranging from 4-1/4 wall tile to 18x18 in. glazed porcelain tile.

Mont Granite Inc.
800-831-8232; Fax: 440-942-5671
www.montgranite.com
Willoughby, OH 44094

Quarry-direct supplier of natural-stone products. Cut-to-size, cladding, and vanity tops. Flooring for commercial, health-care, hospitality, and residential projects. Also offers signature ceramic tile from the Pierre Cardin collection.

N'tl. Training Ctr. for Stone & Masonry Trades
407-832-4800; Fax: 407-834-6610
www.ntc-stone.com
Longwood, FL 32750

Company has publications, books for caring for granite countertops, stone & tile videos.



Tiles in the Southern Californian tradition are a specialty of NATIVE TILE & CERAMICS. Write in No. 570

Native Tile and Ceramics
310-533-8684; Fax: 310-533-8453
2317 Border Ave.
Torrance, CA 90501

Custom and restoration tiles using blackline resist and relief methods. Mission, Craftsman, and Deco styles a specialty; inspired by Batchelder, Malibu, and Catalina tiles. Decorative trims, floor inserts, murals, fireplace fronts. Elaborately patterned backsplashes and trims for kitchens and baths, as well as decorative patterns, backsplashes, and trims. Write in No. 570



NOCERA ART TILE's Fresco Collection, which includes this Etruscan banquet procession, ca. 450 B.C.E., features hand-finishing with non-glossy ceramic pigments. Write in No. 6100

Nocera Art Tile
570-729-7946; Fax: 570-729-7317
www.art-tile.com
Milanville, PA 18443

Makes wall, floor and fireplace tile, borders, trims & decorative tile. Most clay and glaze formulations can be used indoors and out. Relief tiles are rich with detail; colors range from naturals to Arts & Crafts to polychrome. Also executes murals on tile, canvas, or other surfaces. Write in No. 6100

North American Stone Company
972-562-9992; Fax: 972-562-0794
www.northamericanstone.com
McKinney, TX 75070

Manufactures custom architectural cast-stone elements. Products include fireplace mantels, columns, balustrades, landscape elements, entry systems, pavers, fountains, planters, urns, caps, benches, tables, exterior and interior elements; residential and commercial work, restoration work. Design assistance available. Write in No. 754

North Prairie Tileworks
612-871-3421; Fax: 612-871-2923
www.handmadetile.com
Minneapolis, MN 18443

Specialist in creating custom tile in a myriad of colors, shapes, and sizes, hand-painted and -cut. Custom color matching and reproductions of antique tiles. Wall, fireplace, pictorial mosaics, relief, and geometric tiles. Write in No. 793

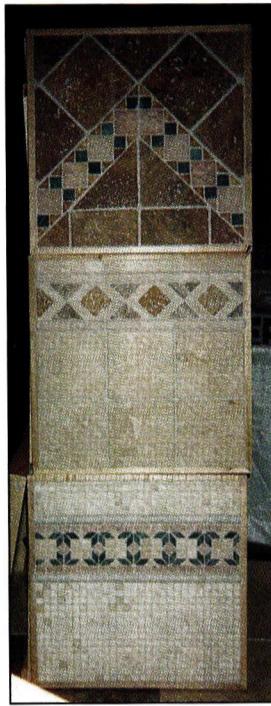


Handmade Arts & Crafts-style tile is a specialty of NORTH PRAIRIE TILEWORKS. Write in No. 793

BUYING GUIDE TO TILE & STONE

Ozer International LLC
973-497-5056; Fax: 973-497-5655
www.ozermarblegroup.com
Harrison, NJ 07029

Supplier with 12 quarries and 4 factories; carries marble, limestone, granite, and travertine in tiles and slabs. All standard sizes. Full line of centerpieces, mosaics, moldings, and tumbled stones.



OZER INTERNATIONAL
carries extensive lines of granite, marble, limestone, and other tile varieties.

Robert Young & Sons, Inc.
973-483-0451; Fax: 973-483-0185
25 Grafton Avenue
Newark, NJ 07104

Supplier of dimensional-cut limestone, marble and sandstone for new and restoration projects. Custom fabrication includes hand-carved fireplaces, sculpture, and furniture. E-Mail: ryoungandsons@aol.com Write in No. 3122

Roof Tile & Slate Co.
800-446-0220; 97; Fax: 972-242-1923
www.claytile.com
Carrollton, TX 75006

Large inventory 'in stock'; custom blending of clay tiles and used roofing slate; field tiles and trim are palletized and ready to ship; also, flooring for interior spaces, specialty trim for historical projects. Write in No. 9560

Rossi USA Corporation
708-386-0183; Fax: 708-386-0186
1750 S. Des Plaines Ave.
Forest Park, IL 60130

U.S. division of French company; quarriers and fabricators of more than 26 types of French limestone. Dimensional, cut, paving tiles, Old Castle stones, and slabs. Write in No. 392



SCHUMACHER ARCHITECTURAL CERAMICS created this striking wash basin using hand-painted ceramics.

Schumacher Architectural Ceramics
916-744-1062; Fax: Same as phone
P.O. Box 129
Clarksburg, CA 95612

Art tile includes figurative, landscape, and abstract-relief patterns; shapes can be inlaid into a tile field; hand-thrown lavatory sinks available to match. Above-counter vessel lavs and ovals now available.

Scotia Slate Products, Ltd.
902-632-2989; Fax: 902-632-2290
www.scotiaslate.com
Kennetcook, NS, CANADA B0N 1P0

A supplier of natural slate for roofing; also custom cut and polished slate for flooring and landscaping. Write in No. 8067

Slate International, Inc.
301-952-0120; Fax: 301-952-0295
www.slateinternational.com
Wilmington, DE 19808

Supplier of high-grade roofing slate, domestic and imported, in all colors. Clients/applications include Yale University, Cesar Pelli Architects, and The Audubon Society. Also, suppliers of slate-covered ridge vent. New natural slate. Slate-covered ridge vent. Write in No. 9340

Stone Forest
505-986-8883; Fax: 505-982-2712
www.stoneforest.com
Santa Fe, NM 87504

Hand-carved granite fountains, garden ornament, and bath and kitchen sinks. In marble and granite. Write in No. 1108



Custom French limestone from TARTARUGA DESIGN was used for the dining room of the Windsor Arms hotel in Toronto. The firm also specializes in custom residential work. Write in No. 5024

Tartaruga Design Inc.
416-762-0418; Fax: 416-762-0232
www.tartarugadesign.com
York, ON, CANADA M6M 4M7

Collection of mantels in "Cortina Stone," which resembles natural stone, and the colors and textures of marble, sandstone, and limestone with the design flexibility of cast stone. Mantelpieces and corresponding appointments chosen from the standard line, or custom designed; residential and commercial spaces. Write in No. 5024

Terra Firma
803-643-9399; Fax: 803-643-9164
16 Lotus Lane
Aiken, SC 29801

Complete line of original handmade stoneware decorative relief and field tiles; unique glazes formulated to capture the complexity and striations of semi-precious stones or to convey a timeless patinated look. Wall, backsplash, fireplace, and floor tile. In fine showrooms in the U.S. and Canada.



TERRA FIRMA's unique glaze palette, which often captures the look of semi-precious stones, works well as a complement to natural stone.

Texas Carved Stone, L.P.
254-793-2384; Fax: 254-793-2693
www.texascarvedstone.com
Florence, TX 76527

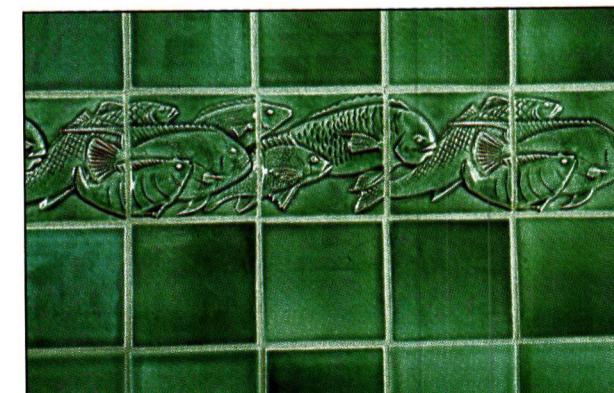
Fabrication of hand-carved ornamental limestone: mantels, entries, fountains, architectural elements. Carvers are capable of working in any period or style. Custom mantels in carved limestone. Write in No. 1055

Tile Roofs, Inc.
888-708-TILE; Fax: 708-479-7865
www.tileroofs.com
Chicago, IL 60628

One of the largest stocks of salvaged clay roofing tiles and slate roofing in the U.S. Specialists in the supply and installation of tiles to match existing roofing for additions and restorations of historic properties. Tile roofing; clay, concrete, salvaged tile; installation services, tile-roof repair contracting. Write in No. 4570

Tiles of Iznik, c/o TIMOK
858-677-0740; Fax: 858-677-0250
www.tilesofiznik.com
La Jolla, CA 92037

Imported ceramic and stoneware tiles hand-painted with traditional Iznik designs of Turkey. Exclusive line includes decorative tiles, borders, trims, murals from 2 to 80 pieces. Hexagonal tiles and Seljuk Tiles. Wall tiles and mural tiles. Write in No. 2627



WINGED DOG designed and created this charming fish-motif frieze. Write in No. 2842

Winged Dog Tile
800-964-3363; Fax: 916-427-2986
7366 Center Parkway
Sacramento, CA 95823

Relief and custom-designed art tile depicting environmental images. Write in No. 2842

BUYING GUIDE TO MURALS & MOSAICS

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted Muralists & Mosaicists from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 23 artisans you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.



This charming marine-life mosaic was created by ANIMA CERAMIC DESIGN.

Anima Ceramic Design
No phone; Fax: 508-437-0706
www.animatile.com
Laredo, TX 78043

Creates custom panels combining high-fire stoneware pieces with glass mosaic tesserae. Utilizes Italian smalti mosaics and domestic glass. Panels are suitable for indoor or outdoor installations.

◆ ◆ ◆

Ann Hooe, Ltd.
847-853-1056; Fax: 847-853-1057
P.O. Box 9
Winnetka, IL 60093

Manufacturer of unique designer stencils for interior decoration; wide variety of stencils are available for use on walls, ceilings, floors, and furniture, including a large selection of grid patterns. Catalog \$5. Write in No. 8046

◆ ◆ ◆

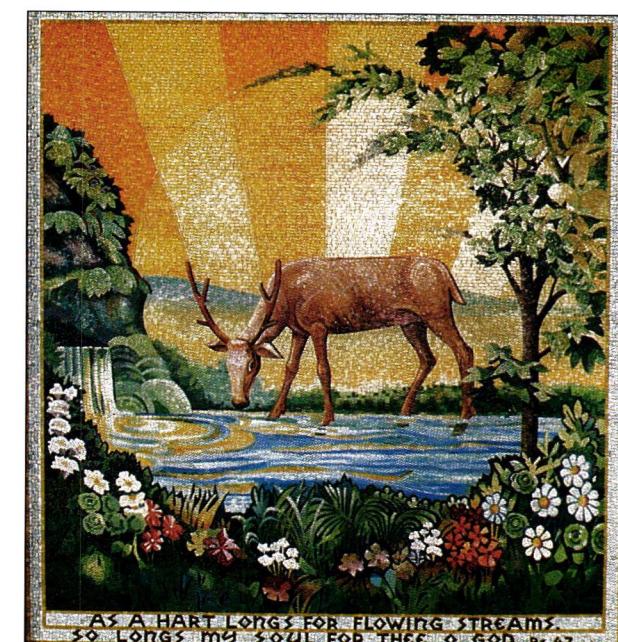
Anything But Plain
281-444-2070; Fax: 281-444-2081
www.anythingbutplain.com
Houston, TX 77066

Licensed school of decorative finishes for professionals and non-professionals. Products include Aqua Finishing Solutions, scaffolds, ladders, stencils, & books. Write in No. 8047

◆ ◆ ◆



CHERYL PARSONS DESIGN painted this scene as part of an 800-sq.ft. mural for a residence in Miami, Fla. Write in No. 8048



This 8x8-ft. Venetian glass mosaic, an illustration of a line from Psalm 47, is the work of CONRAD PICKEL STUDIO. Write in No. 813

Conrad Pickel Studio, Inc.
561-567-1710; Fax: 561-569-1485
www.pickelstudio.com
Vero Beach, FL 32966

Studio produces custom-designed stained glass, statuary, wood carvings, and more. Write in No. 813

◆ ◆ ◆

Designs in Tile
530-926-2629; Fax: 530-926-6467
www.designsintile.com
Mount Shasta, CA 96067

Custom historic-styled tiles and murals, hand-painted or mosaic (full or tesserae). Borders or pictorial. Arts & Crafts murals a specialty. Also, 3x6 subway tile and trim; square-edge mosaics ('Hex' & 'Spiral' patterns) for floors. Wall murals, pictorial murals, geometric mosaics; conservation of murals and mosaics. Write in No. 250

◆ ◆ ◆



DIANNE WARNER's Riverboat mural was painted on canvas in her studio and then installed by a wallpaper hanger under the artist's supervision. Write in No. 903

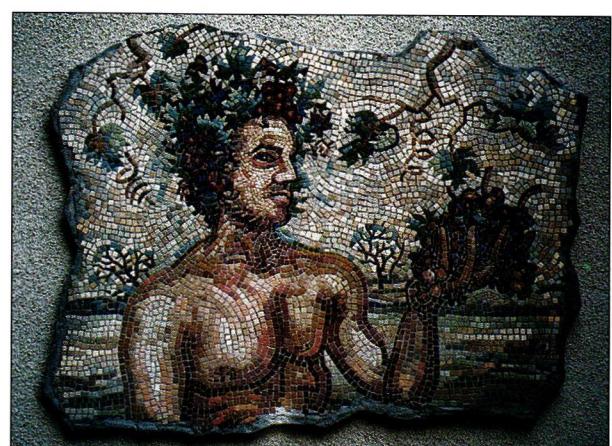
Dianne Warner Studio
212-639-9006; Fax: 212-888-9519
1495 Third Ave.
New York, NY 10028

Studio produces murals and painted floors. Floors are painted to resemble inlaid European floors and are long-lasting and resilient. Wall & ceiling murals, frescoes, trompe l'oeil, and painted floors. Write in No. 903

◆ ◆ ◆

EverGreene Painting Studios
212-244-2800; Fax: 212-244-6204
www.evergreenepaintings.com
New York, NY 10001

Studio with extensive experience in paint restoration, and design and execution of trompe l'oeil, fine art, exterior murals. Paint research, analysis, documentation; scagliola, sgraffito, ornamental plasterwork. Conservation. Write in No. 2460



GEORGE FISHMAN's depiction of Dionysus in mosaic is composed of unglazed porcelains and measures 3x4 ft.

Fishman Mosaics
305-758-1141; Fax: 305-751-1770
www.georgefishmanmosaics.com
Miami, FL 33138

Custom hand-cut mosaics in stone, vitreous glass, or glass smalti. Artist specializes in pictorial images for installation as floor inserts, niche panels, murals. Designs developed through collaboration with designers and clients.

◆ ◆ ◆

Fyndit Inc.
516-627-2438; Fax: Same as phone
390 Ryder Rd.
Manhasset, NY 11030

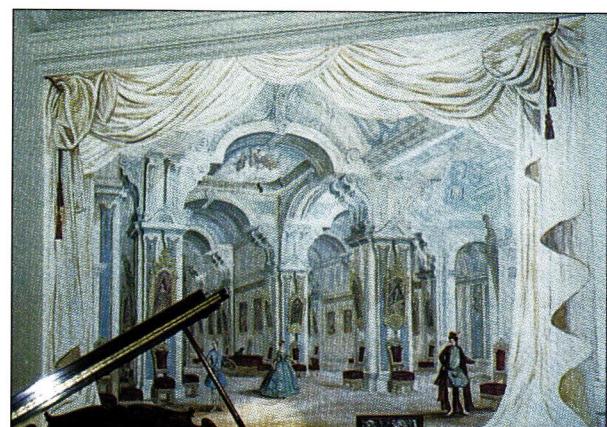
U.S. representatives of Italian mosaic company that creates mosaics from clients' drawings; installation for large projects; work all over the world, including Japan.

◆ ◆ ◆

Gloria Decorative Arts
570-897-5880; Fax: Same as phone
1965 Totts Gap Road
Bangor, PA 18013

Creating custom murals on-site or on canvas for installation. Murals for walls, ceilings. Scagliola inlays. Frescoes.

◆ ◆ ◆



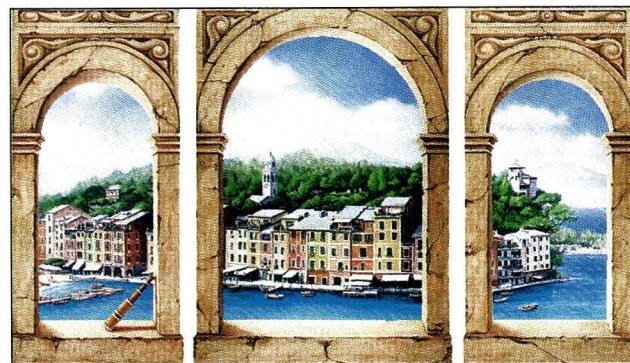
Inspired by an old engraving of a Baroque opera, GRAND ILLUSION painted this mural on canvas for the formal music room of a private residence. Write in No. 4770

Grand Illusion
973-770-0206; Fax: 973-627-3909
6 Altenbrand Ave.
Mount Arlington, NJ 07856

Design and execution of murals, trompe l'oeil, frescos, exterior murals, geometric & pictorials, floors & walls, painted on site or on canvas. Also, decorative painting and project consultation. Worldwide travel. Write in No. 4770

◆ ◆ ◆

BUYING GUIDE TO MURALS & MOSAICS



This trompe l'oeil mural was created by GUIDED IMAGERY, winner of the recent Kodak Innovator Award for its mural collection. Write in No. 2527

Guided Imagery
650-324-0323; Fax: 650-324-9962
2995 Woodside Rd., #400
Woodside, CA 94062

Specializing in trompe l'oeil murals. Serving the hospitality, architectural, and design markets, they combine ancient methods and today's state-of-the-art computer technologies to create compelling artistic environments. ADEX and Kodak Innovator awards for their limited edition mural collections and artistic borders. Write in No. 2527

◆ ◆ ◆

Lynn Brehm Designs
888-744-3699; Fax: Same as phone
www.natural-accents.com
Carlsbad, CA 92009

Exquisite decorator stencils for creating murals, accenting rooms, and decorative effects. Also, how-to videos on clouds and stenciling. Wall/ceiling murals, trompe l'oeil, children & whimsical murals.

◆ ◆ ◆



METRO INTER reproduced this mosaic from an original Roman panel. Write in No. 2821

Metro Inter Co.
215-753-1904; Fax: 215-753-1906
8113 Germantown Ave.
Philadelphia, PA 19118

Reproduction of Roman mosaic panels, borders, and inserts. Also, custom work made with natural stones for walls and floors. All work is handmade. Pictorial mosaics, geometric mosaics, murals; hand-painted. Write in No. 2821

◆ ◆ ◆

Michael R. Golden Design
212-645-3001; Fax: 212-645-3003
37 West 20 St., #303
New York, NY 10011

Design, fabrication, and installation of both pictorial and decorative marble and glass mosaics. Artwork for client approval.

◆ ◆ ◆

Mosaic Fantasies, Inc.
973-676-0117; No Fax
www.mosaicfantasies.com
Clifton, NJ 07013

Mosaic borders, medallions, murals and tiles. Custom designed mosaics in natural stone (polished, honed & tumbled),



The fine detailing in this mosaic is typical of the work of MICHAEL R. GOLDEN.

smalti and glass. In-house art team available to collaborate & work-up special designs to art reproductions, portraits, pictorials and micro mosaics. All mosaics are hand cut and assembled on site. Provide services to architects, designers, builders and tile stores. Painted Art Deco tumbled tile also available. Mosaics are shipped worldwide. Allied member of the American Institute of Architects. Write in No. 8076

◆ ◆ ◆



This classically-inspired mural was hand-painted by OPTIC NERVE. Write in No. 8058

Optic Nerve Art Corp.
614-876-1994; Fax: 614-876-2216
www.opticnerveart.com
Columbus, OH 43228

Interior and exterior fine decorative painting, murals, and trompe l'oeil. Manufacturer of custom wallcoverings. Specialties include gilding, faux finishes, lettering, encaustic, and historical sculpture and frame reproductions. Write in No. 8058

◆ ◆ ◆

Paul Montgomery Studio
941-925-4000; Fax: 941-923-0914
www.paulart.com
Sarasota, FL 34233

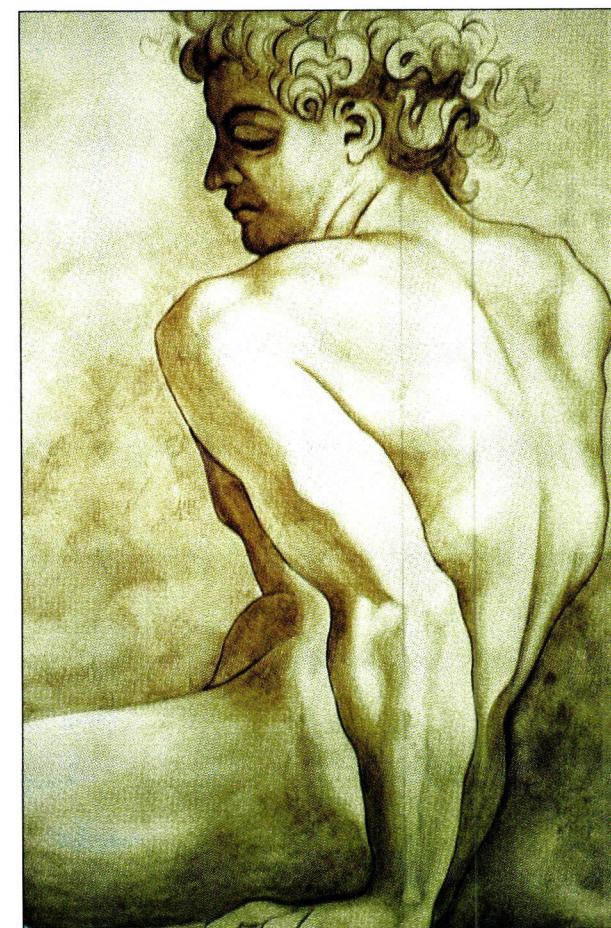
Complete design, creation, and installation of all types of murals on canvas and on-site by 25-year-old company. Specializes in classical murals and complete painted decor. Projects worldwide. Wall & ceiling murals, frescoes, and trompe l'oeil.

◆ ◆ ◆

Rutter Decorative Painting Studios, Lynne
415-282-8820; Fax: 415-282-8275
www.lynnrutter.com/
San Francisco, CA 94107

Design and production of fine-art murals; trompe l'oeil; intricate stenciling, decorative & faux finishes, using a variety of media and techniques. Specialist in the restoration and re-creation of historic painted ornament. Wall and ceiling murals. Write in No. 4710

◆ ◆ ◆



RUTTER DECORATIVE PAINTING produced this monochromatic figure painting, after Michelangelo's Ignudo figures from the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel, for a mural project. Write in No. 4710

Thomas Street Studios, Ltd.
401-724-3300; Fax: 401-724-3369
163 Exchange St.
Pawtucket, RI 02860



THOMAS STREET STUDIOS painted this historic mural for the dining room of a residence in Massachusetts.

Creates images from small, highly detailed panels to large-scale murals. Work includes figurative, realistic, landscape. Wall & ceiling murals, trompe l'oeil, and faux finishes.

◆ ◆ ◆

Tiles of Iznik, c/o TIMOK
858-677-0740; Fax: 858-677-0250
P.O. Box 13161
La Jolla, CA 13161

Imported ceramic and stoneware tiles hand-painted with traditional Iznik designs of Turkey. Exclusive line includes decorative tiles, borders, trims, murals from 2 to 80 pieces. Hexagonal tiles and Seljuk tiles. Wall tiles and mural tiles. Write in No. 2627

◆ ◆ ◆

Touch's Of Illusions
708-453-2230; Fax: 708-453-2231
7442 W. Grand Ave.
Elmwood Park, IL 60707

Specialist in the restoration and preservation of the decorative finish on architectural elements and the design of interior faux finishes. Also gold leafing, murals, wood graining, marbleizing. Write in No. 2221

◆ ◆ ◆

Grand Illusion

DECORATIVE HANDPAINTING

- MURALS
- TROMPE L'OEIL

PRISCILLA SMITH

A MEMBER OF THE NATIONAL SOCIETY OF MURAL PAINTERS

973-770-0206
6 Altenbrand Road
Mt. Arlington, NJ 07856

WRITE IN NO. 4770

GUIDED IMAGERY DESIGN & PRODUCTIONS

Ask about our award-winning trompe l'oeil Mural Collections.
V.650-324-0323 ♦ F.650-324-9962
MURALS4U2C@AOL.COM

WRITE IN NO. 2527

Fantasies
Mosaics
NATURAL STONE ARTISANS

MOSAIC BORDERS, MEDALLIONS MURALS & TILES

Custom designed mosaics in natural stone (polished, honed & tumbled), smalti and glass. In-house art team available to collaborate & work-up special design needed for your project.

Our capabilities range from simple geo-shaped designs to art reproductions, portraits, pictorials and micro mosaics. All mosaics are hand-cut and assembled on site. We provide our services to Architects, Designers, and Builders and Tile Stores.

Painted art deco tumbled also available.
Mosaics are shipped worldwide.

MOSAIC FANTASIES is an allied member of the American Institute of Architects.

MOSAIC FANTASIES is also available to provide you with custom fabrication of countertops, vanities, tub surrounds and other natural stone products.

MOSAIC FANTASIES, INC.
CORPORATE HEADQUARTERS
ORANGE, NJ 07050
P: 800-320-8852 or 973-676-0117
FAX: 973-676-0118
E-MAIL: mosaic@mosaicfantasies.com
www.mosaicfantasies.com

WRITE IN NO. 8076

Dianne Warner
Murals & Painted "Plau" Floors

Phone: 212-639-9006 Fax: 212-888-9519 1495 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10028

WRITE IN NO. 903



MURALS and DECORATIVE PAINTING
www.lynnertutter.com 415.282.8820

WRITE IN NO. 4710

FREE ESTIMATES

On site or ship artwork to your site

High quality work economical prices



Ph. 614.876.1994
 Fx. 614.876.2216
Opticnerveart@earthlink.net



WRITE IN NO. 8058



7777 20th St., Vero Beach, FL 32966 561.567.1710 Fax: 561.569.1485
www.pickelstudio.com e-mail: info@pickelstudio.com

WRITE IN NO. 813

Murals Create Ambiance

Custom murals & trompe l'oeil - talented artist with years of experience creates murals to fit your lifestyle and space. Expert in interpreting styles and subjects. Murals are painted on special material for simple installation and moveability. Portfolio with a long list of high-end residential and corporate clients. Call today to discuss your project.

Cheryl Parsons Designs

6740 Southwest 117th Street/Miami, FL 33156
 Toll Free - 877-663-3232/e-mail: CParsons1@aol.com

WRITE IN NO. 8048



REPRODUCTION OF ROMAN MOSAICS, PANELS, BORDERS & INSERTS

ALSO, custom work for walls & floors
 Traditional methods using natural hand-cut stone from original Roman quarries

8113 Germantown Ave., Philadelphia, PA 19118
 Ph: 215 753-1904 Fax: 215 753-1906

WRITE IN NO. 2821

WWW. period-homes.com

The Internet Gateway to Historical Products & Services for Residential Architecture

BUYING GUIDE TO PLANTERS & URNS

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted suppliers of Planters & Urns from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 30 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

A&M Victorian Decorations, Inc.
 626-575-0693; Fax: 626-575-1781
www.aandmvictorian.com
 South El Monte, CA 91733

Manufactures many architectural elements in either gypsum or precast concrete: columns, molding, mantels, balustrades, wall caps, pavers, quoins, stair treads, planters, fountains, and gazebos; custom designs and finishes. Write in No. 7470

Am-Dia, Inc.
 800-483-7105; Fax: 419-424-1822
www.victorianmarketplace.com
 Findlay, OH 45840

Specialist in decorative residential post- and wall-mount mailboxes that are 'U.S. Postmaster' approved. Also, cast-aluminum fountains, birdbaths, Victorian-style furniture, urns, street lighting, antique furnishings, and patio furniture. Porch, wall- & post-mounted lighting in Victorian style. Write in No. 95

American Wood Column Corp.
 718-782-3163; Fax: 718-387-9099
 913 Grand St.
 Brooklyn, NY 11211

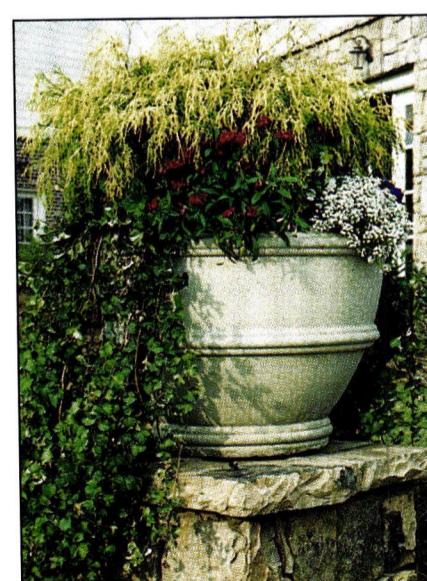
Custom turnings to match originals; columns and balusters in any dimension — fluted, plain, or twisted. All types of porch parts: balusters, newel posts; all size finials in any wood specified. Wood and polymer composite, plaster/gypsum columns; load- and non-load-bearing columns; 36 in. dia. x up to 40 ft. high. Write in No. 1308

Architectural Products by Outwater, LLC
 800-835-4400; Fax: 800-835-4403
www.outwater.com
 Wood Ridge, NJ 07075

Supplier of more than 35,000 ready-to-ship building-component products including int./ext. architectural millwork, columns, decorative moldings & trim, wrought-iron components, hardware & lighting. Write in No. 5008

Boston Turning Works
 617-924-4747; Fax: 617-924-4949
www.bostonturningworks.com
 Watertown, MA 02172

Manufactures a line of wooden finials for fences and exterior use, and custom-turned balusters, posts, newels, columns. Call for more information



BROOKFIELD CO.'s Anderson Group of planters includes this model, #019, which stands 19 in. tall and has a 27-in. exterior diameter.

Brookfield Co., The
 706-375-8530; Fax: 706-375-8531
www.the-brookfield-co.com
 Ringgold, GA 30736

Planters and urns in more than 50 styles; designed by the owner/artist and made in fibered concrete. Subtle colors and surfaces.

Chimney Pot Shoppe
 724-345-3601; Fax: 724-345-8243
www.chimneypot.net
 Avella, PA 15312

Extensive inventory of new and antique chimney pots often

PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN FOR THE CLASSICAL GARDEN

A Classical garden is built upon a few principles that have their origin in ancient Rome and Greece. Here, a practicing garden designer shows how these principles can be used to create "an atmosphere of good-humored welcome."

by Keith Davitt, Gardens, LLC

As a designer of gardens I am frequently frustrated by the fact that so few clients want a Classical garden. The frustration is particularly acute because most people seem gripped by a misconception of what a Classical garden is. They think of it as formal, rigid, hard, and colorless. Some imagine a stark space with a sculpture here or there; others, an over-abundance of fussy detail or perhaps a large fountain dominating the center of some squared-off space.

The Classical garden is formal. But it's not this formality which makes it Classical. A garden is in the Classical style if it is built upon principles that have their origin in ancient Rome and Greece. And these principles are surprisingly few: No more than half a handful of basic concepts guide the creation of a Classical garden. Within that, there is enormous room for variation and creative free-play.

These principles of artistic design were first set down by Leone Battista Alberti in the 1400s, but he looked back to early Rome and Greece for inspiration and examples. Drawing upon the principles of proportion evinced in ancient architecture, Alberti proposed a set of axioms applicable to all art.

The first and guiding principle of the Classical garden, and of art generally, says Alberti, is that "beauty is harmony." This concept governs all other elements. It is essential, Alberti informs us, that the house and garden create a unified whole. There should be "an atmosphere of good-humored welcome" with no one element dominating the scene.

Alberti was, among other things, an architect, and architectural values became firmly rooted in the Classical garden. This was in part because they offered the



Fig. 3. This pool is symmetrical and architectural in form, reiterating forms found in the structure of the house. Being separated from the house, this garden can be more relaxed than areas in direct proximity to the building, but even here the form of the pool, the plinth-like cypresses, and the hedges through which one arrives all unite this garden with the house by their structural significance. Note, too, that the house is slightly elevated with an easy view down to the garden, as the garden looks slightly up to the house. This example is a typical private villa garden in the Classical tradition. Photo: Keith Davitt

designer the opportunity to work with the beauty inherent in proper proportion, as exhibited in Classical architecture, and in part because building architecture into the garden was an effective method of linking the garden to the house.

Beyond this, Alberti drew from descriptions Cicero and Pliny left of their villa estates to establish criteria for a well designed garden. "It is best if the house occupy a slight eminence," Alberti tells us, easily accessed from the garden (Fig. 3). There may be pergolas, porticoes, or grottos. Topiary, clipped box, urns, statuary, and water in display are all congenial to the Classical garden, as are borders of flowers edged by rosemary or box. Which of these elements the garden is to have and how much and how they are used is up to individual taste. So long as the primary principle of unity within diversity is applied, the options are endless.

One method for uniting house to garden, much favored by Alberti, is to repeat in the garden those forms found in the house. The axial arrangement (reminiscent of hallways) became intrinsic to the Classical garden, perhaps opening into a circular or semicircular area along their way. These axes should lead to some significant feature — a fountain, sculpture, pergola, perhaps, or just a niche in a wall (see Figs. 1, 2, 4).

Uniting Garden & House

There are countless ways to

unite garden and house. From the beginning, the intent and effect of topiary was to infuse architectural structure into garden components. The topiary garden is, in fact, a blend of horticulture and architecture. Said to have been invented in the 1st century C.E. by Cnaius Martius, the ability of topiary to link the house to the garden was immediately perceived and was, from Alberti on, considered essential to the Classical garden (see Figs. 5, 6, 7).

One form of topiary, which persisted through the Middle Ages, consists of many small shrubs planted in some design and kept clipped to form a continuous line. They will often form compartments (called Parterre Work) containing bedding plants or other ornamental herbs (Figs. 5, 6).

Another form of topiary is the clipping of shrubs or trees into exotic shapes. Pliny speaks of his "... box displayed in groups and cut into a thousand different forms; sometimes into letters spelling the name of the master or the signature of the topiarist..." Here, clipped plants will line axial walks and views, or be used to punctuate a transition from one area into another, or

continued on page 86



Fig. 4. The upper pool in this villa garden at Antibes is rectangular, lies along the same axis as that of the house, and carries the image of the house within it. The garden literally flows out from the house and is divided into regular intervals, as is the internal layout of the structure. Here too, the house sits slightly above the garden and is easily accessed from it. Repeating clipped boxwood along the canal continues the architectural theme within the garden and serves to unite both entities. Photo: Keith Davitt



Fig. 4A. A pavilion at canal's end opposite the villa provides the garden's other terminus. Notice the foliage that surrounds the pavilion; it is wilder and more abundant than anywhere else in the garden, creating the effect of a grotto. The size of the pavilion (it needed to be large enough to be seen from the far end) permits this. The abundance of natural foliage keeps the pavilion to scale, preventing it from dominating the scene, as specified in Alberti's doctrines. Photos: Keith Davitt



Fig. 1. This perennial garden in Westbury is a wonderfully proportioned example of the axial arrangement. Each path leads to some feature of interest while an ornamental fountain occupies the center. The paths are neither too wide nor too narrow for their length and are equal in width to the beds. The grass edgings are exactly one-third that width. (Alberti believed that all art could be mathematically represented.) Everything works together — with no overpowering element — to create a garden of well proportioned harmony. Photo: Keith Davitt

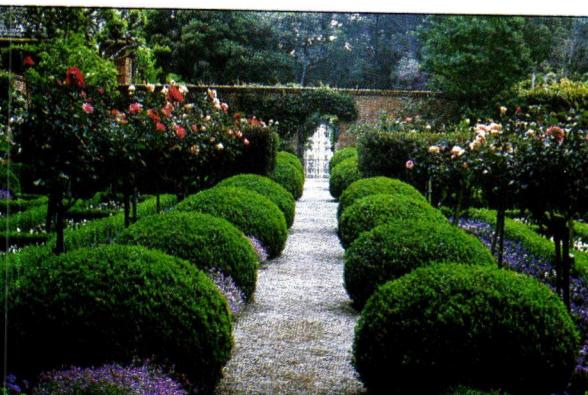


Fig. 2. In this axial garden of clipped box, bedding plants, and roses, nothing dominates the scene; rather, everything contributes to the atmosphere of cheerful welcome within an architectural arrangement. Although both these gardens are fairly large, the same elements and influence are possible in a small garden. Photo: Filoli Gardens, Woodside, Calif.

one may suddenly come upon a garden of topiary along an axial path (Fig. 7).

Sculpture in the Garden

Sculpture serves a similar function to topiary and, from the days of Cicero, was considered to be congenial to the garden (Fig. 8). How much sculpture and of what sort are left entirely to the designer. (Cicero had many Greek statues; Pliny seems to have preferred topiary over sculpture.)

The concept of a harmonious environment containing a variety of contrasts is central to the Classical garden. For example, as the villa garden opened up and expanded outward, and as it moved away from the primary structure, it needed to integrate with the surrounding vistas of the natural landscape. As total harmony is the guiding light, the garden still needed to be wed to its primary building or buildings, but it was equally as important that it harmonize with the larger



Fig. 8. The combined harmonies and contrasts created by placing sculpture and foliage together add considerably to the beauty of the garden. Beyond that, sculpture brings an interior element to the exterior in an altogether pleasing and appropriate way — especially in areas remote from the main dwelling. (Had the backdrop to this sculpture been of a leafier sort, the effect would have been greater.) Photo: Keith Davitt



Fig. 9. Notice the delightful contrasts and harmonies in this flowering allee. The flower colors, foliar textures, light and shade, and architectural element of the pavilion at the end create a vignette rich in pleasing relationships. The blue caryopteris and white roses, which both harmonize and contrast with each other and with the lawn, have been clipped into rounded forms, in harmony with the dome of the pavilion — while the spire of the pavilion is a distinct contrast. (To better appreciate this, cover and uncover the spire and note the changed relationship created between this structure and the shrubs.) The two plinths on either side repeat these elements, while the whole vignette is united through the axial arrangement. Photo: Larry Albee/Longwood Gardens, Kennett Sq., Pa.



Fig. 5. This Dutch work at the gardens of Filoli is an excellent example of wall-type topiary work. During medieval days these boxwood enclosures would contain herbs and vegetables where now flowering impatiens grow. Where there would have been walls of masonry there are now walls of foliage. The effect is highly structured and serves to remind the visitor of the structure to which this garden is connected, while giving pleasure in its own right. Photo: Filoli Gardens, Woodside, Calif.



Fig. 6. Similarly with this knot garden, the hedges themselves have become ornamental. Berberis and soon-to-bloom lavender form striking combinations in an ornamental organization, yet the layout of the design is ornate architecture and serves to unite garden to home. Photo: Filoli Gardens, Woodside, Calif.

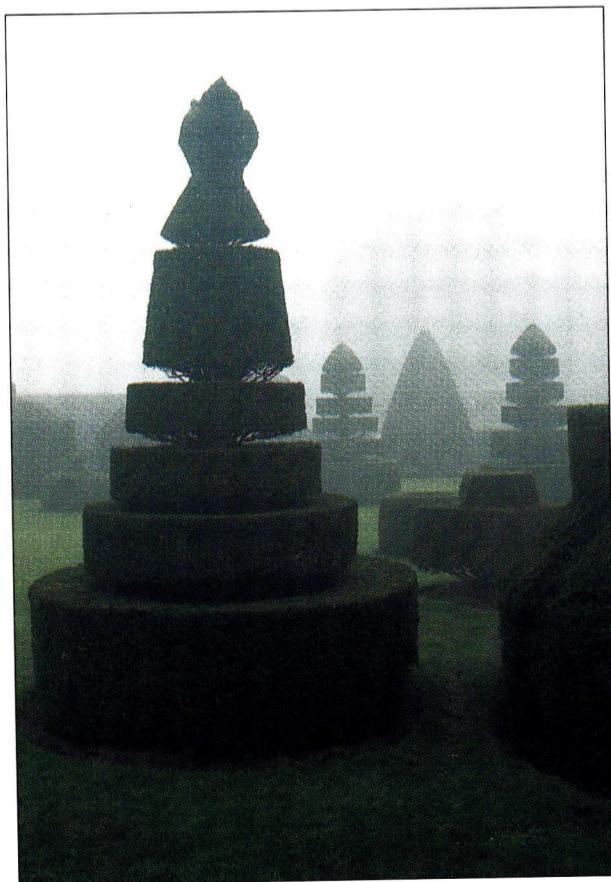


Fig. 7. This topiary garden in Longwood is of the same sort as Pliny mentions. The garden is clearly part of a larger grounds, and topiary is used as a display in itself — sheer fun in contriving architectural forms in an organic medium. Photo: Larry Albee/Longwood Gardens, Kennett Sq., Pa.

surrounding countryside. Notice in the Longwood aerial view (Fig. 10) the unclipped shrubs and trees within the garden proper. By the axial walks, the repeating forms, the architectural circles and semicircles, the garden is indissolubly linked to the building, but natural trees and shrubs also unite it with the surrounding country. The overall effect is one of harmony accented with various contrasts. The entire villa with its outlying gardens and the surrounding vistas are complete, varied, and unified.

Frequently in a Classical garden, each axis terminates in a definite architectural structure (Figs. 4, 8, 9, 10).

One desirable effect of placing porticos, pavilions, or other similar structures at each end of a major axis is the wonderful symmetry created — an alpha and omega with the myriad garden elements between. In Figs. 4 and 4A, for example, at the terminus of the long canal is a pavilion set upon an elevation (4A). At the other end of the canal is the main building (Fig. 4), and between these two points which serve as both termini



Fig. 10. This view, also of Longwood, demonstrates a variety of principles mentioned by Pliny and Alberti, but came into being in a slightly later development of the Classical garden. Topiary is used as accents along a long axial view and at transition points, but several other elements of the Classical garden are also evident. Photo: Larry Albee/Longwood Gardens, Kennett Sq., Pa.



Fig. 11. This Italian water garden at Longwood Gardens demonstrates Classical principles beautifully. Designed to be seen from this angle, the distant pools are slightly larger than those in the foreground, to compensate for the distortions created by the eye. Complete balance is the keynote of this portion of the grounds, laid out so as to capture the distant view over the countryside. Photo: Larry Albee/Longwood Gardens, Kennett Sq., Pa.



Fig. 12. Here a short flight of ornate stairs unites two elevations. From the base of the stairs a short allee leads to a fountain. By its proportion and proximity it balances with and softens the stairway. (Note the Moorish influence in the design of the fountain.) Photo: Keith Davitt



Fig. 13. In this Classical arrangement, formal stairs typical of the sort used to unite two elevations lead down to a vine-covered pergola and pool. The perfect balance and symmetry here are characteristic of the Classical garden, as is the prominent display of water. Photo: Design & Fabrication: Haddonstone, Ltd.



Fig. 14.



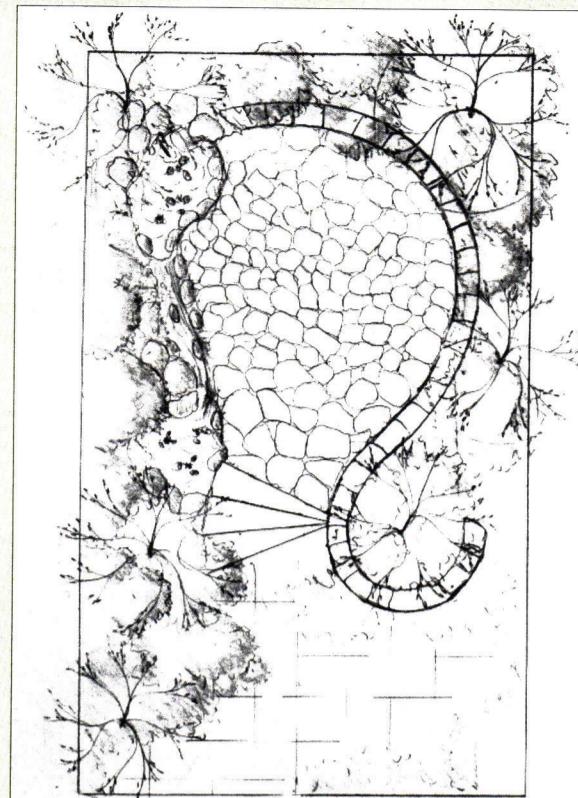
Fig. 14A. We find these water gardens completely delightful because of the designer's attention to symmetry and proportion. As the water features are in scale with the gardens in which they are found, so is each detail of the water garden in harmony with the water garden itself. Both photos: Larry Albee/Longwood Gardens, Kennett Sq., Pa.

and as miradors, lies balanced the full expanse of this villa garden. Notice, too, the formal stairs on both sides leading to the top of the elevation. A further develop-

TWO PARADIGMS

Although most of the examples shown are of large, public gardens, the same principles apply to small urban and suburban settings with the same pleasing effects. By way of demonstration, notice the two drawings below.

The two garden plans are for a small urban setting. One is contemporary/informal, the other Classical in style. Each garden is sunken (about two feet), walled, and contains water in ornamental display. One is



no more functional than the other, and each accommodates the same number of people and same sorts of activities.

The free-form garden (left) is an asymmetrical, loose, and more relaxed design. There is a small pool at the base of the steps fed by a small, natural-looking stream that meanders through the patio. This originates from a flow of water issuing from the stone and soil elevation in the upper right. The planting is informal, asymmetrical, and consists of randomly placed flowering shrubs, trees, and various flowering perennials. The paving is natural stone arranged in a random pattern. Table and chairs can be placed anywhere within the garden, as can a barbecue grill.

The Classical garden (right) is symmetrical along the long axis and balanced along the cross axis. There are raised fountains on either side of the steps which recirculate into pebble-lined troughs below. At the far end there is a raised pool that spills into a ground-level pool edged in cut stone. The wall and fountains are, on the inside, edged in grass, and the wall on the outside is bordered by flowering perennials and a hedge. Small flowering trees border the garden. Four benches are placed within the sunken garden, and two are placed in the paved area outside. Formal tables and chairs can be placed anywhere within and a grill can be situated on the upper portion.

The important thing to note about this garden is that it is one of countless possibilities for a similarly sized space. Not only could the overall layout be different, but within this layout every component could also be changed. The far pool could be a pergola; the near pools could be benches, sculpture, or topiary; the wall could be edged in something other than lawn, or not edged, or the lawn could be edged in brick or stone. The primary open area could be paved in stone, brick, or turf, there may or may not be sculpture, there could be lattice rather than hedges, and so on.

Speaking generally, the possibilities for either the Classical garden or the informal are endless. They can be functional, enjoyable, and beautiful. The informal will convey a sense of peace and quietude through relaxed lines and congenial elements in a natural arrangement. The Classical garden can also offer itself as a peaceful, serene environment, but with a degree of sophistication and elegance not usually associated with an informal garden. Each has its place, as do all garden styles. Personal taste and the garden space will determine which garden design is most suitable.

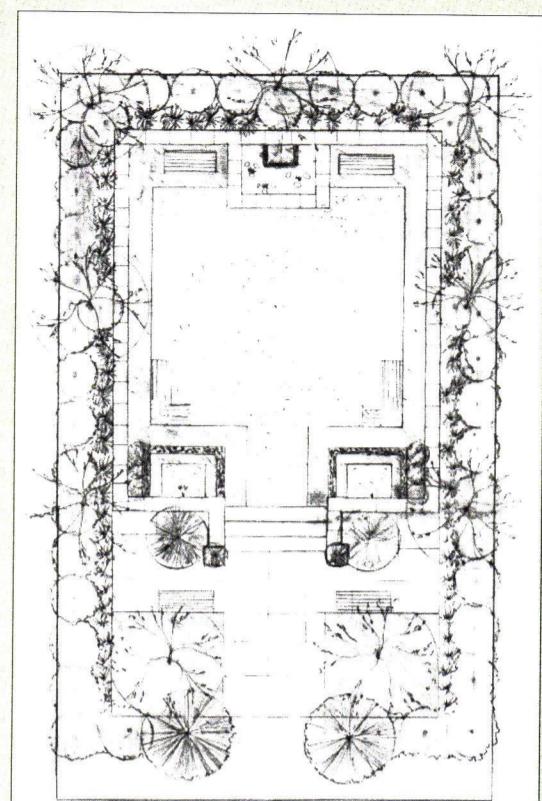
ment of the Classical garden first gave rise to this device.

Stairs and Water Features

Renaissance architect Donato Bramante was commanded by Pope Julius II to link the Vatican with the nearby Belvedere Palace. The difficulty of an extreme elevation difference between the two sites gave rise to the creation of formal stairs as a primary design element in linking different planes. Thereafter, this device became a distinguishing mark of the Classical garden.

Around the same time, water-as-ornament was introduced through the influence of the Spanish Popes. Often the two were used in conjunction, with a formal set of stairs on either side of a water display, or a stairway leading down to a pool, or the two simply seen in close proximity. Stone stairs are strongly architectural, and under the fundamental principle that harmony is essential with no one element dominating, water seemed the perfect balance to massive works of stone. With their know-how for moving water, the Spanish were able to create tranquil and dramatic displays of flowing, gushing, soaring water.

The display of water became a primary design element in the 1500s, and sites were sought on which to create them. Though distinctive, attractive, delightful features by themselves, they were always integrated with their surroundings and were meant to be seen and enjoyed in relation to the entire garden in which they



were found. The larger the garden, the more opportunity for a dramatic and extensive water display (Figs. 11 to 14A).

As we have seen, geometry, symmetry, and proportion were intrinsic to the Classical garden. Though not well known today, from the time of Cicero color was also an important part of the Classical garden. Informal arrangements and bright displays of color were generally reserved for smaller, more-private areas within the larger garden, but flowering shrubs and bedding plants were to be found throughout.

It is true that the Classical garden is formal, but as we have seen, within that structure there is unlimited opportunity for individual expression. Each of the elements in all of the gardens shown could have been different without harm to the whole: Where there was sculpture there could have been topiary or porticos; pools could have been pergolas; all could have been designed in any number of ways. So long as each element in the garden contributes to the whole in a generally symmetrical arrangement of harmonious components, the garden will be Classical. And if arranged with taste and refined proportions, the effect will also be beautiful. ♦

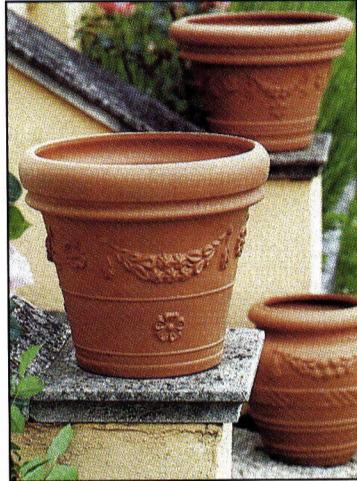
Keith Davitt is owner of and chief designer for GARDENS, a landscape-design and project-management team in Park Slope, Brooklyn, N.Y., which handles projects nationwide. He can be reached by phone at 718-857-1787. Visit his website www.garden-views.com

BUYING GUIDE TO PLANTERS & URNS

used as planters. Quality, hand-crafted stock imported from England includes a wide array of colors, sizes, and styles. Will ship anywhere in U.S. Write in No. 410

Crescent City Iron Supply, Inc.
800-535-9842; Fax: 708-345-6664
www.crescentcityironsupply.com
Westchester, IL 60154

Supplies the ornamental-iron industry with a complete line of castings, gate hardware, locks, steel forgings, stampings, furniture & lamp posts. Ornamental iron castings, balusters, hardware, benches, fencing, gate hardware, gate operators. In cast aluminum, cast iron, wrought iron/steel. Write in No. 1222



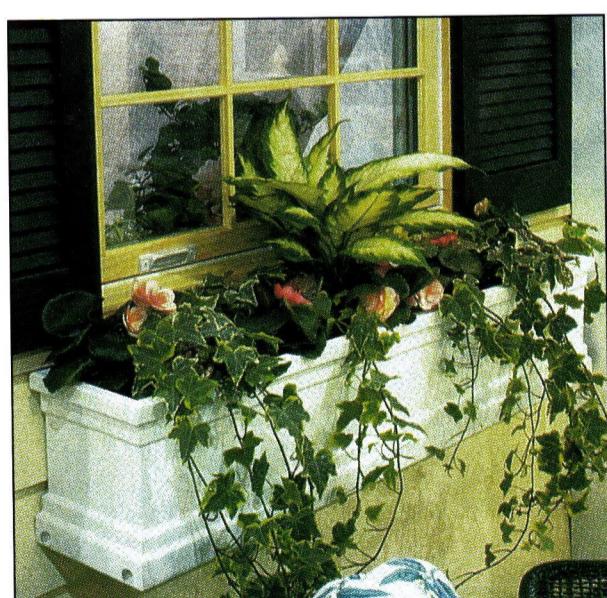
DEROMA offers a wide range of decorated and garlanded terra-cotta vases in a variety of shapes and sizes.

Deroma
305-513-0399; Fax: 305-513-4933
www.deroma.com
Miami, FL 33172

Terra-cotta pots and vases of classic forms, shapes, and functions for home and garden use; more than 50 designs from Mediterranean and Ancient Roman tradition. Decorated and undecorated. Patio and terrace planters, window boxes, and flower pots.

Florentine Craftsmen
800-876-3567; Fax: 718-937-9858
www.florentinecraftsmen.com
Long Island City, NY 11101

Garden ornaments, fountains (freestanding and wall-mounted), statuary, columns & capitals, urns, planters, furniture, and accessories in lead, aluminum, iron, stone, and bronze. Also, weathervanes. Custom work a specialty. Ornamental metal sculpture, furniture, and cast-metal ornament in wrought iron/steel, lead, and aluminum. Write in No. 4390



FLOWER FRAMERS manufacture durable and attractive fiberglass window boxes in lengths of up to 14 ft. Write in No. 3850

Flower Framers
800-315-1805; Fax: 513-321-7269
www.flowerframers.com
Cincinnati, OH 45226

Fiberglass planter boxes in long lengths up to 12 ft.; sits flat or hangs easily; standard full-flow drainage system. Write in No. 3850

◆◆◆
Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.
856-931-7011; Fax: 856-931-0040
www.haddonstone.com
Bellmawr, NJ 08031

British designer/manufacturer of classical stonework, using cast, reconstructed limestone resembling Portland stone. Over 500 designs of architectural and landscape elements that weather naturally. Custom-design capabilities. Cast-stone architectural products including railings, columns, gate piers, gazebos, and garden temples. Write in No. 4020



KALEH DESIGN's "Colloseum" planter is available with a 20-1/16-in. diameter, in both 17-1/4-in. and 22-1/2-in. heights. Write in No. 3068

Kaleh Design Collection/Stone
310-289-9746; Fax: 310-289-9749
www.kalehdesign.com
Los Angeles, CA 90048

Cast-stone planters, pots, urns, jardinières, fireplace mantels, garden objects, & fountains, as well as columns, etc. Made using European techniques; frost-freeze-resistant & offered in 9 finishes & textures, plus antique finish. Write in No. 3068

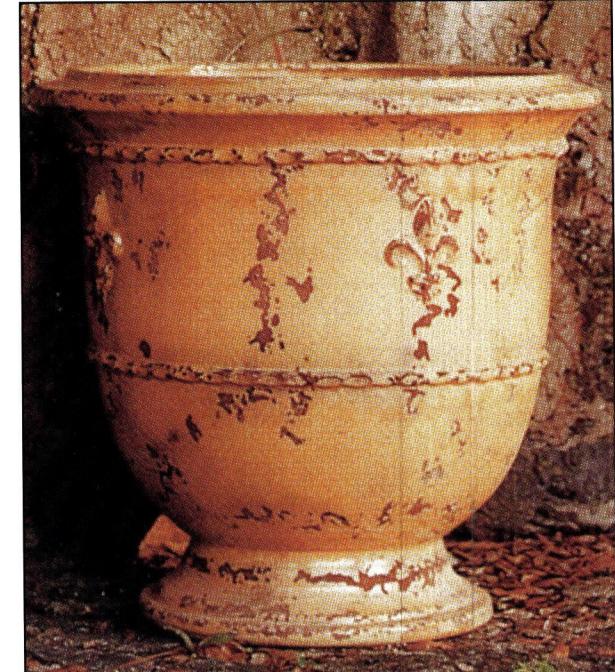


Kansas City Art Statuary, Inc.
888-261-3929; Fax: 816-241-0876
www.kcart.com
Kansas City, MO 64127

Manufacturer of high-quality cast-stone garden decor, including planters, fountains, birdbaths, benches, statues, columns, finials, and religious creations.

◆◆◆
Limestone Concept, Inc.
310-278-9829; Fax: 310-278-9651
www.limestoneconcept.com
Los Angeles, CA 90035

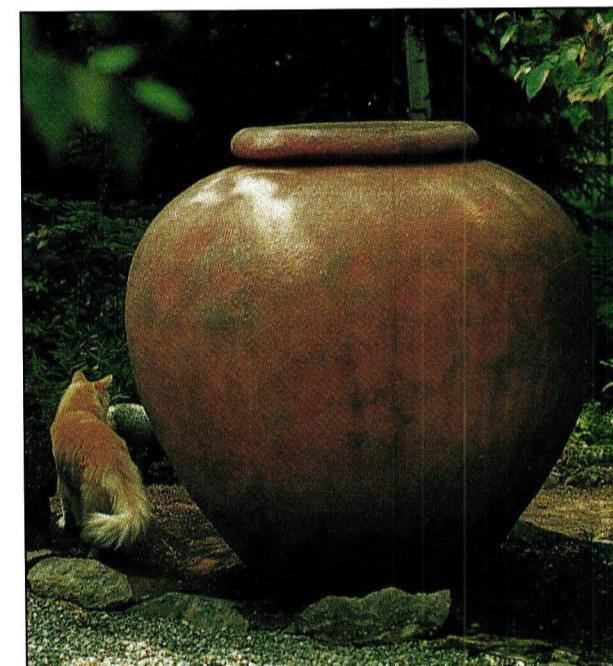
Hand-carved limestone fireplaces, fountains, columns, balustrades, capitals, mantels, benches, ornament, garden statuary, sculptures, French limestone slabs & tiles, antique terra cotta. Natural-stone flooring; quarry tile; limestone. Write in No. 5390



The Fleur de Lys vase, shown here with an antique gold finish, is from LOU PARADOU's Jarras & Vases of Provence series.

Lou Paradou de Provence
305-576-7818; Fax: 305-576-0827
168 NE 40th St.
Miami, FL 33137

Hand-turned ceramic planters imported from France. Jars available in 6 styles, 4 sizes, 5 colors and 2 finishes (shiny/enamel and antique/distressed). Authentic limestone fountains, benches also available from Provence. All resistant to high and freezing temperatures.



LUNAFORM create large hand-turned steel-reinforced concrete garden containers such as this urn.

Lunaform
207-422-0923; Fax: Same as phone
www.lunaform.com
Sullivan, ME 04664

Coastal Maine studio produces handmade, all-weather garden containers, urns, and fountains. All pieces are hand-turned, steel-reinforced concrete. Available in a wide variety of natural color and textural finishes.

◆◆◆
Mandish Research International
321-267-2561; Fax: 321-268-1972
www.mandish.com
Mims, FL 32754

Maker of molds for balustrades and rail starts; over 100 balustrade designs. Custom molds available. Molds for cast-stone columns; 18 in. dia. x up to 12 ft. high. Write in No. 875

◆◆◆
Nichols Bros. Stoneworks, Ltd.
800-483-5720; Fax: 425-483-5721
www.nicholsbros.com
Maltby, WA 98296

Manufactures high-quality, hand-cast sandstone planters, garden furnishings, and statuary. Can make to order; will

Dazzle a Formal Lady

Add pizzazz to a stately Colonial or stir up a Greek Revival

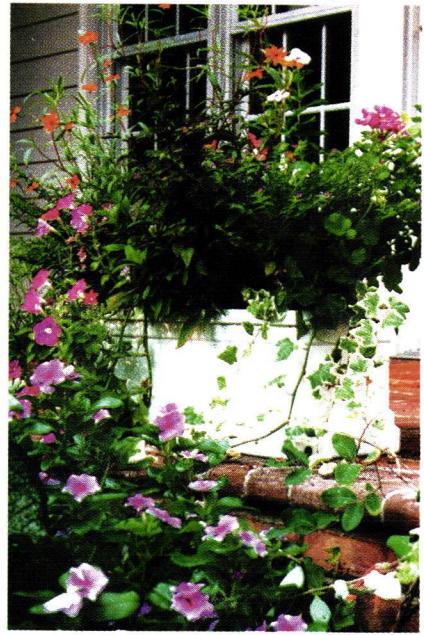


Regardless of
the period style,
our signature
product—

The Ultimate Flowerbox—

adds the
finishing touch

to your signature design.



The Ultimate Flowerbox

- Distinguishes property with seasonal color
- Maintenance-free fiberglass construction
- Durable under all weather conditions
- Easy to install
- 2-14 ft. lengths; custom available
- Price from \$85-\$400
- Lifetime guarantee



 FLOWER
FRAMERSTM
by Jay

BUYING GUIDE TO PLANTERS & URNS

create and ship to anywhere in the United States. Balustrades, statuary, and planters in cast stone. Write in No. 5980



NICHOLS BROS. STONWORKS offers a range of cast-sandstone planters, including this ornate French vase. Write in No. 5980

◆ ◆ ◆

Normandy Imports, Ltd.
803-328-9232; Fax: Same as phone
www.normandyimports.com
Rock Hill, SC 29730



These antique stone troughs, ideal for use as planters, were imported from France by NORMANDY IMPORTS. Write in No. 568

U.S. distributor of "Caisse à Oranger" in 8 sizes, the traditional French planter boxes developed by LeNotre in the 17th century for ornamental trees and shrubs, used today by the city of Paris, the Chateau and Gardens of Versailles, and other great properties throughout France. Company also offers an ever-changing inventory of antique stone basins and troughs, stone and terra-cotta planters, precise reproductions of the 18th-century "Pot au Fleurs" flower urns in stone. Write in No. 568

◆ ◆ ◆

North American Stone Company
972-562-9992; Fax: 972-562-0794
www.northamericanstone.com
McKinney, TX 75070

Manufactures custom architectural cast-stone elements. Products include fireplace mantels, columns, balustrades, landscape elements, entry systems, pavers, fountains, plant-

ers, urns, caps, benches, tables, exterior and interior elements; residential and commercial work, restoration work. Design assistance available. Write in No. 754



These attractive cast-iron urns, ranging in height from 15 in. to 24 in., are available from ROBINSON CONSUMER PRODUCTS.

Robinson Consumer Products
800-327-2874; Fax: 847-803-6953
www.pots.com
Des Plaines, IL 60018

Stocks containers for plants and flowers in sizes 1-1/2 in. to 60 in. for immediate delivery. Made for indoor and outdoor use.

◆ ◆ ◆

Rossato Giovanni, srl/ Vicenza Stone Sculpture
011-39-0444-928499; Fax: 39-0444-928711
www.vicenzastone.com
36100 Vicenza ITALY

Classic statues, fireplaces, consoles, columns, bench-seats, balls, pineapples, balustrades, fountains, vases, more. Hand-carved in Vicenza stone. Columns round, conical, fluted, and twisted-shaft; heights in multiples of 10 ft. Custom and antique mantels in Vicenza stone or marble. Write in No. 6110

◆ ◆ ◆

Savannah Classics
800-830-8044; Fax: 912-898-0613
www.stonemantelsonline.com
Savannah, GA 31410

Cast-stone architectural elements including door surrounds, treads and risers, band courses, and balustrading. Stock and custom mantels in cast stone. Write in No. 8069

◆ ◆ ◆



The Medici urn, from SEIBERT & RICE, is made in Tuscany from the finest Impruneta terra cotta. Write in No. 5500

Seibert & Rice, Inc.
973-467-8266; Fax: 973-379-2536
www.seibert-rice.com
Short Hills, NJ 07078

Fine terra-cotta planters, urns, and garden ornaments. Hand-made in Impruneta, Italy. Frost-proof. Custom capabilities. Write in No. 5500

◆ ◆ ◆

Stonex Cast Products
732-938-2334; Fax: 732-919-0918
www.stonexonline.com
Farmingdale, NJ 07727

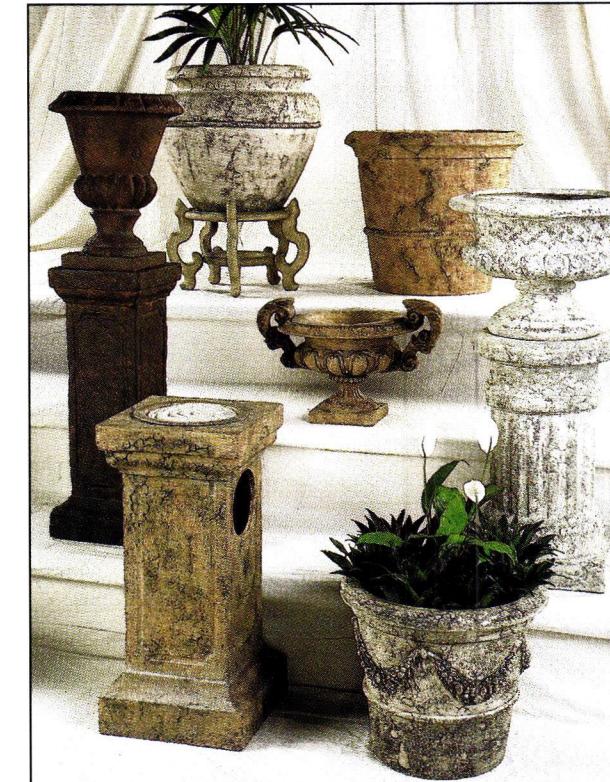
Baluster and rail system; quoins, window sills & surrounds wall copings, splash blocks, pier caps, and much more in cast stone; seven styles of balusters; curved railings available. Write in No. 507

◆ ◆ ◆

Texas Metal Industries, Inc.
800-222-6033; Fax: 800-472-3807
www.txmetal.com
Crandall, TX 75114

Ornamental aluminum castings: outdoor furniture and lighting, gate and fence components, mailboxes, hardware, finials, and balustrades. Also, cast-aluminum fountains, lampposts, and urns. Write in No. 9430

◆ ◆ ◆



UNITED OCEAN PRODUCTS offers 30 planter designs, ranging from the classically inspired to the highly decorative, and 12 finishing options.

United Ocean Products
954-572-4854; Fax: 954-572-4768
www.UnitedOceanProducts.com
Sunrise, FL 33351

Lightweight, commercial grade decorative planters and urns. Excellent freeze/thaw characteristics. Available in over 15 finishes and over a dozen molded-in colors.

◆ ◆ ◆

Urs Oeggerli Garden Ornaments
214-953-9382; Fax: 214-953-9387
3102 Maple Ave., Ste. 450
Dallas, TX 75201

Importer of "The Zinc Collection," a new line of contemporary zinc containers and hand-carved Italian Vicenza stone ornaments from Europe.

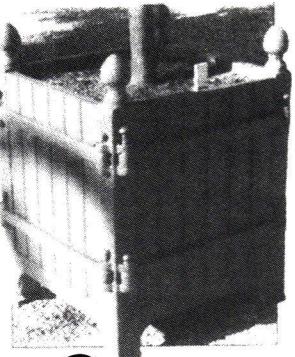
◆ ◆ ◆

Wood Innovations of Suffolk
631-698-2345; Fax: 631-698-2396
P.O. Box 356
Medford, NY 11763

Exterior wood structures and elements in high-quality Western red cedar; wood planters, any size, any shape. Also, caps, bridges, wishing wells, and more. Custom-built wood products. Shipping nationwide. Write in No. 7160

◆ ◆ ◆

www.period-homes.com
*Products & Services
for the Residential Market*



**CAISSES A
ORANGERS**
**Traditional French
Planter Boxes For Trees
and Ornamental Shrubs**

Precise Reproductions of 17th
Century Originals
Cast Iron Frames
Removable Oak Panels
Available in 8 Sizes
Residential or Commercial Use
Normandy Imports, Ltd.
Antique French Building Materials
Tel./Fax: 803-328-9232

WRITE IN NO. 568

**Architectural
Products
by
Outwater**
*see our full page
full color ad on page 5.*

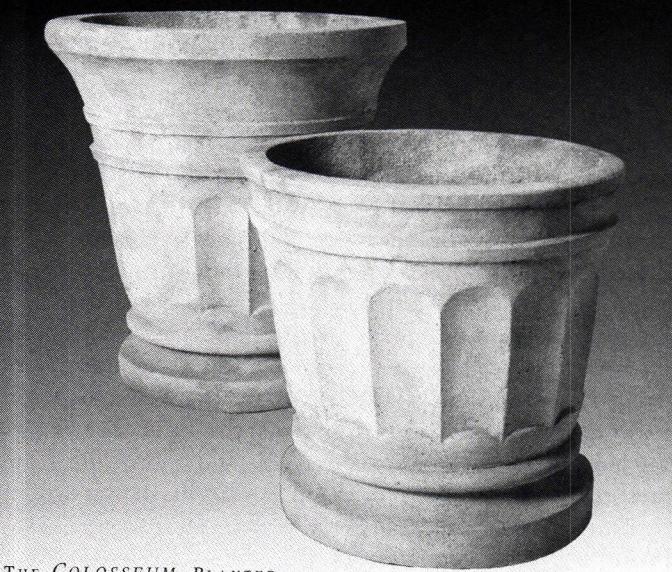
WRITE IN NO. 5008

CUSTOM ARCHITECTURAL
METALWORK & LIGHTING
FROM
**HISTORICAL
ARTS & CASTING**

SEE OUR DISPLAY AD
ON PAGE 101.

WRITE IN NO. 1210

Using old world European techniques, we make an exquisite collection of cast stone
planters, jardinières, urns, fireplaces, table bases, garden objects and custom work.



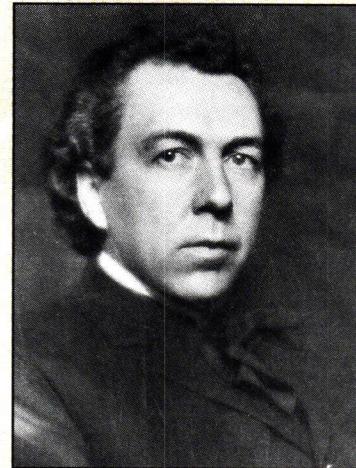
THE COLOSSEUM PLANTER

KALÉH

DESIGN COLLECTION
STONE

519 N. La Cienega Blvd. No. 16 • Los Angeles, CA • 90048 • Tel: 310-289-9746 • Fax: 310-289-9749
Visit us at www.kalehdesign.com

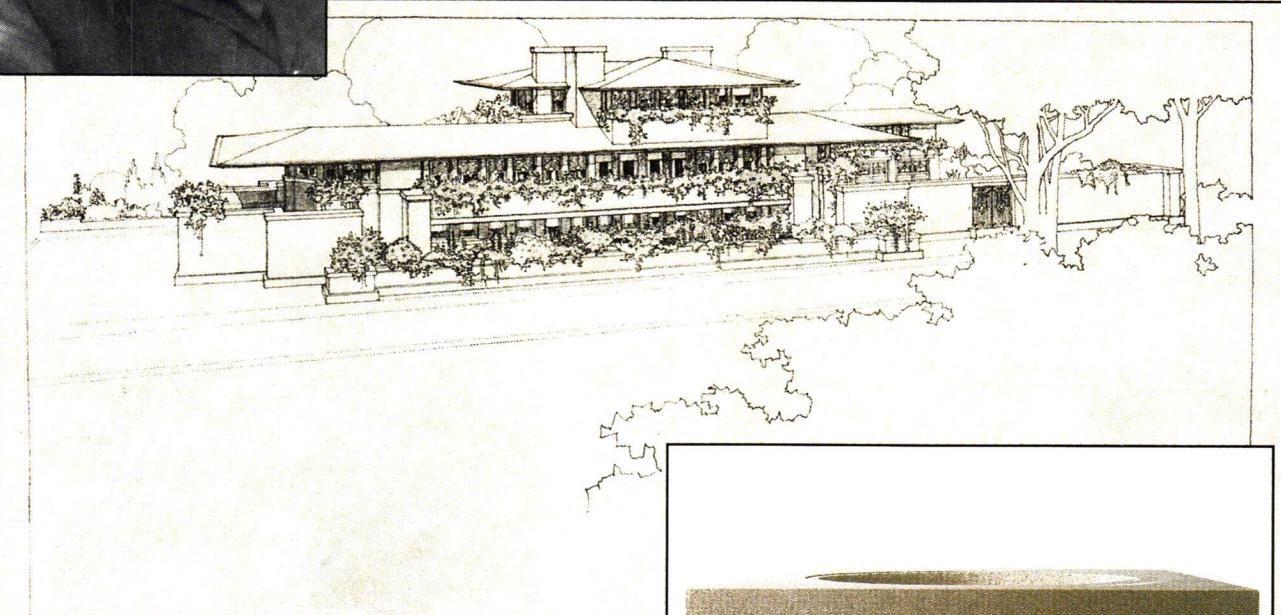
WRITE IN NO. 3068



Frank Lloyd Wright®

"Nature Is The Inspiration
For Ornamentation . . ."

**FRANK
LLOYD
WRIGHT.
COLLECTION**



© 2000 FLW FDN, Scottsdale, AZ



ROBIE® VASE

**S NICHOLS BROS.
STONWORKS™**

IS PLEASED TO OFFER
THE ORNAMENTAL STONE DESIGNS OF

FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT

Many styles and sizes currently available including designs from the following
Wright designed structures: FREDERICK C. ROBIE HOUSE, HENRY J. ALLEN HOUSE,
WRIGHT'S OAK PARK STUDIO, NATHAN MOORE HOUSE, THE MIDWAY GARDENS,
WRIGHT'S OAK PARK RESIDENCE and the BURTON WESTCOTT HOUSE.
Reproduced under license granted by the Frank Lloyd Wright Foundation.

CALL OR WRITE FOR CATALOG
NICHOLS BROS. STONWORKS, LTD
20209 BROADWAY, SNOHOMISH, WA. 98296
(800) 483-5720 FAX (425) 483-5721
www.nicholsbros.com

® THE FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT FOUNDATION, SCOTTSDALE, AZ., COPYRIGHT © THE FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT FOUNDATION, SCOTTSDALE AZ.,
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF THE FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT ARCHIVES, SCOTTSDALE, AZ.

PHOTOGRAPH COURTESY THE FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT ARCHIVES, SCOTTSDALE, AZ. THIS FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT COLLECTION™ PRODUCT IS AUTHORIZED BY THE FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT FOUNDATION, TALIESIN WEST, SCOTTSDALE, ARIZONA AND HAS BEEN DEVELOPED WITH THE COOPERATION OF THE FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT HOME AND STUDIO FOUNDATION. A PORTION OF THE SALES OF THIS PRODUCT SUPPORTS THE CONSERVATION AND EDUCATION PROGRAMS OF THESE INSTITUTIONS. THE ROBIE HOUSE IS AN HISTORIC SITE OF THE NATIONAL TRUST FOR HISTORIC PRESERVATION AND IS OPERATED BY THE FRANK LLOYD WRIGHT HOME AND STUDIO FOUNDATION.

WRITE IN NO. 5980

SEIBERT & RICE
Fine Italian Terra Cotta

Handmade in Italy
Estate Quality
Frost Proof
Extensive Inventory
Custom Capabilities

Catalog \$5.00

P.O. Box 365
Short Hills, NJ 07078
973.467.8266
Fax 973.379.2536
www.seibert-rice.com



WRITE IN NO. 5500

Edward Lutyens: Building With Wit

Sir Edwin Lutyens: Designing in the English Tradition by Elizabeth Wilhide; Abrams Books, 100 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10011 Phone 212-206-7715; FAX 212-645-8437 192 pp., 121 illus.; hardcover; \$39.95 ISBN 0-8109-4080-9 Website: www.abramsbooks.com

by Eve M. Kahn

A workaholic in practice from the British Empire's heyday to the Blitz, Lutyens designed everything from a London dollhouse to a Somme battlefield tribute to a New Delhi palace bigger than Versailles. He explored the brick-and-timber extremes of Arts & Crafts, and yet also often drew on Classicism's most austere precedents. "To toy with the Orders," he said, "would be tantamount to defying nature herself." In all his varied projects, though, he strove toward a goal he called "building with wit": He once zebra-striped a Georgian stair with alternating treads of black and white marble, for instance, and fashioned a nursery's chandelier from wooden cutouts of boys fishing, attracting their prey with bare light bulbs dangling.

His personality, too, was somewhat paradoxical, according to this useful introduction to the man and his oeuvre. He chain-puffed tobacco pipes, he liked to tell smutty jokes, and his romantic life was usually in disorder: His wife was a Theosophist and occasional celibate, and he kept up a decade-long adulterous affair with an heiress client who'd remunerated him for architectural services with a Rolls Royce. He meanwhile maintained such an aversion to household clutter that he even opposed nonessentials at dinnertime like fish knives and toast racks. For all his quirks, aristocratic and arriviste clients hired him for hundreds of projects, partly because they could rely on his perfectionism: Upon his death in 1944 he left behind an archive of over 80,000 drawings, with which he'd controlled every construction detail down to the closet hinges.

Author Elizabeth Wilhide attributes Lutyens' simultaneous fears of chaos and failure to his impoverished childhood in Surrey: He was one of 14 children who were barely supported by the sales of their artist father's horse-and-hound paintings. By age 20 "Ned" Lutyens had dropped out of art school and was running his own architectural firm, and by his mid 20s he was collaborating with and building a Surrey country house for the garden-design genius Gertrude Jekyll. Lutyens created many timber-beamed pergolas, Wilhide explains, so that his houses would trail off into Jekyll's naturalistic flower beds. Just a few of these Lutyens-Jekyll schemes endure, given the inherent fragility of plantings and outbuildings; and the book's wealth of recently commissioned photography shows the survivors in all their glorious English-summer polychromy.



Deanery Garden, Lutyen's first commission from Edward Hudson, encapsulates ideals of country living. The link between house and garden was critical. Photo: Arcaid/Lucinda Lambton



Lutyens was profligate with circulation space, as shown by the staircase at Marshcourt. The effect was to multiply views from level to level and make houses seem bigger than they in fact were. Photo: James Mortimer

The volume's new photographs also reveal intact facades and interiors of some of Lutyens' best houses. Particularly remarkable is Marsh Court (1901), a Tudor-inspired pile in Hampshire that contains virtually all of his design signatures. He always maximized interior sunlight; Marsh Court's corridors wrap around both a forecourt and a courtyard, and subtle peek-throughs inside allow views into staircase risers and between joists over doorways. And like many of his buildings, Marsh Court seems to have been altered over time: The Tudor exterior gives way to a Classical frenzy inside, with marble Doric columns supporting floral-swag carved friezes. Lutyens specified local materials wherever possible — the chalk blocks for Marsh Court's walls came from the surrounding countryside — and he enlivened them with surprising color accents, such as the red-tile and gray-flint inserts scattered along Marsh Court's elevations. In fact Lutyens seems to have feared no brazen hues: A whole unspoiled bathroom survives at Marsh Court, its brass towel racks glittering against green handmade tiles the shade of Monet's lily pads.

In describing such marvels, Wilhide has an unfortunate tendency to repeat herself and to generalize ("Lutyens had a rigorous approach to design; his attention to detail is integral to his architecture"), and to offer basic observations ("Light and shade delineate form and affect perception of volume") that won't enlighten professionals. The book could have benefited not only from tighter editing but also from a map showing the locations of his works, more cross-referencing to the photos on hand, and more information on his structures' current condition. (For example, what harsh post-Colonial fate has befallen the Viceroy's palace in New Delhi?) Nonetheless, Lutyens's new acquaintances and his connoisseurs will find this reference valuable. Both groups will especially appreciate the address lists at the back: There's an official Lutyens fan club, a furniture factory that reproduces his designs from original drawings (www.lutyens-furniture.com, co-owned by his granddaughter Candia Lutyens, who also wrote this book's foreword), and a number of his buildings that are accessible to the public (sadly, not including Marsh Court). Two of them are operated as country hotels, so that tourists can examine up-close just how his Tudor exteriors give way to internal Classical feasts, and how his pergolas and their draped blossoms can get along so well. ♦

BUYING GUIDE TO BENCHES & GARDEN FURNITURE

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted Benches & Garden Furniture suppliers from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 26 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

A&M Victorian Decorations, Inc.
626-575-0693; Fax: 626-575-1781
www.aandmvictorian.com
South El Monte, CA 91733

Manufactures many architectural elements in either gypsum or precast concrete: columns, molding, mantels, balustrades, wall caps, benches, pavers, quoins, stair treads, planters, fountains, and gazebos; custom designs and finishes. Write in No. 7470

Am-Dia, Inc.
800-483-7105; Fax: 419-424-1822
www.victorianmarketplace.com
Findlay, OH 45840

Specialist in decorative residential post- and wall-mount mailboxes that are 'U.S. Postmaster' approved. Also, cast-aluminum fountains, birdbaths, Victorian-style furniture, benches, street lighting, antique furnishings, and patio furniture. Porch, wall- & post-mounted lighting in Victorian style. Write in No. 95



The Monaco seat is a new addition to BARLOW TYRIE's range of fine teakwood outdoor furniture.

Barlow Tyrie, Inc.
800-451-7467; Fax: 856-273-9199
www.teak.com
Moorestown, NJ 08057

Solid, all-weather teakwood outdoor and garden furnishings; made in England, inventories in the U.S. for immediate shipment. Wide range of benches (4 to 8 ft.), planters, chairs, tables, and occasional pieces. Dining furniture, lounging furniture, armchairs, and swings.

BRP Enterprises
888-438-5311; Fax: 888-438-5312
www.brponline.com
Lincoln, NE 68510

Designer and manufacturer of site furnishings and other amenities, including bike racks, modular seating systems, benches, tables, chairs, umbrellas, litter receptacles, ash urns, planters, bollards, and handrail & fencing systems.

Coppa Woodworking
310-548-5332; Fax: 310-548-6740
www.coppawoodworking.com
San Pedro, CA 90731

Wood screen doors in 120 styles; any size; also, arch-top doors and window screens. Species include Douglas fir,

mahogany, and oak. Also, Adirondack furniture kits. Write in No. 9600

♦ ♦ ♦
Crescent City Iron Supply, Inc.
800-535-9842; Fax: 708-345-6664
www.crescentcityironsupply.com
Westchester, IL 60154

Supplies the ornamental-iron industry with a complete line of castings, gate hardware, locks, steel forgings, stampings, furniture & lamp posts. Ornamental iron castings, balusters, hardware, benches, fencing, gate hardware, gate operators. In cast aluminum, cast iron, wrought iron/steel. Write in No. 1222

♦ ♦ ♦
DMS Studios
718-937-5648; Fax: 718-937-2609
www.dms-studios.com
Long Island City, NY 11101

Historically accurate, hand-carved marble and limestone fireplace mantels and other architectural and landscape ornament, including statuary and fountains. Also specialize in one-of-a-kind and custom projects that require high levels of artistic skill and experience. Write in No. 9100



DUMOR's #118 bench combines the graceful aesthetics of traditional garden seating with the durability of all-steel construction.

♦ ♦ ♦
DuMor, Inc.
800-598-4018; Fax: 717-436-9839
www.dumor.com
Mifflintown, PA 17059

In business since 1984, firm features an array of benches, tables, trash receptacles, tree guards, and patented "Paver-Grate" suspension system. Coordinated streetscapes with companion pieces that work equally well alone or as part of a complete design scheme. Wood and recycled plastic benches and site furnishings.

♦ ♦ ♦
Fine Architectural Metalsmiths
845-651-7550; Fax: 845-651-7857
www.iceforge.com
Chester, NY 10918

Hand-built signature lighting: entry lanterns, foyer chandeliers, and sconces from award-winning studio. Period or fine custom styling in forged iron, coppers, and bronzes. Exotic patinations. Fire screens. Forged balusters in traditional and period motifs; collared, drawn, tapered, beveled, incised, and hot split at the anvil and assembled into railings and grilles; specialty finishes and patinas. Write in No. 2640

Florentine Craftsmen
800-876-3567; Fax: 718-937-9858
www.florentinecraftsmen.com
Long Island City, NY 11101

Garden ornaments, fountains (freestanding and wall-mounted), statuary, columns & capitals, urns, planters, furniture, and accessories in lead, aluminum, iron, stone, and bronze. Also, weathervanes. Custom work a specialty. Ornamental metal sculpture, furniture, and cast-metal ornament in wrought iron/steel, lead, and aluminum. Write in No. 4390

♦ ♦ ♦
Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.
856-931-7011; Fax: 856-931-0040
www.haddonstone.com
Bellmawr, NJ 08031

British designer/manufacturer of classical stonework, using cast, reconstructed limestone resembling Portland stone. Over 500 designs of architectural and landscape elements that weather naturally. Custom-design capabilities. Cast-stone architectural products including railings, columns, gate piers, gazebos, and garden temples. Write in No. 4020

♦ ♦ ♦
Henry Hall Designs
415-863-4868; Fax: 415-863-4858
www.henryhalldesigns.com
San Francisco, CA 94103

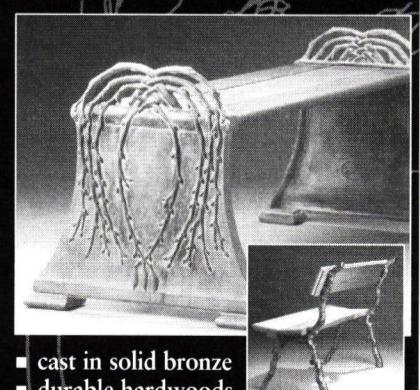
Specializes in fine teak outdoor furniture featured in 3 distinct collections. 'Chelsea Ex-Centrics' collection is inspired by classic English designs and offers a variety of outdoor pieces for residential or commercial projects.

♦ ♦ ♦
Historical Arts & Casting, Inc.
800-225-1414; Fax: 801-280-2493
www.historicalarts.com
West Jordan, UT 84088

Designer and manufacturer of lighting, columns and capitals, cornices, railings, fences, newels, planters, finials, benches, street furnishings, and fountains cast in bronze, aluminum, or iron. Restoration and custom work. Write in No. 1210

♦ ♦ ♦
Kansas City Art Statuary, Inc.
888-261-3929; Fax: 816-241-0876
www.kcart.com
Kansas City, MO 64127

GARDEN SITE FURNISHINGS
New design...
in an old tradition.



- cast in solid bronze
- durable hardwoods
- indoor/outdoor
- hand finished

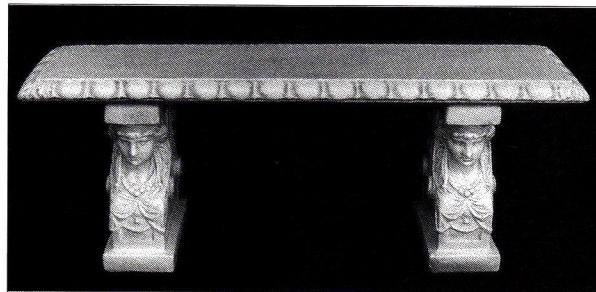
SYLVA DESIGNS

8167 Lueth Rd., Sauk City, WI 53583
608-643-2032
FAX 608-643-3016
sylva@bankpds.com

Architectural Products by Outwater
see our full page
full color ad on page 5.

WRITE IN NO. 5008

BUYING GUIDE TO BENCHES & GARDEN FURNITURE



The cast-stone Victorian Bench, #820 in the KANSAS CITY ART STATUARY catalog, is 19 in. tall, 16 in. deep, and 52 in. long.

Manufacturer of high-quality cast-stone garden decor, including planters, fountains, birdbaths, benches, statues, columns, finials, and religious creations.

◆ ◆ ◆



LANDSCAPEFORMS' Plainwell bench is available in 72- and 96-in. lengths with either a wood or an aluminum seat.

Landscapeforms
800-521-2546; Fax: 616-381-3455
www.landscapeforms.com
Kalamazoo, MI 49001

All-aluminum and wood and aluminum "Plainwell" benches and coordinates.

◆ ◆ ◆

Limestone Concept, Inc.
310-278-9829; Fax: 310-278-9651
www.limestoneconcept.com
Los Angeles, CA 90035

Hand-carved limestone fireplaces, fountains, columns, balustrades, capitals, mantels, benches, ornaments, garden statuary, sculptures, French limestone slabs & tiles, antique terra cotta. Natural-stone flooring; quarry tile; limestone. Write in No. 5390

◆ ◆ ◆

Mandish Research International
321-267-2561; Fax: 321-268-1972
www.mandish.com
Mims, FL 32754

Maker of molds for balustrades and rail starts; over 100 balustrade designs. Custom molds available. Molds for cast-stone columns; 18 in. dia. x up to 12 ft. high. Write in No. 875

◆ ◆ ◆

North American Stone Company
972-562-9992; Fax: 972-562-0794
www.northamericanstone.com
McKinney, TX 75070

Manufactures custom architectural cast-stone elements. Products include fireplace mantels, columns, balustrades, landscape elements, entry systems, pavers, fountains, planters, urns, caps, benches, tables, exterior and interior elements; residential and commercial work, restoration work. Design assistance available. Write in No. 754

◆ ◆ ◆

Romancing The Woods, Inc.
845-246-1020; Fax: 845-246-1021
www.rtw-inc.com
Woodstock, NY 12498

Rustic garden and woodland structures (benches, gazebos, pergolas, planters, etc.) made of Eastern red cedar in the romantic tradition of 19th-century English and French estate gardens, and the Great Adirondack camps. Write in No. 5010



ROMANCING THE WOODS' rustic Haddem Eastern red cedar garden bench is available in 5-, 6-, and 7-ft lengths, and in smooth or natural bark seat finishes. Write in No. 5010

◆ ◆ ◆

Rossato Giovanni, srl/ Vicenza Stone Sculpture
011-39-0444-928499; Fax: 39-0444-928711
www.vicenzastone.com
36100 Vicenza ITALY MVI 002134

Classic statues, fireplaces, consoles, columns, bench-seats, balls, pineapples, balustrades, fountains, vases, more. Hand-carved in Vicenza stone. Columns round, conical, fluted, and twisted-shaft; heights in multiples of 10 ft. Custom and antique mantels in Vicenza stone or marble. Write in No. 6110

◆ ◆ ◆



Impruneta terra cotta from Italy possesses frost-proof qualities that make it extremely durable. This terra-cotta bench from SEIBERT & RICE measures 39 in. long x 18-1/2 in. high x 12 in. wide, and provides a great spot to sit in a winter garden — once the snow is brushed off! Write in No. 5500

Seibert & Rice, Inc.
973-467-8266; Fax: 973-379-2536
www.seibert-rice.com
Short Hills, NJ 07078

Fine terra-cotta benches, garden seats, tables, and chairs. Handmade in Impruneta, Italy. Frost-proof. Custom capabilities. Write in No. 5500

◆ ◆ ◆

Stone Forest
505-986-8883; Fax: 505-982-2712
www.stoneforest.com
Santa Fe, NM 87504

Hand-carved granite fountains, garden ornaments, and bath and kitchen sinks. In marble and granite. Write in No. 1108

◆ ◆ ◆

Sylva Designs LLC
608-643-2032; Fax: 608-643-3016
8167 Lueth Road
Sauk City, WI 53583

Firm designs and manufactures garden site furnishings, benches, and fountains in cast bronze, iron, and hardwoods. Custom work available. Write in No. 711



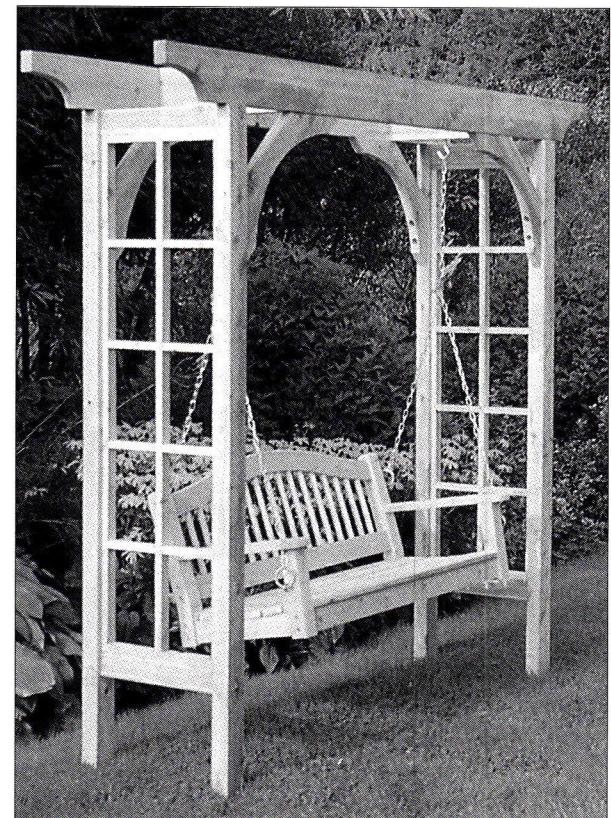
Weather- and insect-resistant ipe was used for the seat of this willow bench from SYLVA DESIGNS. The verdigris bronze sides measure 21 in. high x 22 in. wide at base. Write in No. 711

◆ ◆ ◆

Thomas Steele
800-241-2505; Fax: 608-831-7623
www.thomas-steele.com
Middleton, WI 53562

Each product line includes a distinct bench style and coordinated bicycle rack and trash receptacle. Wide array of finishes, colors. Site furnishings in steel, recycled plastic, wood, and cast iron.

◆ ◆ ◆



VERMONT OUTDOOR FURNITURE's classic swinging seat, seen here with a matching pergola, is constructed from durable white cedar.

Vermont Outdoor Furniture
800-588-8834; Fax: 802-476-8834
www.vermontoutdoorfurniture.com
Barre, VT 05641-2502

Full line of white cedar outdoor furniture, including benches, tables, chairs, porch swings, and lounge chairs. Designs evoke English garden furniture. Residential and commercial. Fully guaranteed. Factory-direct shipping.

◆ ◆ ◆

BUYING GUIDE TO GARDEN & LANDSCAPE PAVING

About This Buying Guide

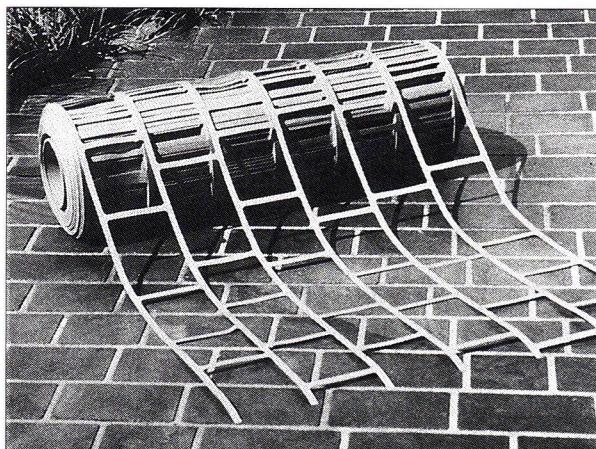
To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted Garden & Landscape Paving suppliers from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 22 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

A&M Victorian Decorations, Inc.
626-575-0693; Fax: 626-575-1781
www.aandmvictorian.com
South El Monte, CA 91733

Manufactures many architectural elements in either gypsum or precast concrete: columns, molding, mantels, balustrades, wall caps, pavers, quoins, stair treads, planters, fountains, and gazebos; custom designs and finishes. Write in No. 7470

American Slate Co.
800-553-5611; Fax: 925-977-4885
www.americanslate.com
Walnut Creek, CA 94596

Source of a comprehensive range of quarry-direct slate for roofing and flooring-tile applications. Nationwide shipping. New natural slate; slate-color matching for repairs and restoration. Write in No. 2723



ARTCRETE's faux-brick stenciled concrete offers the look of brick combined with the strength of concrete.

Artcrete, Inc.
318-379-2000; Fax: 318-379-1000
www.artcrete.com
Natchitoches, LA 71457

Stencil Finished Concrete System creates brick, tile, slate, or stone patterns on concrete, using dry shake color hardener on cast-in-place (new) concrete and polymer-modified cement coatings on existing concrete. Stencilled concrete.

Castaic Brick Mfg. Co.
800-227-8242; Fax: 661-257-1253
www.castaicbrick.com
Castaic, CA 91310

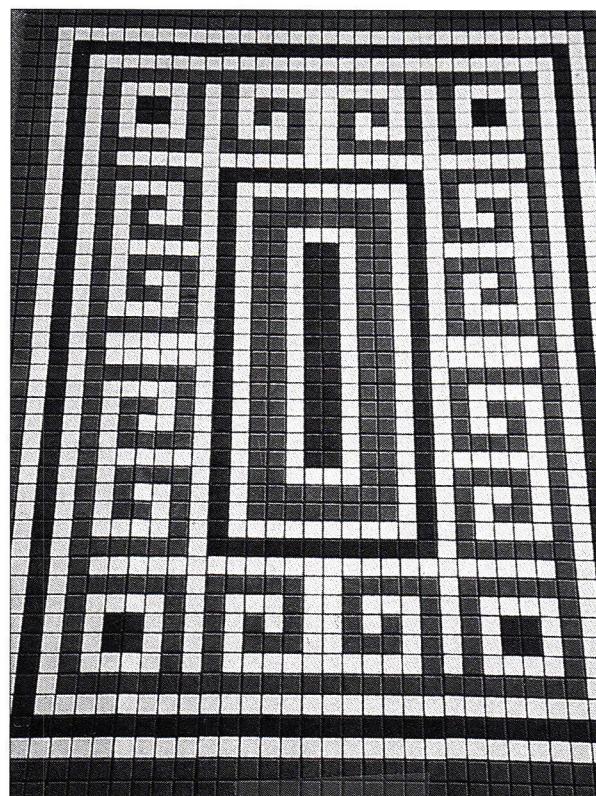
Offers a variety of pavers in 5/8-in., 1-1/8-in., and 2-1/4-in. sizes. Available in large selection of colors, textures, styles, and blends. Also offers real "thin brick" for interior or exterior design. Brochure available upon request. Worldwide distribution.

Champlain Stone, Ltd.
518-623-2902; Fax: 518-623-3088
www.champlainstone.com
Warrensburg, NY 12885

Guillotined and hand-split granite, quartzitic sandstone, and limestone for building veneer, wall stone, flagging, step slabs, and landscape boulders. Natural-stone pavers and flooring. Lintels and hearth pieces. Write in No. 4270

Concrete Designs Inc.
800-279-2278; Fax: 520-624-3420
3650 S. Broadmont Dr.
Tucson, AZ 85713

Manufactures over 1600 precast concrete & GFRC items, including moldings, door & window surrounds, balustrades, columns, mantels, site furnishings. Custom work available; standard line of columns; capitals & bases in various colors. Precast concrete and glassfiber-reinforced concrete mantels. Stock and custom. Write in No. 5190



This Greek-key-themed design was executed in ceramic tile by DESIGNS IN TILE. Write in No. 250

Designs in Tile
530-926-2629; Fax: 530-926-6467
www.designsintile.com
Mt. Shasta, CA 96067

Custom tile, including Victorian "cut-tile geometrics" and historically styled mosaics — 1" square edge hex and spiral patterns. 3"x6" subway tile and handcrafted faience tile. Victorian mosaic storefront entries. Quarry tile pavers. Write in No. 250

Echeguren Slate, Inc.
415-206-9343; Fax: 415-206-9353
www.echeguren.com
San Francisco, CA 94107

Importer and distributor of extensive line of slate, sandstone, and quartzite products; has tiles from 6x6 in. to 24x24 in. Also, flagging, pavers, dimensional slabs, and roofing. Large stock, nationwide shipping. Write in No. 7220

Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.
856-931-7011; Fax: 856-931-0040
www.haddonstone.com
Bellmawr, NJ 08031

British designer/manufacturer of classical stonework, using cast, reconstructed limestone resembling Portland stone. Over 500 designs of architectural and landscape elements that weather naturally. Custom-design capabilities. Cast stone architectural products including railings, columns, gate piers, gazebos, pavers, and garden temples. Write in No. 4020

Hilltop Slate, Inc.
518-642-2270; Fax: 518-642-1220
www.hilltopslate.com
Middle Granville, NY 12849

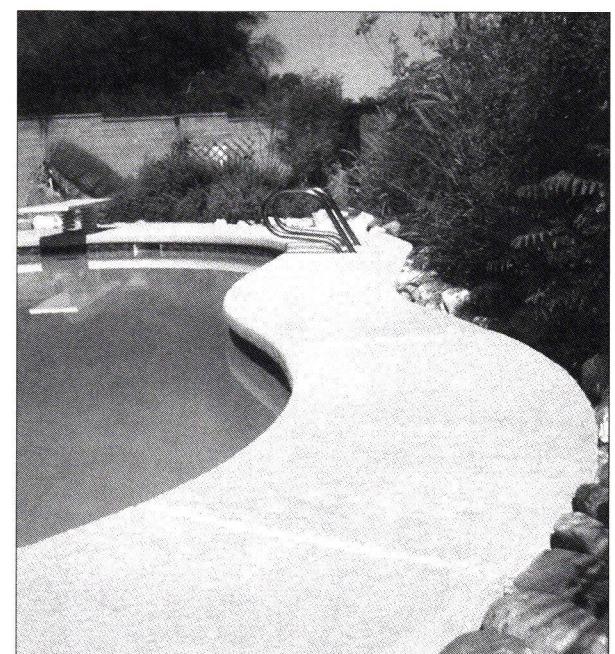
New York-Vermont natural roofing slate and flagstones in all colors, textures, sizes; semi-weathering and unfading shades. Specialists in color matching and roofing slate for restoration. Write in No. 9950

London Tile Co.
419-929-1551; Fax: 419-929-1552
www.londontile.com
New London, OH 44851

Manufacturer of distinctive, handmade tiles for any residential or commercial application. Also, custom tile work. Wall, floor, fireplace, and countertop, exterior-paving, and non-skid tile. Write in No. 500

Mandish Research International
321-267-2561; Fax: 321-268-1972
www.mandish.com
Mims, FL 32754

Maker of molds for balustrades and rail starts; over 100 balustrade designs. Custom molds available. Molds for cast-stone columns; 18 in. dia. x up to 12 ft. high; molds for cast pavers. Write in No. 875



The Systex system from MORTEX is a polymer deck-surfacing system which is ideal for renovating old or damaged concrete. Write in No. 3010

Mortex Mfg. Co.
800-338-3225; Fax: 520-293-8884
www.mortex.com
Tucson, AZ 85705

Textured, decorative, cementitious materials for new or existing concrete; 22 colors; also, PVC drainage and control joints; cantilever deck forms and Tac-It (to add perimeter lighting to any cantilevered edge that has cove strip). "Systex" polymer concrete deck system for concrete renovation. Write in No. 3010

North American Stone Company
972-562-9992; Fax: 972-562-0794
www.northamericanstone.com
McKinney, TX 75070

Manufactures custom architectural cast-stone elements. Products include fireplace mantels, columns, balustrades, landscape elements, entry systems, pavers, fountains, planters, urns, caps, benches, tables, exterior and interior elements; residential and commercial work, restoration work. Design assistance available. Write in No. 754

Pave Tech, Inc.
800-728-3832; Fax: 952-226-6406
www.pavetech.com
Prior Lake, MN 55372

Manufactures Pave Edge paver-restraining system. Also, distributor of chemical sealers, cleaners, masonry adhesives, installation tools, & 'Enviropave' structural pavers. North American distributor for PROBST Equipment. Write in No. 3660

BUYING GUIDE TO SCULPTURE & GARDEN ORNAMENT

Architectural Sculpture & Restorations, Ltd.
212-431-5873; Fax: 212-334-4230
www.architecturalplaster.com
New York, NY 10012

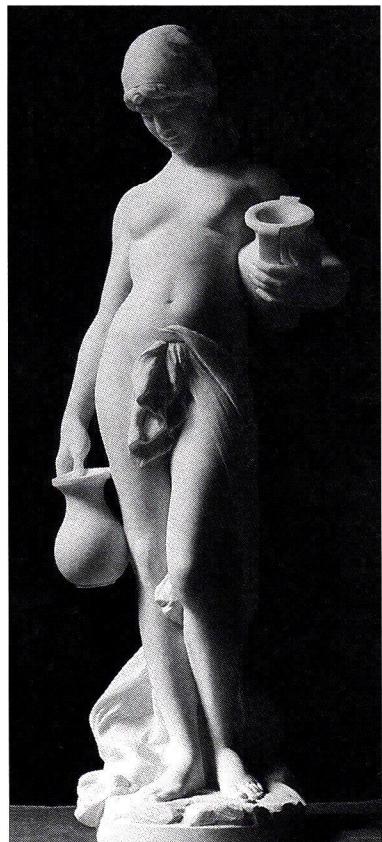
This shop specializes in casting architectural elements in plaster; custom work available. Also, cast-plaster sculpture. Cornice moldings, columns & capitals, door & window surrounds, ceiling medallions, ornamental ceilings, niches & domes, brackets & corbels & statuary in plaster, FGR95, Quickcast, & Gardencast. Write in No. 4590



"At the Well" is available from BRASS BARON in two sizes: 43 in. or 52 in. tall. The piece is produced in brass using the lost-wax method. Write in No. 200

Brass Baron
800-536-0987; Fax: 800-536-0988
www.brassbaron.com
San Diego, CA 92121

Solid-brass garden fountains and statuary, individually hand-cast by the lost-wax method; verdigris- or bronze-patinated finishes. Write in No. 200



DMS Studios
718-937-5648; Fax: 718-937-2609
www.dms-studios.com
Long Island City, NY 11101

Historically accurate, hand-carved marble and limestone fireplace mantels and other architectural and landscape ornament, including statuary and fountains. Also specialize in one-of-a-kind and custom projects that require high levels of artistic skill and experience. Write in No. 9100

Decorators Resource
800-881-8090; Fax: 407-328-7010
www.decoratorsresource.com
Sanford, FL 32773

Garden statuary and fountains, museum-quality limited editions, high-quality reproductions; styles include a line of limited-edition sculpture and reproduction statues. Largest bronze foundry in the Southeast. Also, planters, fountains, and benches.

◆◆◆

Dreams to Reality Studios
610-313-1821; Fax: 610-676-0842
www.icdc.com/~dtr
Norristown, PA 19401

Commissioned sculpture, enlarging services, and molding and casting of ornamental plaster. Work in fiberglass, GFRC, stone, bronze, and resins. Also, fountains.

◆◆◆

Fine Architectural Metalsmiths
845-651-7550; Fax: 845-651-7857
www.iceforge.com
Chester, NY 10918

Hand-built signature lighting: entry lanterns, foyer chandeliers, and sconces from award-winning studio. Period or fine custom styling in forged iron, coppers, and bronzes. Exotic patinations. Fire screens. Forged balusters in traditional and period motifs; collared, drawn, tapered, beveled, incised, and hot split at the anvil and assembled into railings and grilles; specialty finishes and patinas. Write in No. 2640

◆◆◆

Florentine Craftsmen
800-876-3567; Fax: 718-937-9858
www.florentinecraftsmen.com
Long Island City, NY 11101

Garden ornaments, fountains (freestanding and wall-mounted), statuary, columns & capitals, urns, planters, furniture, and accessories in lead, aluminum, iron, stone, and bronze. Also, weathervanes. Custom work a specialty. Ornamental metal sculpture, furniture, and cast-metal ornament in wrought iron/steel, lead, and aluminum. Write in No. 4390

◆◆◆

Gerald Siciliano/Studio Design Associates
718-636-4561; Fax: Same as phone
www.concentric.net/~gsstudio
Brooklyn, NY 11215

Custom and commissioned sculpture in classical and modern styles meticulously crafted in the highest quality materials. Durable and elegant pedestal, wall-mounted, garden, and plaza sculpture on time and within budget. Write in No. 187

◆◆◆

Great Lakes Art Studio
773-622-2638; Fax: 773-622-2690
www.greatlakesartstudio.com
Chicago, IL 60639

Landscape, architectural, and interior metalwork in contemporary and historical motifs; custom railings, gates, sculpture, and furniture in bronze, steel, aluminum, iron, and all architectural metals. Casting, patination, and more. Wood, lead, and metals. Also, planters, fountains, and benches. Metals include wrought iron/steel, aluminum, bronze, brass, copper, & cast-iron.

◆◆◆

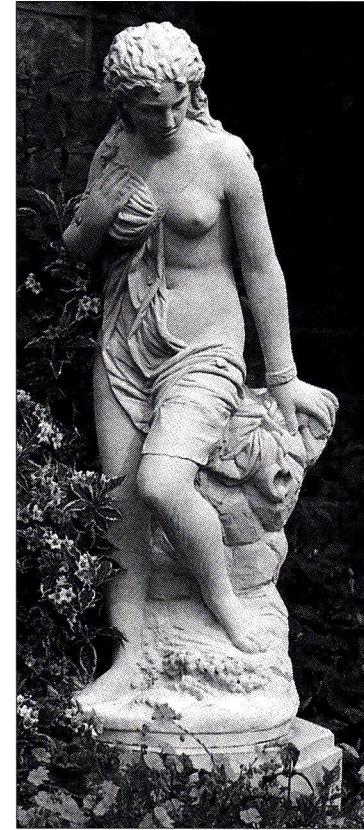
Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.
856-931-7011; Fax: 856-931-0040
www.haddonstone.com
Bellmawr, NJ 08031

British designer/manufacturer of classical stonework, using cast, reconstructed limestone resembling Portland stone. Over 500 designs of architectural and landscape elements that weather naturally. Custom-design capabilities. Cast stone architectural products including railings, columns, gate piers, gazebos, and garden temples. Write in No. 4020

◆◆◆

Historical Arts & Casting, Inc.
800-225-1414; Fax: 801-280-2493
www.historicalarts.com
West Jordan, UT 84088

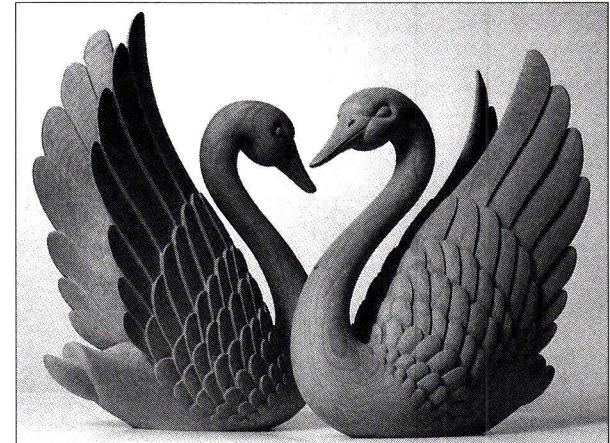
Designer and manufacturer of lighting, columns and capitals, cornices, railings, fences, newels, planters, finials, street furnishings, and fountains cast in bronze, aluminum, or iron.



HADDONSTONE's "Andromeda" is designed after a 19th-century Italian white-marble original. The work stands 40-3/4 in. tall with a base width of 13-1/2 in. Write in No. 4020

Restoration and custom work. Gas lighting projects and large-scale restoration projects. Write in No. 1210

◆◆◆
Klitsas, Dimitrios - Fine Wood Sculptor
413-566-5301; Fax: 413-566-5307
www.klitsas.com
Hampden, MA 01036



DIMITRIOS KLITSAS sculpted these twin swans as supports for an Art Deco vanity. Write in No. 7380

Custom carving of wood architectural elements, both interior and exterior, including furniture (all periods), fireplace mantels, stairs, chandeliers, moldings, and other specialty carvings. Wood capitals. Write in No. 7380

◆◆◆
Limestone Concept, Inc.
310-278-9829; Fax: 310-278-9651
www.limestoneconcept.com
Los Angeles, CA 90035

Hand-carved limestone fireplaces, fountains, columns, balustrades, capitals, mantels, benches, ornament, garden statuary, sculptures, French limestone slabs & tiles, antique terra cotta. Natural-stone flooring; quarry tile; limestone. Write in No. 5390

◆◆◆
Lisa Kaslow, Inc.
410-276-3810; Fax: 410-276-8330
www.kaslowpublicart.com
Hunt Valley, MD 21030

Environmental art in architecture with seating, gateways, pavilions, and pergolas all custom-designed and fabricated to reflect the identity and interests of the client. Also, benches. Work in wrought/fabricated metal.

◆◆◆
Manuel Palos Sculpture
415-822-8034; Fax: 415-822-9280
1330 Donner Ave.
San Francisco, CA 94124

Full-service sculptural studio: Carving, moldmaking, and casting expertise. Commissions for classic and figurative

BUYING GUIDE TO SCULPTURE & GARDEN ORNAMENT



This striking nesting stork, which stands 54 in. tall, was modeled in clay and cast in bronze by MANUEL PALOS. Write in No. 2759

stone carving in marble, granite, and limestone. Sculpture in bronze, stone, gypsum cement, plaster, and FRP. Write in No. 2759

Max Greiner, Jr. Designs
800-637-9651; Fax: 830-895-1111
www.maxgreinerart.com
Kerrville, TX 78029

Cast-bronze sculpture in sizes from miniature to monumental; subjects include Christian themes, wildlife, and figurative and portrait sculpture. Also planters, fountains, sculpture gardens/environments.

Mitchell Sculpture
303-795-7570; Fax: 303-730-8995
www.theedge.com/hardart
Littleton, CO 80123

Colorful, durable sculpture; custom creations fabricated in aluminum with a powder-coat finish. Large-scale interior and exterior sculpture and murals; please see web site for many colorful examples.



MONSEES SCULPTURE's "The Soloist" is a bronze cast in an edition of 25. The piece stands 18-1/4 in. tall and is 5-1/2x5-1/2 in. at its base.

Monsees Sculpture
718-661-3113; No fax
6-24 160th St.
Flushing, NY 11357

Designs realistic, limited-edition sculpture cast in bronze; each piece is signed and numbered.

Normandy Imports, Ltd.
803-328-9232; Fax: Same as phone
www.normandyimports.com
Rock Hill, SC 29730

Period and reproduction garden works from France including fountains, stone basins and troughs, antique pumps, benches, gates, sculpture, antique architectural elements.

More than one dozen fountains, 19th-century animal and human sculpture, 18th-century "pot au fleurs" stone flower urns are among a growing inventory of reproduction French works. U.S. distributor of traditional "Caissons a Oranger" planter boxes used by the city of Paris, the Chateau and Gardens of Versailles, and other great properties throughout France. Write in No. 568

Robb Sculpture Studios
303-431-4758; Fax: 303-425-8802
www.kevinrobb.com
Wheat Ridge, CO 80033

Kevin Robb creates individual contemporary sculptures in stainless steel or bronze for intimate environments or large-scale public arenas.



A huge variety of classically-inspired sculpture in Vicenza stone, a whitish limestone, is available from ROSSATO GIOVANNI. Write in No. 6110

Rossato Giovanni, srl/ Vicenza Stone Sculpture
011-39-0444-928499; Fax: 39-0444-928711
www.vicenzastone.com
36100 Vicenza ITALY

Classic statues, fireplaces, consoles, columns, bench-seats, balls, pineapples, balustrades, fountains, vases, more. Hand-carved in Vicenza stone. Columns round, conical, fluted, and twisted-shaft; heights in multiples of 10 ft. Custom and antique mantels in Vicenza stone or marble. Write in No. 6110

Select Art
214-521-6833; Fax: 214-521-6344
4040 Avondale Ave., #102
Dallas, TX 75219

Custom outdoor sculpture in stone, metal, wood, or ceramic, abstract or traditional. Also, educational art.

Stone Forest
505-986-8883; Fax: 505-982-2712
www.stoneforest.com
Santa Fe, NM 87504

Hand-carved granite fountains, garden ornament, and bath and kitchen sinks. In marble and granite. Write in No. 1108

Stone Images Gallery
604-984-8574; Fax: 604-984-8578
www.binkleysculpture.com
North Vancouver, BC, CANADA V7L 1C1

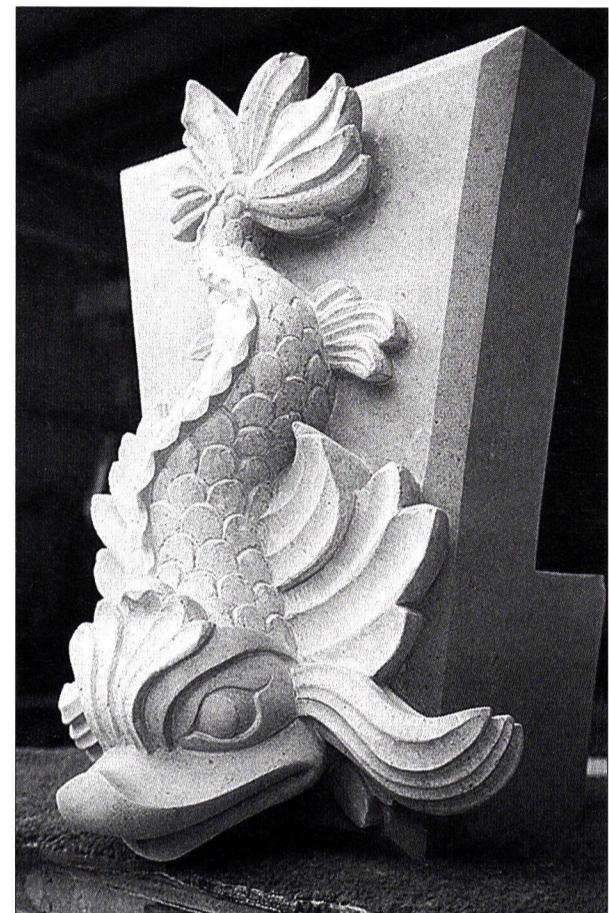
Artist carves original stone sculptures for private and corporate collections. Sculpture types include: classical, contemporary, animals, or functional. In carved natural stone.

Richard Stravitz, Sculptor
804-353-0615; Fax: 804-353-0625
2422 Grove Avenue
Richmond, VA 23220

Sculptor creates realistic cast bronzes of athletes, dancers, historical figures and the surrealistic with an accent on motion. Commissions welcomed.

Sylva Designs LLC
608-643-2032; Fax: 608-643-3016
8167 Lueth Road
Sauk City, WI 53583

Firm designs and manufactures garden site furnishings, benches, and fountains in cast bronze, iron, and hardwoods. Custom work available. Write in No. 711



Hand-carved fountains, water features, and garden statuary, such as this limestone dolphin, are specialties of TEXAS CARVED STONE. Write in No. 1055

Texas Carved Stone, L.P.
254-793-2384; Fax: 254-793-2693
www.texascarvedstone.com
Florence, TX 76527

Fabrication of hand-carved ornamental limestone: mantels, entries, fountains, architectural elements. Carvers are capable of working in any period or style. Custom mantels in carved limestone. Write in No. 1055

Wildheart Studio
937-436-1196; Fax: Same as phone
www.wildheartsulpturestudios.com
Centerville, OH 45458

Detailed, realistic bronze or resin casting, sculpture or reliefs, created by award-winning artist for public or private display. Collector references available. Fountains, also.

Architectural Products by Outwater
see our full page full color ad on page 5.

WRITE IN NO. 5008

BUYING GUIDE TO LANTERNS & EXTERIOR LIGHTING

Copper House
800-281-9798; Fax: 603-736-4921
www.thecopperhouse.com
Epsom, NH 03234

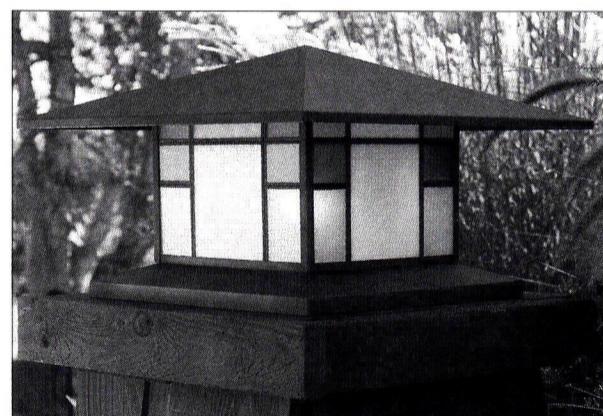
Hand-crafted copper and brass lighting, standard and custom, for interior and exterior. Also, weathervanes made of copper; finials custom-made to spec. All products made using only solid copper and brass, no plated metal. Lanterns, sconces, chandeliers, ceiling fixtures, custom fixtures, post lights; styles include Arts & Crafts, Victorian, and Early American. Catalog \$4. Call for more information



This JOSIAH R. COPERSMYTHE onion globe looks at home outside this log cabin. This model is #9601B in their catalog and measures 14-1/2 in. wide, 26 in. high, and 15 in. deep. Call for more information

Coppersmythe, Josiah R.
508-869-2769; Fax: 508-869-0233
www.jrcoppersmythe.com
Boylston, MA 01505

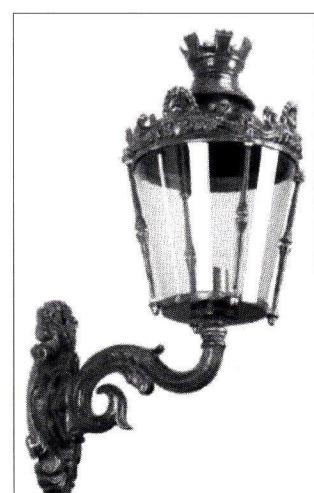
Hand-crafted reproduction Colonial sconces, chandeliers, and hanging and wall-mount lanterns in copper, brass, pewter, tin, and wood. Porch lighting, wall-mounted, and post-mounted. Colonial, nautical, Arts & Crafts, and other styles. Call for more information



CUSTOMLIGHTSTYLES.COM's Bungalow-style pilaster lantern is fabricated from solid brass/copper and is available in 15 finishes and 12 glazing options. Call for more information

Customlightstyles.com
707-547-9909; Fax: 707-538-5543
www.customlightstyles.com
Santa Rosa, CA 95409

Manufacturer of hand-crafted interior, exterior, & landscape lighting. Chandeliers, sconces, lanterns. Made of iron, brass, & copper. 70 painted colors, 12 natural finishes available. Rapid turnaround. Custom requests invited. Wall-mounted, post-mounted, electrically lit lighting; wide variety of styles. Call for more information



This attractive wall lantern, #1817 BB2 from DAHLHAUS LIGHTING, is 30 in. high and 20 in. deep. Write in No. 2767

Dahlhaus Lighting Inc.
718-599-5413; Fax: Same as phone
www.dahlhaus-lighting.com
Brooklyn, NY 11211

Specializes in vintage lighting for residential, commercial, and civic sites. Collection includes many street lamps and lanterns, as well as bollards, fountains, ornaments, and mailbox designs from Europe's cities, towns, estates. Porch, wall- & post-mounted, electric, landscape, & garden lighting & light bollards in Turn-of-the-Century & vintage European styles. Write in No. 2767

Deep Landing Workshop
877-778-4042; Fax: 410-778-4070
140 Bright Meadow Lane
Chestertown, MD 21620

Hand-crafted custom lighting fixtures to complement a stock line of Colonial based wall sconces, chandeliers, and exterior/interior lanterns. Oxidized tin, copper, brass, and lead coat copper in verdigris to "old iron." Other finishes from faux rust to gilding to serpentine marble. Hanging, wall- & post-mounted electric lighting styles from Colonial to turn-of-the-century and almost anything custom. Write in No. 809

Dutch Products & Supply Co.
215-493-4873; Fax: Same as phone
166 Lincoln Avenue
Yardley, PA 19067

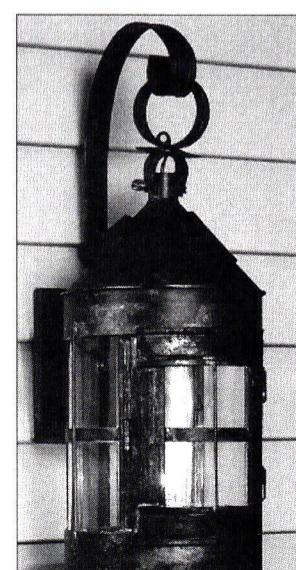
Genuine Delft tiles for fireplace or kitchen backsplash; in Delft blue, multicolor, plain, or crackle glaze finish. Write in No. 3140

Escort Lighting
800-856-7948; Fax: 610-670-5170
www.escortlighting.com
Wernersville, PA 19565

Landscape and garden lighting fixture designers and craftsmen. Over 35 models distinctively designed and constructed in solid copper. Our newest offering includes the Landscape Lantern Collection for 2001 with the same attention to detail as our previous selections. Most fixtures are in stock and available for shipping within 48 hours. Free color catalogue. Write in No. 8072

Faubourg Lighting, Inc.
800-803-7518; Fax: 601-894-5195
www.faubourglighting.com
Hazlehurst, MS 39083

Hand-crafted copper gas and electric lighting designed and fabricated. Exterior and interior historical designs. CSA, AGA certified. Custom designs a specialty. Write in No. 424



This nautical-style fixture from THE FEDERALIST is made in heavy-gauge copper, coated with lead. Write in No. 2833

Federalist, The
203-625-4727; Fax: 203-629-8775
369 Greenwich Ave.
Greenwich, CT 06830

Wide range of furniture and interior/exterior lighting; specialist in handmade reproductions of 18th- and early 19th-century originals. Porch, wall- & post-mounted, & electric lighting in Colonial style. Write in No. 2833

Fine Architectural Metalsmiths
845-651-7550; Fax: 845-651-7857
www.iceforge.com
Chester, NY 10918

Hand-built signature lighting: entry lanterns, foyer chandeliers, and sconces from award-winning studio. Period or fine custom styling in forged iron, coppers, and bronzes. Exotic patinations. Fire screens. Forged balusters in traditional and period motifs; collared, drawn, tapered, beveled, incised, and hot split at the anvil and assembled into railings and grilles; specialty finishes and patinas. Write in No. 2640

Gas & Electric Architectural Lighting
713-464-9319; Fax: 713-464-6495
1756 Blalock Dr.
Houston, TX 77080

Gas-burning and electric lighting. Post-mounted lighting, electrically lit lanterns, gas-burning lanterns, landscape lighting; styles include Colonial, Victorian, Turn of the Century. Write in No. 3116



This relief-ornamented pine outdoor sconce is #MOD4700 in the HAMMERTON catalog.

Hammerton
801-973-8095; Fax: 801-973-0234
www.hammerton.com
Salt Lake City, UT 84119

High-end steel lighting fixtures and furniture; "Mountain Moose Rustic Collection," "Craftsman Collection," (Arts & Crafts) and the "Chateau Collection," (French Country). Porch lighting, wall-mounted, and post-mounted.



Hand-forged items like this classic wall lantern are a specialty of HANDELMAN STUDIOS. Write in No. 483

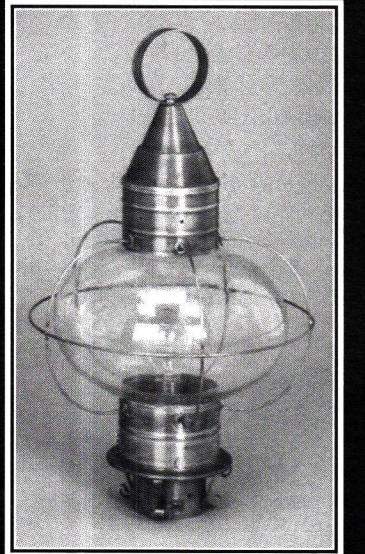
Handelman Studios
805-962-5119; Fax: 805-966-9529
www.stevenhandelmanstudios.com
Santa Barbara, CA 93103

Traditional hand-crafted iron and brass lighting: outdoor lanterns, chandeliers, wall sconces, table and floor lamps, flush mounts. Custom designs, sizing, hand-applied finishes. Also, firescreens, entry gates, furniture, hardware. Porch lighting, wall-mounted, post-mounted, landscape lighting, garden lighting, HID lighting. Styles from Colonial to early-20th century. Write in No. 483

Hans Duus Blacksmithing, Inc.
805-688-9731; Fax: 805-688-1793
73 Industrial Way
Buellton, CA 93427

Extensive stock line of high-end forged chandeliers, wall sconces, pendants, and exterior lighting fixtures. Custom designs and sizes a specialty. All styles and periods available.

**SANDWICH
LANTERN WORKS**
Handmade Copper
and Brass Lighting



888-741-0714

Made on Cape Cod
in Sandwich, MA
www.sandwichlantern.com

WRITE IN NO. 2597

**CHRISTOPHER
THOMSON
IRONWORKS**



Exterior Forged Wall Lantern • Photo: Peter Vitale

Catalog & Video - \$20.00
505.421.2645
505.421.2618 Fax

www.christhomsoniron.com
e-mail: christo@plateautel.net
P.O. Box 578 • Ribera, NM 87560

WRITE IN NO. 8069

"For The Ultimate Bungalow"

WESTMORELAND PLACE

OAK KNOLL AVENUE

LAKE AVENUE

RAYMOND AVENUE

**OLD CALIFORNIA
LANTERN COMPANY**

"Where History and Architecture Come to Light"

Call or write for our new color catalog. Please visit our web site to see our complete selection of lantern options and specifications.

www.oldcalifornia.com

Tel: 800-577-6679 Fax: 714-771-5714

WRITE IN NO. 8068

Dahlhaus

Vintage European Lighting



114 Bedford Ave 2R Brooklyn NY 11211 Tel/Fax 718 599-5413
www.Dahlhaus-Lighting.com

WRITE IN NO. 2767

LARGEST COLLECTION of Authenticated 18th & 19th C. AMERICAN LIGHTING



Wall Mounted Lantern
Historic Deerfield
Deerfield, MA early 19th C.



Post Lantern w/oil Font.
Made by Binney & Co.
Boston, MA c. 1862
Period Lighting Collection

Meticulously Made
Using Original Methods

Since 1974 Period Lighting has made the finest fixtures for individuals and professionals alike. Over 200 styles, shapes and designs, many created from period originals in historic museums such as Historic Deerfield, Old Sturbridge Village, and Colonial Williamsburg. All fixtures are made to the most exacting standards of craftsmanship, with museum-like paint finishes complemented by the look of centuries-old metal patinas.

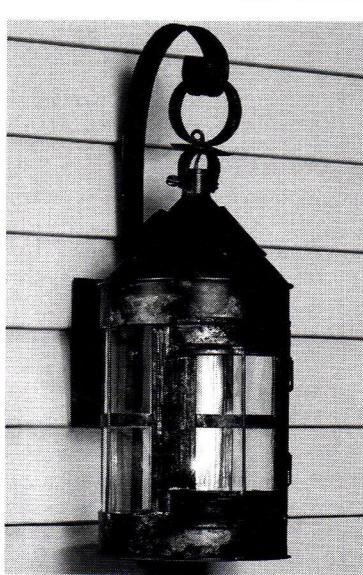
Our
twenty-fifth
year

PERIOD LIGHTING FIXTURES

167 River Road • Dept. 38041 • Clarksburg, MA • 01247

1-800-828-6990 • www.periodlighting.com • Catalog \$5.00

WRITE IN NO. 301



"Lighting the Darkness."

JOHN EHRICH

A light at the door has always meant a warm welcome. THE FEDERALIST adds modern efficiency to our collection of sconces, lanterns and chandeliers. Forged in heavy gauge copper and finished in the Longterne technique, each piece is made by hand. Our extensive assortment includes multi-paned glass or mirror details with single or multiple candlelights or intricate piercing designs. Please call for our color brochures.

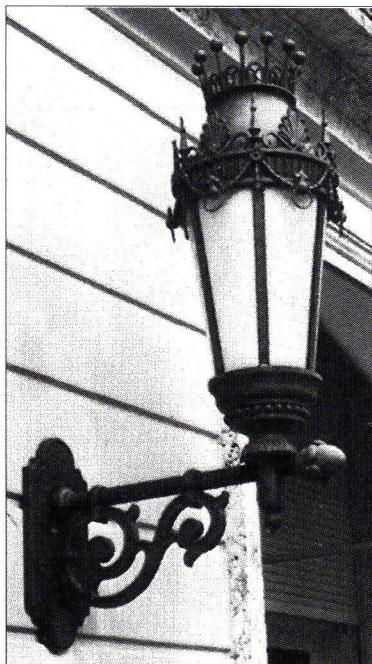
THE FEDERALIST®

We offer the finest hand made 18th century reproductions, including a wide range of furniture and decorative accessories
369 Greenwich Ave. Greenwich, Ct. 06830 (203)625-4727 Fax (203)629-8775 Mon-Sat 10-6 Sun 12-5
Mail and telephone orders are accepted and we can ship anywhere in the world.

WRITE IN NO. 2833

BUYING GUIDE TO LANTERNS & EXTERIOR LIGHTING

U.L. listed. Can be seen in many showrooms nationally. For dealer information call or e-mail: hansduus@silcom.com
Write in No. 8041



Historical Arts & Casting, Inc.
800-225-1414; Fax: 801-280-2493
www.historicalarts.com
West Jordan, UT 84088

Designer and manufacturer of lighting, columns and capitals, cornices, railings, fences, newels, planters, finials, street furnishings, and fountains cast in bronze, aluminum, or iron. Restoration and custom work. Gas-lighting projects and large-scale restoration projects. Write in No. 1210



Hutton Metalcrafts
888-479-1748; Fax: 570-646-7778
www.copperlamps.com
Pocono Pines, PA 18350

Handmade solid copper and brass lanterns for outdoors and indoors. Early American designs as well as hand-cut silhouette fixtures. UL-listed. Post-mounted, wall-mounted, garden lighting; electrically-lit. Write in No. 2853

Johnson Art Studio
800-203-1663; Fax: 831-464-1325
www.johnsonartstudio.com
Santa Cruz, CA 95062

Lighting for both interior and exterior environments, incorporating many variations of hand-crafted glass and metal detailing. Designs reflect a contemporary Craftsman-style and include many modern originals. Special consideration to the trade. All fixtures fabricated on site. Sconces, exterior lights, hanging lights, bar lights, sandblasted glass, hand-forged iron, antique copper, nickel, patinas and more. Write in No. 2594

Laguna Lightcraft
949-496-0360; Fax: 949-493-8777
32241 Avenida Los Amigos
San Juan Capistrano, CA 92675

Landscape and garden lighting; many Arts & Crafts-style fixtures. Write in No. 198



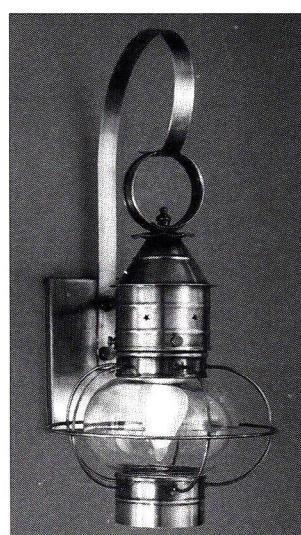
LAGUNA LIGHT-CRAFT offers a range of exterior fixtures including the hand-crafted Donato, a solid-copper 12-volt landscape light, shown here. Write in No. 198

Michael Ashford, Evergreen Studios
360-352-0694; Fax: Same as phone
www.evergreenstudios.com
Olympia, WA 98512

Builds hammered copper lanterns, exterior lighting, interior lighting; in the Arts & Crafts style; specialize in custom designs. Porch lighting, wall-mounted, post-mounted.

New York Gas Lighting Co.
212-529-2651; Fax: 212-529-7811
195 Bowery
New York, NY 10002

Solid-brass, bronze, and crystal chandeliers, lanterns, sconces, table and floor lamps. Exterior lighting available in gas-burning applications. Porch, wall- & post-mounted, electric, landscape, & garden lighting in Colonial, Victorian, Turn-of-the-Century, Art Deco/Moderne, and Spanish/Mediterranean styles. Write in No. 5380

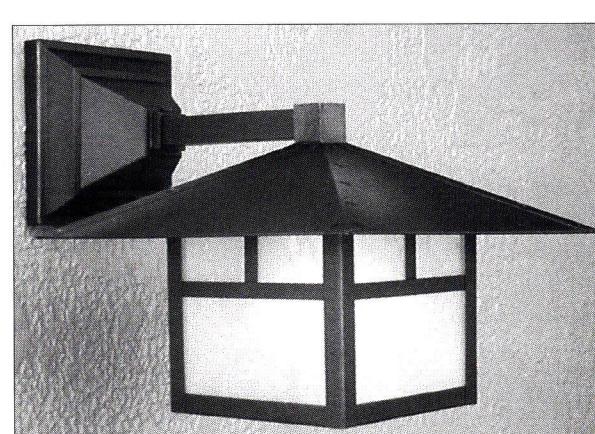


This TULA hanging lantern is one of 30 lantern styles available from HUTTON METALCRAFTS. Write in No. 2853

This beautifully constructed reproduction onion lantern is from NEWSTAMP LIGHTING, and is available in several finishes and sizes. Write in No. 800

Newstamp Lighting Co.
508-238-7071; Fax: 508-230-8312
www.newstamplighting.com
North Easton, MA 02356

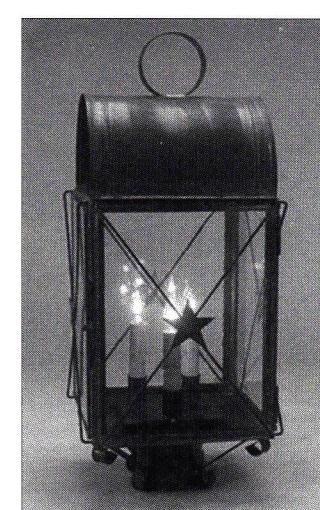
Custom indoor and outdoor lighting fixtures in all styles in copper, brass, and terne metal. All energy sources, including gas. Catalog available for Colonial-style fixtures and lanterns; restoration and reproduction. Porch, wall- & post-mounted, electric, landscape, & garden lighting in Colonial & custom styles. Write in No. 800



OLD CALIFORNIA's Hillcrest Avenue series of lanterns includes #8-44, a Craftsman-inspired fixture, shown here with a bronze finish and frosted glass. Write in No. 8068

Old California Lantern Co.
714-771-5223; Fax: 714-771-5714
www.oldcalifornia.com
Orange, CA 92867

Manufacturer of quality lighting fixtures inspired by the rich history and architecture of California from the mid to late 1800's. Hand-crafted interior and exterior lighting fixtures in solid brass, art glass, and hand-applied patina finishes. Electric and oil lanterns. Write in No. 8068



OLDE MILL LIGHT-
ING's Star Light is hand-
crafted by tinsmiths using
the traditional methods of the
18th- and 19th-centuries.
Write in No. 2664

Olde Mill Lighting Ltd.
717-299-2512; Fax: 717-299-5822
www.oldemillighting.com
Lancaster, PA 17602

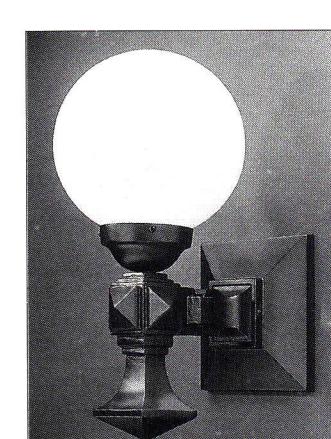
Hand-crafted, Early American, country, and primitive lighting fixtures for the residential and commercial client. Reproduction chandeliers, foyer and hall lights, outdoor post and wall lamps, sconces. Aged tin, brass, and copper. Write in No. 2664



This historic copper Deerfield reproduc-
tion lantern was fabri-
cated by PERIOD LIGHTING FIX-
TURES. Write in No.
301

Period Lighting Fixtures, Inc.
800-828-6990; Fax: 413-664-0312
www.periodlighting.com
Clarksburg, MA 01247

Handmade 18th- and 19th-century chandeliers, sconces, and lanterns. Aged tin, oxidized copper, natural copper, and pewter-finishes. Exterior and interior lanterns; many made under license from Historic Deerfield and Williamsburg. Porch, wall-mounted, post-mounted lighting; electrically lit; styles include Colonial, Turn-of-the-Century. Write in No. 301



REJUVENATION LAMP & FIXTURE'S cast-iron wall bracket, "Portland," is a reproduction of a popular early-20th-century fixture. Well suited for entries, it's shown here in black enamel with shade #3020P-10.

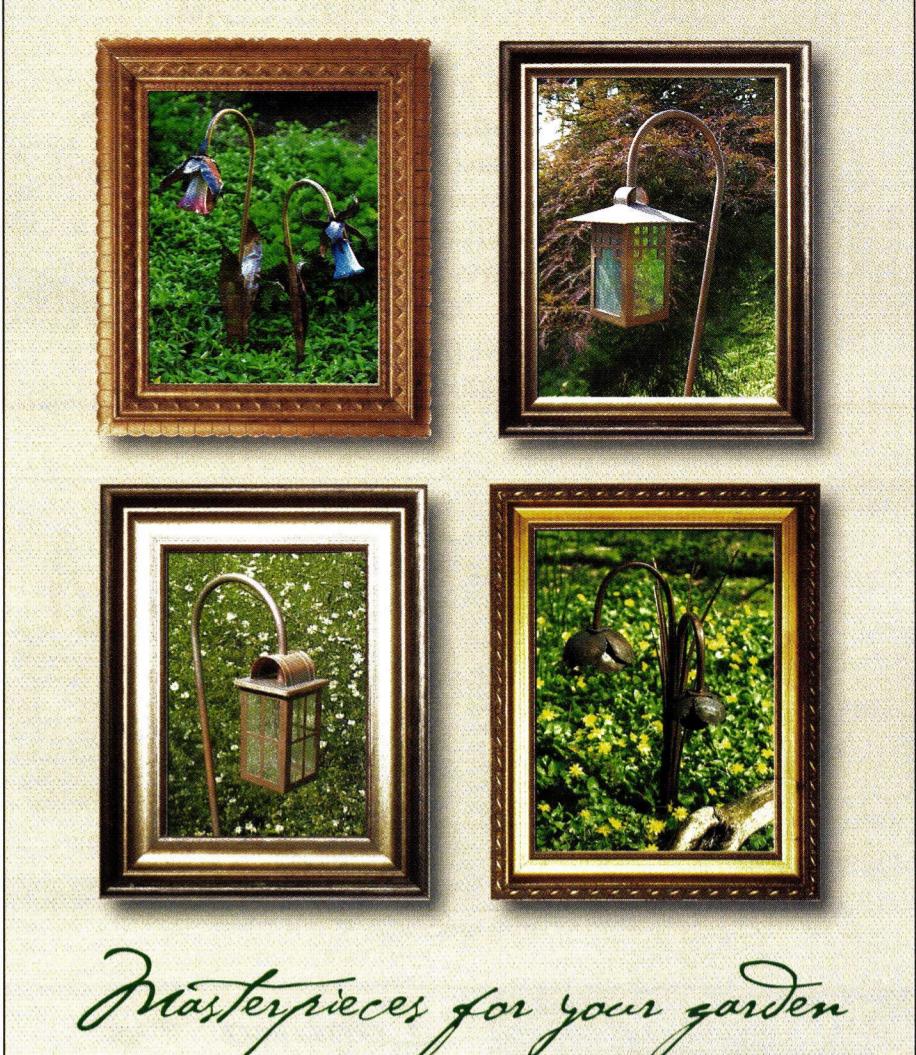
Charleston Lighting

VALLEJO & RACINE

Handmade Copper Lanterns
(Gas & Electric)
products range from the very traditional to the somewhat unusual

(800) 661-9224
phone: (334) 478-0072
fax: (334) 473-0306
208 N. Beltline Highway
Mobile, Alabama 36607
visit our web site at
www.charlestonlighting.com

WRITE IN NO. 772



Masterpieces for your garden

If you'd like to own finely crafted, solid copper garden lighting
visit us on-line and discover the Art of Illumination.

Distinctive Lighting Reproductions

Entirely Handcrafted



Chandeliers
Wall Sconces
Lanterns & Lamps
Period & Natural Finishes
Custom Work
Repair & Replicate

Classic Lighting Devices

12 Summit Street
East Hampton, CT 06424
860-267-8814 . Fax: 860-365-0254

Request a brochure
Visit our workshop and see
our full line models

WRITE IN NO. 1331

Escort Lighting

www.escortlighting.com

51 North Elm Street, Wernersville, PA 19565 Phone: 800-856-7948 Fax: 610-670-5170

WRITE IN NO. 8072

STEVEN HANDELMAN STUDIOS
Since 1973

*Request our free catalog
or visit our website & view
over 350 original designs*

All fixtures U.L. certified

HAND FORGED LIGHTING

716 N. Milpas
Santa Barbara, CA. 93103 (805) 962-5119 • (805) 966-9529 Fax
stevenhandelmanstudios.com

WRITE IN NO. 483



FAUBOURG
Lighting

Copper Gas & Electric Lighting
OLD WORLD STYLING FOR TODAY'S HOMES
Built to Custom Design & Specifications

NEWSTAMP LIGHTING CO.

For electric or gas.
Architectural lanterns beautifully designed & skillfully crafted from solid copper and brass.
Choice of incandescent & energy efficient mercury vapor, high pressure sodium & metal halide light source.
UL approved. Color Catalog \$3.

**RESTORATION
IS OUR SPECIALTY**

Custom Lighting for Interior and Exterior Use

P.O. Box 189, 227 Bay Rd., Dept. TB, North Easton, MA 02356-0189
PHONE: (508) 238-7071 FAX: (508) 230-8312
www.newstamplighting.com
ESTABLISHED 1939

WRITE IN NO. 800



101 West Gallatin Street • P.O. Box 709
Hazlehurst, MS 39083
Phone (601) 894-9090 • Fax (601) 894-5195
www.faubourglighting.com



WRITE IN NO. 424

CUSTOMLIGHTSTYLES.COM
Designers and Manufacturers of
fine custom Interior, Exterior,
and Landscape Lighting.
Online Catalog @
www.customlightstyles.com
122 Calistoga Rd. #245
Santa Rosa, Ca
95409
Phone #: (707) 547-9909
Email: info@customlightstyles.com



PERIOD HARDWARE

See our display ad on the
back cover.

BALL & BALL
463 West Lincoln
Exton, PA 19341
Tel: 610-363-7330
Fax: 610-363-7639

WRITE IN NO. 7660 FOR LIGHTING
& 2930 FOR PERIOD HARDWARE

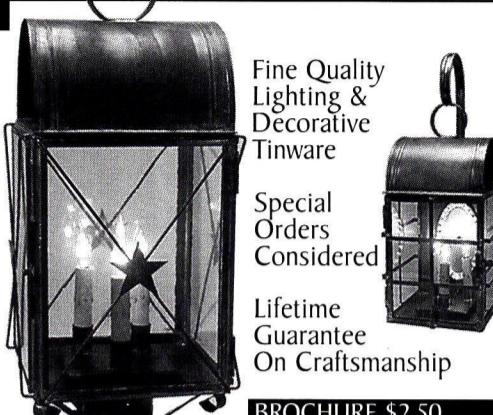
JR Coppersmythe
Hand Crafted
Early American
Lighting Fixtures
1033p - 25" high
POSTLIGHT
\$195
75 Other Styles
Five Finishes
Catalog \$3.00
MasterCard VISA
508-869-2769
80 STILES RD., BOYLSTON, MA 01505
www.jrcoppersmythe.com

Juried Member PA Guild of Craftsmen

Handcrafted
Early American Designs



Olde Mill Lighting
105 Strasburg Pike, Lancaster, PA 17602
717.299.2512



WRITE IN NO. 2664

HANDMADE BRASS & COPPER LANTERNS & WEATHERVANES



GAS & ELECTRIC ARCHITECTURAL LIGHTING

SEE OUR FULL PAGE
FULL-COLOR AD
ON PAGE 107

WRITE IN NO. 3116



Laguna Lightcraft
Handcrafted Solid Copper
Landscape Lighting
32241 Avenida Los Amigos
San Juan Capistrano, CA 92675
Phone (949) 496-0360
Fax: (949) 493-8777

WRITE IN NO. 198



WRITE IN NO. 2853

JOHNSON ART STUDIO
LIGHTING SHOWROOM

Industrial Arts
We Make Everything We Sell
WWW.JOHNSONARTSTUDIO.COM
(800) 203-1663 • (831) 464-0567 • FAX (831) 464-1325
3120 Capitol Road Santa Cruz, CA 95062

WRITE IN NO. 2594

**Architectural
Products
by
Outwater**
*see our full page
full color ad on page 5.*

WRITE IN NO. 5008

WWW.period-homes.com
The Internet Gateway
to Historical Products
& Services for
Residential Architecture

FOR EASY ACCESS TO FREE PRODUCT LITERATURE

Fill out the
enclosed postcard
or use the coupon on
page 158.

BUYING GUIDE TO LANTERNS & EXTERIOR LIGHTING

Rejuvenation Lamp & Fixture Co.
888-343-8548; Fax: 800-526-7329
www.rejuvenation.com
Portland, OR 97210

Manufactures Victorian, Arts & Crafts, Colonial Revival, Art Deco, and neoclassic solid-brass reproduction lighting. Over 280 authentic interior and exterior fixtures, 11 finishes; made to order, delivered direct. Free 88-page catalog.

Renns of London
604-274-0779; Fax: Same as phone
www.rennsoflondon.com
Richmond, BC CANADA V7E 4K2

High-quality British exterior & interior decorative lighting. Decorative grille work, architectural ironmongery. Wallpapers in any period from Pugin forward. Fabrics complement in a full range of colours. Commissions accepted; designs & finishes to meet any requirement, any period.

Sandwich Lantern
888-741-0714; Fax: 508-833-0547
www.sandwichlantern.com
Sandwich, MA 02563

Handmade copper and brass lighting fixtures. Lanterns and onion post lights with hand-blown globes. Victorian and Colonial styles. Write in No. 2597

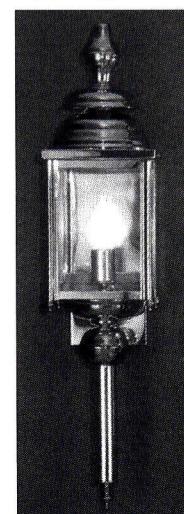
♦ ♦ ♦
Texas Metal Industries, Inc.
800-222-6033; Fax: 800-472-3807
www.txmetal.com
Crandall, TX 75114

Ornamental aluminum castings: outdoor furniture and lighting, gate and fence components, mailboxes, hardware, finials, and balustrades. Also, cast-aluminum fountains, lampposts, and urns. Write in No. 9430

♦ ♦ ♦
Ward Industries
219-825-2548; Fax: 219-825-5645
58582 State Road I3

Middlebury, IN 46540

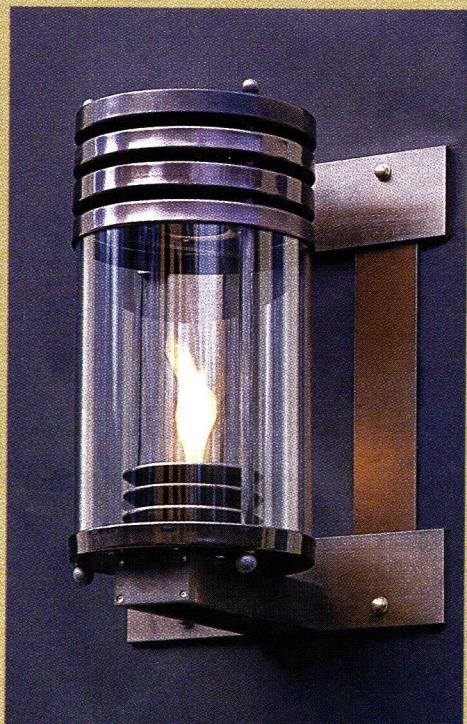
Custom manufacturer of commercial and high-end residential and decorative street lighting. Specialist in Victorian-style copper lanterns in incandescent, HID, and gas-power.



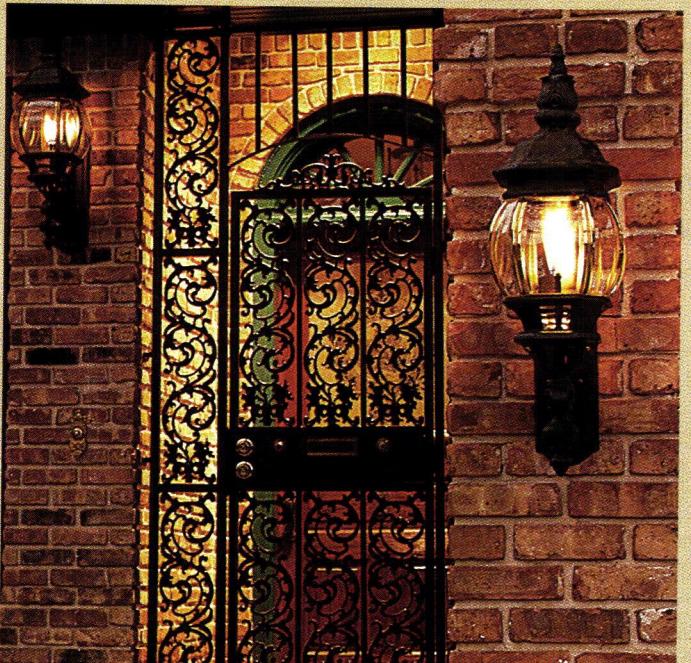
WARD INDUSTRIES' solid-copper coach light, #29-06 in their catalog, is available in this buffed finish or a choice of five others.

Gas & Electric Architectural Lighting

1756 Blalock • Houston, TX 77080 • 713-464-9319



30 years of technical field experience and an unyielding drive for perfection allow owner Mark Longshore to pursue and catapult to new heights the art of open flame lighting. The warmth, charm, and subtle flicker that appeal to the senses as well as the integrity, reliability, and consistency which clients deserve create a service that Mr. Longshore, his operating manager, craftsmen, and service technicians are proud to provide.



Innovative Leader of the Gaslighting Renaissance.

WRITE IN NO. 3116

GARDEN FOUNTAINS & WATER FEATURES

Limestone Concept, Inc.
310-278-9829; Fax: 310-278-9651
www.limestoneconcept.com
Los Angeles, CA 90035

Hand-carved limestone fireplaces, fountains, columns, balustrades, capitals, mantels, benches, ornament, garden statuary, sculptures, French limestone slabs & tiles, antique terra cotta. Natural-stone flooring; quarry tile; limestone. Write in No. 5390

Mandish Research International
321-267-2561; Fax: 321-268-1972
www.mandish.com
Mims, FL 32754

Maker of molds for balustrades and rail starts; over 100 balustrade designs. Custom molds available. Molds for cast-stone columns; 18 in. dia. x up to 12 ft. high. Write in No. 875



This tranquil garden cascade and pool was constructed in steel and concrete by ROCKING WATERFALLS.

Builds rock rivers, waterfalls, lakes, ponds, pools, concrete slides, grotto caves, garden fountains, driftwood, trees, underwater corals, and more. All are made from steel and concrete.

Rocky Mountain Tranquility
800-339-4906; Fax: 970-622-9436
www.waterfallcenter.com
Loveland, CO 80537

Specializes in all-natural granite moss rock water features. Do-it-yourself packages and custom installations. Carved Granite BBQ's and coolers. Distributor opportunities available.

Rossato Giovanni, srl / Vicenza Stone Sculpture
011-39-0444-928499; Fax: 39-0444-928711
www.vicenzastone.com
36100 Vicenza, ITALY MVI 002134

Classic statues, fireplaces, consoles, columns, bench-seats, balls, pineapples, balustrades, fountains, vases, more. Hand-carved in Vicenza stone. Columns round, conical, fluted, and twisted-shaft; heights in multiples of 10 ft. Custom and antique mantels in Vicenza stone or marble. Write in No. 6110

Ryden Arts, Ltd.
765-759-0163; Fax: Same as phone
13201 S.R. 32 W.
Yorktown, IN 47396

Sculptor has created public monuments and fountains for 25 years. Original sculpture in bronze and other media. Fountains and water features in cast bronze, cast aluminum, and carved stone.

Savannah Classics
800-830-8044; Fax: 912-898-0613
www.stonemantelsonline.com
Savannah, GA 31410

Cast-stone architectural elements including door surrounds, treads and risers, band courses, and balustrading. Stock and custom mantels in cast stone.



STONE FOREST's lovely Mizubachi fountain is hand-carved from granite and stands 39 in. tall. Write in No. 1108

Stone Forest
505-986-8883; Fax: 505-982-2712
www.stoneforest.com
Santa Fe, NM 87504

Hand-carved granite fountains, garden ornament, and bath and kitchen sinks. In marble and granite. Write in No. 1108

Texas Carved Stone, L.P.
254-793-2384; Fax: 254-793-2693
www.texascarvedstone.com
Florence, TX 76527

Fabrication of hand-carved ornamental limestone: mantels, entries, fountains, architectural elements. Carvers are capable of working in any period or style. Custom mantels in carved limestone. Write in No. 1055

Texas Metal Industries, Inc.
800-222-6033; Fax: 800-472-3807
www.txmetal.com
Crandall, TX 75114

Ornamental aluminum castings: outdoor furniture and lighting, gate and fence components, mailboxes, hardware, finials, and balustrades. Also, cast-aluminum fountains, lampposts, and urns. Write in No. 9430



Natural-stone water features are a specialty of SAVANNAH HARDSCAPES. Write in No. 8069

Savannah Hardscapes
912-443-9000; Fax: 912-443-9894
513 West Jones St.
Savannah, GA 31401

Installs decorative stone, specializing in garden fountains, wall fountains, water gardens; for residential and commercial applications. Materials include cast bronze, cast iron, cast aluminum, cast stone, carved stone. Imports garden ornaments and architectural elements from England, France, Italy, and Greece. Write in No. 8069

Surf the Industry!

www.period-homes.com

Your Internet Portal
to Products & Services
for the Residential Market

North American Stone Company
972-562-9992; Fax: 972-562-0794
www.northamericanstone.com
McKinney, TX 75070

Manufactures custom architectural cast-stone elements. Products include fireplace mantels, columns, balustrades, landscape elements, entry systems, pavers, fountains, planters, urns, caps, benches, tables, exterior and interior elements; residential and commercial work, restoration work. Design assistance available. Write in No. 754

Rocking Waterfalls, Inc.
954-966-6231; Fax: 954-966-3478
www.rocking-waterfalls.com
Hollywood, FL 33023



The most recognized name in drinking fountains

Quality, durability, style & ADA compatibility



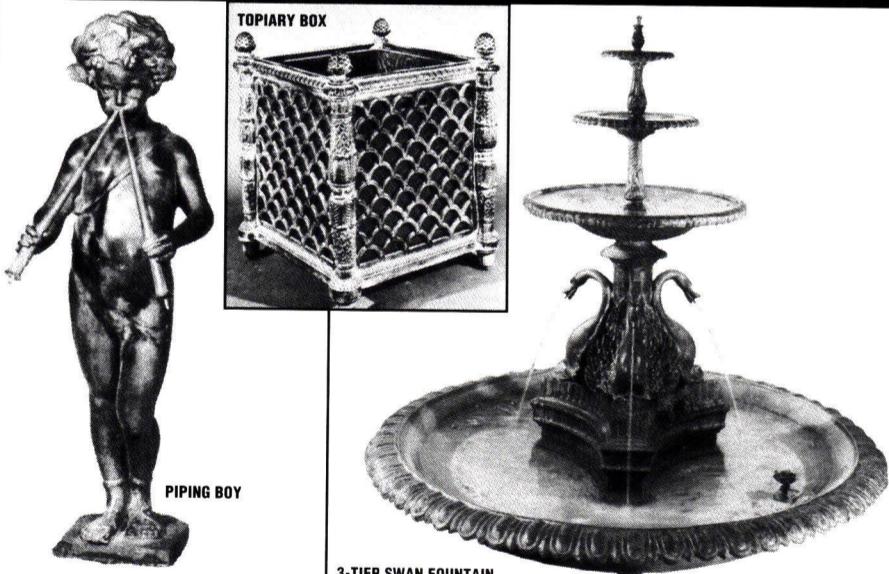
Call or write for our FREE color catalog showing our wide variety of drinking fountains & hydrants

**2488 River Road
Cincinnati, OH 45204
800-45DRINK
513-471-7700
FAX 513-471-3299**

WRITE IN NO. 3780

THE COMPLETE SOURCE FOR GARDEN FURNISHINGS

Exquisitely crafted Furniture, Statuary, Fountains and Ornaments



From the elegant to the whimsical, **FLORENTINE CRAFTSMEN** has been making the finest in garden ornaments, statuary, fountains and furniture for over seventy years. Our extensive collection includes hand-crafted items made of lead, iron, aluminum, bronze and stone. Please visit our showrooms or send \$5.00 for our new 48 page catalogue of over 400 items.

FLORENTINE CRAFTSMEN inc.

46-24 28th St., Box PH, Long Island City, NY 11101
(718) 937-7632 • FAX: (718) 937-9858 • www.florentinecraftsmen.com

WRITE IN NO. 4390

SAVANNAH HARDCAPES



- Garden Furnishings and Fountains
- European Garden Ornaments and Architectural Elements
- Natural Stone Sales and Installation

513 West Jones Street
912-443-9000 • Fax 912-443-9894
www.savannahhardscapes.com
Serving Beaufort, Hilton Head, St. Simons, SAVANNAH, GEORGIA, and the Golden Isles.

WRITE IN NO. 8069

festive fountains

Suppliers of Water Display Equipment

- Fountains
- Water Falls
- Pond Aerators

Complete Systems For

- City Parks
- Golf Courses
- Shopping Malls

Festive Fountains
P.O. Box 26768
Rochester, N.Y. 14626
Phone (716) 225-0083 Fax (716) 225-2169

WRITE IN NO. 3840

OUR BEAUTY IS MORE THAN SKIN DEEP



The Brass Baron offers the largest selection of brass fountains and statuary in the U.S. Made individually from durable brass, our products will not fade, chip or crack.

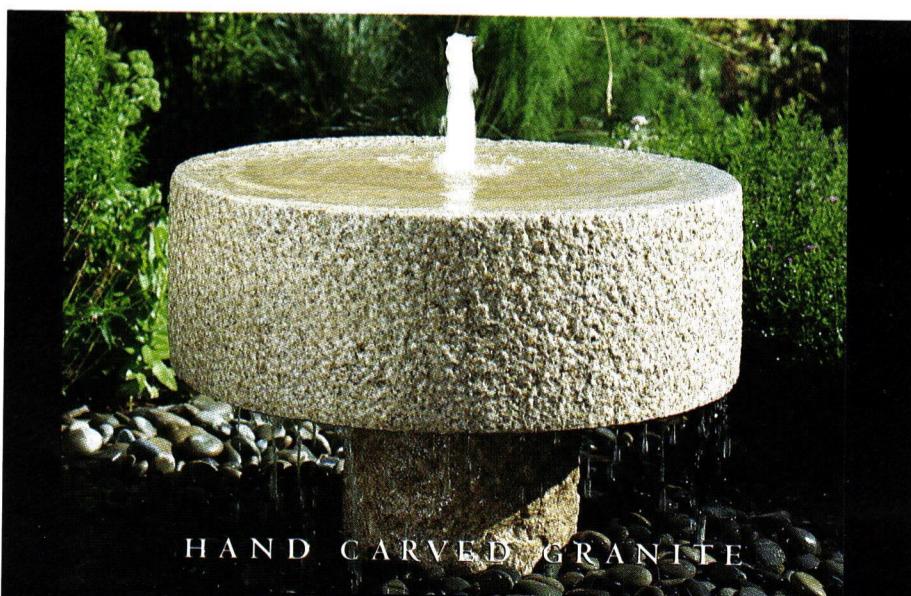
When you want beauty that endures, ask for authentic Brass Baron fountains and statuary.

BB
THE BRASS BARON
FOUNTAINS • STATUARY

10151 Pacific Mesa Blvd. • San Diego, CA 92121
Phone (800) 536-0987 • Fax (800) 536-0988

www.brassbaron.com

WRITE IN NO. 200



HAND CARVED GRANITE

FOUNTAINS • JAPANESE LANTERNS

LAV & FARMHOUSE SINKS

SPHERES • BENCHES • catalog available

Dept. TB, PO Box 2840, Santa Fe, NM 87504

505-986-8883 fax 505-982-2712 www.stoneforest.com

STONE FOREST

WRITE IN NO. 1108

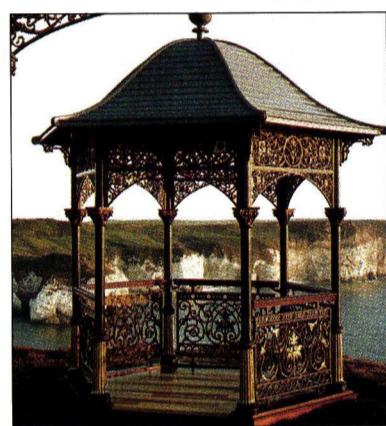
BUYING GUIDE TO Gazebos, Outbuildings, Arbors & Pergolas

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted suppliers of Gazebos, Outbuildings, Arbors & Pergolas from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 31 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

A&M Victorian Decorations, Inc.
626-575-0693; Fax: 626-575-1781
www.aandmvictorian.com
South El Monte, CA 91733

Manufactures many architectural elements in either gypsum or precast concrete: columns, molding, mantels, balustrades, wall caps, pavers, quoins, stair treads, planters, fountains, and gazebos; custom designs and finishes. Write in No. 7470



ANDY THORNTON's range of decorative colonnade systems may be used in many styles of gazebo.

Andy Thornton, Ltd.
+44-1422-375595; Fax: +44-1422-377455
Ainleys Industrial Estate
Elland, W. Yorkshire, UK HX5 9JP

Design and manufacture of complete rooms; full-height dado paneling incorporating inglenook fireplaces, mantels, bookcases, recesses, alcoves, and even secret doors. Also, antique paneling and features. Leaded & colored glass patterns, leaded & painted/fores glass designs, beveled, etched/sandblasted, carved/cut, & fused/slumped art glass in new designs, replication of historic patterns, antique stained glass, & UV bonding.

Archadeck
888-OUR-DECK; Fax: 804-358-1878
www.archadeck.com
Richmond, VA 23220

Custom designer and builder of gazebos, arbors, trellises, and other outdoor structures. Built more than 45,000 projects. Also pergolas and ornamental bridges.

Bow House/BowBends
800-518-6471; Fax: 978-365-6970
www.bowbends.com
Bolton, MA 01740

Maker of exotic garden structures, including bridges, gazebos, arbors, follies, privies, pavilions, and more. Structural lamination work.

California Acrylic Industries Cal Spas
800-822-7727; Fax: 909-620-4673
www.calspas.com
Pomona, CA 91766

Company calls itself "Total Home Resort Living" source: offers a complete line of spas, swim spas, fitness spas, arbors, gazebos, saunas, billiards, game-room accessories, and barbecues.

CS Conservatories
800-873-3966; Fax: 610-317-0582
www.creativestructure.com
Hellertown, PA 18055

Designs and manufactures conservatories and solariums;

framed in wood using mortise-&-tenon joinery; high-performance insulated glazing available; optional cedar, mahogany, or aluminum exterior capping; custom and standard details. Skylights include arch, cone, dome, flat panel, lean-to, multiple-unit, operating, ventilating, and abstract. Many types of glazing; aluminum, copper, and wood frames. Write in No. 454

Cumberland Woodcraft Co.
800-367-1884; Fax: 717-243-6502
www.cumberlandwoodcraft.com
Carlisle, PA 17013

Complete line of turnings and posts, several gable treatments, extensive line of decorative brackets, balustrades, and rails. Also, Victorian-style screen and screen/storm door combinations. Custom work available. Also, spandrels, custom turnings, in polymer or wood. Write in No. 1310

Custom Home Accessories
800-265-0041; Fax: 916-961-9707
www.custom-mailboxes.com
Fair Oaks, CA 95628

Copper and cast-aluminum weathervanes, address plaques, street signs, cupolas, finials, and mailboxes. Full-bodied, swell-bodied, and silhouette weathervanes; custom copper roof caps; cupolas, finials; work in copper, aluminum, brass. Write in No. 527

Decorative Outdoor Products
877-434-7730; Fax: Same as phone
www.decorativeoutdoorproducts.com
Nantucket, MA 02554

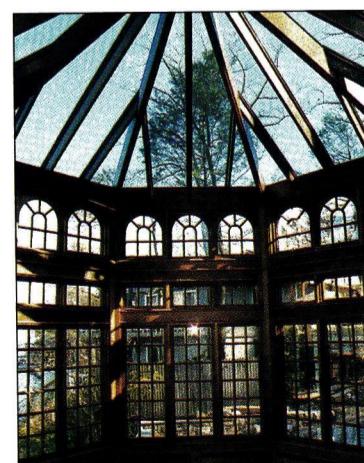
Source of decorative outdoor products. Write in No. 2621

Fine Architectural Metalsmiths
845-651-7550; Fax: 845-651-7857
www.iceforge.com
Chester, NY 10918

Hand-built signature lighting: entry lanterns, foyer chandeliers, and sconces from award-winning studio. Period or fine custom styling in forged iron, coppers, and bronzes. Exotic patinations. Fire screens. Forged balusters in traditional and period motifs; collared, drawn, tapered, beveled, incised, and hot-split at the anvil and assembled into railings and grilles; specialty finishes and patinas. Write in No. 2640

Florentine Craftsmen
800-876-3567; Fax: 718-937-9858
www.florentinecraftsmen.com
Long Island City, NY 11101

Garden ornaments, fountains (freestanding and wall-mounted), statuary, columns & capitals, urns, planters, furniture, and accessories in lead, aluminum, iron, stone, and bronze. Also, weathervanes. Custom work a specialty. Ornamental metal sculpture, furniture, and custom elements in wrought iron/steel, lead, and aluminum. Write in No. 4390



GLASS HOUSE's clear-span octagonal conservatory features a naturally-finished wood frame and true divided-lite windows and doors. Write in No. 1870

Glass House
800-222-3065; Fax: 860-974-1173
50 Swedesboro Road
Pomfret Center, CT 06259

Designs, fabricates, and erects conservatories, solariums, and specialty skylights from a diverse choice of styles, materials, and finishes, and "state of the art" glazing. Ornamental metalwork, copper-clad options, variable trim enhance-

ments and accessories. Skylight styles: lean-to, multiple-unit, operating, octagonal, pyramidal, and ventilating. Framing materials: aluminum, steel, and wood. Write in No. 1870

Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.
856-931-7011; Fax: 856-931-0040
www.haddonstone.com
Bellmawr, NJ 08031

British designer/manufacturer of classical stonework, using cast, reconstructed limestone resembling Portland stone. Over 500 designs of architectural and landscape elements that weather naturally. Custom-design capabilities. Cast-stone architectural products including railings, columns, gate piers, gazebos, and garden temples. Write in No. 4020



The Classic Arbor from ISLAND POST CAP is constructed from red cedar and is available with a variety of optional extras, such as gates and bench seats. Write in No. 702

Island Post Cap
800-555-3694; Fax: Same as phone
www.islandpostcap.com
Montgomery, AL 36108

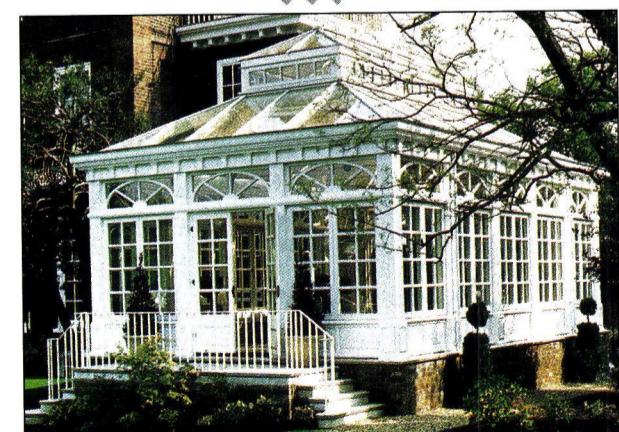
This national distributor of redwood and cedar post caps also supplies cedar arbors, pergolas, gates, finials, and deck accessories, as well as casual teak furniture. Warehouses in CT, AL, and CA. Write in No. 702

Maine Garden Arbors
207-926-5993; Fax: 207-926-3032
www.mainegardenarbors.com
New Gloucester, ME 04260

Precast concrete arbors in traditional and Victorian styles. Finishes include coral, granite and antique bronze, brass or copper. Arbors are segmented for easy installation. Custom work is available. Garden post and lamp post are also available in the above finishes.

MHJ Group
800-260-8993; Fax: 334-281-0575
www.mhjgroup.com
Montgomery, AL 36108

Group of companies produces quality wood products: traditional and Victorian-styled turnings, decking materials, and accessories. Will ship to locations worldwide. Arbors, pergolas, and kits. Railings and gate components in wood.



OAK LEAF CONSERVATORIES used design details, such as Georgian window frames and dentil moldings, to harmonize this conservatory with the house. Write in No. 6860

Oak Leaf Conservatories
800-360-6283; Fax: 404-250-6283
876 Davis Drive
Atlanta, GA 30327

York, England-based company specializing in custom-built conservatories. Skills of British designers and craftsmen are



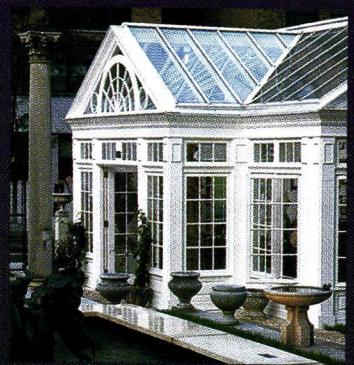
DECORATIVEOUTDOORPRODUCTS.COM
TOLL FREE 1-877-434-7730

WRITE IN NO. 2621

Is it time
for you to
have the
conservatory
you've always
dreamed of?

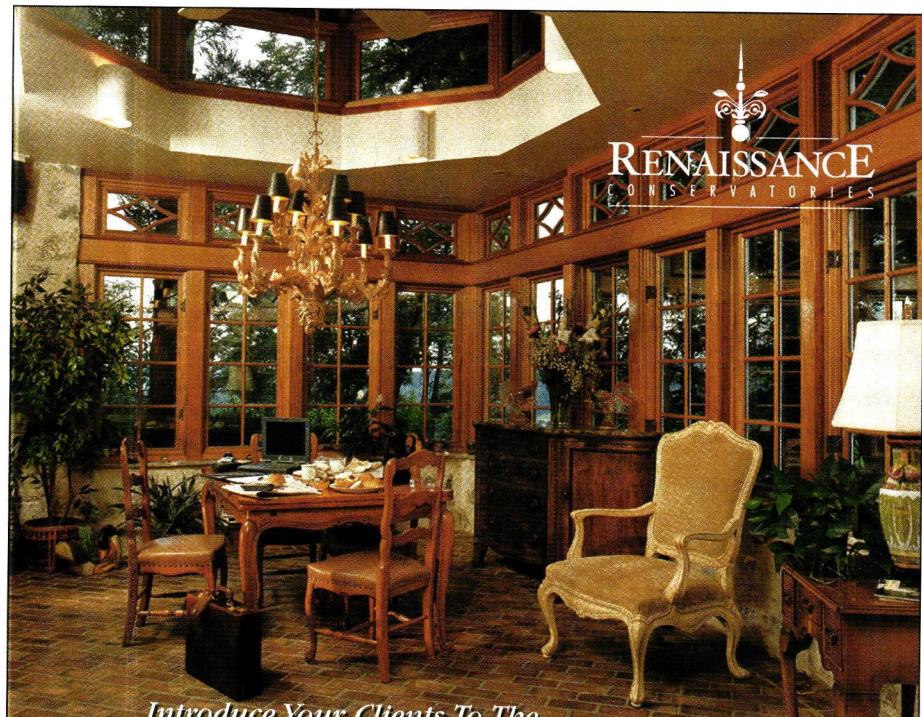



TANGLEWOOD
Conservatories
TANGLEWOOD CONSERVATORIES LTD.
www.tanglewoodliving.com



For more information,
please call 800.229.2925
We'd love to hear from you.
Mention Code PD2001

WRITE IN NO. 8270

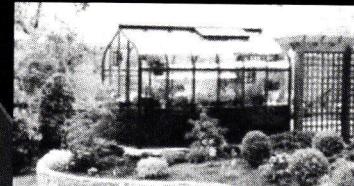
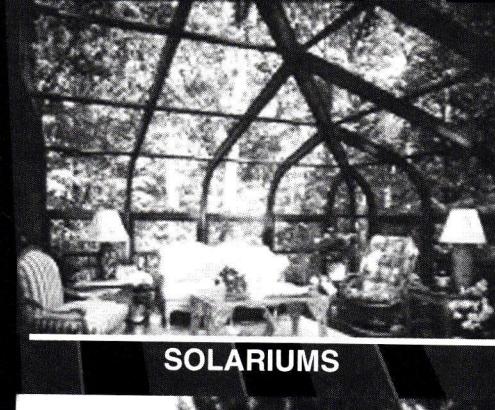


Introduce Your Clients To The
Abiding Pleasures Of A
Conservatory Lifestyle

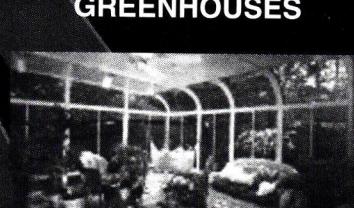
FINE PERIOD GLASS HOUSES • GARDEN WINDOWS • SKYLIGHTS & LANTERNS
1-800-882-4657 www.renaissance-online.com Complimentary Architects' Design Guide

WRITE IN NO. 378

Check out our Dealer, Contractor & Architect programs!
WWW.SUNSHINEROOMS.COM



SOLARIUMS

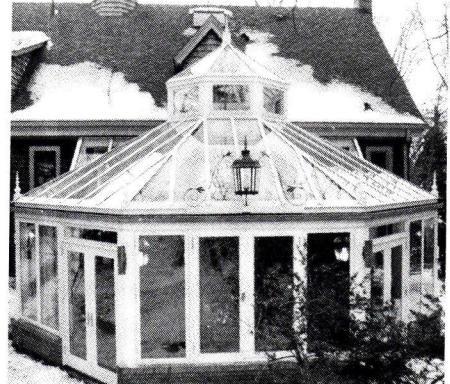


SUNROOMS



POOL ENCLOSURES

CONSERVATORIES



Glass House
Designers and Fabricators of:
Traditional Conservatories • Solariums • Specialty Skylights

Far Hills, NJ • Pomfret, CT
1-800-222-3065
(860) 974-1665
FAX: (860) 974-1173
Quality Made in the USA

WRITE IN NO. 1870



FREE
High Performance Glass
Added Comfort • Lower Utility Bills
ON YOUR FIRST PURCHASE

1-800-222-1598
www.sunshinerooms.com

Designing, Manufacturing & Installing Sunrooms, Solariums
& Conservatories since 1980

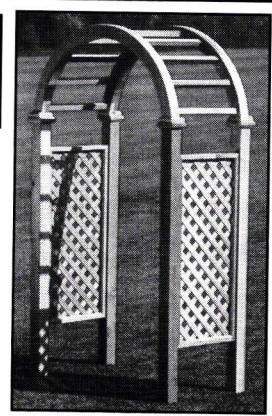
WRITE IN NO. 5006

ARBORS ♦ TRELLISES ♦ PLANTERS
♦ CUSTOM FENCES & GATES
♦ POST CAPS

AT WOOD INNOVATIONS, WE USE ONLY THE FINEST
INLAND RED OR WESTERN RED CEDAR TO CREATE OUR
LANDSCAPE PRODUCTS.

WE SPECIALIZE IN CUSTOM WORK BUILT TO
YOUR SPECIFICATIONS.

WOOD INNOVATIONS OF SUFFOLK, LTD.
P.O. Box 356, MEDFORD, NY 11763
TEL: (631) 698-2345 FAX: (631) 698-2396
E-mail: post-cap@msn.com Web site: www.woodin.com



WRITE IN NO. 7160

MODERN CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ROOFS: DEFYING EXPECTATIONS

In Europe, Asia, and other parts of the world, tile roofs have been used successfully for hundreds and even thousands of years. Because of their durability, they can be used in virtually any climate, given proper planning, design, and installation. Furthermore, with the development of modern concrete and clay roof tiles, a great variety of styles and colors are now available, allowing today's architects and builders to create looks that are contemporary, traditional, or entirely unique.

by Carolyn Kuehn

Because of their durability, tile roofs can be used in virtually any climate, given proper planning, design, and installation. In fact, in Europe, Asia, and other parts of the world, tile roofs have been used successfully for centuries, even thousands of years in some regions. Modern concrete and clay roof tiles are also available in a variety of styles and colors, allowing today's architects and builders to create looks that are contemporary, traditional, or entirely unique.

Especially in the United States, misconceptions about tile roofs abound — most commonly, that they are red and round and only suitable for hot, sunny climates. But, concrete and clay tiles adorn the roofs of contemporary and historic structures worldwide, from Norway to Australia to Japan. Long valued for their beauty and durability, tile roofs are also cost-effective, low maintenance, and environmentally friendly alternatives to other roofing materials. And, through modern production and color-processing techniques, concrete and clay tile manufacturers have expanded the range of styles and applications so that architects and builders can create a virtually limitless array of looks for both new and existing residences.

Tile roofs come in two basic varieties: clay and concrete. Although some key differences exist between clay and concrete roofs, many of their attributes are similar. Obviously, their composition and manufacture differ; their color processes and prices also vary. But overall, the selection of one or the other, in many cases, depends on what kind of look the homeowner and designer desire.

Historical Overview

Scholars believe that clay tile roofs originated around 10,000 B.C.E. in China, with later independent development in the Middle East. Ancient Egyptians, Greeks, and Romans also used clay tiles for their roofs. Eventually, clay tile roofs spread throughout Europe and Asia and, in the last few centuries, to the coasts of the United States. The Dutch first imported, then made clay tiles for roofs on the East Coast, while Spanish missionaries introduced clay tile roofs to West Coast communities. Early Americans valued clay tiles mainly because of their resistance to fire, a tremendous concern at that time in populous cities such as Boston. Traditionally hand-crafted by artisans or molded on the thigh or a log, clay roof tile manufacturing became automated around 1870. Clay tiles are still popular throughout the world. According to some industry experts, 50% of residences in Japan have clay tile roofs.

The first concrete tile roof debuted on a German farm in the early 1800s, and by 1900 concrete tile roofs could be found throughout Europe. The early 1920s saw the development of the first power-driven concrete roof tile manufacturing machine. Around the same time, concrete roof tile plants also began appearing in the United States. Previously, concrete roof tiles were made by hand



A clay tile roof in a Provencal style and Black Mist color enhances the beauty of this distinctive brick home with twisted chimneys.

or by hand-operated machines. Numerous technical advances in manufacturing have since streamlined the production process, making concrete tile the most used roofing material in the world today. In fact, some studies estimate that more than 90% of European homes have concrete tile roofs.

Manufacturing Process

To produce clay roof tiles, moist clay is extruded, shaped using machines or molds, and fired in kilns at temperatures of 2000° F or higher. Such high heat creates tiles with extreme strength and durability and low porosity. Concrete roof tiles also are composed of natural materials — sand, cement, and iron oxide pigments (for color). Manufacturers extrude this mixture under high pressure and cure it in a curing chamber. This process creates concrete tiles that — like clay tiles — are strong and dense.

Jim Wheeler, Vice President of Jim Poss Roofing in Santa Rosa Beach, Fla., a company that has been installing concrete and clay tile roofs for 40 years, believes that tile's durability and long history are its biggest advantages over other roofing products. According to Wheeler, "In America, there are so many different types of roofing systems coming out every year, but tile is a permanent roof. It's stood the test of time."

Styles of Roof Tile

Aside from streamlining production, modern innovations have allowed manufacturers to develop new styles (or "profiles") for both clay and concrete roof tiles that have expanded their architectural range to include contemporary as well as traditional Mediterranean designs. In fact, tile's versatility is one reason that many of today's homeowners and architects prefer it as their roofing material.

Simply put, apart from being made of clay or

concrete, modern roof tiles can be flat or round, interlocking or overlapping, consisting of two pieces or one. Most people are familiar with traditional round, red tiles, often called Mission or Barrel tiles, that create rolling or rippled patterns on the roofs of many buildings in the Southern and Western United States. These two-piece, pan and cover, overlapping tiles are still very popular in many regions. For example, Wheeler is currently installing Terra Cotta Red, two-piece Mission Barrel clay tiles (manufactured by MCA Clay Tile) on a series of custom luxury homes in Santa Rosa Beach. Tile was a natural choice for the project's architects because it provided the best match with the Tuscany style of homes being constructed.

Other common round styles (also known as "pan-tiles") include Roman, Greek, and Spanish or "S" tiles. Flat or "shingle" tiles also come in several varieties, such as English or French. These classifications can be confusing, however, because a single tile style or shape may have a different name depending on the manufacturer, geographic region, or country.

Although many architects and builders still prefer Mission tiles, flat tiles are rapidly increasing in popularity throughout North America as homeowners seek to replicate the look of historic slate or wood shake roofs. In fact, according to Fred Woodlock, Sales Manager at Unicrete, a Canadian concrete roof tile manufacturer whose main market is Alberta, "Probably 50% to 60% of our sales are now in the flat, slate look versus the traditional look. That's something that's only happened in the last couple of years. It's becoming more and more popular. People just like the flat look and, many times, in the darker colors — grays, blacks, and browns." Wheeler agrees. He's using a flat tile —

continued on page 130



DECORATIVEOUTDOORPRODUCTS.COM
TOLL FREE 1-877-434-7730

WRITE IN NO. 2621

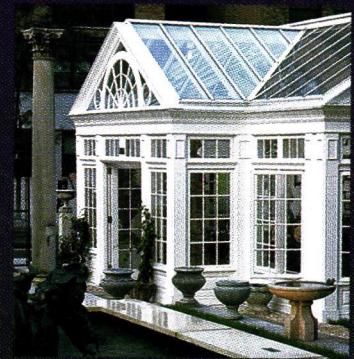
Is it time
for you to
have the
conservatory
you've always
dreamed of?



WRITE IN NO. 8270



TANGLEWOOD
Conservatories
TANGLEWOOD CONSERVATORIES LTD.
www.tanglewoodliving.com



For more information,
please call 800.229.2925
We'd love to hear from you.
Mention Code PD2001

RENAISSANCE
CONSERVATORIES

Introduce Your Clients To The
Abiding Pleasures Of A
Conservatory Lifestyle

FINE PERIOD GLASS HOUSES • GARDEN WINDOWS • SKYLIGHTS & LANTERNS

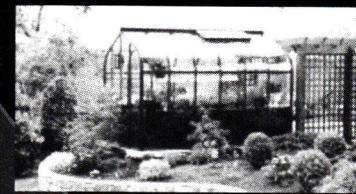
1-800-882-4657 www.renaissance-online.com Complimentary Architects' Design Guide

WRITE IN NO. 378

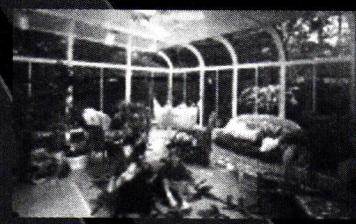
Check out our Dealer, Contractor & Architect programs!
www.sunshinerooms.com



SOLARIUMS



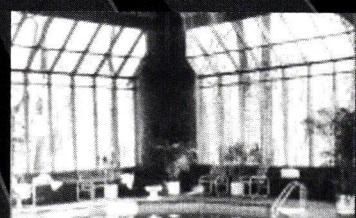
GREENHOUSES



SUNROOMS



CONSERVATORIES



POOL ENCLOSURES



FREE
High Performance Glass
Added Comfort • Lower Utility Bills
ON YOUR FIRST PURCHASE

1-800-222-1598
www.sunshinerooms.com

Designing, Manufacturing & Installing Sunrooms, Solariums
& Conservatories since 1980

WRITE IN NO. 5006

Glass House
Designers and Fabricators of:
Traditional Conservatories • Solariums • Specialty Skylights

Far Hills, NJ • Pomfret, CT
1-800-222-3065
(860) 974-1665
FAX: (860) 974-1173
Quality Made in the USA

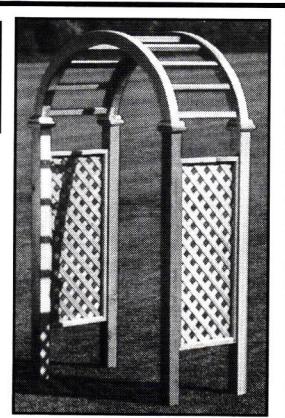
WRITE IN NO. 1870

ARBORS ♦ TRELLISES ♦ PLANTERS
♦ CUSTOM FENCES & GATES
♦ POST CAPS

AT WOOD INNOVATIONS, WE USE ONLY THE FINEST
INLAND RED OR WESTERN RED CEDAR TO CREATE OUR
LANDSCAPE PRODUCTS.

WE SPECIALIZE IN CUSTOM WORK BUILT TO
YOUR SPECIFICATIONS.

WOOD INNOVATIONS OF SUFFOLK, LTD.
P.O. Box 356, MEDFORD, NY 11763
TEL: (631) 698-2345 FAX: (631) 698-2396
E-mail: post-cap@msn.com Web site: www.woodin.com



WRITE IN NO. 7160

BUYING GUIDE TO Gazebos, Outbuildings, Arbors & Pergolas

utilized to create, construct, and install conservatories. Construction includes mahogany and high-specification glazing in true divided lites. Catalog, \$10. Write in No. 6860



PRIVATE GARDEN imports the Hartley Botanic line of fine greenhouses from Europe. Call for more information

Private Garden Greenhouse Systems
800-287-4769; Fax: 413-566-8806
www.private-garden.com
Hampden, MA 01036

Full-service design/build greenhouse company; English Victorian greenhouses and conservatories, as well as commercial, institutional, industrial and hobby greenhouses from Belgium. Also, consultation and conservatory-renovation services. Call for more information

Red Suspenders Timber Frames
936-564-9465; Fax: 936-564-6001
www.redsuspenderstf.com
Nacogdoches, TX 75961

Designers and craftspeople specializing in finely crafted timber-framed public, commercial, and residential projects in new and recycled materials, throughout the United States. Gazebos, barns, pergolas, and pavilions.



RENAISSANCE CONSERVATORIES offers sun rooms and conservatories in a huge range of styles, including this Victorian-inspired model. Write in No. 378

Renaissance Conservatories
800-882-4657; Fax: 717-661-7727
www.renaissance-online.com
Leola, PA 17540

Manufacturer and installer of period glass houses, skylights, lanterns, and garden windows. Hand-crafted mahogany and cedar framing. Visit the website. Write in No. 378



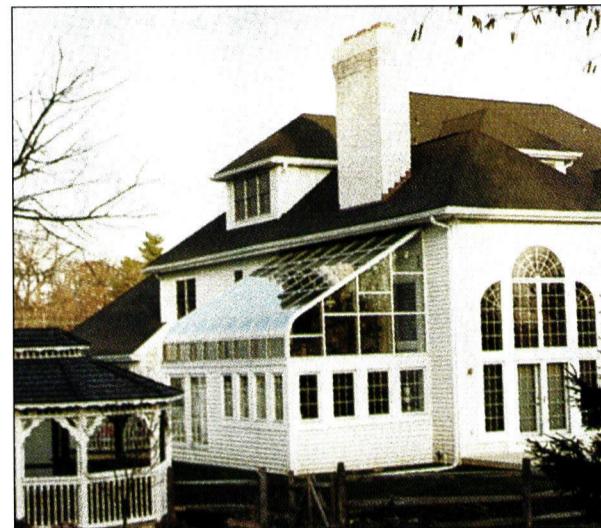
ROMANCING THE WOODS creates rustic garden structures, such as this lakeside gazebo, from Eastern red cedar. Write in No. 5010

Romancing The Woods, Inc.
845-246-1020; Fax: 845-246-1021
www.rtw-inc.com
Woodstock, NY 12498

Rustic garden and woodland structures made of Eastern red cedar in the romantic tradition of 19th-century English and French estate gardens, and the Great Adirondack camps. Gazebos, garden houses, follies, sheds, arbors, pergolas, bridges, treehouses, and more. Write in No. 5010

Sunbilt Solar Products
718-297-6040; Fax: 718-297-3090
www.sunbilt.com
Jamaica, NY 11433

Aluminum and glass sunrooms in straight and curved eave design, in projections from 2 ft. 8 in. to 15 ft. 6 in. by unlimited lengths. 1-in. insulated tempered glass is standard. Bronze or white finish. Sliding patio door, projected windows, fans, and shade systems available. Write in No. 8030



The "Sundance" conservatory from SUNSHINE ROOMS has a 7-1/2-in. pitch for steep-roofed homes and is available in 12 standard models. Write in No. 5006

Sunshine Rooms
800-222-1598; Fax: 316-838-0839
www.sunshinerooms.com
Wichita, KS 67204

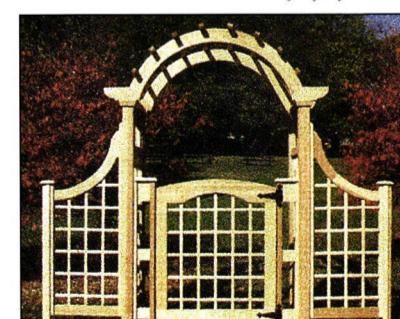
National manufacturer of sunrooms, conservatories, and skylights; 200 standard variations on 7 solarium styles; customized units; "Galaxie" skylights; greenhouses. All products available with ultra-High Performance Low-E plus glass. Write in No. 5006



This Georgian-styled conservatory was designed and built by TANGLEWOOD CONSERVATORIES. Write in No. 8270

Tanglewood Conservatories, Ltd.
410-479-4700; Fax: 410-479-4797
www.tanglewoodliving.com
Denton, MD 21629

Authentic, hand-crafted English conservatories. Enchanting historical details, insulated glass, and multi-point brass hardware sympathetically blend in these architecturally distinctive, American-made, wood structures. Write in No. 8270



The Rockport, built of Western red cedar, is one of many arbor designs available from TREL-LIS STRUC-TURES. Write in No. 8490

Trellis Structures
978-921-1235; Fax: 978-232-1151
www.trellisstructures.com
Beverly, MA 01915

Arbors & trellises in easy-to-assemble units, in a wide variety of styles and sizes, traditional to contemporary, made of western red cedar, Douglas fir and purple heart wood. Write in No. 8490

Tropic Top/Symbol
407-273-0069; Fax: 407-273-0060
www.thatchart.com
Orlando, FL 32812

Manufacturer of lightweight metal 'thatch' shingles for buildings and structures, which give a tropical look in any climate. Ideal for resorts, restaurants, hotels, parks, etc. Also, waterfall, pond, and rock formations. Write in No. 3870

Vintage Woodworks
903-356-2158; Fax: 903-356-3023
www.vintagewoodworks.com
Quinlan, TX 75474

Extensive selection of wood porch parts, including turned posts, turned and sawn balusters, railings, brackets, corbels, custom-length spandrels, and more. 224-page Master Reference Catalog; 208-page Porch Design Book. Wood posts. Write in No. 1061



VIXEN HILL's
gazebo/garden house hybrid is #HB-12B in their catalog.

Vixen Hill Gazebos
800-423-2766; Fax: 610-286-2099
www.vixenhill.com
Elverson, PA 19520

Line of cedar gazebos and screened pavilions and garden houses in easy-to-assemble modular kits. Copper roofs; two-tier and single-tier roof systems available. Also, custom-size mortise-&-tenon cedar shutters with hardware.



WAYSIDE FENCE's arbor is manufactured in one piece of heavy-duty PVC, and is available in three colors. Write in No. 4260

Wayside Fence Co.
631-968-6828; Fax: 631-968-6928
www.waysidefence.com
Bay Shore, NY 11706

Manufacturer of a full line of red-cedar arbors and pergolas; widths from 3 to 8 ft.; matching gates available. Smaller sizes shipped UPS. Also, sleeves and decorative post caps. New line of heavy-PVC arbor. PVC profiles match the look of classic wood fencing. Write in No. 4260

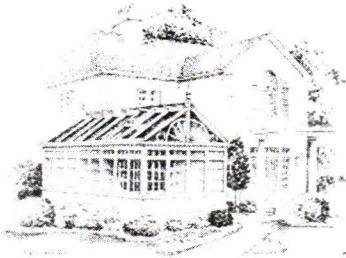
Wood Factory
936-825-7233; Fax: 936-825-1791
III Railroad Street
Navasota, TX 77868

Historically accurate millwork reproductions, interior & exterior: doors, screen doors, gingerbread, benches, gazebo parts, finials, cresting, fancy-cut shingles, stair parts, railings, porch parts, more. Custom mantels; porch and newel posts, balusters, railings, brackets, corbels, and more to replicate turn-of-the-century architecture. Can duplicate original samples or work from pictures & drawings. Write in No. 7120

Wood Innovations of Suffolk
631-698-2345; Fax: 631-698-2396
P.O. Box 356
Medford, NY 11763

Exterior wood structures and elements in high-quality Western red cedar; wood planters, any size, any shape. also, caps, bridges, wishing wells, and more. Custom-built wood products. Shipping nationwide. Write in No. 7160

The CONSERVATOIRE



MANUFACTURED BY

CS
CONSERVATORIES

LEHIGH VALLEY, PA
TEL: (800) 873-3966
EMAIL: creative@v35.com

WRITE IN NO. 454

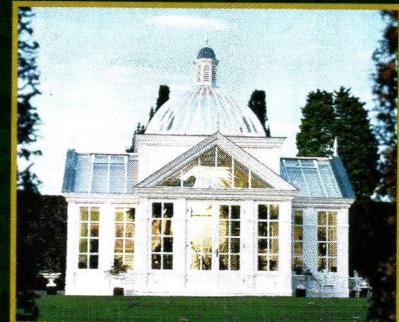
CUSTOM ARCHITECTURAL
METALWORK & LIGHTING
FROM
HISTORICAL
ARTS & CASTING

SEE OUR DISPLAY AD
ON PAGE 101.

WRITE IN NO. 1210

Unsurpassed
in artistry and
craftsmanship,
each handbuilt

conservatory is designed
to reflect existing
architectural detail or to
bring your individual
vision to life.

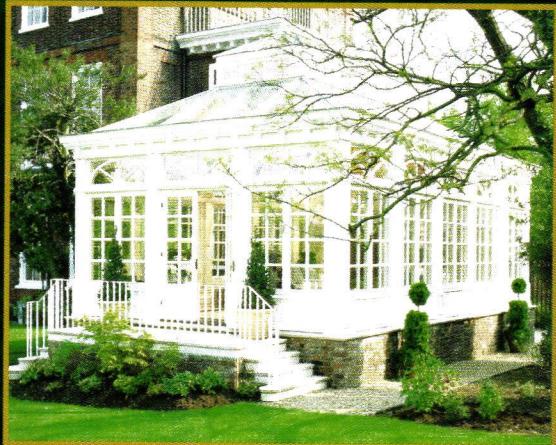


OAK LEAF CONSERVATORIES LTD., YORK, ENGLAND.
Please send \$10 for a copy of our full colour brochure

AMERICAN OFFICE Tel: 1-800-360-6283 Fax: 404-250-6283

876 Davis Drive, Atlanta, Georgia 30327

WRITE IN NO. 6860



WIEMANN IRONWORKS For Your Estate

Original Designs • Award Winning Fabrication • Expert Installation

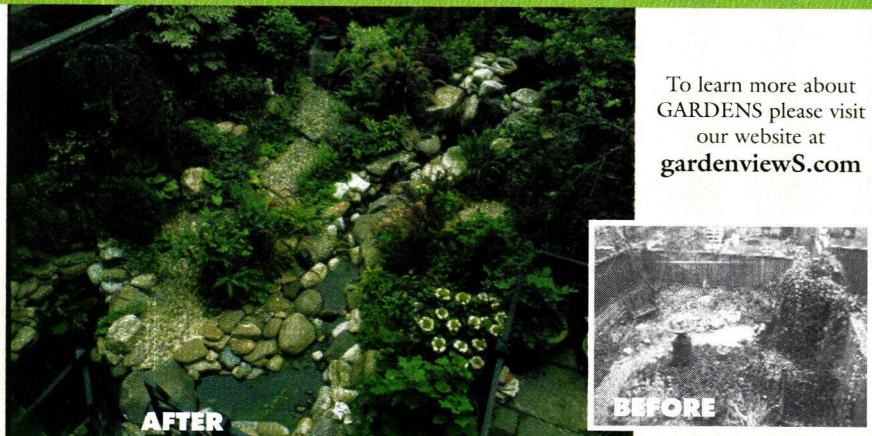


WIEMANN
IRONWORKS

2620 East 11th Street • Tulsa, Oklahoma 74104 • 918-592-1700 • Fax 918-592-2385

WRITE IN NO. 1223

LANDSCAPE DESIGN

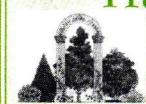


To learn more about
GARDENS please visit
our website at
gardenviews.com



Transforming Properties Across America

FOR CONSULTATION AND PORTFOLIO PRESENTATION
Contact GARDENS, Keith Davitt kdavitt@earthlink.net
718 857 1787 Fax 718 857 1663



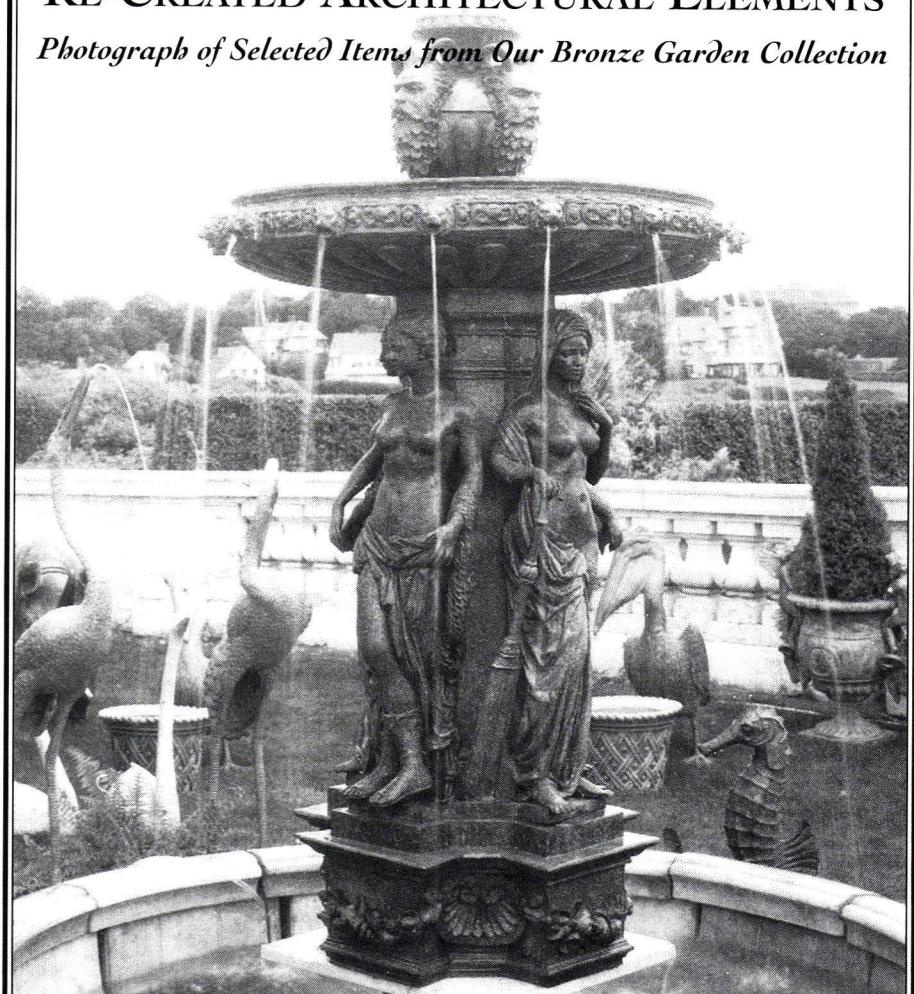
WRITE IN NO. 891

OakLeaf
CONSERVATORIES OF YORK

Aardvark Antiques

A GLOBAL SUPPLIER OF ANTIQUE &
RE-CREATED ARCHITECTURAL ELEMENTS

Photograph of Selected Items from Our Bronze Garden Collection



Main Offices and Showrooms: 475 Thames Street, Newport, Rhode Island 02840
Showroom: High Point, North Carolina 27261

Tel 401-849-7233 • Fax 401-849-1591
email ardvarkan@aol.com • www.aardvarkantiques.com

WRITE IN NO. 718

"Buy With Confidence"
— Est. 1952 —

Wayside • Wholesale • Manufacturer
RESIDENTIAL & COMMERCIAL
Fence Co. *For all your fencing needs!*

Now! Convenient Location Plus! WE DELIVER!

1-800-847-7789 | 968-6828
63 Third Avenue, Bay Shore, NY 11706

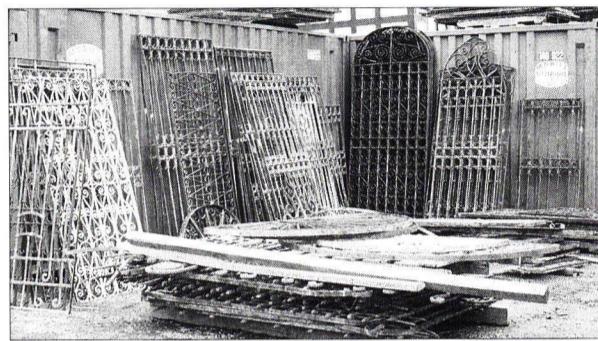
Visit Our Showroom With Over 75 Styles On Display!

WRITE IN NO. 4260

BUYING GUIDE TO GARDEN & LANDSCAPE SPECIALTIES

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted suppliers of various Garden & Landscape Specialties from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 65 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

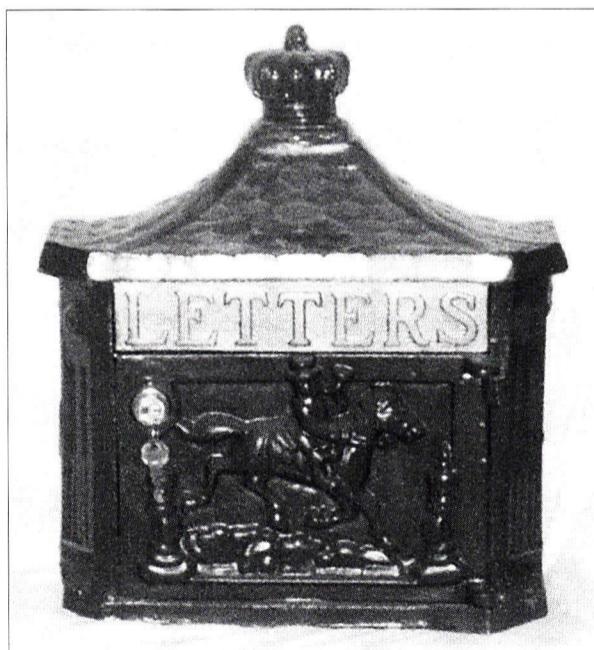


The inventory at AARDVARK ANTIQUES includes a vast array of antique gates and railings. Write in No. 718

Aardvark Antiques
800-446-1052; Fax: 401-849-1591
www.aardvarkantiques.com
Newport, RI 02840

Company offers over 1500 pieces of interior and exterior bronze statuary, urns, fountains, and animals. Also, antique stained-glass windows, doors, lighting, church salvage, antique bank salvage, and outdoor lighting. Materials include carved stone, cast bronze, and terra cotta. Write in No. 718

♦ ♦ ♦



AM-DIA's cast-aluminum mailbox features Victorian styling and a heavy-duty finish for the harshest conditions. Write in No. 95

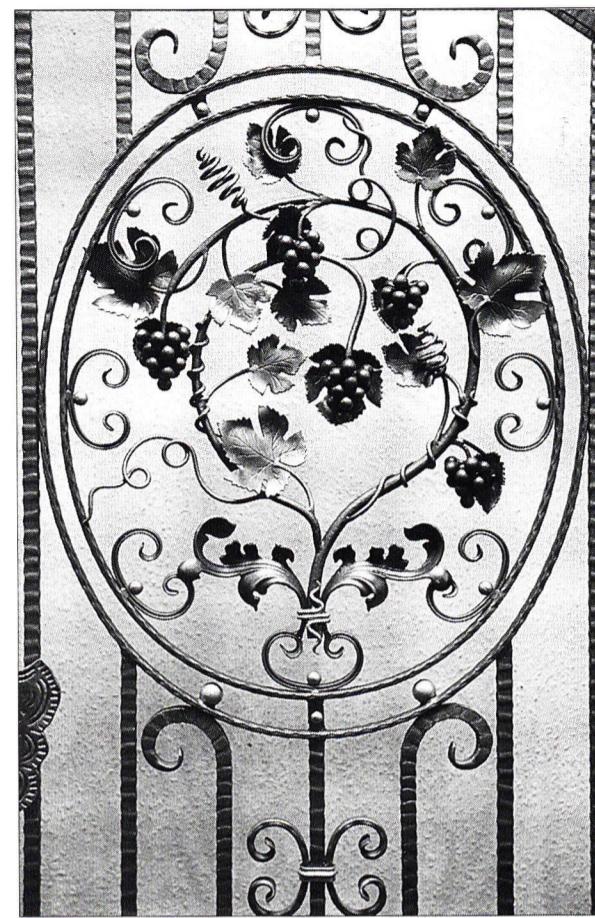
Am-Dia, Inc.
800-483-7105; Fax: 419-424-1822
www.victorianmarketplace.com
Findlay, OH 45840

Specialist in decorative residential post- and wall-mount mailboxes that are 'U.S. Postmaster' approved. Also, cast-aluminum fountains, birdbaths, Victorian-style furniture, urns, street lighting, antique furnishings, and patio furniture. Porch, wall- & post-mounted lighting in Victorian style. Write in No. 95

♦ ♦ ♦

Architectural Iron Designs, Inc.
800-784-7444; Fax: 201-222-7767
www.archirondesign.com
Jersey City, NJ 07306

Distributes a large selection of high-quality, hot-forged steel components for gates, fences, railings, balconies, grilles,



This iron grapevine gate is a showcase for the fine hand-forgings available from ARCHITECTURAL IRON DESIGNS. Write in No. 7950

furniture, and decorative accessories. Exclusive distributor for B. Rourke & Co. Metal stairs, spiral, curved, and straight, metal stair parts, metal & glass stair treads, balusters, railings, and newel posts. All work done in steel. Write in No. 7950

♦ ♦ ♦

Andy Thornton Architectural Antiques, Ltd.
+44-1422-377314; Fax: +44-1422-310372
www.andythorntonltd.co.uk
Halifax, W. Yorkshire, UK HX4 8AD

Europe's largest supplier of architectural-antiques & decor. Wide selections of original and reproduction garden ornamentation and statuary. Available in a variety of materials and finishes from marble, stone, cast iron, aluminum, and terra cotta. From planters to urns, statues, busts, pedestals, troughs, fountains, weathervanes, etc. Architectural antiques directory and 400-page catalogue available.

♦ ♦ ♦



BADGER VILLAGE produces distinctive garden ornament and furniture using traditional blacksmithing methods. Write in No. 3154

Badger Village Blacksmithing, Inc.
888-271-2070; Fax: 608-355-0013
www.badgerville.com
Merrimac, WI 53561

Hand-forged ironwork; from Colonial-style chandeliers to Deco candlesticks and whimsical garden ornaments; fabricates with the textures and curves of hand-forged ironwork. Custom-designed fences and gates. Work with blacksmith to design the fence or gate. Write in No. 3154

♦ ♦ ♦

Bamboo Fencer
617-524-6137; Fax: 617-524-6100
www.bamboofencer.com
Jamaica Plain, MA 02130

Specialist in bamboo fences and gates; also, design service and custom designs for pergolas, bars, changing and play houses. Ornamental gates, railings, and fencing in bamboo.

♦ ♦ ♦

Benner's Gardens
800-753-4660; Fax: 215-477-9429
www.bennersgardens.com
Conshohocken, PA 19428

Unobtrusive-looking deer fencing easily attaches to trees or posts. Complete accessory line and driveway protection systems are available. Installation available in many areas.

♦ ♦ ♦

Brickyard Inc., The
816-380-3366; Fax: 816-887-5757
P.O. Box A
Harrisonville, MO 64701

Source for authentic, antique clinker bricks with highly distinctive shapes, colors, and textures, ideal for constructing hearths and chimney facings. Will match samples.

♦ ♦ ♦

CCSI International
800-537-8231; Fax: 815-544-4353
www.ccsiusa.com
Garden Prairie, IL 61038

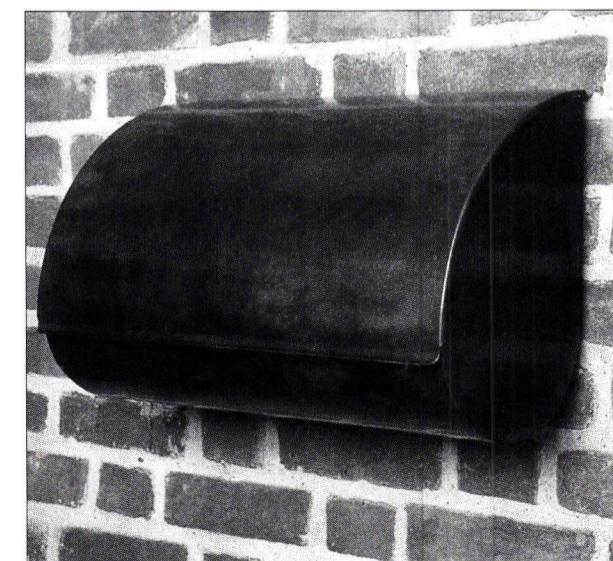
Provides functional and unique designs for both custom aquatic pool enclosures and opening roof systems. Enclosures are available in powder-coated colored aluminum frames and rafters to withstand moisture and chemicals. Motorized roofing panels. Over 35 years of experience and technology assures a durable, attractive unit tailored to your specific needs.

♦ ♦ ♦

CertainTeed Outdoor Living Products
610-341-7000; Fax: 610-341-7317
www.certainteed.com
Valley Forge, PA 19482

Complete line of vinyl railing, deck, fence, shade, and garden products. Backed by warranty protection. Write in No. 6650

♦ ♦ ♦



CHAENOMELES' oversized Teardrop mailbox is hand-crafted from heavy-gauge copper. It is available as a wall- or stand-mounted unit. Write in No. 1360

Award-Winning Metalwork



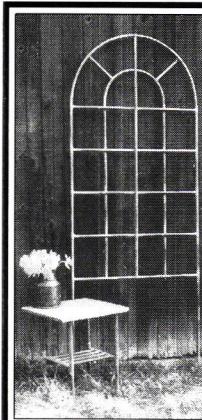
Custom design
development,
meticulous handwork,
specialty finishes, and
expert installation.

Corbel mount
railing brace

For lighting, gates, rails, & furniture
visit www.iceforge.com or contact
Fine Architectural Metalsmiths
P.O. Box 30, Chester, NY 10918

1 . 8 8 8 . 8 6 2 . 9 5 7 7

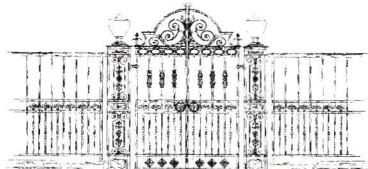
WRITE IN NO. 2640



SYCAMORE CREEK
Copper Arbors & Trellises
•Beautifully crafted
•Unique designs
•Attractive, natural verdigris patina
(518) 398-6393
PO Box 16P
Ancram, NY 12502
sycamorecreek@taconic.net

WRITE IN NO. 709

R. WALSH GATE & RAILING CO.



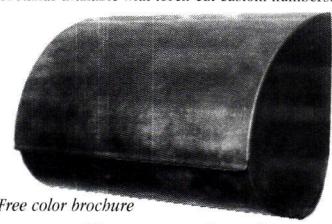
Fine Hand Forged Ironwork

306 Lake St., Pepin, WI 54759
Ph. (715) 442-3102 Fax (715) 442-6002
www.robertwalsh.com

WRITE IN NO. 898

Large Handcrafted Copper Mailboxes

Artistically crafted in heavy-gauge copper, fusion-welded, and hand-rubbed to a rich patina. Teardrop style pictured. Other classic styles. For wall-mounting, but also two types of stands available with torch-cut custom numbers.



Free color brochure

Chaenomeles, Inc.
P.O. Box 7011, Dallas, TX 75209
214/249-6785 Fax: 214/826-1693

WRITE IN NO. 1360

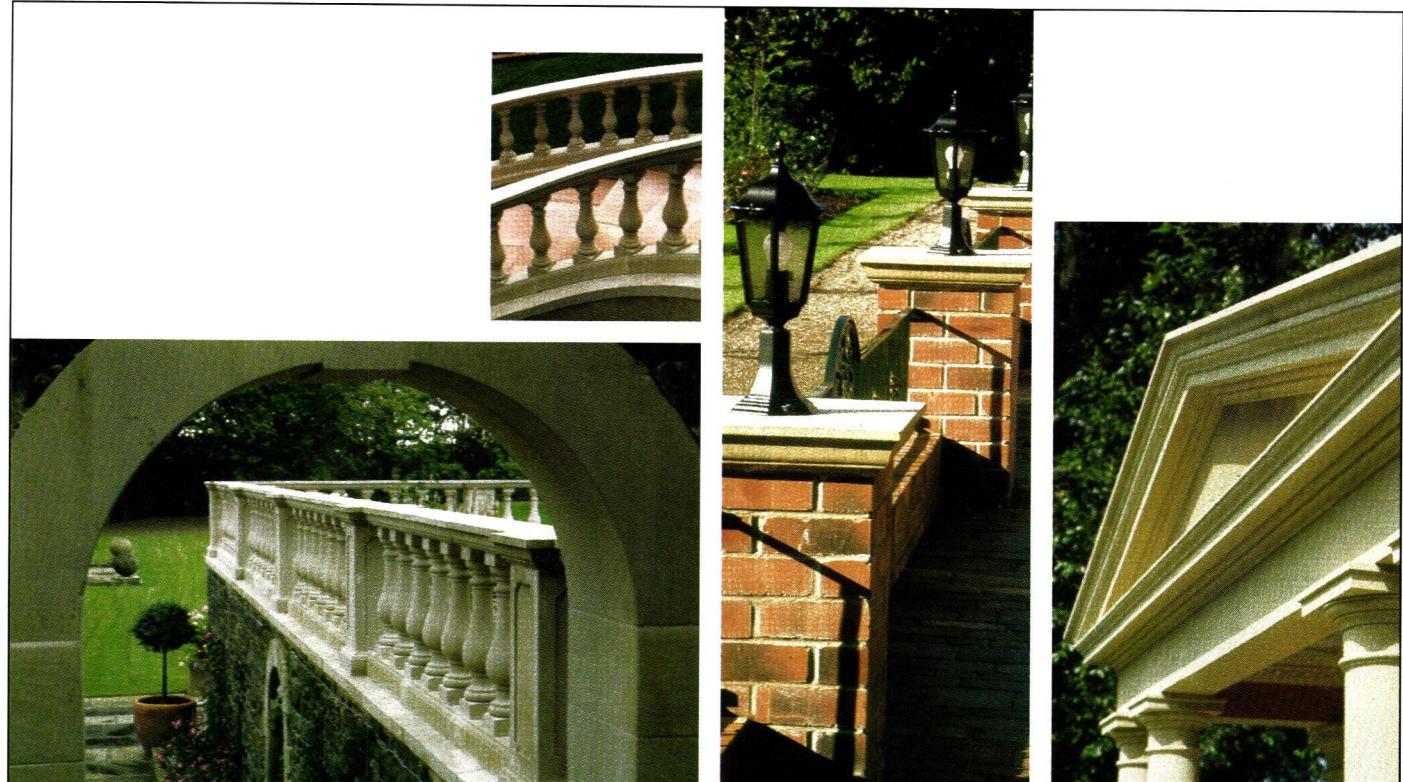


FLOWER FRAMERS

SEE OUR
FULL PAGE
FULL COLOR AD
ON PAGE 89

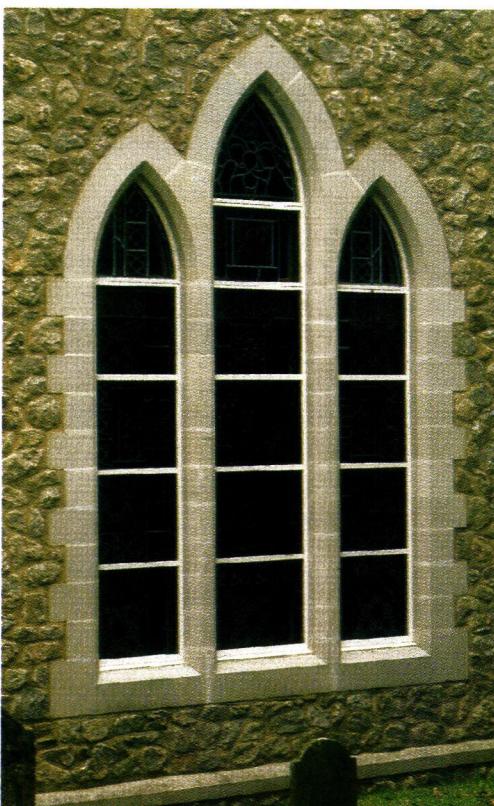


WRITE IN NO. 3850



HADDONSTONE

Fine landscape ornaments and architectural cast stonework



For a copy of
The Haddonstone Collection,
richly illustrated in over 148 pages
contact:

Haddonstone (USA) Ltd,
201 Heller Place, Bellmawr, NJ 08031
Tel: (856) 931 7011 Fax: (856) 931 0040
www.haddonstone.com

Offices also in: California • Colorado

WRITE IN NO. 4020

Find the time for a site visit

rtw-inc.com

Our Products



Summer Houses



Benches



Bridges



Fencing, Railings & Gates



Arbors, Pergolas & Sitting Shelters

Romancing the Woods, Inc.

33 Raycliffe Drive Woodstock, NY 12498

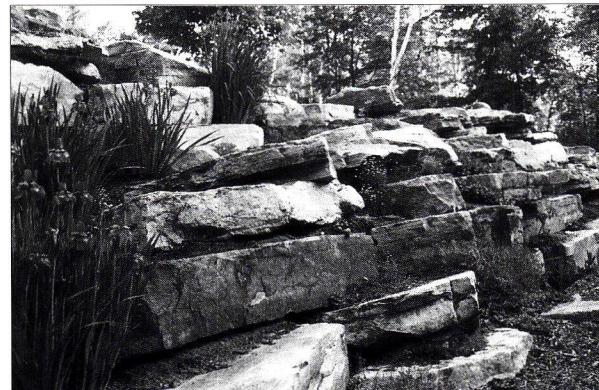
Tel: 845-246-1020 Fax: 845-246-1021 email: davis@rtw-inc.com web site: www.rtw-inc.com

WRITE IN NO. 5010

GARDEN & LANDSCAPE SPECIALTIES

Chaenomeles, Inc.
214-249-6785; Fax: 214-826-1693
P.O. Box 7011
Dallas, TX 75209

Large hand-crafted copper mailboxes for wall or post mounting. Custom mailbox stands with torch-cut house numbers. Decorative cast-bronze flagstaff holders in star and fleur-de-lis shapes; patented flag-display system. Write in No. 1360



CHAMPLAIN STONE supplies fine landscaping granite, limestone, and quartzitic sandstone. Write in No. 4270

Champlain Stone, Ltd.
518-623-2902; Fax: 518-623-3088
www.champlainstone.com
Warrensburg, NY 12885

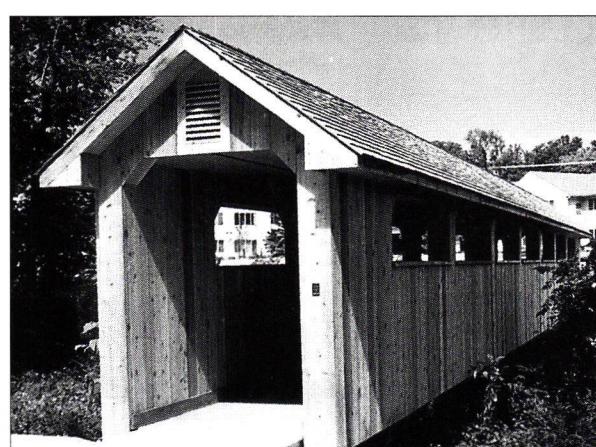
Guillotined and hand-split granite, quartzitic sandstone, and limestone for building veneer, wall stone, flagging, step slabs, and landscape boulders. Natural-stone pavers and flooring. Lintels and hearth pieces. Write in No. 4270

Concord Industries, Inc.
800-527-3902; Fax: 800-426-5770
www.flagpoles.com
Addison, TX 75001

Manufacturer of tapered aluminum flagpoles for outdoor application. Ground mount and wall mount available. Custom bases available.

Consolidated Architectural Lighting
661-269-4734; Fax: 661-269-4735
37925 Sixth St. E., #305
Palmdale, CA 93550

Landscape lighting for all landscape uses; residential and commercial projects. Also work directly with specifiers on custom fixtures, colors, and designs.



CONTINENTAL BRIDGE specializes in prefabricated recreational bridges as well as custom-designed structures, such as this covered bridge in Cedar Rapids, Iowa.

Continental Bridge
800-328-2047; Fax: 320-852-7067
www.continentalbridge.com
Alexandria, MN 56308

Manufacturer of custom-engineered, prefabricated weathering steel, painted and all-hardwood bridges for ornamental or industrial use. Bridges can be designed to accept the addition of glazing, lighting, fencing, screening, siding, and roofing.



Signage, in a range of metals including brass, aluminum, and bronze, is a specialty of CUSTOM HOME ACCESSORIES. Write in No. 527

Custom Home Accessories
800-265-0041; Fax: 916-961-9707
www.custom-mailboxes.com
Fair Oaks, CA 95628

Copper and cast-aluminum weathervanes, address plaques, street signs, cupolas, finials, and mailboxes. Full-bodied, swell-bodied, and silhouette weathervanes; custom copper roof caps; cupolas, finials; work in copper, aluminum, brass. Write in No. 527

Davitt Garden Design
718-857-1787; Fax: 718-857-1663
www.gardenviws.com
Brooklyn, NY 11217

Complete landscape-design services; landscape implementation; project management. Write in No. 891

DecorativeIron.com
888-380-9278; Fax: 713-991-6493
www.decorativeiron.com
Houston, TX 77075

Source of decorative iron components, finishing details for metalwork; components to fabricate, repair, and decorate metalwork. Railings, gates, components; wrought iron/steel. Write in No. 3056

Designer Concrete Products/American Technocret
818-990-3362; Fax: 818-990-3382
www.technocrete.com
Studio City, CA 91604

"Woodcrete," "Brickcrete," and "Fencestone" precast-concrete retaining and perimeter walls.

DHS Designs
410-280-3466; Fax: 410-280-8729
www.dhsdesigns.com
Annapolis, MD 21401

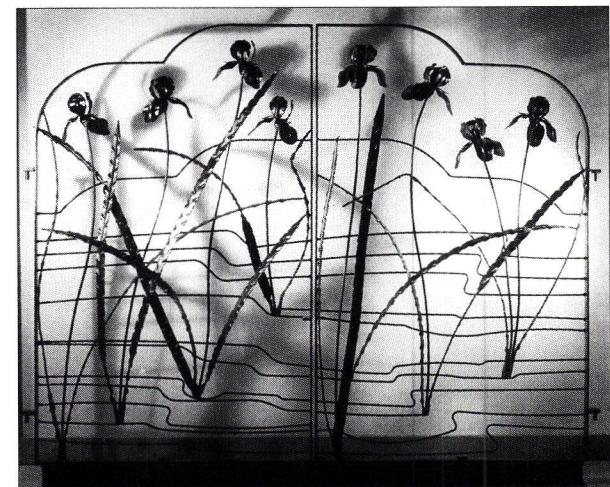
Carved French limestone mantels, 16th to 19th c. Also, architectural artifacts; antique garden ornaments (18th- to 20th-c. statuary, fountains, urns, benches), antique continental furniture and decorative arts. Write in No. 773

FAAC International, Inc.
970-223-3354; Fax: 970-223-2588
www.faacusa.com
Cheyenne, WY 82007

Specialized manufacturer of hydraulic gate operators for swing, slide, and barrier gate systems. With automatic gate operators, homeowners can enter and exit gates without having to leave their cars.

Fine Architectural Metalsmiths
845-651-7550; Fax: 845-651-7857
www.iceforge.com
Chester, NY 10918

Hand-built signature lighting; entry lanterns, foyer chandeliers, and sconces from award-winning studio. Period or fine custom styling in forged iron, coppers, and bronzes. Exotic



The Iris Gate by FINE ARCHITECTURAL METALSMITHS features beautifully formed iron irises and forged leaves. Write in No. 2640

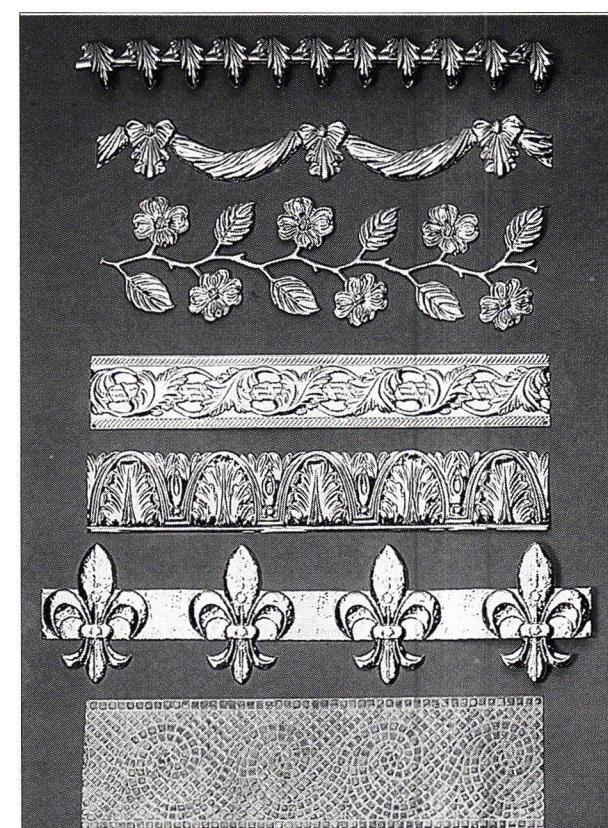
patinations. Fire screens. Forged balusters in traditional and period motifs; collared, drawn, tapered, beveled, incised, and hot split at the anvil and assembled into railings and grilles; specialty finishes and patinas. Write in No. 2640

Flex-Fence Manufacturing
800-233-3623; 81; Fax: 817-332-6327
800 N. Henderson St.
Fort Worth, TX 76107

Easy-to-install, long-lasting wood fences that attach to existing fences or can be used as primary fence: 6-ft. heights in cypress and spruce; 4- and 5-ft. heights in spruce. All wood is number-1 grade, unstained, not treated. Fencing in 6-ft.-tall x 20-ft.-length rolls of natural wood pickets, nominal 1-7/8 in. x 5/16 in. woven together with 7 rows of #16 galv. wire. Can be used on new or old fences.

Four Seasons Sunrooms
800-368-7732; Fax: 631-563-4010
www.four-seasons-sunrooms.com
Holbrook, NY 11741

Large selection of greenhouses, screen rooms, patio rooms, sunrooms, and conservatories. Forty different models in hundreds of variations in aluminum, vinyl, or wood, with maintenance-free exteriors. "MC Wonderglass" is designed for thermal control in summer and winter.



FRANK MORROW's decorative metal bandings are often used in outdoor furnishings and ornamental railings and gates. Write in No. 1220



From our landscape to yours...

Sculpted by glaciers ten thousand years ago, Champlain Stone's Granite, Quartzitic Sandstone and Limestone products offer unique color and texture to any landscape design. Whether a boulder-lined entrance,

a meandering stone wall, or an elegant stone patio, you can count on Champlain Stone's quality products and natural beauty -- unearthed for the first time in millions of years.



CHAMPLAIN STONE, LTD.TM

Quarriers of Natural Building and Landscaping Stone
P.O. Box 650, Warrensburg, New York 12885 • 518-623-2902 FAX 518-623-3088
www.champlainstone.com

Wall Stone • Uniform Rise Wall Stone • Thin Wall Stone • Step Slabs • Boulders • Paving Stone • Flagging • Garden Bed Edging
Photos above: American Granite™ weathered ledges (left) and American Granite™ Wall Stone (right).

WRITE IN NO. 4270

Curbside Character

Turning ordinary into extraordinary has never been easier. Offering pergolas, arbors, finials, post caps, mailbox posts, lantern posts and much more. Call for a free brochure or visit us on line.

Island Postcap
Islandpostcap.com
800-555-3694 Phone / Facsimile

WRITE IN NO. 702

Badger Village Blacksmithing, Inc.
Merrimac, WI 53561-0286 Since 1987

Quality Hand Forged Metalwork

"The exciting thing about being an Artist/Blacksmith is that there is an endless array of possibilities for design along with an incredible number of different items that can be made. It is this variety that makes our field both interesting and challenging."

Steve Hackbart-Artisit/Blacksmith

Custom Retail Wholesale

Phone: 1-888-271-2070 Fax: 1-608-355-0013 E-mail: info@badgervillage.com

www.badgervillage.com

WRITE IN NO. 3154



Historically Styled Products
for Residential Architecture
www.period-homes.com

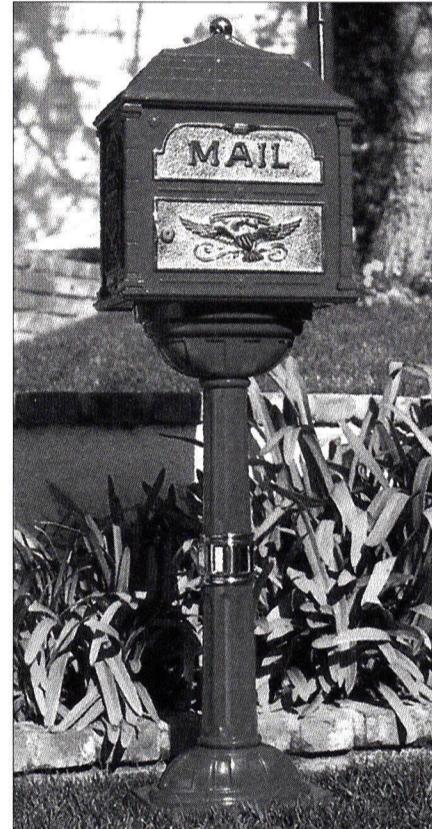
GARDEN & LANDSCAPE SPECIALTIES

Frank Morrow Company
800-556-7688; Fax: 401-941-3810
www.frankmorrow.com
Providence, RI 02905

Manufacturer of decorative metal leaves, flowers, motif stampings, husks, bobechees, continuous metal banding, and perforated gallery. Many items available in heavy 16 gauge. Also, line of grey-iron castings.

◆◆◆
Gaby's Shoppe
800-299-4229; Fax: 214-748-7701
www.gabys.com
Dallas, TX 75207

Hand-crafted wrought-iron furniture, tables, chairs, chandeliers, floor and table lamps, drapery hardware, and balcony railing. Furniture, lighting, railings, balusters, drapery hardware; wrought iron. Write in No. 2520



GAINES
MFG.'s Classic
Mailbox weighs
a substantial
41 lbs. and is
constructed from
14 separate
castings.

Gaines Manufacturing, Inc.
858-486-7100; Fax: 858-486-7855
www.gainesmfg.com
Poway, CA 92064

Manufactures mailboxes die-cast from aluminum with optional solid-brass accents. Mailboxes to complement wide range of architectural styles.



The Rose line of garden furniture from GARDEN ART would be at home in a traditional English garden setting.

Garden Art, Inc.
860-829-0707; Fax: 860-828-7535
www.garden-art-inc.com
Kensington, CT 06037

Distinctive cast-aluminum mailboxes in a variety of styles and colors, with baked-powder finish. Reliable delivery of any quantity.

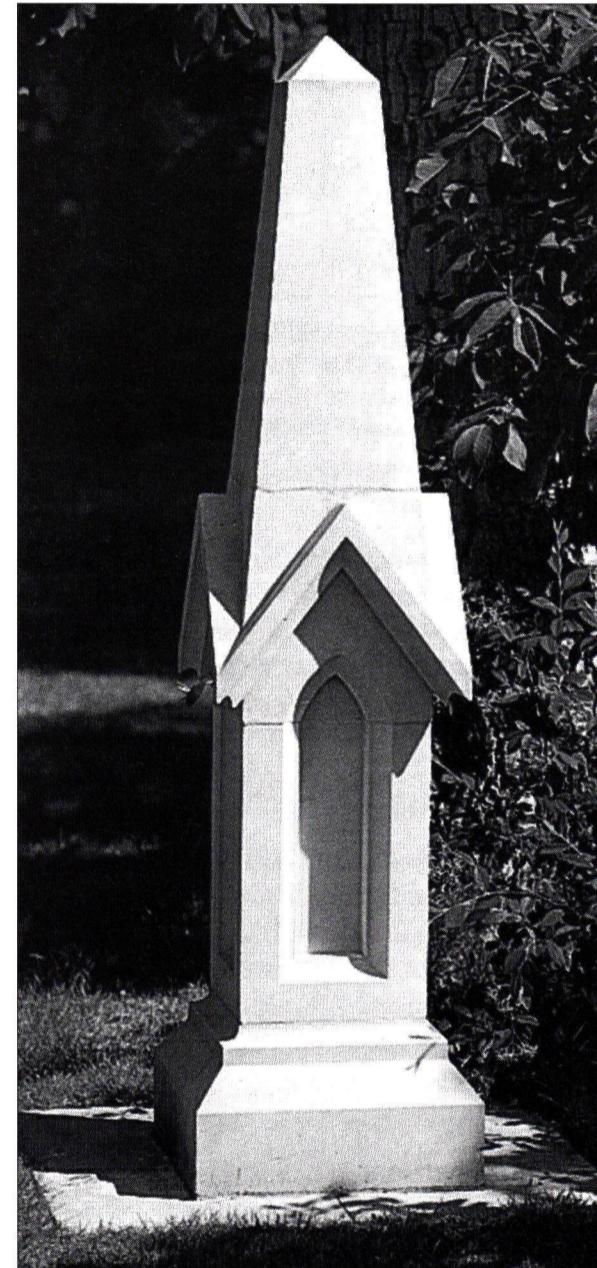
BUYING GUIDE TO

Gardener's Supply Co.
802-660-3500; Fax: 802-660-3501
128 Intervale Rd.
Burlington, VT 05401

Mail-order distributor of gardening equipment, specializing in home gardening.

◆◆◆
Gardenworks
530-694-2515; Fax: Same as phone
www.gardenworkstopiary.com
Markleeville, CA 96120

Designer and manufacturer of custom and commercial topiary frames, constructed of steel or stainless steel. Hand-wrought metal accents available in copper, brass, bronze, and lead; also, hand-shaped fiberglass and foam accents.



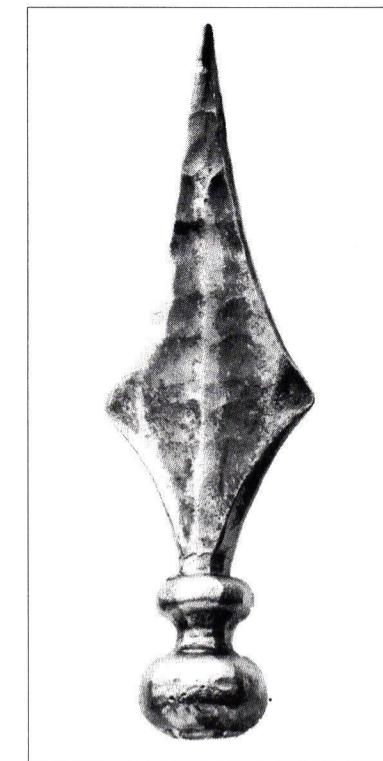
HADDONSTONE's Gothic obelisk would form a striking focal point in any garden. Write in No. 4020

Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.
856-931-7011; Fax: 856-931-0040
www.haddonstone.com
Bellmawr, NJ 08031

British designer/manufacturer of classical stonework, using cast, reconstructed limestone resembling Portland stone. Over 500 designs of architectural and landscape elements that weather naturally. Custom-design capabilities. Cast-stone architectural products including railings, columns, gate piers, gazebos, and garden temples. Write in No. 4020

◆◆◆
Images in Slate, Inc.
888-786-2171; Fax: 866-786-2176
www.iis.ca
North River, NF, CANADA A0A 3C0

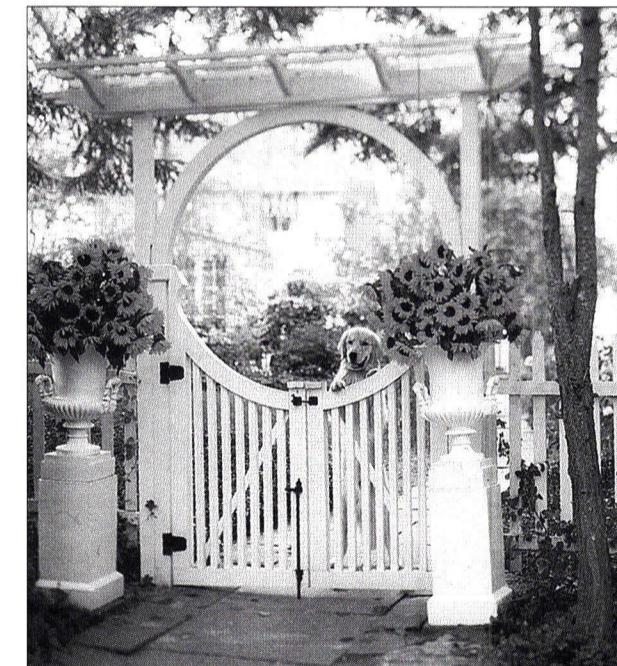
Maker of signage and plaques in natural slate. Range of sizes and colors available.



INDITAL's hot-stamped iron pickets reproduce the look of rustic hand-forged pickets. Write in No. 6560

Indital, USA
800-772-4706; Fax: 713-694-2055
www.indital.com
Houston, TX 77018

Over 8,500 Italian-designed architectural steel forgings: signature rosettes, intricately designed baroque leaves, spears, and a full array of pickets that can be fabricated to create staircases, partitions, fences, etc. Gates, railings, balustrades, stairs; metal ornament; wrought iron/steel. Write in No. 6560



ISLAND POST CAP's 48-in. Sconset pergola, with split Chestnut Street gate, makes a beautiful entryway. Write in No. 702

Island Post Cap
800-555-3694; Fax: Same as phone
www.islandpostcap.com
Montgomery, AL 36108

This national distributor of redwood and cedar post caps also supplies cedar arbors, pergolas, gates, finials, and deck accessories, as well as casual teak furniture. Warehouses in CT, AL, and CA. Write in No. 702

◆◆◆
James Peters & Sons Inc.
215-739-9500; Fax: 215-739-9779
1936 N. Front St.
Philadelphia, PA 19122

Period-style hardware for shutters, doors, and gates in wrought steel with a black finish. New reproduction hardware. Write in No. 1240

Pick. Click. It's Shipped.

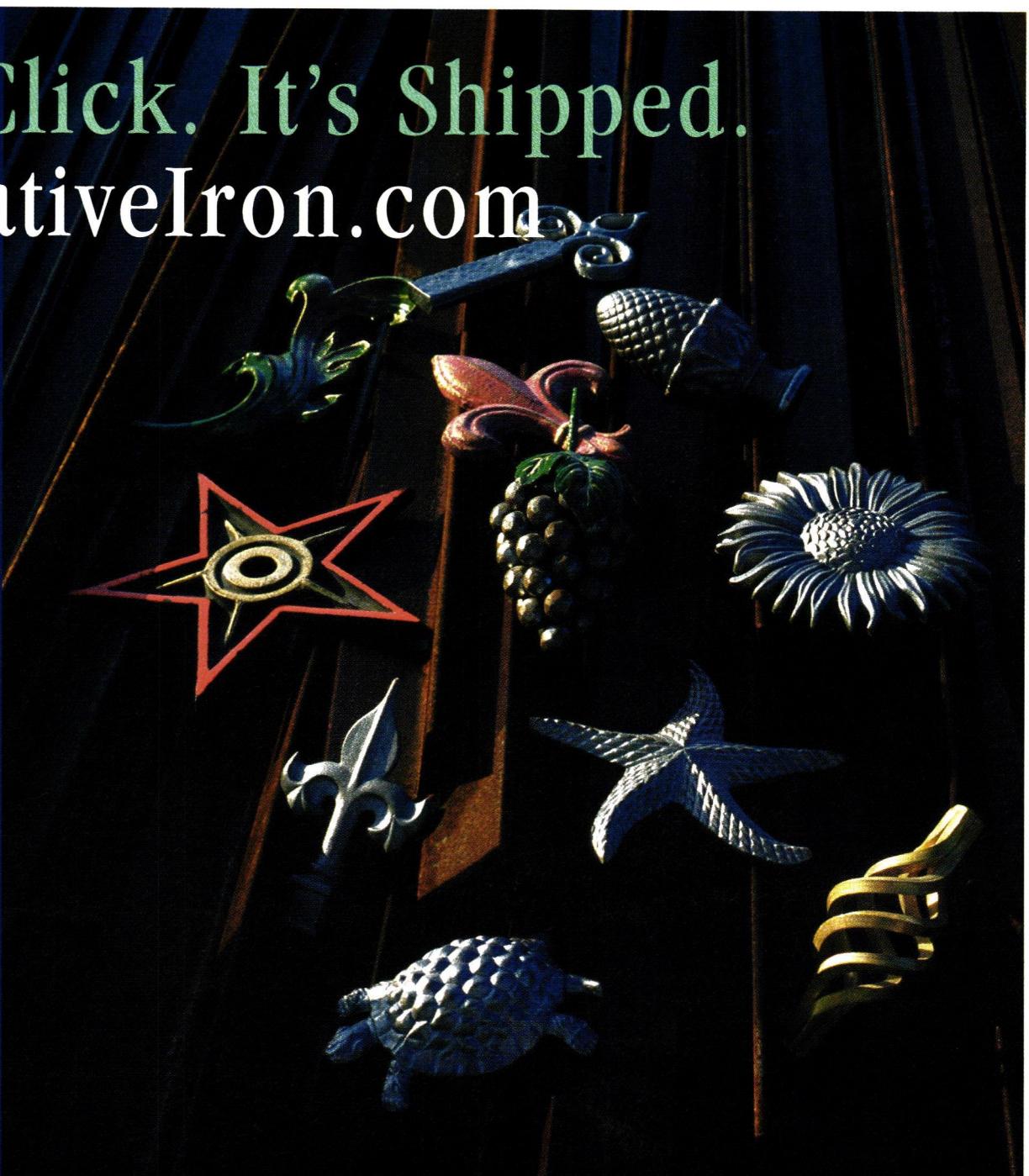
www.DecorativeIron.com

The nation's
complete source of
components to
fabricate, repair
and decorate.

Save 10% when you order online.
No quantity limitations.



Toll free: 888-380-9278

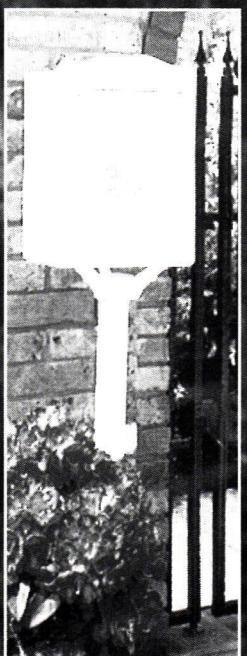
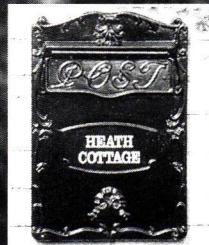


WRITE IN NO. 3056

Architectural Iron Designs, Inc.



A versatile range
of mailboxes
crafted in England
are one of our
many decorative
accessories.



For a Free Brochure Call **800.784.7444**

167 Dey Street • Jersey City, NJ 07306 • Fax: 201.222.7767
www.archirondesign.com • E-mail: aisales@archirondesign.com

WRITE IN NO. 7950

TIMELESS ELEGANCE

Stocking for the Ornamental Iron Industry
Everything for Architects / Specifiers / Fabricators



- Cast-Metal Components
- Finials & Post Caps
- Forged-Metal Components
- Steel Stampings
- Stairway Components
- Gate Hardware
- Gate Operators
- Access Control
- Ornamental Paint
- Fencing Systems
- Balusters
- Railing Panels
- AND SO MUCH MORE



Call for our
Free Catalog

Crescent City Iron Supply, Inc.

Westchester, IL 60154 Kenner, LA 70062

You'll like our prices - You'll love our Service!

www.crescentcityiron.com
email sales@cciron.com

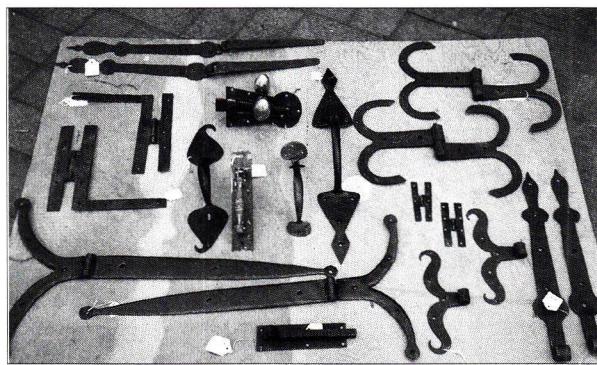
800-535-9842



WRITE IN NO. 1222

Historically Styled Products
for Residential Architecture
www.period-homes.com

BUYING GUIDE TO GARDEN & LANDSCAPE SPECIALTIES



JIM LEONARD supplies a huge range of period hardware for doors and gates.

Jim Leonard Antique Hardware
336-454-3583; No Fax
509 Tangle Drive
Jamestown, NC 27282

Antique hardware; 18th- and 19th-century wrought-iron door hardware and fireplace items, andirons, cranes, etc. Interior/exterior thumb latch, square/keyhole plate latch, elbow lock, slide bolt. Strap & rams horn hinge. Send \$3 for photos and price list.

◆ ◆ ◆

Kayne & Son Custom Hardware
828-667-8868; Fax: 828-665-8303
www.brwm.org/kayneandsoncustomhardwareinc
Candler, NC 28715

Custom hand-forged steel, cast-brass/bronze functional and dummy strap hinges, H and HL hinges, bolts, latches, pulls, locks, drapery rods and hooks, sash locks. Custom restoration, reproductions; various finishes. Call for more information

◆ ◆ ◆

Lawler Foundry Corp.
205-595-0596; Fax: 205-595-0599
P.O. Box 320069
Birmingham, AL 35232

Nationwide supplier of over 1,200 ornamental metal components in cast iron and artistic steel forgings. Victorian styles, newel posts, balusters, panels, continuous designs, finials, etc., for fences, gates, railings, stairs, windows, and much more. Write in No. 271

◆ ◆ ◆



LILLIPUT PLAY HOMES' Victorian Mansion playhouse features a stained-glass window, roof rails, and cedar shingles.

Lilliput Play Homes
724-348-7071; Fax: 724-348-0905
www.lilliputplayhomes.com
Finleyville, PA 15332

Creator of distinctive children's playhouses: prefabricated wooden playhouses, ready to assemble; installation available in some regions; seven standard models or custom built.

◆ ◆ ◆

Maine Garden Arbors
207-926-5993; Fax: 207-926-3032
www.maineardenarbors.com
New Gloucester, ME 04260

Precast concrete arbors in traditional and Victorian styles. Finishes include coral, granite and antique bronze, brass or copper. Arbors are segmented for easy installation. Custom



The York arbor, available from MAINE GARDEN ARBORS, is fabricated from precast concrete and finished with a metal coating and antique bronze finish.

work is available. Garden post and lamp post are also available in the above finishes.

◆ ◆ ◆

Old California Lantern Co.
800-577-6679; Fax: 714-771-5714
www.oldcalifornia.com
Orange, CA 92867

Exterior lanterns in the Arts & Crafts style. Designed and manufactured in California. Exterior lighting includes porch lighting, wall-mounted, post-mounted. Custom lighting. Write in No. 8068

◆ ◆ ◆

Olin Wrought Iron
877-423-2112; Fax: 651-454-1227
www.olinwroughtiron.com
Mendota, MN 55150

U.S. manufacturer of wrought-iron components for stairs, railings, fencing, furniture, etc. Complete OWI catalog on-line. Autocad drawings available on CD-ROM. Balustrades, railings, and other metalwork.

◆ ◆ ◆

OSCO / Operator Specialty Co.
800-333-1717; Fax: 800-986-6726
www.operatorspecialty.com
Casnovia, MI 49318

Manufacturer of a wide range of residential, commercial, and industrial gate operators; barrier gates for all types of applications; commercial garage-door openers. Also design and build specialty gate and door operators.

◆ ◆ ◆

Outdoor Lifestyles, Inc.
800-294-4758; Fax: 704-263-8568
P.O. Box 460
Stanley, NC 28164

Manufacturer of a full line of leisure and outdoor aluminum furniture, with eight stock finishes.

◆ ◆ ◆

P&C Imports, Ltd.
858-459-5888; Fax: 858-456-0351
www.pc-imports.com
La Jolla, CA 92037

Architectural antique wholesale importer. Items from France and Italy. Mantels, doors, roof tiles, garden elements, and fixtures. Antique mantels in marble or stone. Custom mantels in cast stone available.

◆ ◆ ◆

Payne Metal Works, Inc.
888-650-IRON; Fax: 972-878-4703
www.paynemetal.com
Ennis, TX 75119

Ornamental iron fencing. Manufacturer of pre-assembled, stock or custom ornamental iron fence panels, gates and posts. Easy-to-install products are made from galvanized tubing with a powder-coated finish for lasting beauty and durability. Shipped nationwide.

◆ ◆ ◆

Primelite Mfg.
800-327-7583; Fax: 516-868-4609
www.primelite-mfg.com
Freeport, NY 11520

Exterior lighting and posts. Custom design and changes on all catalog items; garden lights, walkway lights, cast aluminum poles, wood posts, post lights; globes in acrylic, Lexan, polycarbonate, polyethylene, glass.

◆ ◆ ◆

Private Garden Greenhouse Systems
800-287-4769; Fax: 413-566-8806
www.private-garden.com
Hampden, MA 01036

Full-service design/build greenhouse company; English Victorian greenhouses and conservatories, as well as commercial, institutional, industrial and hobby greenhouses from Belgium. Also, consultation and conservatory-renovation services. Call for more information

◆ ◆ ◆

Pyzique Wall Systems, Inc.
573-634-5482; Fax: 573-556-8906
www.pyzique.com
Jefferson City, MO 65109

Source of the patented Pyzique single-stone system that builds retaining walls, steps, fences and barrier walls, lawn edges, path borders, and tetra ponds.

◆ ◆ ◆

R. Walsh Gate & Railing
715-442-3102; Fax: 715-442-6002
www.robertwalsh.com
Pepin, WI 54759

Shop offers hand-forged ornamental ironwork of a classical nature. Options include: original artwork, colors, textures, dipped and baked finishes, detailing in gold leaf or bronze, repoussé, and more; 20 years experience. Ornamental gates, railings, fencing; work in wrought iron/steel. Write in No. 898

◆ ◆ ◆

Rapid Building Systems
703-471-4082; Fax: 703-471-4083
www.terrastop.com
Reston, VA 20195

Company licenses qualified local manufacturers for the production of its award-winning Terrastop(TM) System: a versatile interlocking-block system for the construction of retaining walls, steps, fences, visual screens, etc.

◆ ◆ ◆

Romancing The Woods, Inc.
845-246-1020; Fax: 845-246-1021
www.rtw-inc.com
Woodstock, NY 12498

Rustic garden and woodland structures (benches, gazebos, pergolas, planters, etc.) made of Eastern red cedar in the romantic tradition of 19th-century English and French estate gardens, and the Great Adirondack camps. Write in No. 5010

◆ ◆ ◆

Savannah Hardscapes
912-443-9000; Fax: 912-443-9894
www.savannahhardscapes.com
Savannah, GA 31401

Very large inventory of imported garden ornaments, architectural accents and fountains from England, France, Italy and Greece. Sales and installation of natural stone, cobblestones and antique bricks. Write in No. 8069

◆ ◆ ◆

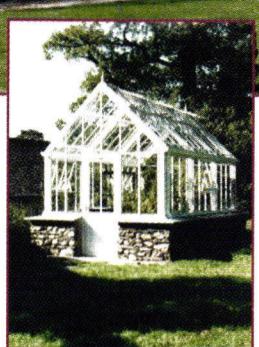


"The Renaissance"



The Art of Gardening

Exceptional quality & elegance in the Hartley Tradition.

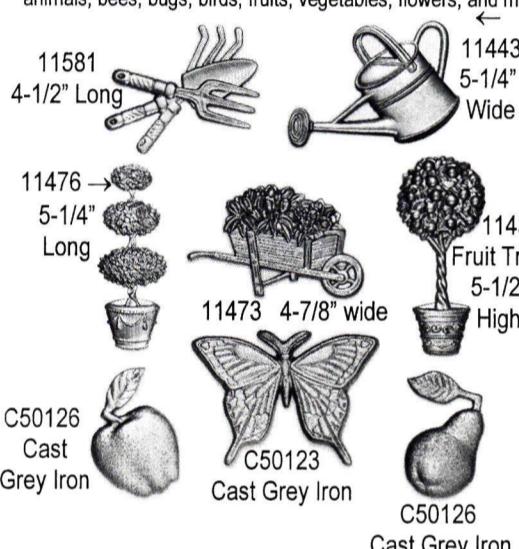


"The Classic"

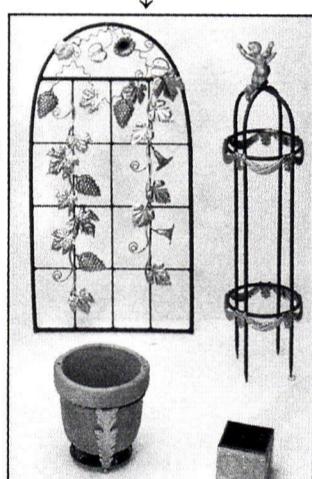
36 Commercial Drive ♦ P.O. Box 600 ♦ Hampden, MA 01036 ♦ 413-566-0277
www.Private-garden.com

For Manufacturers of Garden Ornament and Accessories:

We supply a wide variety of metal leaves, rosettes, tropical and acanthus leaves, ferns, stamped metal animals, bees, bugs, birds, fruits, vegetables, flowers, and much more for all types of garden metal work.



A few ways you can use Morrow stampings



71 years of experience and still innovating!

Is the 250-piece minimum more than you need? Contact Frank Morrow Company today for a list of nine distributors happy to service your smaller requests.

FRANK MORROW COMPANY

129 Baker St. ♦ Providence ♦ RI ♦ 02905 ♦ USA
 Tel: 800-556-7688 ♦ Fax 401-941-3810 ♦ Website: www.frankmorrow.com

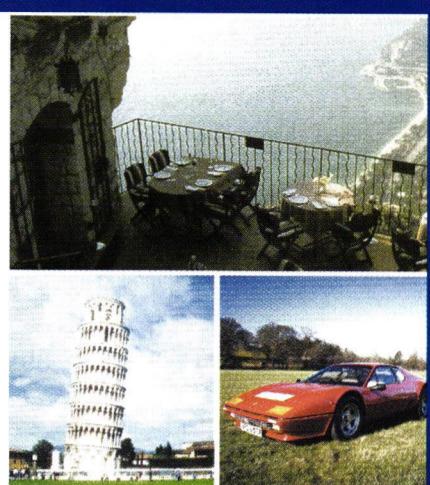
WRITE IN NO. 1220

Contractors and Dealers are Welcome
 Write or call for our catalog - \$4.00
 1-800-483-7105
 1-419-424-1722
 1-419-424-1822 FAX
 We accept Visa, MasterCard, Checks, Money Orders

Andia
 Antiques, Victorian Furniture and a Full Line of Cast Aluminum Lighting
 16960 S.R. 12 East
 Findlay, Ohio 45840 • 424-1722

WRITE IN NO. 95

Design your own timeless image.



Italian style reflects a distinguished charm which is globally renowned. Explore the decorative possibilities by selecting from the largest collection of forged ornamental iron and aluminum products in the world. Each baluster, long bar and component can be arranged in any number of combinations to achieve your creative vision. Choose the look that suits you and design your own timeless image.



indital usa
 Manufacturers & Distributors of Fine Architectural Metal Components

Call us for your nearest Indital Distributor

415 Blueberry St. Houston, TX 77018
 P.O. Box 10567 Houston, TX 77206-0567
 713-694-6065 • Fax 713-694-2055
 Toll Free 1-800-772-4706
www.indital.com • forgings@indital.com

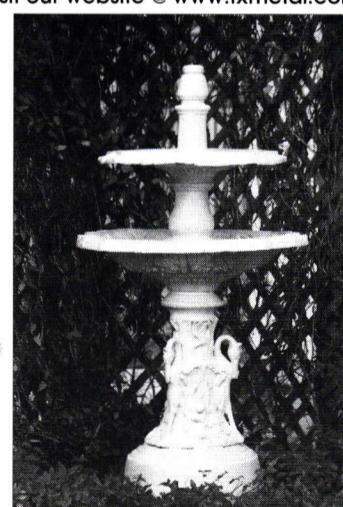
WRITE IN NO. 6560

Great Finishes Start with Parts from . . .

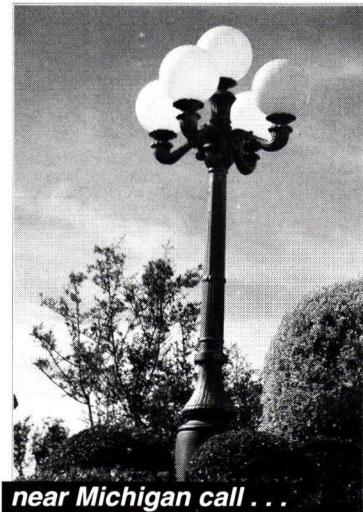
T M I
 Texas Metal Industries, Inc.

PO Box 154 Main & Trunk St.
 Crandall, TX 75114
 Metro (972) 427-9999
 Fax (972) 472-3807

visit our website @ www.txmetal.com



we now have 2 warehouses to serve you !



near Texas call . . .

800-222-6033

800-850-9991

WRITE IN NO. 9430

BUYING GUIDE TO GARDEN & LANDSCAPE SPECIALTIES

Schwartz's Forge & Metalworks, Inc.
315-841-4477; Fax: 315-841-4694
P.O. Box 205, 2695 Route 315
Deansboro, NY 13328

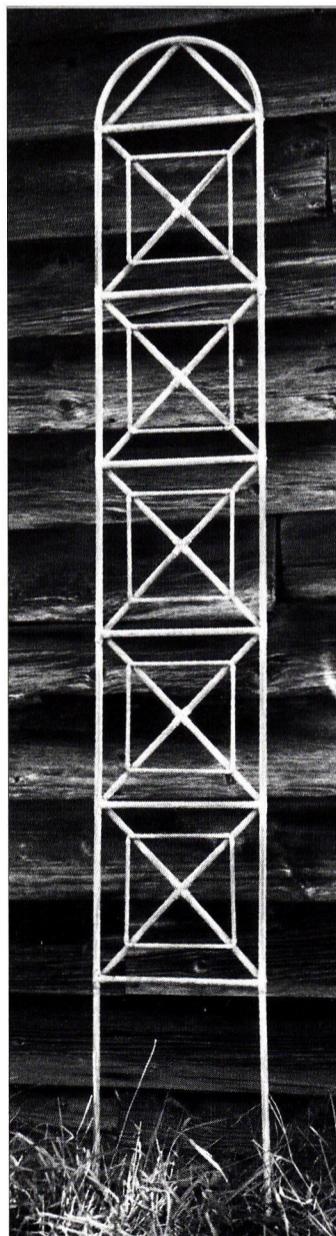
For 22 years, this architectural-metal company has designed and produced stair railings/balustrades, gates, doors, and fences. Also railings, stairs, lighting, hardware, sculpture, registers & grilles. Metals include wrought iron/steel, bronze, & brass. Write in No. 1218

Streetscape Inc.
714-898-4842; Fax: 714-898-9394
15641 Product #7
Huntington Beach, CA 92649

Street lights, street signs, mailboxes, and mail poles. Mailboxes are solid brass and poles are cast aluminum.

SugarKettles.com
337-948-8039; Fax: 337-948-7706
www.sugarkettles.com
Opelousas, LA 70570

Firm manufactures cast-iron sugar kettles to be used as container and water-gardening products. Historical styles adapted from the 18th and 19th centuries; distributor opportunities.



This attractive garden trellis was custom-designed and -built, using copper pipe, by SYCAMORE CREEK. Write in No. 709

Sycamore Creek
518-398-6393; Fax: 518-398-7697
www.sycamorecreek.com
Ancram, NY 12502

Copper garden furnishings, specializing in arbors and trellises. Custom projects welcome. Write in No. 709

Texas Metal Industries, Inc.
800-222-6033; Fax: 800-472-3807
www.txmetal.com
Crandall, TX 75114

Ornamental aluminum castings: outdoor furniture and lighting, gate and fence components, mailboxes, hardware, finials, and balustrades. Also, cast-aluminum fountains,



TEXAS METAL INDUSTRIES' inventory of cast-aluminum products for railings and gates includes these components. Write in No. 9430

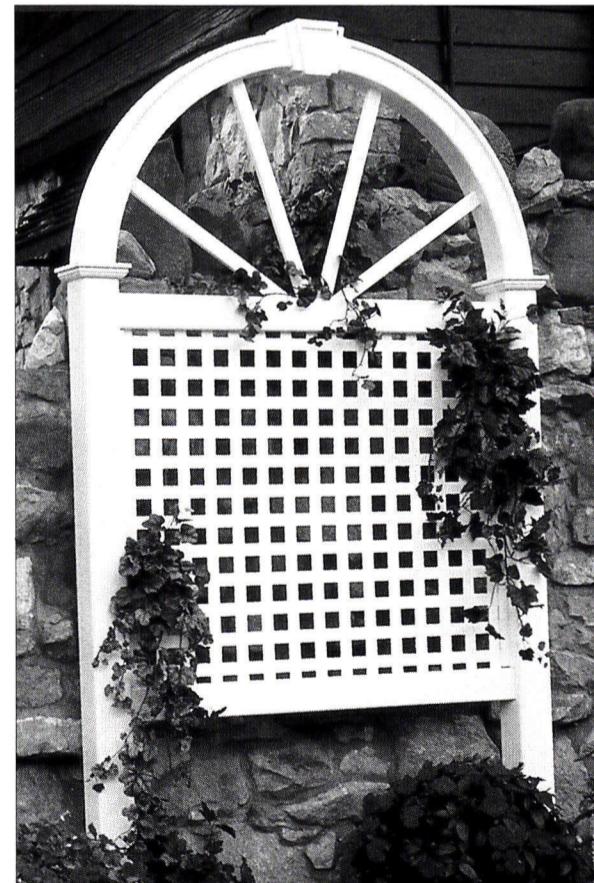
lampposts, and urns. Write in No. 9430

Tiffany Landscape Lighting
218-937-5176; Fax: 218-937-5175
www.tiffanyll.com
Hawley, MN 56549

Manufacturer of stained-glass and copper, low-voltage landscape lighting fixtures.

Trellis Structures
978-921-1235; Fax: 978-232-1151
www.trellisstructures.com
Beverly, MA 01915

Arbors & trellises in easy-to-assemble units, in a wide variety of styles and sizes, from traditional to contemporary, made of western red cedar, douglas fir and purple heart wood. Write in No. 8490



ULTRALAST's Grand Winchester vinyl trellis is 52 in. wide and 96 in. tall. The firm's products carry a lifetime guarantee.

UltraLast Vinyl Products
888-662-3637; Fax: 519-542-9183
www.ultralast.com
Sarnia, ON, CANADA N7T 7H7

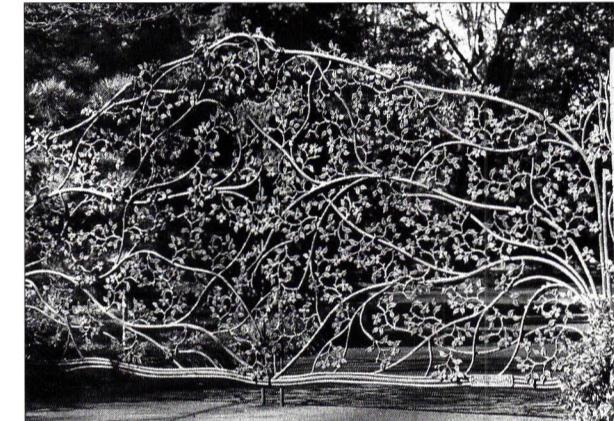
Arbors in New England styles; weatherproof vinyl product.

Universal Entry Systems
800-837-4283; Fax: 216-631-4779
10237 Berea Road, Unit G
Cleveland, OH 44102

Distributor of hydraulic and electro-mechanical gate operators; swing, slide, and barrier operators for residential and commercial applications. Also distributes telephone entry systems and access controls. Gate hardware and gate operators.

Wayside Fence Co.
631-968-6828; Fax: 631-968-6928
www.waysidefence.com
Bay Shore, NY 11706

Manufacturer of a full line of red-cedar arbors and pergolas, in widths from 3 to 8 ft.; matching gates are available. Smaller sizes can be shipped UPS. Also carry sleeves and decorative post caps. New line of heavy-PVC arbor. Also, PVC profiles to match the look of classic wood fencing. Write in No. 4260



This beautifully detailed drive gate at the entrance to a residence in Tulsa, Okla., is testimony to the work of WIEMANN IRONWORKS. Write in No. 1223

Wiemann Ironworks
918-592-1700; Fax: 918-592-2385
www.wiemanniron.com
Tulsa, OK 74104

Since 1940, firm designs, fabricates, and installs fine forged architectural and ornamental metalwork for a national market. Residential and commercial. Custom finishes. CAD services. NOMMA's most award-winning metal fabricator. Curved & straight metal stairs, balusters, railings, & newel posts. Metals include brass, bronze, aluminum, steel, and copper. Write in No. 1223

Surf the Industry!
www.period-homes.com

*Your Internet Portal
to Products & Services
for the Residential Market*

WEB ADDRESS BOOK

WEBSITE ADDRESSES OF ADVERTISERS IN THIS ISSUE

A&M Victorian Decorationswww.aandmvictorian.com
 AA-Abingdon Affiliateswww.abbingdon.com
 Aardvark Antiqueswww.aardvarkantiques.com
 Adams Architectural Wood Productswww.adamsarch.com
 Agrell & Thorpe, Ltd.www.agrellandthorpe.com
 Allied Windowwww.invisiblestorms.com
 Am-Diawww.victorianmarketplace.com
 American Slate Co.www.americanslate.com
 Anything But Plainwww.anythingbutplain.com
 Architectural Accentswww.cupolaconstruction.com
 Architectural Grillewww.archgrille.com
 Architectural Iron Designswww.archirondesign.com
 Architectural Panelingwww.apaneling.com
 Architectural Products by Outwaterwww.outwater.com
 Architectural Sculpture & Restorationswww.architecturalplaster.com
 Architectural Timberworkswww.arcntimb.com
 ARK II Timber Frameswww.ark2timberframe.com
 Arsc Mfg. Co.www.arscomfg.com
 Artistic Railingswww.artisticrail.com
 Arts & Crafts Period Textileswww.textilestudio.com
 Authentic Designswww.authentic-designs.com
 Badger Village Blacksmithingwww.badgerville.com
 Ball & Ballwww.ballandball-us.com
 Balticawww.baltica.com
 Barn Peoplewww.thebarnpeople.com
 Bear Creek Lumberwww.bearcreeklumber.com
 Berger Bros. Co.www.bergerbros.com
 Bevolo Gas & Electric Lightswww.bevolo.com
 Bill's Custom Metal Fabricationswww.ironcrafters.com
 Bird-B-Gonewww.birdbgone.com
 Bird-Xwww.bird-x.com
 Bolection Doorwww.bolectiondoor.com
 Boston Turning Workswww.bostonturningworks.com
 Bradbury & Bradbury Art Wallpaperswww.bradbury.com
 Brass Baronwww.brassbaron.com
 Carlisle Restoration Lumberwww.wideplankflooring.com
 Casa Di Muranowww.casadimurano.com
 CemcoLift/LGIS Americawww.cemcolift.com
 CertainTeed Roofing Productswww.certainteed.com
 Chadsworth's 1.800.Columnswww.columns.com
 Champlain Stone, Ltd.www.champlainstone.com
 Charleston Lighting & Mfg.www.charlestonlighting.com
 Chimney Pot Shoppewww.chimneypot.net
 Christopher Thomson Ironworkswww.christhompson.com
 Classic Gutter Systemswww.classicgutters.com
 Classic Lighting Deviceswww.classiclightingdevices.com
 Classic Plaster Studioswww.clasplas.com
 Claystonewww.claystone.com
 Color Peoplewww.colorpeople.com
 Conant Custom Brasswww.conantcustombrass.com
 Conrad Pickel Studiowww.pickelstudio.com
 Coppa Woodworkingwww.coppawoodworking.com
 Copper Housewww.thecopperhouse.com
 Coppersmythe, Josiah R.www.jrcoppersmythe.com
 Copperworks of Don Millermembers.aol.com/gutterarts
 Country Road Associates, Ltd.www.countryroadassociates.com
 Craftsmen Hardware Co.www.craftsmenhardware.com
 Crescent City Iron Supplywww.crescentcityironSupply.com
 Crosswinds Gallerywww.netvanes.com
 CS Conservatorieswww.creativestructures.com
 Cumberland Woodcraft Co.www.cumberlandwoodcraft.com
 Custom Home Accessorieswww.copperweathervanes.com
 Customlightstyles.comwww.customlightstyles.com
 Dahlhaus Lightingwww.dahlhaus-lighting.com
 Davitt Garden Designwww.gardenviews.com
 Decorative Outdoor Productswww.decorativeoutdoorproducts.com
 DecorativeIron.comwww.decorativeiron.com
 Designs in Tilewww.designsintile.com
 DHS Designswww.dhsdesigns.com
 DMS Studioswww.dms-studios.com
 Drums Sash & Door Co.www.drumssashanddoor.com
 Duluth Timber Co.www.duluthtimber.com
 Durable Slate Co.www.durableslate.com
 E.R. Butler & Co.www.erbutler.com
 Echeguren Slatewww.echeguren.com
 Edile, Ltd.www.edile.com
 EGI Exhibitionswww.restorationandrenovation.com
 Eron Johnson Antiqueswww.eronjohnsonantiques.com
 Escort Lightingwww.escortlighting.com
 Eternitwww.ternitusa.com
 Eugenia's Antique Hardwarewww.eugeniasantiquehardware.com
 Evergreen Slate Co.www.evergreenslate.com
 Faubourg Lightingwww.faubourglighting.com
 Faux Effectswww.fauxfx.com
 Fine Architectural Metalsmithswww.iceforge.com
 Fischer & Jirouchwww.fischerandjirouch.com
 Florentine Craftsmenwww.florentinecraftsmen.com
 Flower Framerswww.palaver.com/flowerframers
 Frank Morrow Companywww.frankmorrow.com
 Fresh Fish Ceramic Tileswww.freshfishtiles.com
 Gaby's Shoppewww.gabys.com
 GAF Materials Corp.www.gaf.com
 Gerald Sicilianowww.concentric.net/~gsstudio
 Good Time Stove Co.www.goodtimestove.com
 Gough & Bros. SnoGuardswww.snoGuard.com
 H.I.C. Window & Door Co.www.homeideacenter.com
 Haddonstone (USA), Ltd.www.haddonstone.com
 Hahn's Woodworking Co.www.hahnswoodworking.com
 Handelman Studioswww.stevenhandelmanstudios.com
 Hazelmere Industries, Ltd.www.hazelmere-ind.com
 HB&Gwww.hbgcolumns.com
 Hendricks Woodworkingwww.historicdoors.com
 Hilltop Slatewww.hilltopslate.com
 Historical Arts & Castingwww.historicalarts.com
 Hugh Lofting Timber Framingwww.hughloftingtimberframe.com
 Hutton Metalcraftswww.copperlamps.com

DHS DESIGNS



- Continental Antiques
- Garden Appointments
- 16th-19th C. French Limestone Mantels

86 Maryland Avenue
Annapolis, Maryland 21401

Telephone: (410) 280-3466
Fax: (410) 280-8729

Website: www.dhsdesigns.com
e-mail: antiques@dhsdesigns.com

WRITE IN NO. 773

Curb Appeal!

Get the look you're looking for:

- Residential & commercial decorative & locking mailboxes - post, wall or pilaster mounted.
- Elegant address plaques & custom bronze markers.
- Huge selection of copper weathervanes & finials.
- Custom coordinated street signs.
- In 100's of custom colors, designs & materials to enhance the value of your community.

Free color catalog:

1-800-265-0041
or fax: 1-916-961-9707

8514 Madison Ave.
Fair Oaks, CA 95628

WRITE IN NO. 527



www.trellisstructures.com

Offering a large selection of
high quality arbors, trellises
and garden structures of
western red cedar.

978.921.1235
Call for new 24 page color catalog.

Box 380-TB
60 River Street, rear
Beverly, MA 01915
trellis
STRUCTURES

WRITE IN NO. 8490

MODERN CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ROOFS: DEFYING EXPECTATIONS

In Europe, Asia, and other parts of the world, tile roofs have been used successfully for hundreds and even thousands of years. Because of their durability, they can be used in virtually any climate, given proper planning, design, and installation. Furthermore, with the development of modern concrete and clay roof tiles, a great variety of styles and colors are now available, allowing today's architects and builders to create looks that are contemporary, traditional, or entirely unique.

by Carolyn Kuehn

Because of their durability, tile roofs can be used in virtually any climate, given proper planning, design, and installation. In fact, in Europe, Asia, and other parts of the world, tile roofs have been used successfully for centuries, even thousands of years in some regions. Modern concrete and clay roof tiles are also available in a variety of styles and colors, allowing today's architects and builders to create looks that are contemporary, traditional, or entirely unique.

Especially in the United States, misconceptions about tile roofs abound — most commonly, that they are red and round and only suitable for hot, sunny climates. But, concrete and clay tiles adorn the roofs of contemporary and historic structures worldwide, from Norway to Australia to Japan. Long valued for their beauty and durability, tile roofs are also cost-effective, low maintenance, and environmentally friendly alternatives to other roofing materials. And, through modern production and color-processing techniques, concrete and clay tile manufacturers have expanded the range of styles and applications so that architects and builders can create a virtually limitless array of looks for both new and existing residences.

Tile roofs come in two basic varieties: clay and concrete. Although some key differences exist between clay and concrete roofs, many of their attributes are similar. Obviously, their composition and manufacture differ; their color processes and prices also vary. But overall, the selection of one or the other, in many cases, depends on what kind of look the homeowner and designer desire.

Historical Overview

Scholars believe that clay tile roofs originated around 10,000 B.C.E. in China, with later independent development in the Middle East. Ancient Egyptians, Greeks, and Romans also used clay tiles for their roofs. Eventually, clay tile roofs spread throughout Europe and Asia and, in the last few centuries, to the coasts of the United States. The Dutch first imported, then made clay tiles for roofs on the East Coast, while Spanish missionaries introduced clay tile roofs to West Coast communities. Early Americans valued clay tiles mainly because of their resistance to fire, a tremendous concern at that time in populous cities such as Boston. Traditionally hand-crafted by artisans or molded on the thigh or a log, clay roof tile manufacturing became automated around 1870. Clay tiles are still popular throughout the world. According to some industry experts, 50% of residences in Japan have clay tile roofs.

The first concrete tile roof debuted on a German farm in the early 1800s, and by 1900 concrete tile roofs could be found throughout Europe. The early 1920s saw the development of the first power-driven concrete roof tile manufacturing machine. Around the same time, concrete roof tile plants also began appearing in the United States. Previously, concrete roof tiles were made by hand



A clay tile roof in a Provencal style and Black Mist color enhances the beauty of this distinctive brick home with twisted chimneys.

or by hand-operated machines. Numerous technical advances in manufacturing have since streamlined the production process, making concrete tile the most used roofing material in the world today. In fact, some studies estimate that more than 90% of European homes have concrete tile roofs.

Manufacturing Process

To produce clay roof tiles, moist clay is extruded, shaped using machines or molds, and fired in kilns at temperatures of 2000° F or higher. Such high heat creates tiles with extreme strength and durability and low porosity. Concrete roof tiles also are composed of natural materials — sand, cement, and iron oxide pigments (for color). Manufacturers extrude this mixture under high pressure and cure it in a curing chamber. This process creates concrete tiles that — like clay tiles — are strong and dense.

Jim Wheeler, Vice President of Jim Poss Roofing in Santa Rosa Beach, Fla., a company that has been installing concrete and clay tile roofs for 40 years, believes that tile's durability and long history are its biggest advantages over other roofing products. According to Wheeler, "In America, there are so many different types of roofing systems coming out every year, but tile is a permanent roof. It's stood the test of time."

Styles of Roof Tile

Aside from streamlining production, modern innovations have allowed manufacturers to develop new styles (or "profiles") for both clay and concrete roof tiles that have expanded their architectural range to include contemporary as well as traditional Mediterranean designs. In fact, tile's versatility is one reason that many of today's homeowners and architects prefer it as their roofing material.

Simply put, apart from being made of clay or

concrete, modern roof tiles can be flat or round, interlocking or overlapping, consisting of two pieces or one. Most people are familiar with traditional round, red tiles, often called Mission or Barrel tiles, that create rolling or rippled patterns on the roofs of many buildings in the Southern and Western United States. These two-piece, pan and cover, overlapping tiles are still very popular in many regions. For example, Wheeler is currently installing Terra Cotta Red, two-piece Mission Barrel clay tiles (manufactured by MCA Clay Tile) on a series of custom luxury homes in Santa Rosa Beach. Tile was a natural choice for the project's architects because it provided the best match with the Tuscany style of homes being constructed.

Other common round styles (also known as "pan-tiles") include Roman, Greek, and Spanish or "S" tiles. Flat or "shingle" tiles also come in several varieties, such as English or French. These classifications can be confusing, however, because a single tile style or shape may have a different name depending on the manufacturer, geographic region, or country.

Although many architects and builders still prefer Mission tiles, flat tiles are rapidly increasing in popularity throughout North America as homeowners seek to replicate the look of historic slate or wood shake roofs. In fact, according to Fred Woodlock, Sales Manager at Unicrete, a Canadian concrete roof tile manufacturer whose main market is Alberta, "Probably 50% to 60% of our sales are now in the flat, slate look versus the traditional look. That's something that's only happened in the last couple of years. It's becoming more and more popular. People just like the flat look and, many times, in the darker colors — grays, blacks, and browns." Wheeler agrees. He's using a flat tile —

continued on page 130

FOREVER ROOF

SLATE & COPPER



No place on earth can
you find a better value,
selection or support!

Slate and Copper Sales Company supplies the oldest, best, and most economical roof drainage gutters and accessories ever made. Gutters are available in 16 and 20 ounce copper, as well as 16 ounce lead coated copper. In addition, half round, K-style, and custom gutters are available.

And we ship around the world. Slate and Copper offers complete technical support on or off-site for architects, custom builders, contractors, first timers, and the do-it-yourself homeowner. Your success is our success!



WRITE IN NO. 8062

814.455.7430

WWW.SLATEANDCOPPER.COM

FAX.455.7823

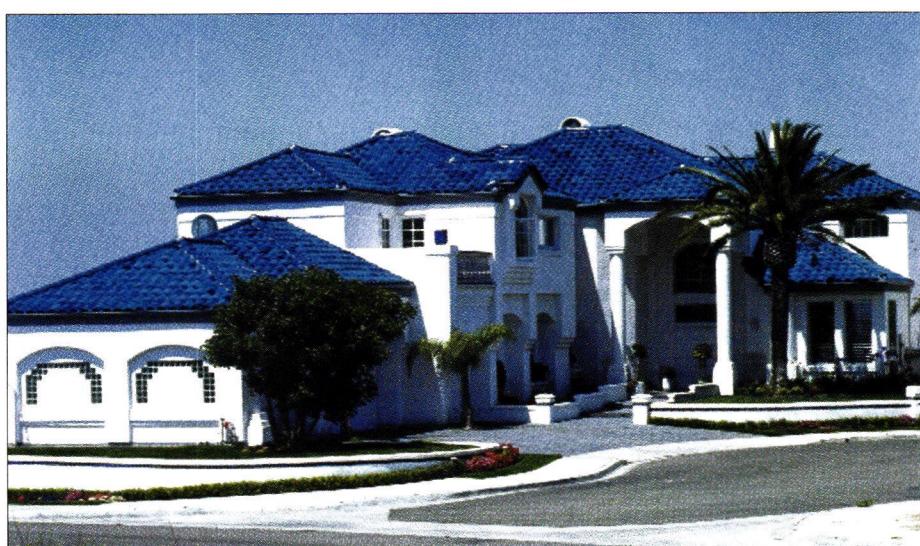
Sales, Marketing, and Distribution

- Architects
- Custom Builders
- Restoration Contractors
- Homeowners
- Suppliers
- Manufacturers
- Custom Artists and Craftsmen

Special Offer!

With any purchase of \$250.00 or more, you will receive a one year subscription to either Period Homes or Traditional Building magazine for yourself or a friend!

PERIOD HOMES
TRADITIONAL
BUILDING



Glazed roofing tile has become an affordable and elegant option for any high-end residential project. Glazed surfaces protect clay tile from severe weather and the mildew that may form in high humidity. Colors will not wear or fade from such conditions. The high-gloss glaze seen here features several different shades of blue, giving this roof the depth of the ocean or sky.

Split Shake manufactured by MonierLifetile — on a new 8,000-sq.ft. home on the bay in San Destin, Fla. "It's a very popular style. It gives you that rustic, random look that you get from wood shingles or even slate, but it's got the durability of concrete."

Tile's variety extends beyond just shape, however. With both clay and concrete roof tile, surfaces can be textured or smooth, tile edges can be uniform or ragged, and architects may select tiles of all one color, blended colors, or combine two or more shades and place them in a uniform or random pattern on a roof.

Modern Coloring Techniques

Both concrete and clay roof tiles come in a variety of colors, including earth tones that blend in with desert landscapes, deep greens and chocolate browns for heavy-forested northern regions, and Colonial blues and grays for older homes in the Northeast. Also available are dramatic glazed clay colors that complement contemporary architectural designs. But the processes that produce their colors vary.

The ultimate color of a modern clay roof tile depends on several factors: the natural color of the underlying clay, overall temperature as well as subtle temperature variations of the firing kiln, position of the tile in the kiln, application of color-blending techniques, and the use of a glaze or finish. Although terra-cotta red is clay's typical color, natural clay varies from pink to orange to brown, with hotter kiln temperatures typically producing darker colors. To broaden the color range of natural clay, tile manufacturers mix clay with natural metallic oxides prior to the firing process or apply glazes in vibrant colors to create striking looks in colors like blue, purple, or green. Kiln temperatures in excess of 2000° F bond the color to the clay, ensuring its durability. Clay tiles may also be "fire-flashed." Fireflashed colors result when manufacturers inject a stream of natural gas into the kiln, which reacts with iron oxides in the clay to produce random patterns on the tile surface.

Concrete tiles achieve their color in three ways. For "color-through" tile, manufacturers mix iron oxide pigments with the concrete which, after extrusion and curing, results in tiles of uniform color. Manufacturers can also apply a "slurry coat" of iron oxides to a non-colored concrete tile after extrusion but prior to curing. Both processes ensure that the color is embedded in the tile. Colored acrylic top spray may also be applied to concrete tiles. As a final step, most manufacturers spray concrete roof tiles with a sealer to protect the color, regardless of the coloring procedure.

Manufacturers of both types of tile offer numerous standard colors as well as custom blends. Because of the wide variety of styles and colors available with tile, owners of period homes often work with manufacturers to create century-old looks or develop new replacement tiles that match existing older tiles. To create even more specialized looks, architects can place different colored tiles in random or uniform patterns across roof sur-

faces. For this "blended tile" technique, architects either use factory-blended pallets of tile or select their own colors for custom blending.

Concrete and clay tiles also come in a variety of finishes, such as matte, glossy, hand-combed, or brushed. Bob Vande Hey, General Manager of Vande Hey-Raleigh Architectural Roof Tile, a concrete roof tile manufacturer based in Wisconsin, explains the difference between some of the finishes they offer. "A slate finish means that the tile has a relatively smooth surface, whereas a shake finish is grooved, raked into the tiles when they're manufactured to make them look like cedar shingles that are all hand-split. Each tile has little lines in it. We also offer a Cotswold finish. It's dimpled, sort of an orange-peeled effect that you would see in old Cotswold stone in England that's been exposed for 200 years." Some manufacturers may also use an "overspray," which is basically a surface application of color that creates weathered, textured looks.

According to Gary Manlove, General Manager of Westile, a concrete roof tile manufacturer in Colorado, for most applications either clay or concrete roof tile is suitable. In his opinion, the main differences between concrete and clay roof tile are cost, availability, and color choices. Yoshi Suzuki, General Manager of MCA Clay Tile, believes that clay has a slight advantage over concrete in terms of color permanence: "With clay the color never changes. It always stays the same. Most of the clay tile manufacturers will give you a 50-year warranty for color durability because the colors are baked

on." Others, such as Jim Wheeler, believe that concrete offers greater variety in color and style. In most cases, though, the choice of clay or concrete depends on personal taste and design issues. As Manlove notes, "They have different tones and looks to them." Wheeler agrees. "Basically, it comes down to aesthetics and cost — which one the homeowner prefers and is willing to pay for."

Design and Installation

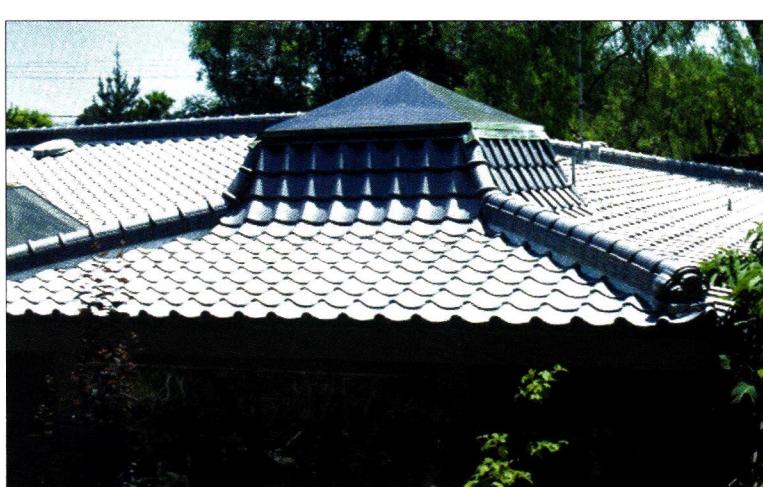
With proper planning and building design, the use of quality roofing components, and professional installation, tile roofs can last 50 to 100 years or more. Most manufacturers provide installation instructions, which vary slightly according to the style and type of tile selected, roof design, tile pattern, and climate. Typically, manufacturers recommend felting a solid-wood roof deck, laying down wooden battens, and attaching tile to the battens using nails, screws, adhesives, or other fastening devices.

Tiles can be used for both new construction and reroofing projects, and most roof tiles are appropriate for roofs with a minimum pitch of 3:12. Although tile typically weighs about three times as much as wood shingles, most modern residences can sustain the weight of standard tile as can most well-built older homes, provided that roofers remove all layers of any prior roofing material before installing the tile. In some cases, an inspection by a building engineer may be necessary to confirm the ability of an older residence to sustain tile's weight. Westile's Manlove contends that "it's rare that you have to do anything," but if, after the roofer removes the old roofing material, a structure does require extra support, additional costs are usually minimal relative to the total cost of the reroofing project.

Most roof tile manufacturers offer tile in standard and light weights, with lightweight tile used more frequently for reroofing projects. According to Manlove, "You can use standard weight roof tiles for reroofing. You just have to consider structural loading." As Bob Vande Hey explains, however, with any roofing material, designers must consider the weight of the roof when planning the building. "No matter what roof product you have, the designer has to construct the building to support what they call a dead load — the weight of the roofing system — as well as the live load. The live load is anything that lands on top of the roof. It's different all over the country, depending on the snow loads or the wind loads."

Although most Americans associate tile roofs with warm, sunny climates, they can be used anywhere. According to Rick Olson, president of the National Tile Roofing Manufacturers Association (NTRMA), "What many Americans don't know is that tile roofs have performed well for centuries in Europe and Asia in high mountain areas with significant snow accumulation and other extreme weather conditions." Concrete roof tiles also perform well in Canada's harsh climate, as Woodlock explains. "Sixty percent of the tile that we manufacture is sold right here in Alberta, which is our home base. We have over 50 freeze-thaw cycles in our marketplace in Alberta per year. That means if you put a glass of water outside, over the year it's going to freeze and thaw at least 50 times, minimum. We also experience tremendous temperature differences, and the product stands up very well. In fact, we've been in business since 1978 and have had no failures due to climate conditions." Clay tile can also be used in such climates but must be classified as Grade One, meaning it is resistant to severe frost action, including repeated freeze-thaw cycles.

Most tile-roof failures are due to the deterioration of roofing components other than tile or improper building design and/or installation, which is why many manufacturers suggest using not only experienced tile roof installers but also architects and builders with regional expertise. "You've got arid temperatures, you've got moderate temperatures, and you've got extreme cold-climate temperatures. Those three areas are treated a bit differently,



This unique, interlocking high-quality clay tile is made in the Japanese tradition. Although this style features many accessory pieces and detailed ornaments, this tile can be successfully used for Western residential designs. This tile, seen here in blue, is more traditionally used for a Japanese-style tea house or temple in Japanese Black.



Tile Roofs

Making A Difference

Step up to Vande Hey-Raleigh Architectural Roof Tile... where each order is custom made to your specifications...

Our nine distinctive styles can appease any roof style you desire.

Our shake tile emulates the real thing without fear of fire or deterioration.

Our Historical Slate and Spanish Mission can be every bit as exciting.

Our roofs are appreciated on some of the most beautiful projects throughout the United States, Canada & Japan.

Let us create or recreate your next roof.

VANDE HEY RALEIGH

1-800-236-8453

1665 Bohm Drive • Little Chute, 54140
Visit Our Website: www.vhr-roof-tile.com

The Cold Climate Tile Experts...



WRITE IN NO. 2840

NEW & HISTORICAL CLAY TILE ROOFING

- Unique Clay Trim Pieces
- Glazed Roof Tiles
- English Chimney Pots

The Largest Salvaged Ludowici® Inventory In America!

1209 Carroll Street
Carrollton, Texas 75006

Most Tile In Stock! We Buy/We Sell
Over a 90% Success Rate In Matching Existing Historical Tiles

1-800-446-0220
www.claytile.com

THE ROOF TILE AND SLATE CO.



WRITE IN NO. 9560

TROPIC TOP™ ARTIFICIAL THATCH



At last, the demand has been met for a thatch that is virtually indestructible. Tropic Top™, a lightweight metal shingle, colorfast, 100% fireproof, installs as easily as ordinary roof shingles, and has the appearance of natural thatch without any of the disadvantages.

It is cost effective because you will never have to replace it. We are able to help with design and installation requirements for your particular roofing application.

Tropic Top™

**2028-3 Eastbourne Way, Orlando, FL 32812
Phone and Fax: 407/273-0069**



Historical Roof Tiles

Largest Stock in U.S.

- Our inventory dates to the late 1800's. It includes new tiles and tiles no longer produced.
- We sell in all quantities and ship throughout the United States and also purchase salvaged material.
- We're specialists in the installation of tile and slate for historical restoration projects.

For a FREE brochure, write or call us today

TILE ROOFS, INC.
TILE ROOFS, INC.
12056 S. Union Ave.
Chicago, IL 60628
TOLL FREE:
888-708-TILE
(8453)
Fax: (708) 479-7865

WRITE IN NO. 4570

WRITE IN NO. 3870



Durable and long-lasting, tile roofs perform well in high mountain areas that experience significant snow accumulation. As this image shows, concrete tile roofs are also available in colors and styles that help country residences blend in seamlessly with their natural surroundings.

and the best way is to consult with people who have experience in your particular climate," advises Vande Hey.

An Environmentally Friendly, Cost-Effective Alternative

Both clay and concrete roof tiles are environmentally friendly alternatives to wood, metal, and asphalt roofing systems. Tiles are made from naturally occurring materials (clay or sand and cement) yet they do not deplete natural resources such as trees. They are manufactured without chemical preservatives and can be easily recycled into new tiles, road base, or clean fill. In addition, clay and concrete roof tiles are energy efficient: They have superior thermal capacity and the nature of their placement on the roof deck creates ventilated air space. Wheeler explains. "You've got a space underneath the tile. The tile actually sits off the deck anywhere from a quarter of an inch to a half an inch, so you've always got ambient air circulating underneath the tile, whereas with something like a shingle or a metal roof or a wood shake that sits flat down on the surface, there's very little space underneath there for the roof to breathe. You've always got convection or air circulation underneath the tile. It's true for concrete and clay, flat and round tiles." This means not only that tiles can dry out completely in wet climates but also that homeowners get excellent insulation, a reduction in the temperature of the roof deck, and minimal heat transfer into living spaces below. As a result, Wheeler estimates that for climates similar to Florida's, "you're going to get a 25% to 30% reduction in your electric bills per month, say with a white or lighter-colored tile."

Unicrete's Woodlock estimates that a concrete tile roof costs about the same as a quality wood roof and about two or three times as much as asphalt, but tile outlasts most other roofing materials. And, for Unicrete's customers, longevity is tile's best attribute. Woodlock notes, "We are like most of the manufacturers — we offer a full 50-year warranty, not prorated. Most of the roofing products used in Canada last about 10 to 15 years in relationship to our 50 years — and we last even longer than that, as far as we know. It's our biggest selling point."

Of course, the final cost of a tile roof depends on several factors, including the type of tile chosen, size of the roof and complexity of its design, and selection of clay versus concrete. Although MCA's Suzuki notes that clay tile is more cost-competitive today because of increasingly efficient, automated manufacturing, most industry experts agree that clay generally costs more than concrete. In general, a homeowner who wants a concrete or clay tile roof will have to pay more up front, but the investment

pays off because tile roofs last longer and require minimal, if any, maintenance. For many homeowners, the initial price of a tile roof is not a big issue. As Wheeler states, "They realize it's a lot of up-front money to pay, but they're looking at it from a lifecycle standpoint and they know that they're going to get more benefit out of this roof than they are from, say, an asphalt shingle."

Durability and Maintenance

It is not unusual for a tile roof to last longer than the building it protects. Roof tiles actually harden and grow stronger with age. They do not rot in wet climates and are not susceptible to destruction by pests. In fact, concrete and clay tile roofs perform equally well in wet and humid, dry and sunny, and cold snowy climates. According to the NTRMA's Olson, testing has shown that clay and concrete roof tiles also perform well in extreme weather conditions such as hailstorms, earthquakes, and hurricanes. Wind-tunnel testing has shown that concrete and clay tile roofs can resist hurricane-force winds (speeds of at least 125 mph). Some manufacturers have also developed special tile-fastening systems that make tile-roofing systems even more wind resistant. Wheeler, veteran tile roofer in the Florida panhandle, declares, "Our experiences have been really good. The tile roofs we've installed have withstood hurricanes with very little damage." In addition, both clay and concrete roof tiles have Class A fire ratings, which means they are essentially fire-

proof.

Under normal circumstances, tile roofs are also virtually maintenance-free. However, because improper drainage, gutters filled with debris, and careless foot traffic can damage any type of roof, industry experts suggest regular roof inspections. And to protect the roof investment and avoid inadvertent damage, professional roofers experienced with tile should perform maintenance and cleaning, when necessary.

The ultimate longevity of a tile roof depends on the quality of all elements of the roofing system. For example, many leaks are caused not by tile failure but by damaged or inferior underlayment or flashing. If this occurs, qualified tile roofers can remove the roof tiles, address the cause of the problem, and then replace the tiles intact. And, tiles do sometimes break — from falling tree limbs, inexperienced craftsmen on the roof, or walking on the roof during the first year after installation. Homeowners should not neglect broken tiles, as they can compromise the roof's waterproof surface and damage the underlayment by allowing exposure to sun and rain. Fortunately, roofers familiar with tile can repair or replace roof tiles quickly and easily, and manufacturers can help match the color and style of the original tiles with their replacements.

Certain climates and regions also have special issues to address, such as snow accumulation in the north and mold and mildew growth in humid areas of the south. Proper building and roof design and/or routine maintenance can minimize these potential problems in both regions.

For example, many homeowners living in areas of heavy snowfall mistakenly believe that snow accumulation on a tile roof is dangerous; so, they arrange for snow removal, which — in most cases — is not only unnecessary, but also dangerous and potentially damaging to the roof tiles. What many people do not know is that snow is an excellent insulator and snow guards or snow fences placed strategically across a roof's surface can keep snow safely on most roofs until it melts gradually in the spring.

In contrast, residents of Florida and regions like it often contend with mold and mildew. High humidity and warm temperatures encourage their growth on all exposed areas of buildings, not just roofs. Because mold and mildew usually thrive in areas of shade or moisture, the best remedy is prevention — through proper drainage and roof design that exposes shadowed and wet areas to sunlight. According to Wheeler, "Any time you have trees and stuff hanging over roofs that don't allow the sun to dry out the roofs when they get wet, you're going to have mold issues, regardless of the type of roof. But tile doesn't promote the growth of algae spores. Tile's a pretty dense product. It doesn't absorb moisture very well." If mold or mildew does develop on a tile roof, however, professional cleaning once or twice a year should effectively remove it.

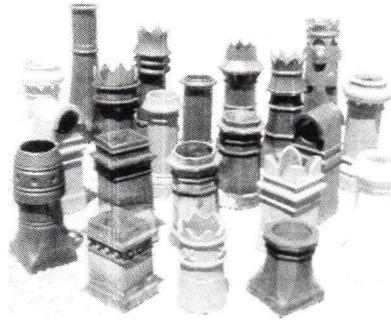
In some ways, the United States is the final frontier for concrete and clay roof tiles because in most other regions of the world tiles are already the dominant roofing material. According to Suzuki, "The American public is not aware of the many benefits of a tile roof. The biggest challenge is to help them understand the benefits of concrete and clay as well as their differences. We know that the longevity of concrete and clay is so much better, but people still use asphalt shingles because they're cheaper." But Wheeler is beginning to notice an increase in demand for tile roofs that may reflect a change in attitude. "We do houses out in the country, where you wouldn't normally expect to see tile. Tile is just spreading across the nation. It's growing." ♦



Concrete and clay roof tiles are available in a variety of styles, colors, and textures. Such diversity enables them to complement any style of architecture.

Carolyn Kuehn is a technical writer who works for Eastern Light Interactive Communications, the marketing agency for the National Tile Roofing Manufacturers Association (NTRMA). Carolyn can be reached at (610) 658-0731 or cakwrite@att.net.

For contact information on the companies mentioned in this article, consult the Buying Guide beginning on page 134.



CHIMNEY POTS

ANTIQUE & NEW
OVER 400 IN STOCK
PLAIN ORNATE COLORS
GLAZED UNGLAZED

THE CHIMNEY POT SHOPPE

PHONE 724/345-3601
FAX 724/345-8243
www.chimneypot.net

WRITE IN NO. 410

Copper Roofing Nails

Solid copper nails for slate, tile and sheet metal roofing as well as copper flashing. Swan Secure manufactures a complete line of copper nails in smooth and ring shank sizes from 3/4" to 6" in length.

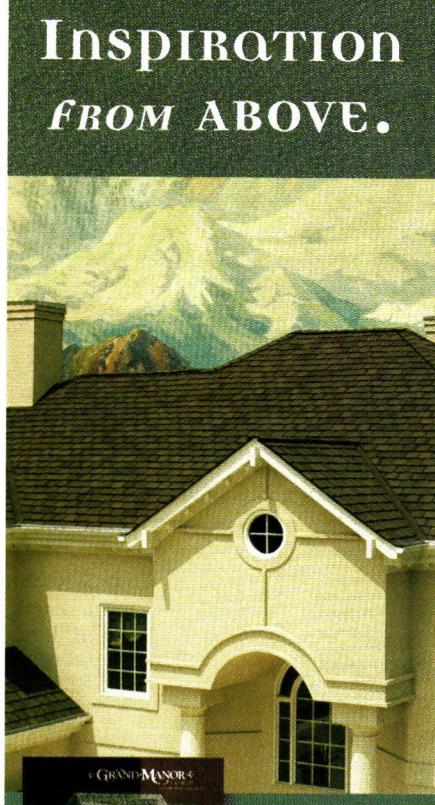
Eliminate the possibility of claims resulting from rust or wind damage. Copper nails are corrosion resistant and will last as long as the roof itself without staining or streaking. Swan Secure copper nails stay put when slates, tiles, wood or metal roofing materials expand or contract. Large flat heads afford easy driveability.

Also available in stainless steel. For additional data and dealer information:

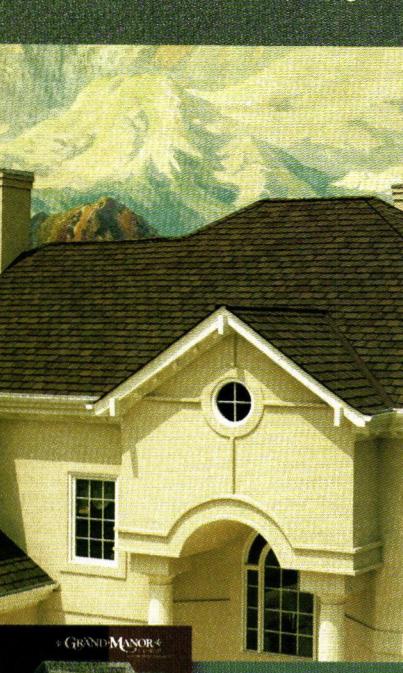
Swan Secure Products, Inc.

7525 Perryman Court, Baltimore, MD 21226
800-966-2801 • <http://www.swansecure.com>

WRITE IN NO. 8077



INSPIRATION FROM ABOVE.



WITH
GRAND MANOR,
CARRIAGE HOUSE AND HATTERAS,
CERTAINTEED HAS ELEVATED
THE DESIGN OF
ROOFING
MATERIALS
TO AN ART.

FOR A FREE BROCHURE, CALL
THE CERTAINTEED HOME INSTITUTE
AT 800-782-8777 OR VISIT US

ON THE INTERNET AT

WWW.CERTAINTEED.COM

Hatteras

THE ROOFING COLLECTION®
CertainTeed

© 2000, CertainTeed Corporation

WRITE IN NO. 6650

THE LAWLER LINE® for the Fabricator and Forger

CASTINGS • FORGINGS



LAWLER FOUNDRY CORPORATION

P O Box 320069 • Birmingham AL • 35232-0069
Phone 205-595-0596 • FAX 205-595-0599

©LFC Spring 2001 All Rights Reserved



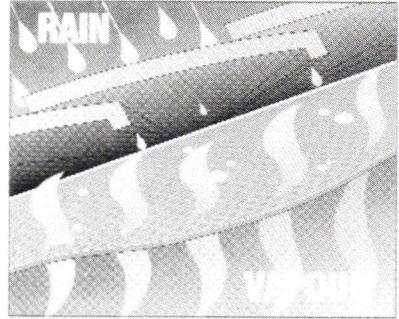
WRITE IN NO. 271

Introducing Roofshield

'a unique solution to sloped roof vapour control'

Breathable roof underlayment for slate, tile, cedar & metal roofing

All buildings need to breathe, particularly structures of historic significance. Roofshield is both a breathable and waterproof membrane. Roofshield is rot, tear and UV resistant.



Available from:

Liner Rolpanit Incorporated North America
430 Montrose Ave. Toronto, Ontario M6G 3H1 Canada
Phone (416)534-1511 Fax (416)538-3482 Email: linrol@interlog.com
Website: www.linrol.com - Delivered in the U.S. & Canada within 7 days

WRITE IN NO. 1343

Red Cedar • Hardwoods • Knotty Pine • Fir Timbers • Yellow Cedar

BEAR CREEK LUMBER (800) 597-7191

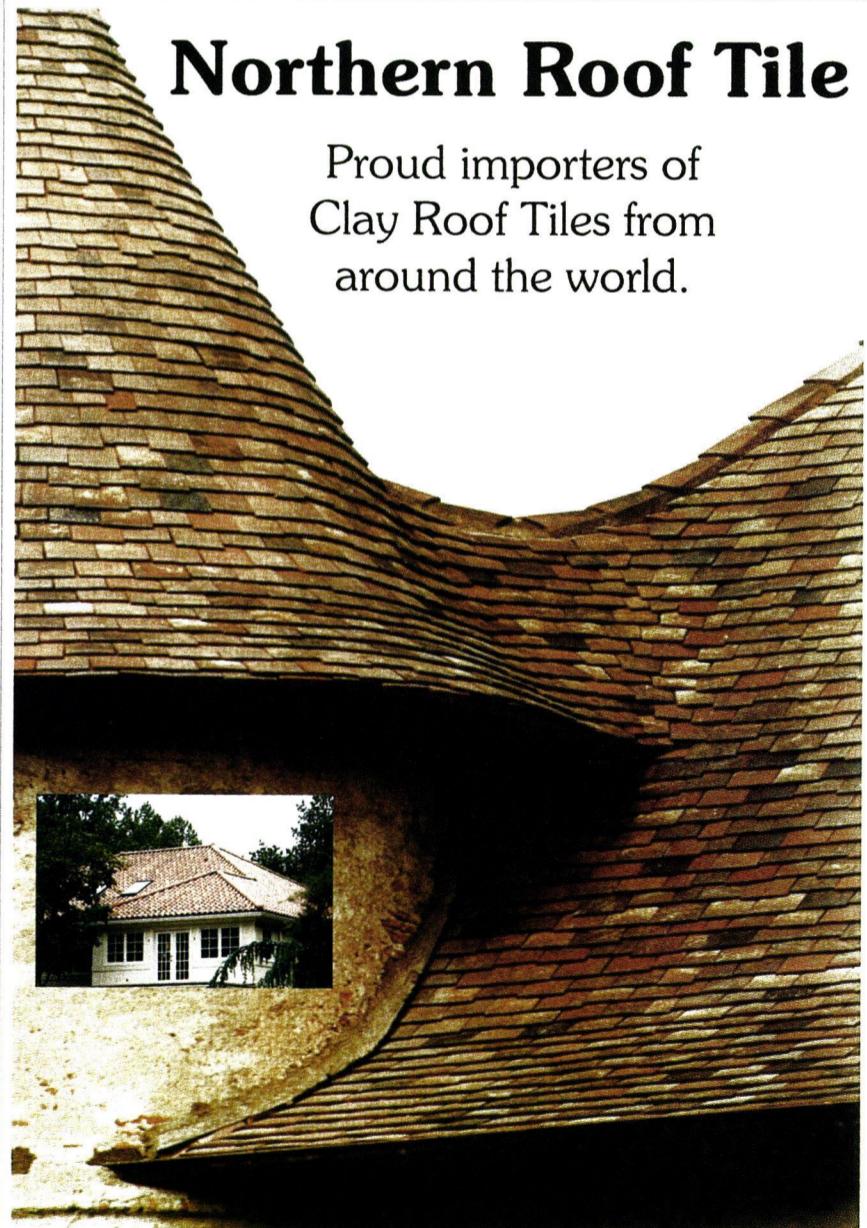
www.bearcreeklumber.com
Fax (509) 997-2040

Delivery Worldwide

WRITE IN NO. 521

Northern Roof Tile

Proud importers of
Clay Roof Tiles from
around the world.



Ph: 905-627-4035 Fax: 905-627-9648

Po Box 275 Milgrove, Ont L0R 1V0
E-mail [nrtts@wchat.on.ca](mailto:nrts@wchat.on.ca) Web www.northernrooftiles.com

WRITE IN NO. 4040 FOR ROOF TILES; 3490 FOR CHIMNEY POTS

BUYING GUIDE TO RESIDENTIAL ROOFING

About This Buying Guide

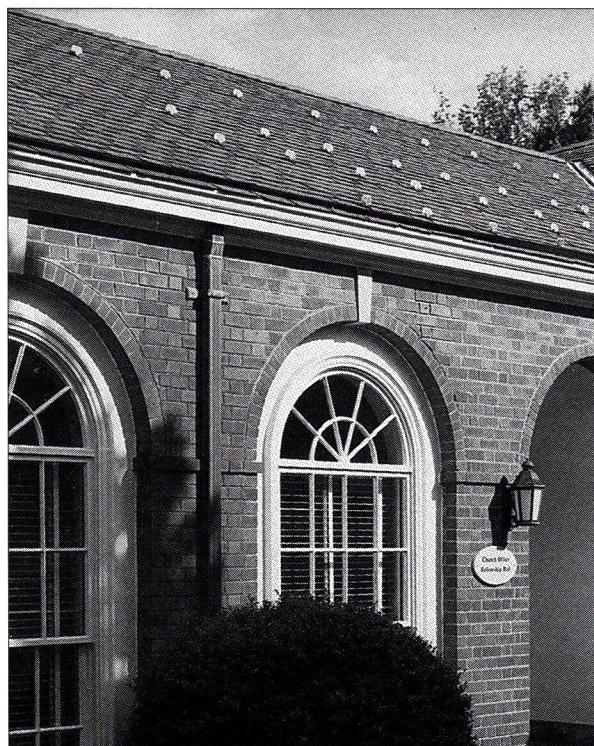
To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted Residential Roofing suppliers from our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 44 suppliers you'll find on the next few pages because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

Barber Lumber Sales
904-462-3772; Fax: 904-462-7037
P.O. Box 263
Alachua, FL 32616

Longleaf heart-pine, cypress, and oak boards and timber; virgin-growth cypress heart; shingle, clapboard, and novelty siding. Timber up to 24 in.sq., lengths to 48 ft.; special-order dimensions and lengths. Shingles. Write in No. 8074

Bear Creek Lumber
800-597-7191; Fax: 509-997-2040
www.bearcreeklumber.com
Winthrop, WA 98862

Full line of wood shakes and shingles, including fancy-cut shingles. Wood species include red cedar and yellow cedar. Full line of fine quality finish wood products in red or yellow cedar, Douglas fir, knotty pine, redwood; also, cedar siding, decking, shakes, and shingles. Wood floors. Custom milling available. Write in No. 521



The snowguards, guttering, and downspout on this traditional residence were supplied by BERGER BROS. Write in No. 2532

Berger Bros Co.
800-523-8852; Fax: 215-355-7738
www.bergerbros.com
Feasterville, PA 19053

Manufactures commercial and residential roof-drainage systems in all metals. Also, roof trims and accessories, soffit-ventilation systems, Real-Tool and Berger snow guards for all roof types. Write in No. 2532

Bird-B-Gone
800-392-6915; Fax: 949-472-3116
www.birdbgone.com
Mission Viejo, CA 92692

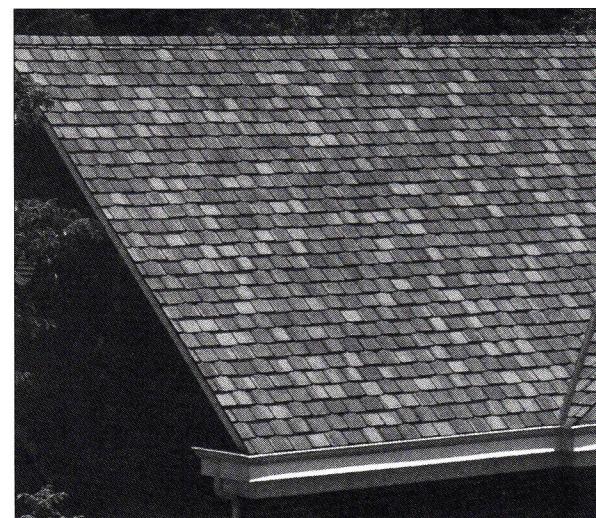
Complete line of bird-control products, including Bird Spike 2000, Adios Bird Gel Repellent, Bird Chase Ultrasonic, and Bird Netting. Projects include major govt., industrial, & commercial buildings, or anywhere birds are a problem. Write in No. 1352

Bird-X, Inc.
800-662-5021; Fax: 312-226-2480
www.bird-x.com
Chicago, IL 60607

Complete line of products for repelling birds & other pests: SPIKES Needle Strips, sticky gels, net, ultrasonics, visual devices. Projects include residential properties. Metal-coil systems, electric/electronic systems, netting, repellent decoys, sonic systems, disinfectants. Write in No. 3230

Castle Metal Crafts
847-806-4540; Fax: 847-806-4541
2515 Pan Am Blvd.
Elk Grove Village, IL 60007

Roofing vents for slate roofs. Write in No. 2901



This "Grand Manor Shingle" from CERTAINTeed is a premium heavy weight asphalt shingle that has color variations and highly defined shadow lines that replicates the look of slate or wood shingles. Write in No. 6650

CertainTeed Roofing Products
800-233-8990; Fax: 610-341-7940
www.certainteed.com
Valley Forge, PA 19482

Comprehensive line of asphalt roofing shingles for any price range or architectural style, from the patented 'Shangles'® to laminates to durable three-tab shingles. Warranty durations from 20 years to limited lifetime. Write in No. 6650

Charles River Restoration Co.
508-435-8540; Fax: 508-435-5494
P.O. Box 390
Hopkinton, MA 01748

Custom design, fabrication, and reproduction of historic copper-frame skylights for both flat and sloped roofs. Skylights include flat panel, lean-to, hipped, gable-end; glazing includes glass, double-glazed, and wire-reinforced. Framing in copper. Write in No. 1348



THE CHIMNEY POT SHOPPE's inventory of antique and new ceramic chimney pots is unmatched in the U.S. Write in No. 410

Chimney Pot Shoppe
724-345-3601; Fax: 724-345-8243
www.chimneypot.net
Avella, PA 15312

Extensive inventory of new and antique chimney pots. Quality, hand-crafted stock imported from England includes a wide array of colors, sizes, and styles. Now carry Jumbo and Magnum American pots. Will ship anywhere in U.S. Write

in No. 410

◆ ◆ ◆
Classic Gutter Systems
616-382-2700; Fax: 616-343-3141
www.classicgutters.com
Kalamazoo, MI 49003

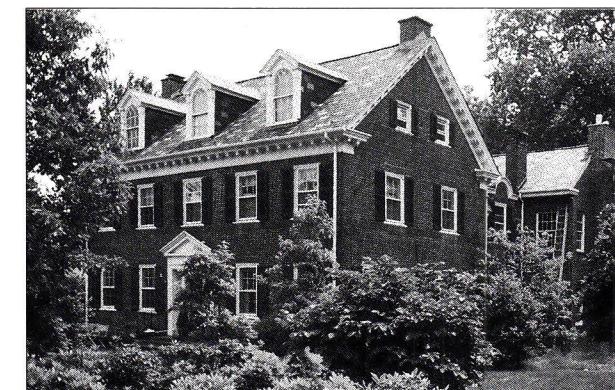
Authentic 6-in. seamless half-round gutter in heavy 20-oz. copper and heavy-duty aluminum with baked-enamel finish; hidden nut-&-bolt adjustable hanger system. Cast fascia brackets & decorative components in solid brass & aluminum. Write in No. 1280

◆ ◆ ◆
Copperworks of Don Miller
877-633-9308; Fax: 909-445-0828
members.aol.com/gutterarts
Orange, CA 92869

Artist Don Miller's bronze & copper raingutter hardware has a historic look for period styles, but exceeds historic standards of strength. Also, lists of other raingutter suppliers; green-patina formula for large exterior surfaces. Write in No. 2000

◆ ◆ ◆
Durable Slate Co.
800-666-7445; Fax: 614-299-7100
www.durableslate.com
Columbus, OH 43201

Installs and restores slate and tile roofing in the Midwest and East. Restoration, new slate roofs, metal roofs, and custom metalwork. Large slate stocks - can match existing roofs. Also distributes natural slate and clay tile. Over one million pieces in stock. Write in No. 3720



This residence in Wilmington, Del., is roofed with ECOSTAR's Majestic Slate, a recycled rubber product which delivers the look of slate without the weight.

◆ ◆ ◆
EcoStar Inc.
800-211-7170; Fax: 888-780-9870
www.ecostarinc.com
Vernon Hills, IL 60061

Recycled roofing products. "Starloy" is a mixture of post-industrial rubber and plastic. Manufactures Majestic Slate, the Designer series, Celestial Slate, EuroSlate, and Nova Walkway.

◆ ◆ ◆
Eternit, Inc.
800-233-3155; Fax: 610-926-9232
www.eternitusa.com
Reading, PA 19605

Fiber-cement slates from Belgium and Ireland, with a textured-slate look or a smooth surface. Large and small rectangular sizes available with various edge shapes and colors. Also, hexagonal smooth shape; natural slate; clay tiles. Write in No. 601

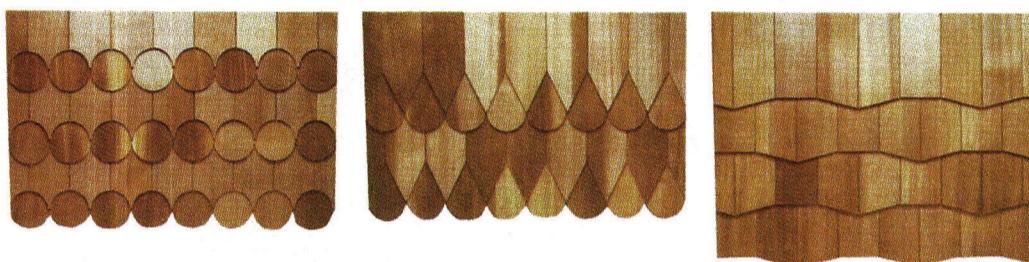
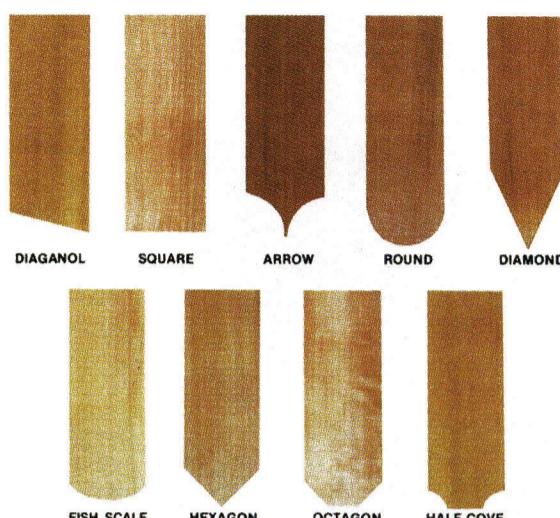
◆ ◆ ◆
Gough & Bros. SnoGuards
708-485-6272; Fax: 708-485-6273
www.snoguard.com
Brookfield, IL 60513

Firm supplies architectural copper work and slate, tile, and copper roofing. Snow guards a specialty. Write in No. 2612

◆ ◆ ◆
Gutter Topper
513-797-5800; Fax: 513-797-5200
P.O. Box 349
Amelia, OH 45102

TEAL Prestain Cedar Shingles

- Manufactured from the highest quality, kiln dried, Western Red Cedar shingles.
- 100% Vertical Grain, 100% Heartwood.
- Available in Natural R&R, Grooved and Sanded face.
- Pre-stained with quality name brand oil-based semi-transparent stains.
- Carton contents: 50 square feet at 7" exposure on sidewall.
- Class "C," Class "B," and CCA treated also available (unstained).
- Application information available on each carton.



WRITE IN NO. 546

BUYING GUIDE TO RESIDENTIAL ROOFING

Supplies a gutter attachment to prevent clogged gutters.
Write in No. 8052

♦ ♦ ♦
Historical Arts & Casting, Inc.
800-225-1414; Fax: 801-280-2493
www.historicalarts.com
West Jordan, UT 84088

Designer and manufacturer of lighting, columns and capitals, cornices, railings, fences, newels, planters, finials, street furnishings, and fountains cast in bronze, aluminum, or iron. Restoration and custom work. *Write in No. 1210*

♦ ♦ ♦
Lawler Foundry Corp.
205-595-0596; Fax: 205-595-0599
P.O. Box 320069
Birmingham, AL 35232

Nationwide supplier of over 1200 ornamental metal components in cast iron and artistic steel forgings. Victorian styles, roof cresting, balusters, panels, continuous designs, finials, etc., for fences, gates, railings, stairs, windows, and much more. *Write in No. 271*

♦ ♦ ♦
Leeland's Slate Roof Repair
888-927-5283; Fax: 717-721-3511
www.leelands.com
Lititz, PA 17543

Painting, repair, and/or restoration of steeples and bell towers. Repair of slate roofing. *Write in No. 3171*

♦ ♦ ♦

Liner Rolpanit, Inc.
416-534-1511; Fax: 416-538-3482
www.linrol.com
Toronto, ON, CANADA M6G 3H1

Distributor of "Daltex Roofshield," a breathable spun bonded polypropylene roof underlayment which is water-

proof, rot, tear, and UV resistant. Suitable for slate, tile, cedar, and metal roofing. *Write in No. 1343*



♦ ♦ ♦
LINER ROLPANIT distributes Daltex Roofshield, a breathable underlayment seen here being used with clay roofing tile. *Write in No. 1343*

LSP Products Group
800-854-3215; Fax: 800-243-1777
www.isppproducts.com
Carson City, NV 89706



TEAL "Classic Butt" Shingles

- Manufactured from Western Red Cedar shingles (nominal dimensions 4-15/16" x 18" and 3" x 18").
- Carton contents: 96 shingles. Coverage per carton:
sidewall - exterior - 7-1/2" (max. exposure)=25 square ft.:
sidewall - interior 10" (max. exposure)=33 sq. ft.
- Application information is available in each carton.
- Class "C" and Class "B" fire rated "Classic Butt" shingles are available for the areas where local codes are in effect.

Manufactured by
TEAL Cedar Products Ltd.

17897 Trigg Road, Surrey, BC V4N 4M8
Phone: (604) 581-6161 Fax: (604) 581-4104
Toll Free: (888) 995-TEAL
www.tealcedar.com e-mail: sales@tealcedar.com

MEMBER OF RED CEDAR SHINGLE & HANDSPLIT SHAKE BUREAU & NORTH AMERICAN WHOLESALE LUMBER ASSOCIATION INC.

BARBER LUMBER & ROOFING MATERIALS

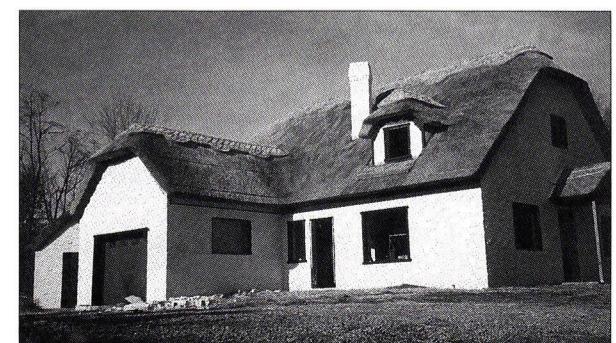
• Virgin Heart Cypress
sawn shingles and handsplit shakes
• Virgin growth heartpine,
douglas fir and white cedar
• Also, timbers, flooring, siding, etc.
P.O.Box 263, Alachua, FL 32615
(904) 462-3772
Fax (904) 462-7037

WRITE IN NO. 8074

Cast iron, copper & plastic roof drains along with one-way breather vents & plastic, galvanized & aluminum pipe flashings.

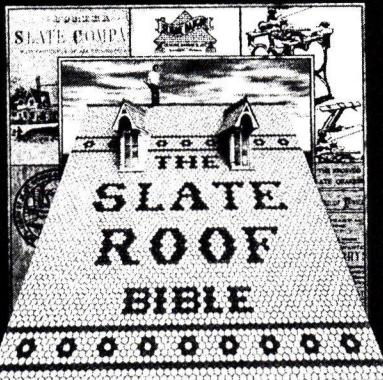
♦ ♦ ♦
MCA Clay Roof Tile
800-736-6221; Fax: 909-736-6052
www.mca-tile.com
Corona, CA 91719

Clay roofing tile manufactured in a variety of styles, including I-piece 'S', Straight Barrel Mission, American Flat, and Oriental. Colors include natural, flashed, and glazed finishes as well as custom colors.



Colin McGhee of MCGHEE ROOF THATCHERS thatched the roof of this residence in Olean, N.Y., in a traditional English style using water reed.

www.jenkinsslate.com



Everything you wanted to know about slate roofs including how to keep them alive for centuries
Joseph Jenkins

THE SLATE ROOF BIBLE

Everything You Wanted to Know About Slate Roofs
Including How to Keep Them Alive for Centuries.
by Joseph Jenkins

AN AMAZON.COM #1 BESTSELLING ROOFING BOOK
2001 NRCA GOLD CIRCLE AWARD WINNER

1997 • 287 pages • 370 illustrations
Indexed • Most updated and comprehensive list of slate and tile roofing industry sources in print — tools, materials, snow guards, new and used slates and tiles, and equipment. Step-by-step repair, installation, and restoration instructions, including flashings, chimneys, valleys, dormers, and ridges • A fascinating read for anyone, not just contractors and architects, and priced right at \$35. This book should be in your library! A great gift, too!

\$35 (+ \$6 s&h)

1- 800-639-4099

Credit cards accepted. Order from:
Chelsea Green Publishing
PO Box 428, White River Jct. VT 05001
Or order discounted online from Amazon.com

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

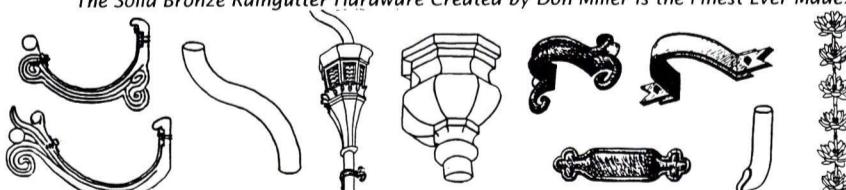
Joseph Jenkins, a practicing slate and tile roof restoration contractor since 1968 and a slate roofing consultant to the US government and private individuals, is contracted by state and local governments and historical trusts for slate roof restoration services. An international lecturer, he spoke about slate roofs at the east coast Natural Building Colloquium and at the International Preservation Trades Workshops near Wash. DC in 1998, 1999, and 2000. Please visit our web site at:

www.jenkinsslate.com

WRITE IN NO. 644

For Strength, Beauty, & Variety,

The Solid Bronze Raingutter Hardware Created by Don Miller is the Finest Ever Made.



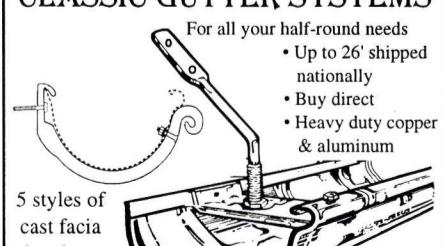
Gutter Brackets, Goosenecks, Leaderheads, Downspout Brackets, and More.

The COPPERWORKS
of Don Miller

toll free 877-633-9308 free catalog
<http://members.aol.com/gutterarts>

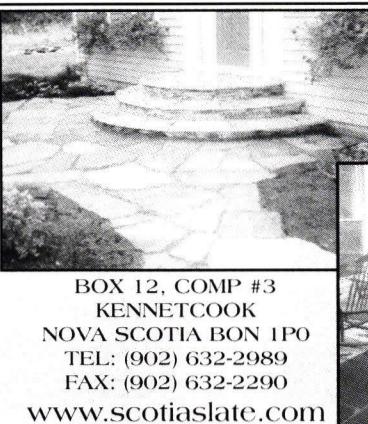
WRITE IN NO. 2000

CLASSIC GUTTER SYSTEMS



Ph. (616) 382-2700 • Fax. (616) 343-3141
P.O. Box 2319 • Kalamazoo, MI 49003
www.classicgutters.com

WRITE IN NO. 1280



BOX 12, COMP #3
KENNETCOOK
NOVA SCOTIA B0N 1P0
TEL: (902) 632-2989
FAX: (902) 632-2290
www.scotiaslate.com

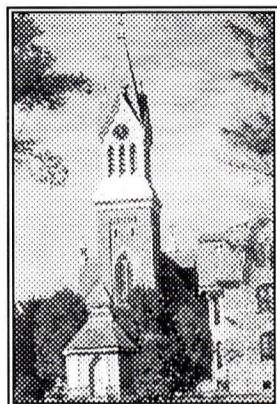
SCOTIA SLATE PRODUCTS LTD.

Hearths & Mantels, Fireplaces
Flagstones
Cut Pavers
Patios
Facades
Pool Coping

WRITE IN NO. 67

SLATE ROOF REPAIR & STEEPLE SPECIALISTS

Two generations committed to quality slate restorations.



STEEPLE SERVICES:

- Painting
- Slate Repair
- Gold Leafing
- Gutter Repair
- Waterproofing
- Brick Pointing
- Carpentry & Millwork
- Sheet Metal Fabrication

Leeland's
SLATE ROOFING

www.leelands.com

- CERTIFIED Slate Mechanics
- In-House Training School
- Bonded/Insured
- "DRUG-FREE" WORK FORCE

888-927-5283

We set the standard for quality slate restorations:

Serving PA, NJ, DE, MD, WASH D.C., Northern VA

WRITE IN NO. 3171

roofing slate

~ all colors ~

applications/clients include:

The Audubon Society
Yale University
Cesar Pelli & Associates
Slate International
301-952-0120
fax: 301-952-0295
www.slateinternational.com

WRITE IN NO. 9340

Perimeter Systems

A Division of Southern Aluminum Company, Inc.



Manufacturers of fine cornice, commercial gutter systems and pre-engineered roof edge products.

218 Hawkins Avenue, Suite 218
Sanford, North Carolina 27330
Ph: 919-775-7353/800-334-9823
Fax: 919-775-5652 e-mail fmi@saf.com
web address: www.saf.com/perims

WRITE IN NO. 8071

For
**BULK REPRINTS
of ARTICLES OR
ADS from this
issue, CONTACT:
THE REPRINT DEPT.
(800) 259-0470**

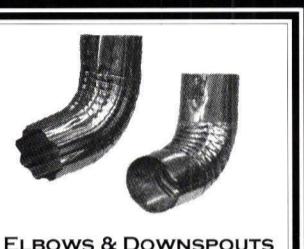
YOUR COPPER CHOICE



HALF ROUND GUTTERS



ORNATE CONDUCTOR



ELBOWS & DOWNSPOUTS

- ARCHITECTURAL COPPER COIL, FLAT SHEET, AND ROOF PANELS.
- COMPLETE K-STYLE GUTTER SYSTEMS IN STEEL, ALUMINUM, AND COPPER.
- HALF ROUND GUTTER SYSTEMS IN COPPER AND STEEL.

1-800-999-6240

Weather Guard Building Products

4850 Moline Street

Denver, CO 80239

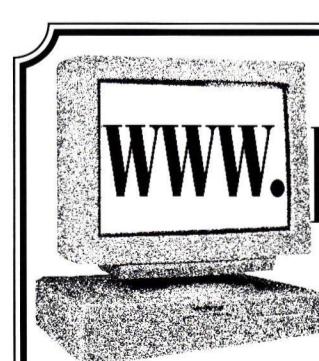
www.wgbp.com

Email info@wgbp.com

WRITE IN NO. 8065

**FOR EASY
ACCESS TO
FREE
PRODUCT
LITERATURE**

**FILL OUT
THE ENCLOSED
POSTCARD
OR USE THE
COUPON ON
PAGE 158.**



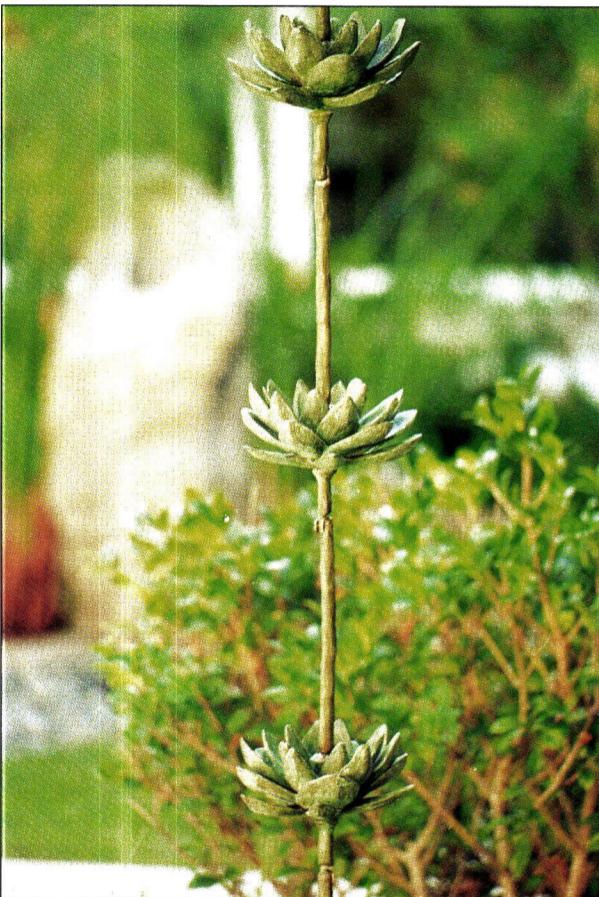
www.period-homes.com
The Internet Gateway
to Historical Products
& Services for
Residential Architecture

The Art of Copper Rain Gutters

"Why should I want copper gutters?" people ask me. I might answer that, when properly planned and installed, a copper gutter system will last over 100 years. Or I might answer that, over the last few decades, the price of copper has dropped in relation to metals such as steel. Or I might offer that copper gutters have a distinctly historic look, and are thus popular with designers and owners of traditionally styled residences.

by Don Miller, *Copperworks of Don Miller*

When it really comes down to it, a client may buy five to ten inexpensively yet functionally installed "seamless aluminum" gutter systems for the price of one properly and tastefully installed copper raingutter system — which brings me around to the quote my dad made in 1989, when I outlined to him my vision of a line of bronze and copper raingutter hardware which was never before produced but would be of such fine quality and artistic sensibilities that it could be seen as historic by the average viewer. His response was that "an ornate copper gutter is to some styles of architecture, what an ornate frame is to a fine painting."



The lotus chain waterway is produced in 4-ft. lengths. The screw head is seen at the connection of these lengths. All other hinge points are flush. In this version the blossoms are 10 in. apart. In another version the blossoms are 5 in. apart.

This quote brings out the point that some homes and buildings, in many other details, call out for something matching in quality and art, in the prominent location occupied by gutters and downspouts. It's true that the raingutter industry has done an excellent job in reducing the cost of an aluminum gutter system using portable rollform equipment, hidden hangers, and advanced sealants. However, when compared to the high costs of so many less-visible details than gutters, and considering the fine-art qualities of the items now available, the cost of an ornate copper gutter system can sometimes seem very affordable.

From the age of 16 to the age of 29, when I envisioned this line of products, I worked as an installer of high-end, soldered-copper and -steel gutter systems. Running my own contracting business in the 1980s specializing in copper raingutters, I found my clients kept demanding more art-value. I developed some fancy leaderhead designs and original embossings, some of which can still be found in my stock line of hardware.

The package of improvements in the state-of-the-art copper gutter systems that I envisioned by 1989 were as follows:

(1) Cast-bronze fascia-mount gutter brackets would hold the raingutters from the outside, using a single lag screw and machine screw for flexibility. They would be beautiful, but hopefully would provide enough strength to catch a fat raingutter contractor as he is sliding off of the roof. They would leave the top of the gutter open, devoid of cross members, for easier clean-

ing. These brackets could be installed after the roof goes on.

(2) Exposed end caps on the gutters would be "mitered off" in the shape of the face profile of that gutter, a detail I had seen quite often in historic architecture.

(3) Seams with exposed soldered joints would be sanded flush and smooth, and would be copper-plated on-site.

(4) Special locations with radius fascias would be provided with raingutters formed in a true radius curve, rather than short little straight pieces soldered together.

(5) A downspout gooseneck with no visible seams and tracing a beautiful French curve (an ever-expanding radius) would flow from the raingutter, down and back to the wall.

(6) At the top of a downspout as it sits against the wall may be placed a decorative leaderhead in heavy copper or cast bronze.

(7) The copper downspouts would be secured to the wall with cast-bronze downspout brackets which would be ornamental and would hopefully be strong enough so that when Romeo climbs the downspout to elope with Juliet, the pipe will hold to the wall.

(8) If the bottom of the downspout empties out onto the ground, a beautifully curved and flared ornamental foot would be provided.

By 1996 I felt that I had filled out the product line enough to announce them to the public.

Foreign Techniques

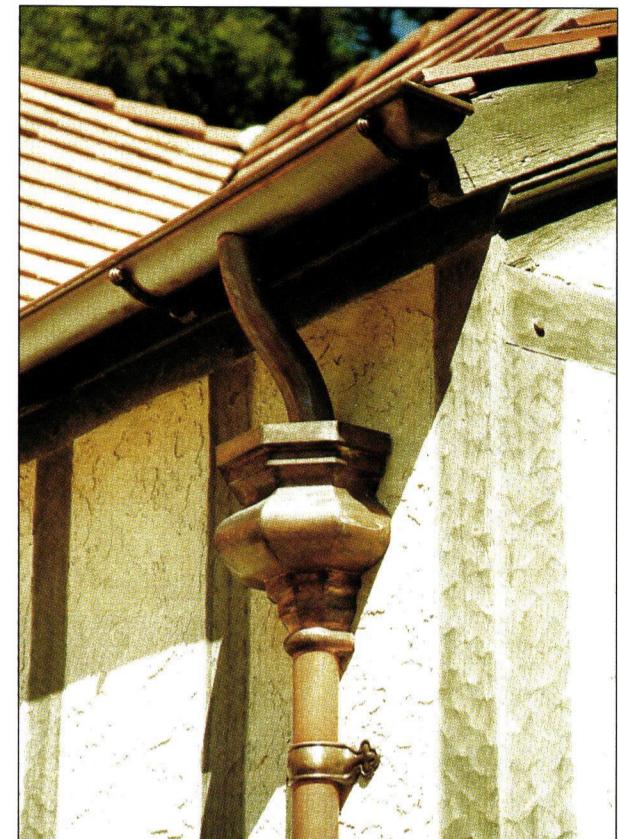
While visiting Bulgaria I noted a practice in historic architecture to include a leaderhead that pops out from the level of the raingutter itself and leads through elbows back to the wall to the downspout. I have since seen this detail in architecture of other European countries from France to Russia. This sort of detail is, as far as I know, not traditional in American architecture, but it would seem to be a very practical way to prevent debris in the raingutter from clogging up the outlet.

In European Alpine architecture, it's often traditional to have a half-round raingutter carved out of logs, which features ornately carved ends that shoot the water out and away from the structure, rather than employ a downspout which can freeze up. The German company Raphold GMBH produces these wood rain-gutters, which were used in 500- or 600-year-old architecture in Europe (if gutters were used at all). Later, with the development of sheet copper as a building material, half-round gutters came along which mimicked the shape of the earlier wood gutters. In ancient European, Roman, and Greek architecture, waterspouts, often in the form of gargoyles, were used.

In East Asian architecture, where wide eaves make downspouts impractical, ornamental chains provide a beautiful way to bring the water to the ground. Water will stick to any form of chain surprisingly well as it hangs down from a raingutter. The historic chains that I have seen have rectangular cast-iron links, or are made of thin copper sheet and copper wire. I developed my Cast Bronze Lotus Flower Chain Waterway to complement Asian styles of architecture, but outside of any direct historic references.

American Trends

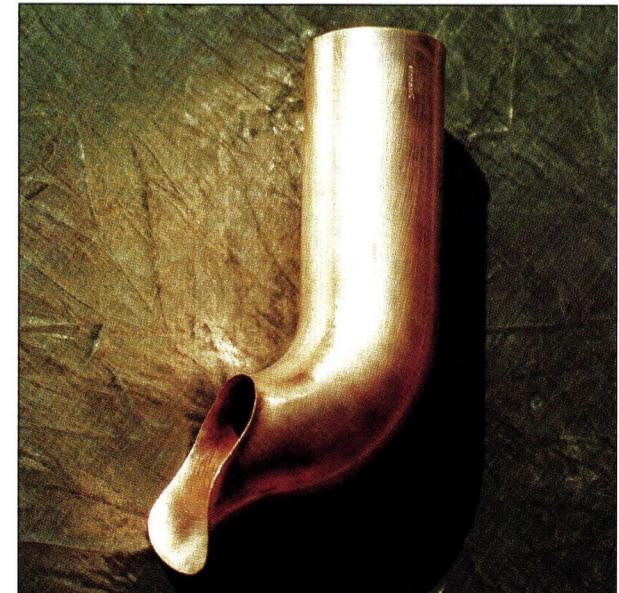
In American architecture, there are still many examples of historic ornamental raingutter systems, mostly in the eastern portion of the country. John Kurowski of Specialized Roofing Management in Rhinecliff, N.Y., recently restored a copper and iron gutter system on the Astor Mansion in Rhinebeck, N.Y., which includes goosenecks, ornate leaderhead, and ornamental downspout brackets. Mr. Kurowski cites the lead gutters and leaders on the National Cathedral in Washington, D.C., as some of the most memorable raingutter work with which he has been involved. In Southern California, I can cite historic work such as Pasadena City Hall, The Gamble House in Pasadena, the Fullerton Museum, and the Riverside Mission Inn, as examples of



Five-in. half-round gutter, mitered (or return) gutter end cap, curled cast-bronze gutter brackets, bronze octagonal Wagner leaderhead, 3-in.-round downspout, bronze trefoil downspout bracket
All images courtesy of Don Miller



Five-in. cast-bronze acanthus bracket



Three-in. ornate downspout foot, made of 24-oz. copper

historic architecture with fine copper raingutter work that has survived from the early part of this century.

The Great Depression, along with the copper shortages of two World Wars, put an end to the practice of these arts in this country and in the rest of the world. Most of the fine copper raingutter hardware of a century ago was made in rather thin copper and has since corroded and been lost. There was a certain amount of ornate galvanized-steel raingutter hardware produced during the war years to replace historic copper and zinc styles of the late 1800s, but most of that work lasted only a few decades. The trend toward modernism in the 1950s and '60s dealt a final blow to

continued on following page

ornamental raingutter arts. Companies which have started since that time, such as Copperworks, have found that technologies needed to be reinvented from scratch. In the 1800s materials were expensive and labor was cheap — which explains the popularity in that era of ornamental hardware of thin stamped copper and zinc sheet elaborately soldered together. Today, material is cheaper and labor is more expensive, so we can better afford cast bronze and thick copper.

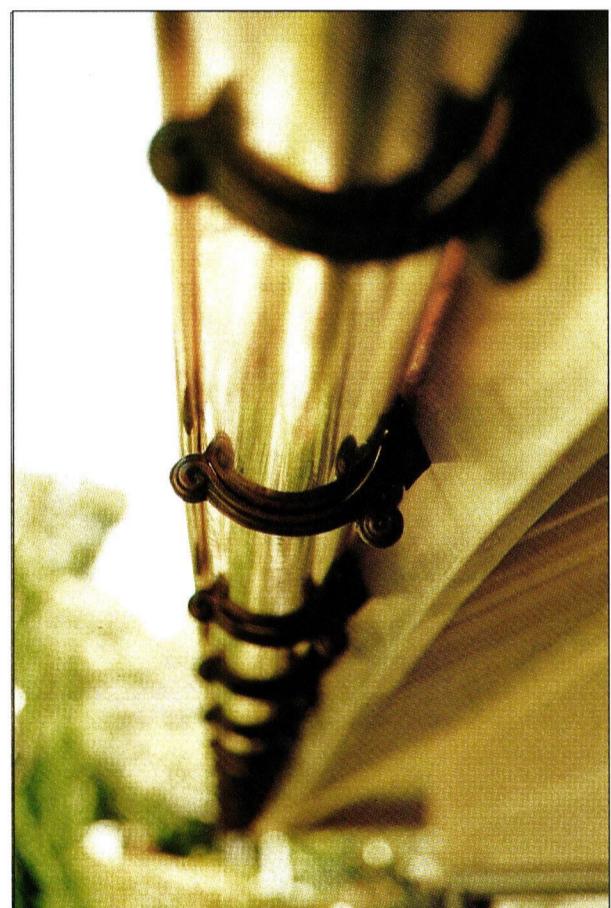
Copper-Raingutter Installation

Following are some guidelines for the installation of copper raingutters:

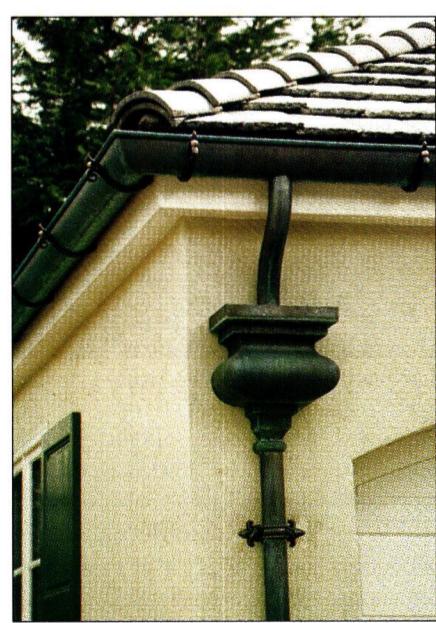
Most contractors size raingutters and downspouts based on intuition and experience of what works or doesn't work in a particular region. However, if you want some solid numbers to follow, use the formulas found in the *Architectural Sheet Metal Manual (ASMM)* (published by S.M.A.C.N.A., 4201 Lafayette Center Drive, Chantilly, VA 22021; 703-803-2989).



Lily downspout bracket with 24k-gold-plated spheres



Gutter brackets applied to a non-vertical fascia. Custom bronze wedges may be created for many situations.



Six-in. half-round gutter with cast-bronze lily gutter brackets, French curved gooseneck, large Wagner leaderhead to fit 3-in.-round downspout, and fleur-des-lis downspout bracket

The two common shapes of raingutter are ogee and half-round. While the ogee (or K-Style) shape is more common, the half-round shape is often chosen when copper is used because it tends to show off its form better, rather than just blending in like the crown-molding shape of ogee. Half-round gutters also fit nicely into cast-bronze fascia brackets, whereas install-



The French-curved gooseneck which leads from the gutter to a leadhead or downspout offers a beautiful profile which is easily seen — even from a distance.

ing an ogee shape into a bronze fascia bracket can sometimes be a little tricky. Hidden hangers are often a good option for attaching ogee gutters.

One of the first considerations in raingutter planning is downspout placement, which is largely an aesthetic consideration.

In any given desired downspout location there is a good chance that the location will work for the following reasons:

- (A) The roofline may be sloping towards the downspout — Good.
- (B) The roofline may be level towards the downspout — OK, perhaps.
- (C) The roofline may be sloping away from the downspout location, but perhaps the region is hot and dry, so that any standing water will dry fast, and maybe the roof area drained is small.
- (D) The roofline may be sloping away from the downspout location, but there is enough space on the fascia and esthetic considerations make sloping the gutter downward in relation to the roofline acceptable, or if the raingutter is large enough, it might be possible to solder a second bottom into the raingutter to force the water to flow towards the downspout.

Having a little pitch to the gutter might slightly reduce the buildup of dirt and ice, but it's seldom practical or necessary; what's essential is that the gutter be able to dry out in a day or so, to reduce corrosion and to prevent the breeding of mosquitoes. Keeping a galvanized-steel gutter dry is key to its longevity; in a copper gutter, dryness is not as critical.

A rule of thumb for expansion of a copper gutter (in relation to expansion of the structure) is $1/8$ in. per 10 linear ft. copper per 100 deg. F temperature change. The raingutter and its fastening system must be able to allow for copper's expansion and contraction. This is critical where the gutter goes around or butts into corners. Be sure to allow for expansion seams where necessary, as per the ASMM. Cast-bronze fascia brackets are exceedingly strong, and allow for a great deal of gutter movement.

Copper is at the top of the galvanic scale. Other metals, such as steel, aluminum, or zinc, will corrode more quickly when in contact with copper or the flow from a copper pipe. The copper will not be harmed by these other metals. Compatible metals for copper are most bronzes and brasses, and some alloys of stainless steel. If the copper is contacting a very thick piece of steel or iron in a dry location, the effect on the steel or iron may be negligible. If the surface of the other metal is large and the surface of the copper is small, the effect on the other metal may be negligible. If a copper gutter is being slipped behind a steel flashing, separate the metals electrically, and maybe the flashing will be OK until it's time to reroof. If a large surface of copper is contacting a small surface of the other metal, or if water drops from a copper surface onto the surface of another metal, the other metal may not last long.

Copper gutter seams should be riveted on $1\text{--}1/2$ -in. centers and soldered (or brazed). Soldered seams without rivets can crack over time, especially where exposed to the expansion forces of two long lengths of gutter. If fascia-mount gutter brackets are used, any seams may be placed behind the brackets through a little advance planning. Care should be taken that the pin in a copper pop rivet is solid brass rather than plated steel: If it sticks to a magnet, it has no place in a copper gutter.

The cleanest-looking gutter miter is cut into the stock material itself. $3/4$ -in. tabs are allowed on one side. The seam is riveted and soldered on the inside surface. Any exposed rivets or solder on the outside surface may be ground flush, and exposed solder may be easily copper-plated using a special plating fluid. Gutter ends that do not abut a flat surface look much more beautiful if they are provided with a mitered, or

return, end. The tabs on gutter miters and mitered end caps can be cut to overlap opposite to the way that shingles on a roof would overlap, so that solder will flow down into the seam effectively.

Continuous lineal gutter screens are useful where broad leaf trees are dumping large quantities of leaves into the gutter. However, small dirt and silt and things such as conifer needles build up anyhow below the screens, and so the screens will need to be removed once in a while for cleaning. Outside of locations with broadleaf trees, it's often a better choice to not have lineal screens.

Raingutters should have drop outlets soldered into them, which drop down at least one inch (and usually 2 or 3 in.), to ensure that water will drop down and not travel along the underside of the gutter.

Downspouts are commonly round or rectangular. Often the round shape tends to show off its form better, whereas the rectangular shape tends to blend in.

Leaderheads are also known by a number of other names: Collectors, Collector Heads, Conductor Heads, Scupper Heads, Rainwater Heads, Leaderboxes. If leaderheads are being used, they are usually placed at the top of the downspout where the gooseneck or downspout elbow contacts the wall. There are a number of practical reasons why leaderheads are used, but most clients choose them purely from the standpoint of ornamentation. Some of the more-practical reasons are as a location to collect debris; a vacuum brake for tall downspouts; and to reduce freezing up of the downspout.

Copper downspouts may be fastened to the wall using cast-bronze downspout brackets, which are ornamental and exceedingly strong, or with a simple copper strap. Fasteners for downspout brackets or straps, such as toggles, must be of a metal compatible to copper. Copperworks makes and sells their own toggle bolts made of cast bronze.

It's recommended to contractors that lengths of gutter and downspout stock be scrubbed with Scotch-brite and water, and dried immediately with paper towels prior to installation. Use latex gloves during installation. This process is a good preliminary step to achieving a good chemical patina; but even if a chemical patina is not being used, fingerprints and factory residue stand out in bold and intense colors in the first several months after copper is installed. This ugly situation is usually of no long-term concern, but it can make collecting a payment from a homeowner difficult.

Patinas

The progression of patina colors on copper varies greatly with conditions of climate. In most regions this might mean a month or so for copper to lose its shininess and go to a russet brown; perhaps five to ten years to develop a natural green patina. In order to speed up this process, Copperworks has field-developed and -tested a green-patina formula especially for large exterior surfaces, which creates a natural look and replicates the chemical composition of a natural patina. Copperworks' formula is of relatively low toxicity and low cost. The usual goal of a chemical patina is a slightly spotty olive green over a brown undersurface. If using Copperworks' patina chemical or chemicals of other companies, best results are usually obtained by first applying the chemical very diluted with water, and through a series of applications, gradually increasing the concentration.

In some special locations with salt spray or acid fog, copper will first turn a strong red terra-cotta color, and then go rather quickly to a lime green even without a chemical patina. In these situations copper is less durable than usual and heavier gauges should be used.

The various natural colors of copper need to be taken into consideration when choosing the color scheme of the structure. The olive green over brown that copper eventually develops complements yellow and green hues. Copper might be halted in patina, naturally or with coatings, at the russet-brown stage, which might go well with pinkish and brown colors. Bright shiny copper is difficult to maintain and is seldom achieved for any extended time. One of the best products for attempting this is a lacquer called Inralac, but lacquers can fail unevenly and look poor in the long run. Paste wax fortified with chelating agents can also provide halting of the aging process on copper, and it will fail more evenly than lacquer, but it must be applied more often. ♦

Don Miller is owner of The Copperworks of Don Miller, Orange, CA. More information about Don's company can be found in the supplier listings on page 145.

BUYING GUIDE TO GUTTERS & LEADER BOXES

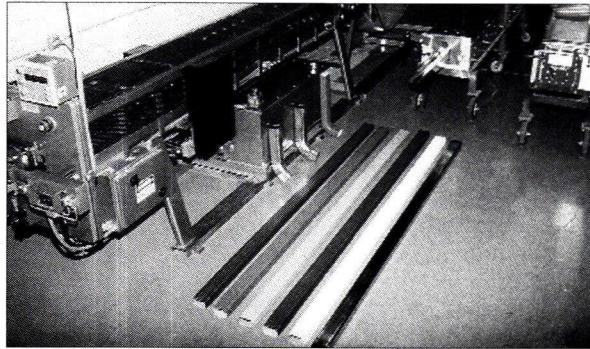
About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted 34 suppliers of Gutters in our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 12 suppliers you'll find on this page because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

Berger Bros Co.
800-523-8852; Fax: 215-355-7738
www.bergerbros.com
Feasterville, PA 19053

Manufactures commercial and residential roof-drainage systems in all metals. Also, roof trims and accessories, soffit-ventilation systems, Real-Tool and Berger snow guards for all roof types. Write in No. 2532

◆◆◆

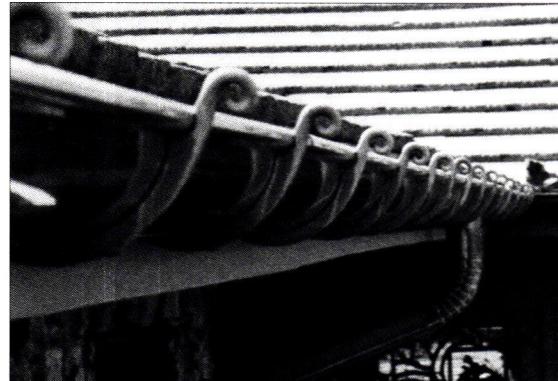


CHRIS INDUSTRIES offers guttering in 16-oz. and 20-oz. copper, kynar aluminum, and 24-gauge kynar steel.

Chris Industries, Inc.
800-356-7922; Fax: 847-729-0340
www.chrisind.com
Northbrook, IL 60062

Custom gutter, downspout, cornice, coping, and other rain-carrying systems in copper, steel, aluminum. Specialties include chain, leaders, tools, and ornament.

◆◆◆



CLASSIC GUTTER SYSTEMS' 6-in. half-round gutter is made of heavy 20-oz. copper and heavy-duty aluminum with a baked-enamel finish. Write in No. 1280

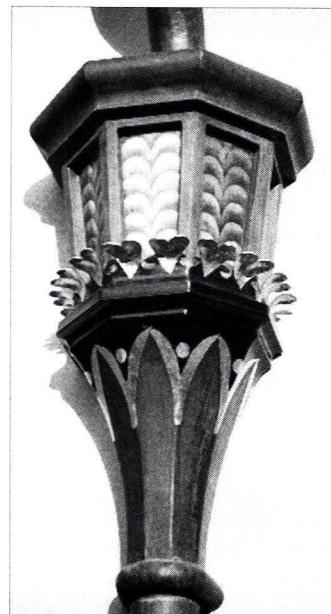
Classic Gutter Systems
616-382-2700; Fax: 616-343-3141
www.classicgutters.com
Kalamazoo, MI 49003

Authentic 6-in. seamless half-round gutter in heavy 20-oz. copper and heavy-duty aluminum with baked-enamel finish; hidden nut-&-bolt adjustable hanger system. Cast fascia brackets & decorative components in solid brass & aluminum. Also gutter chain and leaders. Write in No. 1280

◆◆◆

Copperworks of Don Miller
877-633-9308; Fax: 909-445-0828
members.aol.com/gutterarts
Orange, CA 92869

Artist Don Miller's bronze & copper raingutter hardware has a historic look for period styles, but exceeds historic standards of strength. Also, lists of other raingutter suppliers; green-patina formula for large exterior surfaces. Write in No. 2000



THE COPPERWORKS OF DON MILLER created this Tudor leader box with a custom patina pattern and 23-karat gold leaf. Write in No. 2000

◆◆◆

Durable Slate Co.
800-666-7445; Fax: 614-299-7100
www.durableslate.com
Columbus, OH 43201

Installs copper, steel, and wooden box-gutter roof drainage systems, including custom fabrication of ornamental sheetmetal details, such as leader boxes. Write in No. 3720

◆◆◆

Gutter Topper
513-797-5800; Fax: 513-797-5200
P.O. Box 349
Amelia, OH 45102

Supplies a gutter attachment to prevent clogged gutters. Write in No. 8052

◆◆◆



HANS LIEBSCHER's ornamental gutter with rope molding connects to a goose-neck custom leader box and twisted ornamental downspout.

Liebscher Custom Sheet Metal
760-471-5114; Fax: 760-471-7884
www.hansliebschercopperwks.com
San Marcos, CA 92079

High-end, copper sheetmetal ornaments; horizontal radius gutters; stampings; gargoyles; leader heads; weather-vanes and finials; ornamental twisted downspouts; cast-brass gutter hardware; smooth, not crimped-down spout elbows. Horizontal radius gutters in any type, custom designed gutters and leader heads. On-site installation or consulting.

◆◆◆

M-5 Steel Mfg.
323-263-9383; Fax: 323-263-9942
www.m5steel.com
Los Angeles, CA 90023

Manufacturer of sheetmetal products; metal roofing, gutters, flashing, finials, ornamental sheetmetal, vents, waterproofing, and more. Gutter chain, hangers, built-in gutters, half-round gutters, leaders, leader boxes, and sheetmetal ornament and tools.



SOUTHERN ALUMINUM's cornice and gutter systems feature four decorative fascia profiles and high-performance fluoropolymer paint coating or bronze anodized finish. Write in No. 8071

Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
800-334-9823; Fax: 919-775-5652
www.saf.com/persys
Sanford, NC 27330

Manufacturers of fine cornice, commercial gutter systems, and pre-engineered roof-edge products. "Designer series" gutter and cornice system. Write in No. 8071

◆◆◆

Weather Guard Building Products
800-999-6240; Fax: 303-307-0909
www.wgbp.com
Denver, CO 80239

Manufactures and distributes complete k-style rain carrying systems in painted steel, galvanized steel, painted aluminum, and copper. Half-round gutter systems in copper and galvanized steel; decorative accessories including rain chain, collector heads, round downspouts, and elbows. Offers complete line of flashings, coordinating flat sheets, soffit, fascia, and metal roofing coils. Write in No. 8065

◆◆◆

Weber Metals, Inc.
847-362-1216; Fax: 847-362-1375
www.webmetals.com
Libertyville, IL 60048

Fabricator and distributor of architectural sheetmetal, including rain equipment: copper, painted steel and aluminum, stainless, galvanized, mill-finished aluminum. Fabricator of copper, stainless, Kynar-coated, painted steel, and aluminum half-round & ogee-style gutter spouts and rain equipment systems.

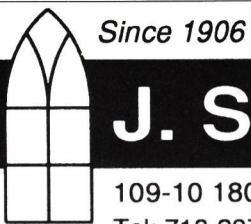
◆◆◆

Yost Mfg. & Supply
800-872-9678; Fax: 860-444-9678
www.yostmfg.com
Waterford, CT 06385

'The Mole' is a concealed hanger attachment for gutters, which eliminates unsightly roof straps. Also, 'Master Elbows' and 'Zig Zags' that reduce seams and waste. Other rain-carrying equipment, including leaders, half-round gutters.

◆◆◆

WWW.
period-homes.com
The Internet Gateway
to Historical
Products & Services
for Residential
Architecture

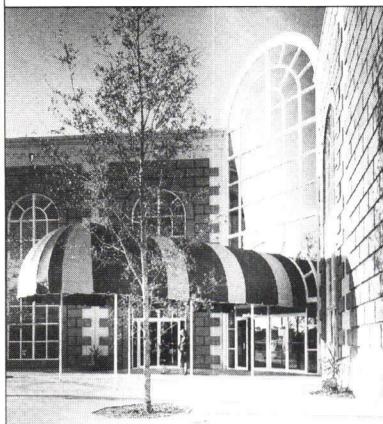


Since 1906

J. SUSSMAN, INC.

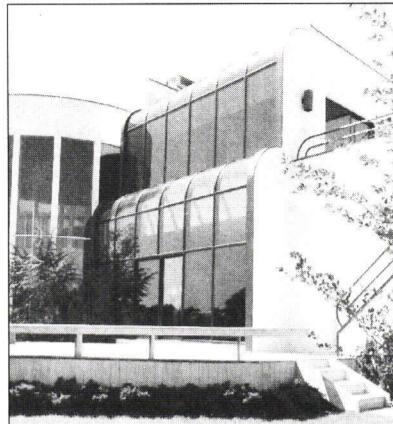
109-10 180th Street • Jamaica, New York 11433
Tel: 718-297-0228 Fax: 718-297-3090

AMERICA'S FINEST CUSTOM MADE WINDOWS



Since 1906, J. Sussman, Inc. has specialized in manufacturing the finest custom metal windows, projected ventilators and casements. We also offer completely engineered skylight systems. Our metal bending services are second to none. In house glass bending allows us to be a single source supplier with full control and responsibility of our products. Sunbilt Solar Products, an affiliated company, manufactures and supplies sunrooms complete with glass and all accessories. These sunrooms are high end and are suitable for commercial as well as residential installations in all areas of the country.

www.jsussmaninc.com



FINE ARCHITECTURAL METAL PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

WINDOWS • SKYLIGHTS • WALKWAYS • SUNROOMS • GLASS and METAL BENDING

WRITE IN NO. 8030 FOR SKYLIGHTS AND SUNROOMS WRITE IN 4830 FOR WINDOWS

"When contacting companies you've seen in the issue, please tell them you saw their listing in Period Homes."

The Editors

GUTTER TOPPER

The ONLY Solution to Gutter Pollution

The #1 Leaf Stopper

Leaves Go

Water Flows

Profits Grow



For more information call

1-877-NO-LEAFS

Dealerships Available

• No Fees • No Royalties

• Exclusive Territories • Excellent Profits



GUTTER TOPPER LTD.

www.guttertopper.com

WRITE IN NO. 8052

Charles River Restoration

Custom Design, Fabrication & Reproduction of Historic Copper Frame Skylights

Reproduction Skylight-Historic Copper Frame Hipped Design

P.O. Box 390, Hopkinton, MA 01748
508 435-8540
Fax: 508 435-5494 e-mail: PMHCR@ao.com

WRITE IN NO. 1348

CUSTOM ARCHITECTURAL
METALWORK & LIGHTING
FROM
**HISTORICAL
ARTS & CASTING**

SEE OUR DISPLAY AD
ON PAGE 101.

WRITE IN NO. 1210

Custom Windows

Skylights

Walkways

Sunrooms

Church Windows

Glass & Metal Bending

CALENDAR OF EVENTS

CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE SUMMER SCHOOL. Six-week intensive course at the Institute of Classical Architecture's New York headquarters offers professional-level training in planning and designing using the traditional tools of classicism. The course culminates in a design studio project involving a real urban planning issue currently confronting a New York City community. Course runs from **June 15 to July 28, 2001**; applications close March 31. For course details, contact the Institute at (917) 237-1208, e-mail institute@classicist.org, or log onto www.classicist.org.

WOOD: AN AMERICAN TRADITION. The National Building Museum, Washington, DC, has mounted a new exhibit exploring the varied role of wood in American building. The exhibit focuses on four major wood construction methods: log construction, timber framing, balloon framing, and platform framing. The show includes a log cabin, antique wooden tools, furniture, architectural ornaments, and materials from plywood to fine veneers. The exhibit is open through **April 22, 2001**, Mondays to Saturdays, 10 a.m. to 5 p.m.; admission is free. Call (202) 272-2448 or visit www.nbm.org.

VENETIAN PLASTER WORKSHOPS. Two-day hands-on workshops demonstrating the techniques of working with Kolcaustico Venetian Plaster are being held from March through October in New York City, Orlando, FL, and Los Angeles, CA. One-day workshops are also scheduled for Chicago, Minneapolis, Dallas, and other cities. Classes are small and offer personal attention. For full details, call Sepp Leaf Products at (800) 871-7377 or log onto www.seppleaf.com.

HISTORIC PRESERVATION COURSES. The Campbell Center for Historic Preservation Studies, Mt. Carroll, IL, has just released its schedule of short courses running from May through September in the broad areas of: (1) Historic Preservation; (2) Care of Collections; (3) Conservation Refresher Courses. For full program details, call (815) 244-1173, or log onto www.campbellcenter.org.

AIA 2001 NATIONAL CONVENTION & EXPO. The Denver Colorado Convention Center will be host to the Am. Institute of Architect's Annual Meeting and Expo, **May 17-19, 2001**. Theme for the Meeting is "Leaders and Partners in Creating Community." AIA members can earn the 18 Learning Unit hours needed to maintain AIA membership while in Denver. **TRADITIONAL BUILDING** Magazine will be sponsoring Restoration Products Pavilion at the Expo. For more information on the Expo and Restoration Products Pavilion, Fax (718) 636-0750.

WORKSHOPS ON EARLY AMERICAN TRADES. "Flat-Wall Plastering," "Lime Mortar Masonry," "Brass and Coppersmithing," "Tinsmithing," and "Reproducing Aged Furniture Finishes," are among the 13 hand-on workshops being offered this summer at historic Eastfield Village, Nassau, NY. Workshops range from two to four days, and registrants are lodged in the historic buildings that are part of the Village. For full details, call (518) 766-2422.

AIC ANNUAL MEETING + CONSERVATION OF OUTDOOR MONUMENTS.

The 29th Annual Meeting of the American Institute for Conservation of Historic and Artistic Works (AIC) will be held **May 29-June 5, 2001** at the Adam's Mark Hotel in Dallas, Texas. The Architecture Specialty Group (ASG) will be hosting a day-long session on the conservation of wood, stone, and metal outdoor monuments. For more information, log onto the AIC's website at <http://aic.stanford.edu>. Or contact AIC directly at (202) 452-9545 or e-mail at InfoAIC@aol.com.

HISTORIC STONE RESTORATION TECHNIQUES: Cleaning and restoration of exterior and historic stone requires a different approach than interior stone. A one-day workshop exploring these specialty techniques will be held **July 14, 2001** in Longwood, FL. Registration fee is \$250; seminar is sponsored by the National Training Center for Stone & Masonry Trades. For more details, log onto the Center's website at www.ntc-stone.com.

RESTORATION + RENOVATION SHOW & CONFERENCE. Next venue for the Restoration + Renovation Show and Conference, the largest preservation event in the U.S., is scheduled for the Fairmont Hotel, New Orleans, **Sept. 6-8, 2001**. For full program details, call (800) 982-6247 or log onto www.restorationandrenovation.com.

PRESERVATION TRADES WORKSHOPS. IPTW 2001 is scheduled for Oct. 26-28, 2001 at Floyd Bennett Airfield, Gateway National Recreation Area, Brooklyn, NY. For the event, the Preservation Trades Network (PTN) is partnering with the National Park Service, Jamaica Bay Unit. Plans call for special one-day workshops at Ellis Island and Historic Richmond Town on Staten Island. Emphasis in all workshops is a hands-on approach that will help practicing professionals upgrade their preservation skills. For more details, log onto www.ptn.org.

HISTORIC PRESERVATION & CULTURAL RESOURCE MANAGEMENT: The National Preservation Institute is conducting a series of seminars throughout the year at various cities around the U.S. Seminars, which run from one to three days, bring distinguished faculty to highlight state-of-the-art practice in important areas of historic preservation and cultural resource management. For details, consult www.npi.org or call (703) 765-0100.

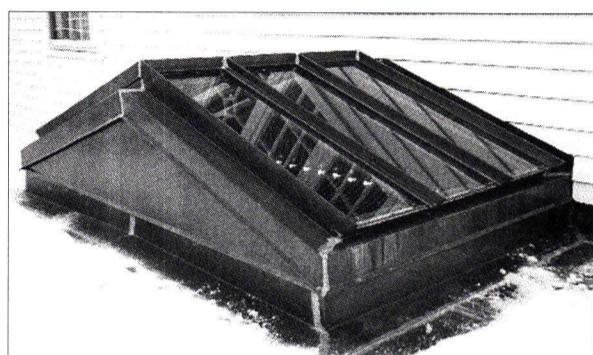
WORKSHOPS: ORNAMENTAL PLASTER, SCAGLIOLA, VENETIAN PLASTER. Master craftsman conducts hands-on workshops in all of the traditional ornamental "wet plaster" skills throughout 2001. Workshops run from one to several days; customized workshops can also be arranged. For details and schedule, log onto www.masterofplaster.com, or call 800-352-5915.

DECORATIVE PAINTING WORKSHOPS. Professional-level courses and workshops in a wide variety of traditional finishes are offered by Vigin Studios, San Antonio, TX, through July 2001. Subjects include: Fresco, Murals, Venetian Plaster, Grottesca, Scagliola, and Trompe L'Oeil. For full program and registration details, log onto www.viginstudios.com, or call (877) 977-3289.

BUYING GUIDE TO SKYLIGHTS

About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted 31 suppliers of skylights in our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 10 suppliers you'll find on this page because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.



CHARLES RIVER RESTORATION constructed this copper-frame skylight in a gabled style with wire-reinforced glass, over the entryway of a residence in Boston, Mass. Write in No. 1348

Charles River Restoration Co.
508-435-8540; Fax: 508-435-5494
P.O. Box 390
Hopkinton, MA 01748

Custom design, fabrication, and reproduction of historic copper-frame skylights for both flat and sloped roofs. Skylights include flat panel, lean-to, hipped, gable-end; glazing includes glass, double-glazed, and wire-reinforced. Framing in copper. Write in No. 1348

CPI International
800-759-6985; Fax: 847-816-0425
28662 N. Ballard Drive
Lake Forest, IL 60045

Specialized architectural products include vaults, ridges, pyramids, and polygons; standard curb-mount skylights, and pool and leisure pavilions. Skylights include arch, cone, dome, flat-panel, lean-to, multiple-unit, operating; framing materials in aluminum.



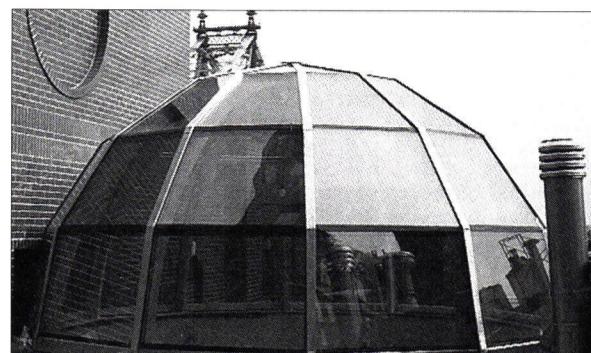
Skylights in CS CONSERVATORIES' Solarite line of skylights are available in almost any imaginable style. Write in No. 454

CS Conservatories
800-873-3966; Fax: 610-317-0582
www.creativestructure.com
Hellertown, PA 18055

Designs and manufactures conservatories and solariums; framed in wood using mortise-&-tenon joinery; high-performance insulated glazing available; optional cedar,

mahogany, or aluminum exterior capping; custom and standard details. Skylights include arch, cone, dome, flat panel, lean-to, multiple-unit, operating, ventilating, and abstract. Many types of glazing; aluminum, copper, and wood frames. Write in No. 454

♦♦♦



This domed skylight was constructed by FIORE SKYLIGHTS from copper-clad aluminum with insulated glass, for a residence in New York City.

Fiore Skylights, Inc.
856-346-0118; Fax: 856-346-9332
700 Grace Street
Somerdale, NJ 08083

Standard or custom residential skylights; all glazing options, including high-performance insulated glass, acrylic, polycarbonate panel. Finish options include standard painted finishes, fluoropolymer coatings, anodized or copper clad finishes. Custom residential units. Styles include arch, cone, dome, flat-panel, lean-to, and multiple-unit.

♦♦♦

Flex-Lite Corp.
561-995-7763; Fax: 561-994-8824
543 NW 77th Street, Suite 100
Boca Raton, FL 33487

Large or moderate-size GE Lexan Multiwall systems for skylights, enclosures, patio covers, and much more. Styles include arch, cone, flat-panel, lean-to; frames fabricated from aluminum.

♦♦♦



This hand-crafted skylight from GLASS HOUSE features a cypress frame and lead-coated copper exterior components. Write in No. 1870

Glass House
800-222-3065; Fax: 860-974-1173
50 Swedesboro Road
Pomfret Center, CT 06259

Designs, fabricates, and erects conservatories, solariums, and specialty skylights from a diverse choice of styles, materials, and finishes, and "state of the art" glazing. Ornamental metalwork, copper-clad options, variable trim enhancements and accessories. Skylight styles include lean-to, multiple-unit, operating, octagonal, pyramidal, and ventilating. Framing materials include aluminum, steel, and wood. Write in No. 1870

♦♦♦

Imperial Florian Design Cent.
888-886-4527; Fax: 718-224-0700
www.greenhouserepairs.com
Flushing, NY 11361

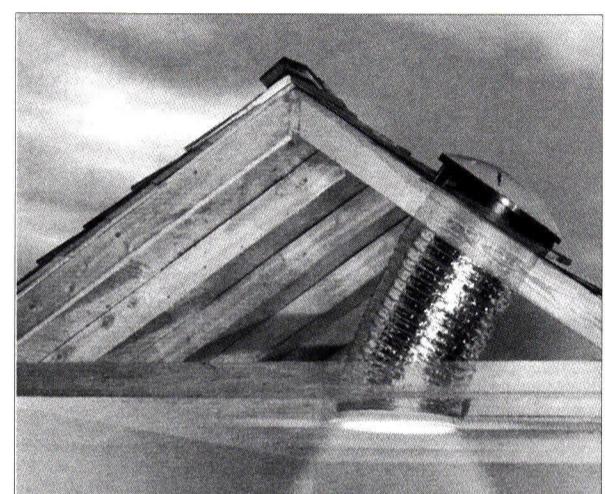
Supplier and installer of sunrooms and greenhouses throughout the tri-state area. Skylight styles include flat-panel, lean-to, operating, and ventilating; glazing in acrylic and glass; framing materials in aluminum and wood.

♦♦♦

Renaissance Conservatories
800-882-4657; Fax: 717-661-7727
www.renaissance-online.com
Leola, PA 17540

Manufacturer and installer of period glass houses, skylights, lanterns, and garden windows. Hand-crafted mahogany and cedar framing. Visit the website. Write in No. 378

♦♦♦



SUN TUNNEL's Flexi-Tube skylight system is able to channel sunlight even through difficult roof-to-ceiling spaces.

Sun Tunnel Systems, Inc.
800-369-7465; Fax: 408-369-0228
www.suntunnel.com
Campbell, CA 95008

Patented "Flexi-Tube" channels sunlight to any room. Complete roof-to-ceiling skylight system which installs in less than two hours. Available in 14" and 22" models, which fit within standard rafter spacings. Skylights in tubular style; acrylic glazing; no framing needed.

♦♦♦

Sunshine Rooms
800-222-1598; Fax: 316-838-0839
www.sunshinerooms.com
Wichita, KS 67204

National manufacturer of sunrooms, conservatories, and skylights; 200 standard variations on 7 solarium styles; customized units; "Galaxie" skylights; greenhouses. All products available with ultra-High Performance Low-E plus glass. Write in No. 5006

♦♦♦

**WWW.
period-homes.com**
**The Internet Gateway
to Historical
Products & Services
for Residential
Architecture**

BUYING GUIDE TO WEATHERVANES, FINIALS & SNOWGUARDS

Historical Arts & Casting, Inc.
800-225-1414; Fax: 801-280-2493
www.historicalarts.com
West Jordan, UT 84088

Designer and manufacturer of lighting, columns and capitals, cornices, railings, fences, newels, planters, finials, street furnishings, and fountains cast in bronze, aluminum, or iron. Restoration and custom work. Gas-lighting projects and large-scale restoration projects. Write in No. 1210

◆◆◆

Kayne & Son Custom Hardware
828-667-8868; Fax: 828-665-8303
www.brwm.org/kayneandsoncustomhardwareinc
Candler, NC 28715

Custom hand-forged steel, cast-brass/bronze functional and dummy strap hinges, H and HL hinges, bolts, latches, pulls, locks, drapery rods and hooks, sash locks. Custom restoration, reproductions; various finishes. Call for more information

◆◆◆



KENNETH LYNCH & SONS uses simple hand tools and traditional methods of manufacture to produce striking weathervanes such as this.

Lynch & Sons, Inc.
203-762-8363; Fax: 203-762-2999
www.klynchandsons.com
Wilton, CT 06897

Top-of-the-line fabricators with an extensive catalog of fountain designs, garden ornament, site furniture (including full park-bench manufacturing capabilities), weather-vanes, finials, and gazebos. Custom capabilities. Full-bodied, swell-bodied, and silhouette weathervanes; metals include copper, aluminum, bronze, and stainless steel.

◆◆◆



NEW CONCEPT LOUVERS' large rooster weathervane is seen here mounted on one of the firm's hip-roofed hexagonal cupolas. Write in No. 1264

New Concept Louvers
800-635-6448; Fax: 801-489-0606
www.newconceptlouvers.com
Springville, UT 84663

Maker of PVC-coated, aluminum or vinyl cupolas, stock or custom. Weathervanes in a variety of shapes and sizes. Full-bodied, silhouette weathervanes; louvers, dormer vents, finials, and spires. Write in No. 1264

◆◆◆

NIKO Contracting Co.
412-687-1517; Fax: 412-687-7969
www.nikocontracting.com
Pittsburgh, PA 15213

Nationwide roofing and sheetmetal contractor has extensive experience in historic-restoration projects: custom architectural sheetmetal work, artificial patination of copper, standing-seam, slate, tile, and other historic roofing. Write in No. 8300

◆◆◆

Rutland Architectural Copperwork & Gutter
407-354-3611; Fax: 407-354-3951
5980 Lakehurst Dr.
Orlando, FL 32819

Continuous half-round gutters; specialize in architectural copperwork. Supply cast copper scroll hangers. Gutters in 5-in., 6-in., and 7-in. sizes. Also, finials, cupolas, and chimney caps. Write in No. 8061

◆◆◆

Waskiewicz Metal Sculpture
413-568-0548; Fax: 413-564-6028
www.weathervanesculpture.com
Westfield, MA 01085

Metalworking studio has produced sculpture and weathervanes since 1989. Freehand hammered from copper, brass, and stainless steel, each piece is one of a kind. Traditional or custom, if you can imagine it, it can be made. Full-bodied, swell-bodied, and silhouette weathervanes; metals include copper, brass, lead-coated copper, and stainless steel.

◆◆◆

Wiemann Ironworks
918-592-1700; Fax: 918-592-2385
www.wiemanniron.com
Tulsa, OK 74104

Hand-crafted custom copper and brass weathervanes for any application. Since 1940, firm designs, fabricates, and installs fine forged architectural and ornamental metalwork for a national market. Residential and commercial. Custom finishes. CAD services. NOMMA's most award-winning metal fabricator. Write in No. 1223

THE INSTITUTE OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE SUMMER PROGRAM IN CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE 2001

JUNE 15 - JULY 28, 2001

• LEARNING • DESIGNING • BUILDING



This summer expand your architectural horizons! Spend six intensive weeks in New York City discovering the vitality of classical architecture and urbanism. Learning directly from practitioners, you will concentrate on subjects pertaining to classical architecture, including:

ELEMENTS OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

COMMUNITY PLANNING AND DESIGN

LITERATURE AND THEORY OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

PROPORTION IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

TRADITIONAL WASH-RENDERING TECHNIQUE

MEASURED DRAWING AND OBSERVATION

TRADITIONAL BUILDING, CRAFTSMANSHIP, AND MATERIALS

PRINCIPLES OF URBANISM

ORNAMENT FOR ARCHITECTURE

DRAWING AND PERSPECTIVE

Instruction culminates with a unique opportunity to work directly with a community in a design studio confronting a real project in New York City. Whether you are a student seeking to exercise your interest in classicism or a practitioner desiring to enhance your classical knowledge, the Institute's focused program will provide you with a unique and memorable learning experience. Be one of a select group of students who will benefit this summer from the Institute's talented faculty and prime studio location in SoHo.

For applications and catalogue please contact

THE INSTITUTE OF CLASSICAL ARCHITECTURE

225 Lafayette Street, Suite 1009, New York, NY 10012

telephone 917-237-1208 fax 917-237-1230 email institute@classicist.org www.classicist.org

Scholarships are generously provided by:

Chadsworth's 1.800.Columns • Curtis & Windham Architects • David Anthony Easton, Inc. • Eric J. Smith Architects, PC
• One West 54th Street Foundation • White River Hardwoods-Woodworks, Inc.

FOR EASY ACCESS TO **FREE** PRODUCT LITERATURE

FILL OUT
THE ENCLOSED
POSTCARD
OR USE THE
COUPON ON
PAGE 158.

WWW.
traditional-building.com

Internet Gateway
to Historical Products

PERIOD HOMES

maintains the central Website for historically styled products and services on the Internet. There's more information and links to historical products than you'll find on any other site.

AMONG THE FEATURES:

- Product Database with 112 product categories and ■ 371 companies listed and indexed in the Product Database
- 162 Online product brochures
- Links to 272 Companies and related Organizations
- In-Depth Product Report of the Month

Log onto —
and then Bookmark
www.period-homes.com



W

ith a design tradition dating back to 1874, Berger Bros Co. offers the most extensive selection of snow guards for virtually any type of roof. Our snow guards are designed to prevent a mass quantity of snow or ice from avalanching all at once off the roof, causing extensive damage to property and pedestrians below. Berger snow guards are available in copper, stainless steel, bronze, galvanized iron, clear polycarbonate, and in a wide variety of stamped patterns and ornamental castings. Our snow guards offer the perfect fit to any residential or commercial application.

Please contact Mike Pietrzak at 1-800-523-8852, Ext. 146 for your nearest Berger snow guard distributor.



BERGER BROS CO.

805 Pennsylvania Boulevard • Feasterville, Pennsylvania 19053

(215) 355-1200 • (800) 523-8852 • Fax: (215) 355-7738

A Subsidiary of Berger Holdings, Ltd. - Nasdaq symbol - BGRH

Visit our Snow Guards website at www.snowbrakes.com

WRITE IN NO. 2532

**WEATHERVANES
CUPOLAS
FINIALS**
*Celebrating the
Art and History of a
PROUD CRAFT*

complimentary catalogs
world's largest selection
world's largest
weathervane web site
custom design & sculpting

29-T BUTTONWOOD STREET • BRISTOL, RI 02809
401-253-0344 www.netvanes.com

→ Crosswinds Gallery, Inc. ←

WRITE IN NO. 107

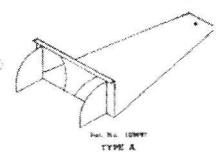
if
you'd like to order a
gift subscription
for a colleague,
just fax us at
(718) 636-0750

SPRING 2001 • 151 • PERIOD HOMES

Wherever snow flies ... you will see the Original

SnoGuard®

For Life Safety &
Preventative Maintenance



F. C. Cody invented and patented the Snow Guard in the 1930's. For over 70 years, millions have been installed on countless buildings. [In copper & aluminum]

Help keep snow from avalanching!

Gough & Bros. (708) 485-6272

- For slate and tile roofs
- Asphalt and wood
- Copper and metal roofs
- New and easy to Retro-fit
- Most adaptable snow guard

www.SnoGuard.com

WRITE IN NO. 2612

CUSTOM ARCHITECTURAL
METALWORK & LIGHTING
FROM
**HISTORICAL
ARTS & CASTING**

SEE OUR DISPLAY AD
ON PAGE 101.

WRITE IN NO. 1210

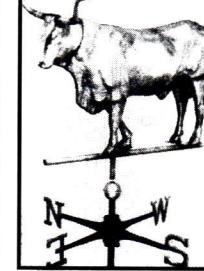
HANDMADE BRASS & COPPER LANTERNS & WEATHERVANES

NO IMPORTS
Send \$4.00 for Catalog
(deductible from purchase)

Hours:
Sat. 12:30-5
Sun. & Mon. 10-5
or any time by
appointment

(800) 281-9798

**THE COPPER
HOUSE**



1747 DOVER RD. RT 4
EPSOM, N.H. 03234
Fax: 603-736-4921
www.thecopperhouse.com

BUYING GUIDE TO BIRD CONTROL

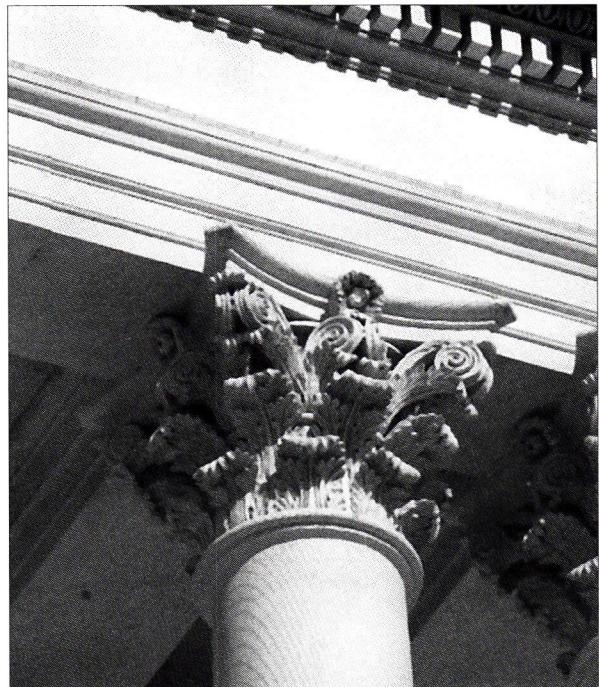
About This Buying Guide

To create this Buying Guide, the Editors contacted 36 suppliers of Bird Control in our database of companies that provide historical products and services to our audience of residential design and building professionals. From the companies' responses, the Editors selected the 8 suppliers you'll find on this page because they provide a good up-to-date cross-section of the market, both geographically and in the variety of their offerings.

ABC Architectural Bird Control
888-212-8682; Fax: 309-755-1865
www.abcbirdcontrol.com
East Moline, IL 61244

Source for effective, non-lethal and durable bird and animal barriers and repellents. Specializing in humane bird-exclusion products. Provides safe, economical and long-lasting products including two types of bird netting, stainless-steel wire barriers, bactericides, surface disinfectants, visual deterrents, and more.

◆◆◆

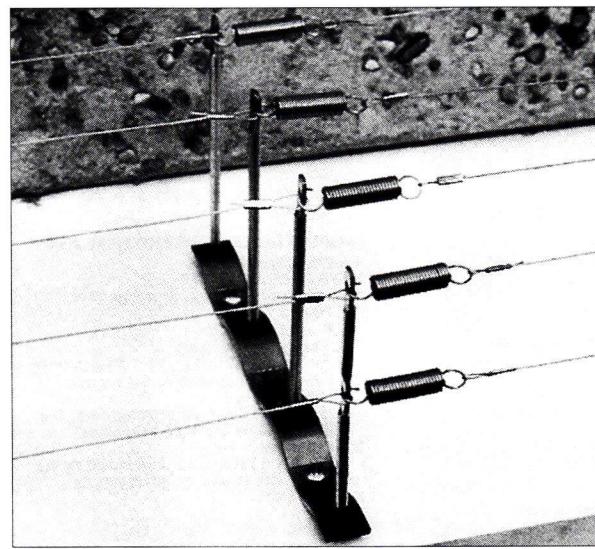


BIRD BARRIER's StealthNet protects these columns and capitals from unwanted birds.

Bird Barrier America
800-503-5444; Fax: 310-527-8005
www.birdbarrier.com
Carson, CA 90746

Effective, comprehensive line of bird-deterrent products, including Bird-Shock electrifies track, Bird-Flite spikes, Bird-Coil, StealthNet, Gutter-Point spikes and a variety of specialty products for unique applications.

◆◆◆



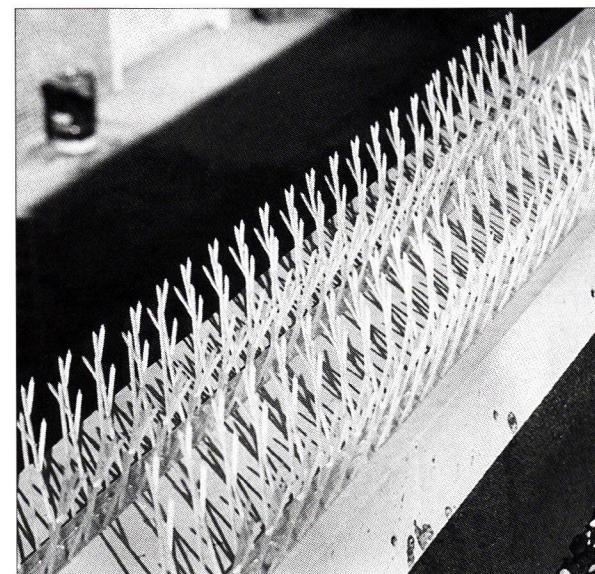
Bird Wire 2000 from BIRD-B-GONE is a low-profile, low-cost deterrent made up of stainless-steel posts and nylon-coated wire.

Write in No. 1352

Bird-B-Gone
800-392-6915; Fax: 949-472-3116
www.birdbgone.com
Mission Viejo, CA 92692

Complete line of bird-control products, including Bird Spike 2000, Adios Bird Gel Repellent, Bird Chase Ultrasonic, and Bird Netting. Projects include major govt., industrial, & commercial buildings, or anywhere birds are a problem. *Write in No. 1352*

◆◆◆



BIRD-X's Spikes are dense, transparent needle strips which eliminate roosting areas. *Write in No. 3230*

Bird-X, Inc.
800-662-5021; Fax: 312-226-2480
www.bird-x.com
Chicago, IL 60607

Complete line of products for repelling birds & other pests: SPIKES Needle Strips, sticky gels, net, ultrasonics, visual devices. Projects include schools, hospitals, museums, industrial, commercial, & residential properties. Metal-coil systems, electric/electronic systems, netting, repellent decoys, sonic systems, disinfectants. *Write in No. 3230*

◆◆◆

BirdMaster, Inc.
800-562-2473; Fax: 781-932-0013
www.bird-master.com
Woburn, MA 01801

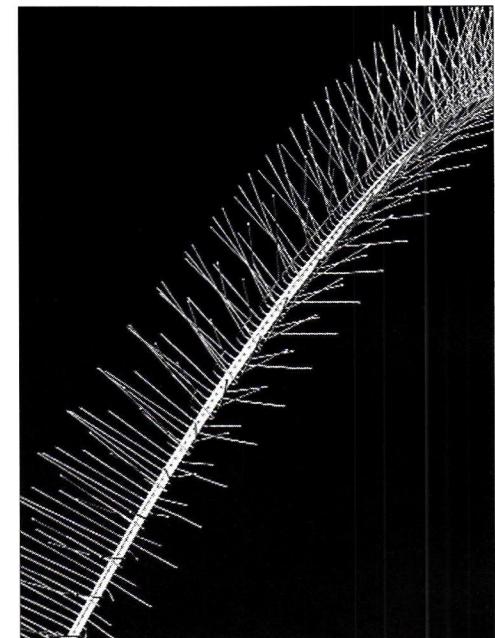
Designs and installs invisible birdproofing systems to blend in with existing features of historic buildings. Offers nondestructive installation of PermaNET and Springuard Anti-Roosting Systems; 5-year guarantee of effectiveness.

◆◆◆

Hot Foot America
800-533-8421; Fax: 415-789-0564
www.hotfoot.com
Belvedere Tiburon, CA 94920

Architecturally innovative bird-repellent systems, including Electrak (either solar or 110-volt powered), Invisi-Net, V-Pic, Deter Spikes, and Springwire, together with non-toxic Hot Foot Bird Repellent Gel. Personal design and technical advice available.

◆◆◆



Made of 316 stainless steel, NIXALITE strips provide inconspicuous protection against birds of all types. Write in No. 370

Nixalite of America, Inc.
800-624-1189; Fax: 800-624-1196
www.nixalite.com
East Moline, IL 61244

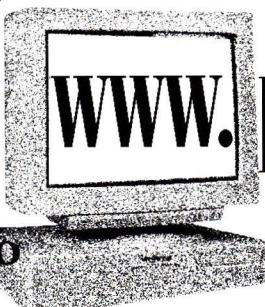
Stainless-steel needle strips that provide a simple, effective, and humane solution for pest-bird problems. Easy-to-install Nixalite strips are long-lasting, versatile and inconspicuous; available in standard or custom colors. Needle-strip systems, bactericides; paste, liquid & granular repellents. *Write in No. 370*

◆◆◆

Tanglefoot Co.
800-215-0938; Fax: 616-459-4140
www.tanglefoot.com
Grand Rapids, MI 49504

Products that aid in repelling pigeons, starlings, and house sparrows. Offers a repeller ribbon with a metallic finish, scare-eye balloons, and pastes. Products are most commonly used to repel nuisance birds from window sills, roof lines, gutter edges, signs, ornamented coping, cornices, and ledges.

◆◆◆



WWW.period-homes.com
The Internet Gateway
to Historical Products
& Services for
Residential Architecture

pich is encased in a steel-and-concrete structure, a regional-history museum called the Iron Range Interpretive Center. Rajkovich created a rectangular gallery and oval rotunda there, with Michelangelo's life as a subtext. The gallery section, hung with portraits of young Perpich, represents Michelangelo's early years refining Classicism in provincial Florence (one mahogany portrait frame, for instance, is based on a window surround at Michelangelo's Medici Palace in Florence). The rotunda signifies both Michelangelo's Rome phase, handling St. Peter's dome, and Perpich's tenure in the Capitol. The column order throughout both spaces is Ionic: "A memorial calls for a more lofty and refined order than Doric," Rajkovich explains, "and yet this isn't a place of worship, so Corinthian wouldn't be appropriate." Columns and pilasters throughout are paired, because the governor always insisted — in spite of conservatives' protests — that his wife was his equal partner in governance.

When she, her family, and friends saw the memorial for the first time



In a bland Kohn Pedersen Fox office tower in downtown Chicago, Rajkovich transformed masonry window dividers into stout Doric piers and rerouted ducts so that the acoustic-tile ceiling could be vaulted instead. Photo: Thomas Norman Rajkovich

and learned about its complicated iconography down to the acorn cap, Rajkovich recalls, many of them burst into tears. U.S. senators attended the opening, as did representatives of a huge range of political groups, ethnicities, and white- and blue-collar professions. Rajkovich handed out a list of every millwork supplier, plasterer, and light-fixture maker involved — "the kind of list," he says wistfully, "that my grandpa never made it onto."

In Bloom

He's since taken on projects as minor as a Biedermeier bed (for Perpich's son) and as lavish as the renovation of a 236-acre estate for a manufacturing tycoon. He's also building up frequent-flyer miles, supervising sites as far afield as Virginia and Rhode Island. He's angling for more public commissions, such as a farmers' market hall for Evanston: Vines would serve as astragal moldings on its Tuscan columns, and its trusses would end in carved farm implements. He's educated so many clients so well, he says, "they're remarkably conversant now about ideas like public and private realms, sequences and interconnections — and the more connoisseurship we can instill, the easier it is for us to do good architecture." Although he's not actively teaching young architects-to-be right now, he'd like to found a department for a midwestern university. Students at too many Classical programs these days, he points out, still believe that simply throwing in a few allegorical statues or inscribed plaques can make architecture resonant.

"That approach is just a one-liner, it's signage," he laments. "It doesn't reward a second or a third viewing: Once you've seen Mercury or Justice or the word 'Wisdom' carved over the doorway, you've seen it. For me, architecture has to be more about nuance. For me, it has to be about the acorn missing." ♦

**Block Pest Birds
from Landing Strips!**

SPIKES® NOTHING COMES CLOSE!

TRANSPARENT • **TOUGH**
ECONOMICAL • **EASY TO INSTALL**
DENSE • **FLEXIBLE**
ENVIRONMENTALLY SAFE

800-662-5021 Get rid of birds, and the mess and diseases they bring. We guarantee we'll solve your bird problem.

BIRD-X

300 N. Elizabeth St. Dept. PDH • WWW.BIRD-X.COM
CHICAGO IL 60607 • 312-BAN-BIRD 312-226-2480 FAX

THE BIRD CONTROL "X-PERTS" SINCE 1964

WRITE IN NO. 3230

Get Rid of Pest Birds!

with **BIRD SPIKE 2001™** stainless steel

\$2.95/ft. !

- Lowest Cost
- Easy to Install
- Virtually Invisible
- Widest Coverage
- 10 Year Guarantee
- Stainless Steel

5" WIDE

For Free Samples and Information
Call 1-800-392-6915

Bird•B•Gone, Inc.
(949) 472-3122 Fax (949) 472-3116
email: nobirds@birdbgone.com • www.birdbgone.com



WRITE IN NO. 1352

Birds Take Flight From NIXALITE®

Protect your period perfect home from pest birds and the ugly mess they make with Nixalite Stainless Steel Needle Strips. Nixalite has been installed internationally to safeguard historic properties. These strips are easily installed, inconspicuous and affordable. Nixalite works, and works, and works!

Nixalite offers additional barriers and repellents to provide effective control for a wide variety of nuisance wildlife. Call, fax or e-mail to get your free literature.

Ph: 800-624-1189 **Fax:** 800-624-1196
Web: www.nixalite.com **E-mail:** nixalite@qconline.com

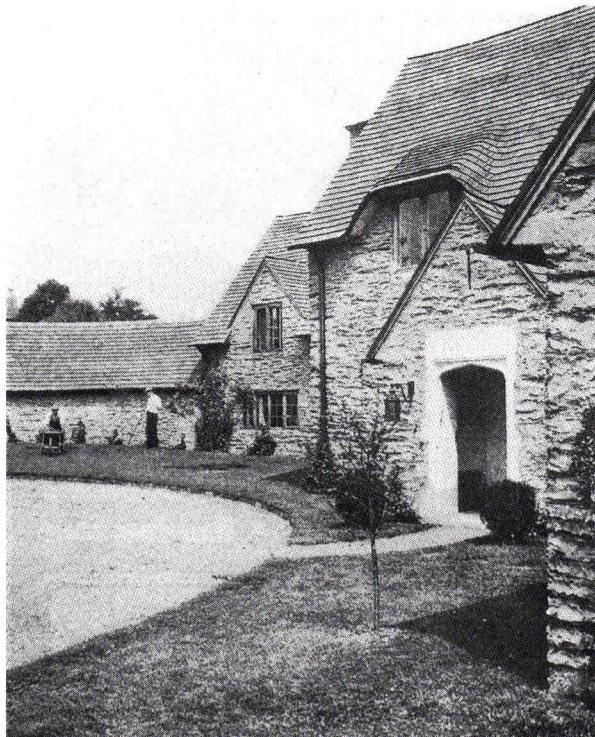
Nixalite® of America Inc
1025 16th Avenue PH, East Moline, IL 61244
309-755-8771 Fax: 309-755-0077

NIXALITE®

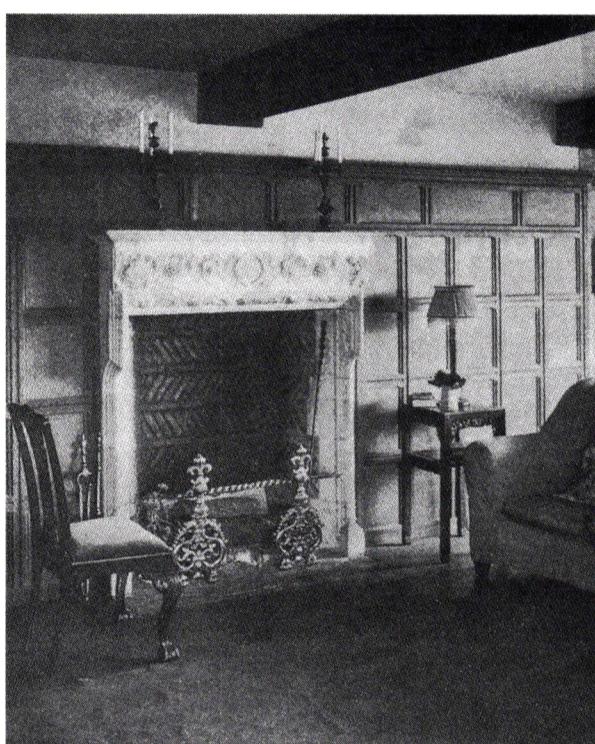
- Proven Effective
- Humane Control
- 316 Stainless Steel
- Easy To Install
- For All Birds
- Colors Available
- No brittle plastics
- No messy chemicals
- No electricity

WRITE IN NO. 370

www.period-homes.com
*Your Internet Portal to
Products & Services
for the Residential Market*



Dulles front elevation.

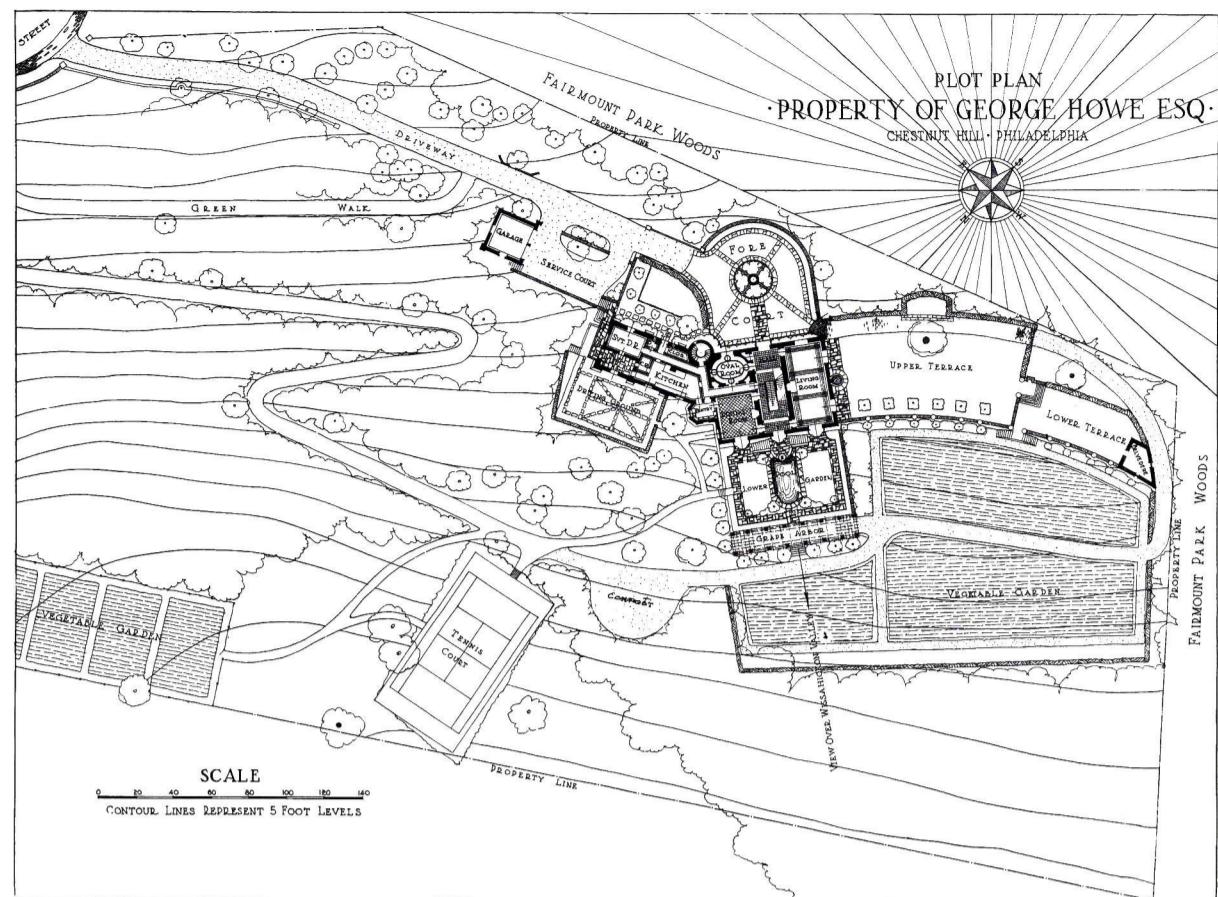


Dulles living-room interior.

interiors on those of rural English dwellings that they had previously measured and drawn. Referring to the floor plan and scaled drawings of the interior elevations of the dining room, we see that the dimensions are a room height of 10 ft., a width of 15 ft., and a length of 25 ft. (See drawing of Dulles interior on page 160.) The relationship of room height to width to length is 10 to 15 to 25 or a ratio of 2:3:5. The same ratio is used for the configuration of the living room and book room, and generates a very pleasant space where the width and length of the room are generous while the room height is intimate yet comfortable.

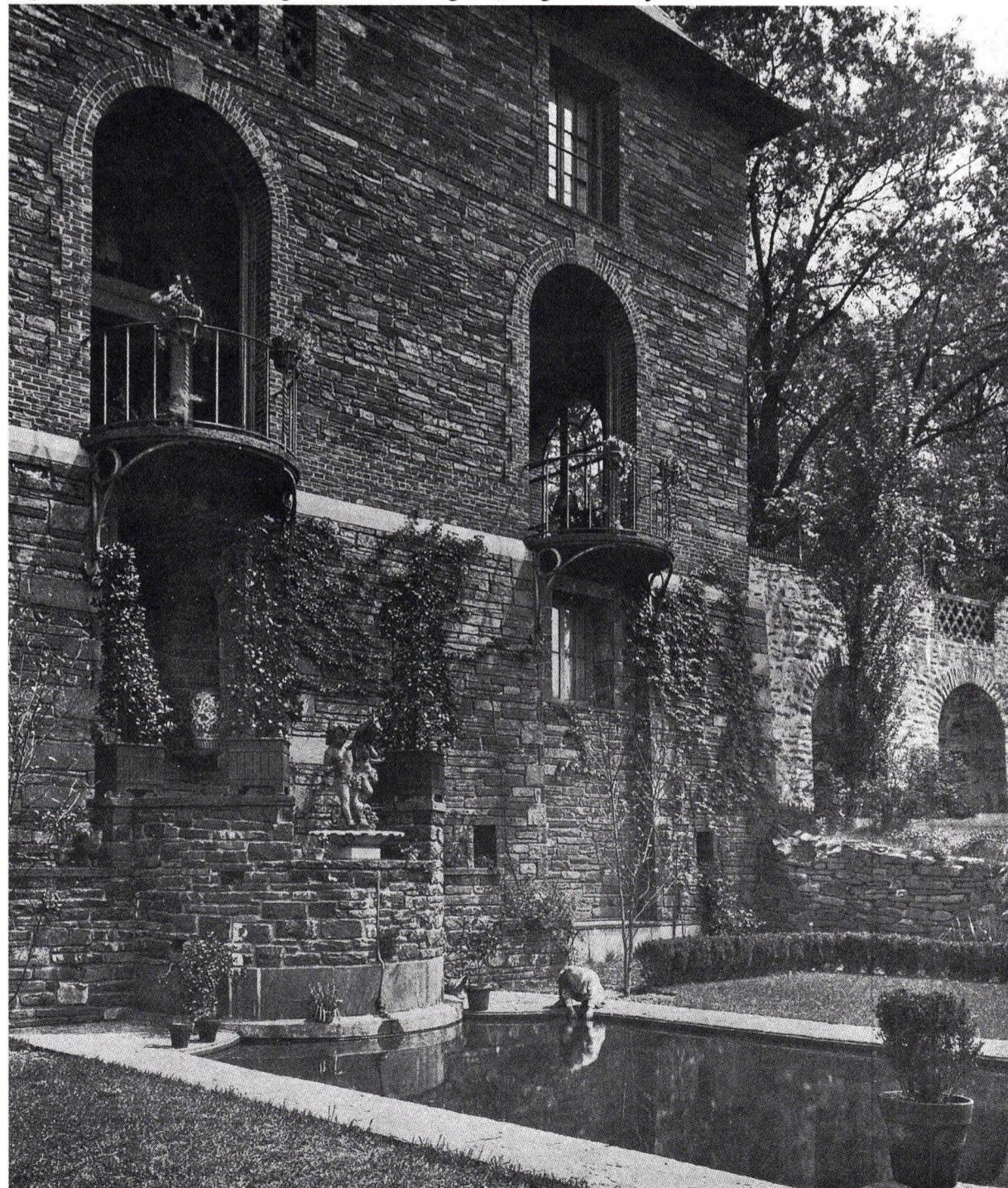
II. High Hollow — The Home of George Howe, Chestnut Hill, Pa.

In 1913 Howe designed and built his home, High Hollow, on a secluded site bordering Fairmount Park and overlooking the Wissahickon Valley in Chestnut Hill, a pastoral railroad suburb located within the city limits of Philadelphia. Howe's skillful manipulation of the traditional central-hall floor plan created a dramatic central entry hall that enforces the interplay between the interior and exterior spaces of the building. (See site plan above.) The central entry hall of the family quarters offers two views of the gardens and the Wissahickon Valley below. As one enters the hall, an arched opening frames the northern vista from the entry-hall balcony and an open descending stairway connects the entry to a ground-floor balcony that overlooks the lower garden and Fairmount Park. (See balcony and garden photo above). The first-floor windows are glass doors that slide into the walls for direct access to the western upper terrace and afford an unobstructed view of the Wissahickon Valley. The second-floor bedrooms facing Fairmount



High Hollow site plan, which shows Howe's skillful manipulation of the traditional central-hall plan.

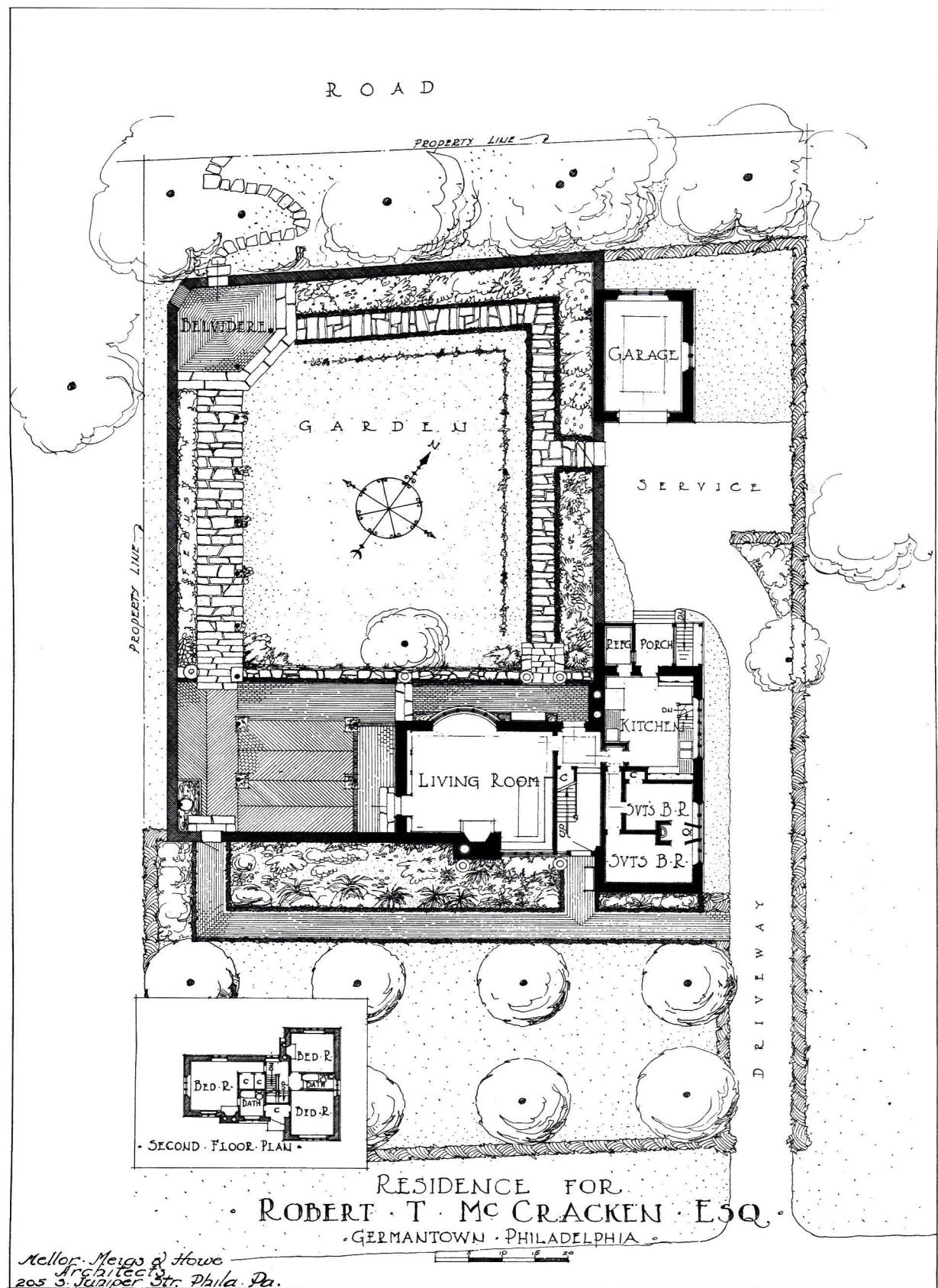
High Hollow rear elevation, showing balconies and lower garden, along with walls of local stone intermixed with brick.



Park are connected by a Serlian-arched open loggia, providing a third vista of the valley below. (See balcony and garden photo above.)

High Hollow also demonstrates Howe's ability to transform the massing and nuances of vernacular building into an architecture that is a balanced yet lively mixture of different building types and materials. The walls of High Hollow are laid up in a local

multi-colored stone with brick stringcourses. The brick edges at the jambs and heads of the masonry openings and the steeply pitched roof evoke the feeling of a Norman farmhouse. At the same time, High Hollow has the appearance of an Italian villa with its lower garden fountain and pool, deeply recessed arched first-floor windows, and second-floor Serlian-arched loggia capped with a pedimented



Mellor, Meigs & Howe

Architects
205 S. Juniper St., Phila. Pa.

McCracken site plan is based on a series of tightly integrated multi-level spaces.

McCracken front elevation, showing how the living room wall merges into the high garden wall.



gable. The western terrace and its stone base with semi-circular recesses suggest the garden terrace of the Villa Madama. Howe's imaginative and resourceful combination of French, Italian, and local elements in High Hollow created a startlingly unique yet colloquial building. Robert A.M. Stern called High Hollow "the standard for fashionable country design around Philadelphia.... Often imitated, this

beautiful house, certainly a minor masterpiece, was never surpassed by Howe or by the many architects who came to design in his manner."

III. The Robert T. McCracken Residence, Germantown, Pa.

Although the Robert T. McCracken residence is a small house built with a modest budget, it is one of

the finest building and landscape ensembles designed by Mellor, Meigs & Howe. Using simple and direct means, Arthur Meigs created a variety of tightly integrated multi-leveled terraces, gardens, and exterior spaces. This Wissahickon schist-stone house is a T in plan with the long dimension parallel to a public street. (See site plan at left.) To the right, a driveway leads back to a service court with a garage connected to the house by a stepped wall that screens the edge of a terraced garden. The exterior wall of the living room merges into a high stone garden wall parallel to the street, which buffers the rear of the house and the garden from the road. The garden walls of the living room continue along the perimeter of the property, creating a garden room with pergola adjacent to the living room and enclosing the sunken garden. Nestled in the corner of the garden is an open hexagonal-shaped Belvedere for viewing the gardens and house.

Always focused on the art of constructing buildings, Mellor, Meigs & Howe experimented with the expressive treatment of materials. The first-floor windows have heavy wood-plank lintels and the second-floor windows have rough monolithic stone lintels quarried on the site. The concrete lintel and quoins of an exterior door were cast on site using rough lumber forms to texture the surface of the concrete, and were tinted to resemble limestone. Interior doors are made of vertical planks and horizontal battens secured with iron pegs and hung with strap hinges and pintles driven into the door jamb. The street facade of the living room has a projecting chimney with flanking eyebrow and gable dormers as its principal feature. The chimney is battered stone until it breaks the eave line and then changes to brick. The palette of vernacular materials enhances the rural character of the building.

"These architects are prophets because they preach an artistic truth in commercial times and put it into practice...."

— Owen Wister, *Preface, A Monograph of the Work of Mellor, Meigs & Howe*

On the preface page of the monograph is a quote from Cicero's *De Officiis*, which summarizes Mellor, Meigs & Howe's commitment to the innovative use of classical and traditional precedent and their conviction that it is the responsibility of each generation of architects to study the past, to improve the forms and methods that the past has given them, and having done so, to share this knowledge with the next generation of architects. The quote is "*Pati ab igne ignem capere, si quis velit*" and means "To let somebody light the fire from our fire, if he really wants to." This belief in a continuum of architectural thought and evolution was expressed by George Howe, who felt that the architect's "aim must be to contribute ... to the creation, not just of architecture ... but of an architectural style, expressive and worthy of our time. A great style is not made by uttering words.... A great style is not made at all. It is discovered by a host of explorers with their minds and hearts full of the thoughts and feelings of their day. When it is discovered, it becomes the property of the whole culture, to draw on as it wills...." The buildings and landscapes created by Walter Mellor, Arthur Meigs, and George Howe are the legacy of their discovery of "an architectural style, expressive and worthy of our time." *A Monograph of the Work of Mellor, Meigs & Howe* is both a record of their exploration as well as an inspirational guide for contemporary designers who wish to create enduring buildings and landscapes of great refinement and imagination. ♦

James S. Collins is a practicing architect in New York City and Greensboro, N.C., who designs new traditional buildings and interiors as well as appropriate additions to existing residential, institutional, and historic structures. He has taught the practice and theory of architecture and interior design at Moore College of Art and Design, The Institute of Classical Architecture, and Parsons School of Design. He is the author of the new introduction to *A Monograph of the Work of Mellor, Meigs & Howe* recently re-issued by Architectural Book Publishing Company.

WEB ADDRESS BOOK

Here's a quick reference to the web addresses of suppliers of Historically Styled Residential Products, organized by major CSI divisions. See also the web addresses of advertisers in this issue on page 72.

Landscape, Garden & Patio

Aristone Concrete Designs

www.aristonadesigns.com

Precast Columns, Balustrades, Mantels, Moldings & Pots

Classic Garden Products, Inc.

www.theclassicgarden.com

The Finest Teak Garden Furniture

Gardensheds

www.gardensheds.com

Hand-crafted Outbuildings Delivered to Your Site

Images in Slate

www.iis.ca

Slate Signage & Plaques

Limestone Concept, Inc.

www.limestoneconcept.com

Stone Carving, Imported Limestone & Terra Cotta

Rossato Giovanni, srl/
Vicenza Stone Sculpture

www.vicenzastone.com

Fountains, Statues, Planters, Urns, Gazebos, Wells

Stone, Masonry & Chimneys

Architectural Castings

www.architecturalcastings.com

Cast-Stone Fireplaces, Columns, Balustrades, Moldings

ProTech Systems/Ventinox

www.protechinfo.com

The Leaders in Venting Technology

Ornamental Metalwork

Chelsea Decorative Metal

www.thetinman.com

Pressed-Tin for Ceilings. Elegant & Nostalgic

Liberty Brass Turning Company

www.libertybrass.com

Turned Parts in all Metals, Brass & Aluminum Bars in Stock

New Star Brass & Bronze Works, Inc.

www.railingsbynewstar.com

Custom Fabricators of Metal Rails

Woodwork, Timber, Barns

America Heart Pine

www.americaheartpine.com

New, Antique Wide Plank, Long Lengths, Domestic & Exotic

Amish Timber Framers Inc.

www.amishtimberframers.com

Timber-Frame Buildings & Heavy Timber Trusses

Art Pappas Antiques

www.artpappas.com

Antique Building Materials, Flooring, Mantels, Doors, Etc.

Bear Creek Lumber

www.bearcreeklumber.com

CVG Fir, Hemlock, Red or Yellow Cedar - All Sizes

Chadsworth's 1.800.Columns

www.columns.com

Columns, Pillars, Pilasters & Posts

Connolly & Co. Timber Frame
Homes & Barns

www.connollytimberframes.com

Crafting & Erecting Fine Timber-Frame Homes

Cumberland Woodcraft Co.

www.cumberlandwoodcraft.com

Victorian Millwork - Screen Doors - Mantels

Custom Shutters, Inc.

www.customshutters.com

Custom Interior Hardwood Plantation Shutters

Davis Frame Co.

www.davisframe.com

Authentic, Hand-crafted Timber-Framed Homes

Hunter Timber Frame Structures

members.tripod.com/huntertimberframe/

Frames for You to Assemble

Maine Barn Company

www.mainebarnccompany.com

Timber-Frame Barns in the New England Tradition

Sierra Stair Company

www.sierrastair.com

Custom Stairs, Stair Parts & Decorative Millwork

Timber Frames by R.A. Krouse

www.mainetimberframes.com

Joining Timber-Frame Structures, Homes, Barns, etc.

Roofing & Roof Specialties

EcoStar Inc.

www.ecostarinc.com

Premium Lightweight Imitation Slate

Liberty Cedar

www.libertycedar.com

Naturally Decay-Resistant Exterior Wood Products

M-5 Steel Mfg.

www.m5steel.com

Sheetmetal Fabricators for the Construction Industry

The Clarke Group

www.cedarplus.com

Premium Cedar Shakes & Shingles

Weber Metals, Inc.

www.webmetals.com

Architectural Sheetmetal Fabricator & Distributor

Doors, Windows & Hardware

Executive Door Company

www.executedoor.com

Manufactures of Lifetime Warranted Solid MDF-Doors

Finials by John Ragsdale

www.ragsdalefinials.com

Decorative Drapery Hardware: Unfinished or Custom Painted

Horton Brasses Inc.

www.hortonbrasses.com

Antique Reproduction Furniture & Cabinet Hardware

Kaylien, Inc.

www.kayliendoors.com

World's Most Elegant Residential & Fire-Rated Doors

Nanz Custom Hardware, Inc.

www.nanz.com

Custom High-End Period Door & Window Hardware

www.beveldoor.com

www.stainedglassdoor.com

Custom Beveled & Stained-Glass Doors

Window Saver Company

www.windowsaver.com

Interior Storm-Window Kits

Materials for Finished Surfaces

Balmer Architectural Moldings

www.balmer.com

Molding Architectural Art Since 1835

Bradbury & Bradbury Art Wallpapers

www.bradbury.com

Historic Victorian and Arts & Crafts Wallpapers

[CountryPlank.com](http://www.countryplank.com)

www.countryplank.com

Solid T&G Plank Flooring in New & Reclaimed Woods

European Ceiling Designs

www.ceilingdesigns.com

Ornamental Ceiling Designs

Brian Greer's Tin-Ceilings,
Walls & Unique Metalwork

www.tin-ceilings.com

Tin-Ceilings, Molding, Filler, Cornices, & Unique Metalwork

MB Historic Decor

www.mbhistoricdecor.com

Early American Stencils, Walls & Floors, Paints & Brushes

National Hardwood Flooring & Moulding

www.nationalhardwood.com

Hardwood Flooring, Moulding, Stairparts, Fireplace Mantels

North Prairie Tileworks

www.handmadetile.com

Complete, Made-to-Order Ceramic Tile

Plyboo America Inc.

www.plyboo-america.com

Bamboo Flooring & Accessories

Stockton Heartwoods Ltd.

www.heartwoods.com

Antique Flooring & Timbers/Beams

Wide Plank International Flooring Inc.

www.wideplank.com

Custom-Milled Wide-Plank Floors

Architectural Antiques & Salvaged Building Materials

Architectural Salvage Warehouse

www.architecturalsalvagevt.com

We Buy & Sell Architectural Antiques Of All Kinds

Architectural Salvage, Inc.
www.oldhousesalvage.com

Old-House Parts Dealer, Mantels, Hardware, Etc.

Fireplaces & Mantels

Boneyard Salvage Inc.
www.boneyardsalvage.com

Architectural Antique Salvage Web Portal

Fires of Tradition
www.firesoftradition.com

English Fireplace Castings & Tiles, Mantels: Wood or Gas

Tartaruga Design, Inc.
www.tartarugadesign.com

Cortina Stone Mantel Piece & Architectural Detail Collection

The Wood Carver, Inc.
www.woodcarverinc.com

Hand-Carved Mahogany Fireplace Mantels

Valor Heating
www.valorflame.com

Fireplace Inserts, Gas & Electric Fireplaces

Art Glass, Sculpture, Mosaics & Murals

EasiDecor Designs
www.easidecor.com

Contract Manufacturer of Custom Stained Glass

Horton Brasses Inc.
www.hortonbrasses.com

Antique Reproduction Furniture & Cabinet Hardware

L'Atelier Deschler
www.deschler.com

Residential & Liturgical Sculptures

Painting in Partnership, Inc.
www.paintpartner.com

Int./Ext. Painting, Decorative Painting, Murals, Tapering

Elevators

Federal Elevator

www.federalelevator.com

Manufacturer of High-Quality Residential Elevators

Bath & Plumbing

Baths From The Past/Besco Plumbing

www.faucetfactory.com

Reproduction Kitchen, Bath & Custom Shower Systems

Hastings Tile & Il Bagno Collection

www.hastingtilebath.com

Fine Imported & Domestic Tile & Bath Furnishings

Rohl

www.rohlhome.com

Luxury Kitchen & Bath Fixtures & Fittings

Strom Plumbing by Sign of the Crab

www.signofthecrab.com

Period-Style Solid-Brass Plumbing & Hardware

Vintage Plumbing

www.vintageplumbing.com

Antique Bathroom Fixtures

Lighting

Bevolo Gas & Electric Lights

www.bevolo.com

The Original French Quarter Lantern

Hanover Lantern Inc.

www.hanoverlantern.com

Outdoor Cast-Aluminum Lighting Fixtures

PRODUCT LITERATURE

These suppliers will send free literature about historical products to PERIOD HOMES' professional readers. Write in the appropriate number on the postcard inside the front cover, or use the form below.

PROFESSIONAL SERVICES

5470. Exterior-Color Consultants — Consulting to Historic homes and businesses. Also, lecture services. Free brochure. *The Color People*

1340. Classical Architecture — Institute provides wide range of professional-level programs & events for honing skills in classical architecture. Membership flyer. *Institute of Classical Architecture*

8147. The PALLADIO PRIZE — Annual Award for Excellence in Traditional Design is awarded in 6 categories, both residential and public architecture, restoration and new construction. Send for entry data. *The PALLADIO PRIZE — Period Homes*

Preservation Craftspeople — Restoration trades exchange puts specifiers in touch with craftspeople with the highest levels of preservation skills. www.restorationtrades.com

3380. RESTORATION Show — Largest show and conference in North America for restoration and renovation. Send for information on upcoming events. *Restore Media Exhibitions*

501. Selling To Historical Market — List broker has the most extensive file of design and building professionals working in the restoration and construction fields. Free flyer. *The Information Refinery*

LANDSCAPE & GARDENS

7470. Pre-Cast Gazebos — As well as arbors, pergolas, balustrades, pavers, wall caps, columns, planters, stair treads, and fountains. Free brochure. *A&M Victorian Decorations*

95. Mailboxes & Site Furnishings — Cast-aluminum Victorian furniture, and a full line of lighting, bells, street clocks, planters, fountains, gates, & signage. *Am-Dia, Inc.*

900. Custom Fountian Builders — Design, construction, and restoration. Consultation for architects, engineers, designers; sells components & lighting. Free brochure. *Aquarius Waterworks, Inc.*

Fence Post Finials — Custom turning of fence post finials, newels, etc. Fence a specialty. Works from drawings or samples; no minimum. Call (617)-482-9085. *Boston Turning Works*

200. Brass Garden Ornaments — Statuary and fountains in the forms of figures, fish, frogs, swans, ducks, etc. Verdigris and bronze patinas. Free brochure. *Brass Baron*

1360. Copper Mailboxes — Timeless designs can be wall mounted; two types of poles available with torch-cut numbers. Free brochure. *Chaenomeles, Inc.*

8069. Forged Furniture and Accessories — Hand-forged beds, tables, lamps and other furnishings for hotels, lobbies, commercial and residential spaces. *Christopher Thomson Ironworks*

527. Exterior Accessories — Source of custom accessories such as mailboxes; weathervanes in copper or aluminum; address plaques in aluminum, bronze, or porcelain. Free literature. *Custom Home Accessories*

773. Garden Ornament — Antique garden ornaments (18th to 20th century), benches, urns, and fountains. Also, reproductions in cast stone. *DHS Designs*

2767. Cast-Metal Site Furnishings — Manufacturer of imported solid cast-metal lanterns, lamps, garden furniture, bollards, and signs. *Dalhaus USA*

891. Garden Design — Experienced in a wide range of traditional garden design, provides both design and construction-supervision services. *Davitt Garden Design*

2621. Garden & Landscape Products — Source of decorative outdoor products. *Decorative Outdoor Products*

3840. Water Displays & Consulting — Cascades, fountains, waterfalls, and water-control devices and engineering and consulting services. *Festive Fountains*

4390. Gazebos & Garden Ornament — Statuary, fountains, furniture, weathervanes, and accessories in metal and stone. *Florentine Craftsmen*

3850. Planter boxes — Fiberglass planters with drainage systems also hang easily for space saving. Free brochure. *Flower Framers*

1870. Conservatories — Wooden-framed conservatories in single-slope, gable, hip/valley, and octagonal shapes; lantern roofs and pyramidal skylights. Free brochure. *Glass House*

702. Redwood Post Caps — National distributor of post caps, finials, and plant stands; also, cedar arbors, pergolas, and gates. Free brochure. *Island Post Cap*

3068. Cast Stone — Planters, urns, jardineres, and table bases. *Kaleh Design Collection Stone*

500. Clay-Tile Pavers — Custom-matched clay tile and pavers; glazed and unglazed floor, wall, and counter tiles; residential & commercial. Free literature. *London Tile Co.*

3010. Paving System — 11 colors available in premix or concentrate form for brush or spray application. Free brochure. *Mortex Mfg. Co., Inc.*

3780. Outdoor Drinking Fountains — Period outdoor fountains and hydrants. Free brochure. *Murdock, Inc.*

5980. Sandstone and Dry-Cast Stone Planters — Manufacturer of sandstone and dry-cast cast-stone containers and planters. Free brochure. *Nichols Bros. Stoneworks*

6860. Custom Conservatories — Elegant English conservatories, custom-built and hand-crafted in glass, wood, and metals. Attention to details, including windows, roof-line, and fine materials. *Oak Leaf Conservatories*

3660. Paving Systems — Equipment for the paver and retaining wall industries: Rigid and flexible edge systems, installation tools, cleaners, sealers, and adhesives. Free brochure. *Pave Tech/Probst*

5130. Brick Products — Pavers, face brick, special shapes, and interlocking pavers with beveled and textured edges. Free brochure. *Pine Hall Brick*

Hobby & Commercial Greenhouses — Conservatories, soloriums, and greenhouses, including English Victorian styles. Also, conservatory renovation. Call: 800-287-4769. *Private Garden*

378. Custom Conservatories — Sunrooms, conservatories, and greenhouses in redwood or mahogany; delivered pre-assembled; solid-brass hardware; double-insulated glazing and other glazing options. *Renaissance Conservatories*

5010. Rustic Garden & Woodland Structures — Eastern red cedar creations in the Romantic tradition, including benches, arbors, and bridges. Free brochure. *Romancing The Woods*

6110. Vicenza Stone Elements — Classic carved stone garden elements, including sculpture, urns, planters, and mantels. Free brochure. *Vicenza Stone Sculptures*

8069. Decorative Stone — Specializes in garden fountains for residential and commercial applications. *Savannah Hardscapes*

5500. Imported Terra Cotta — Large variety of ornamented Italian urns, planters, flower boxes, and vases. Free brochure. *Seibert & Rice*

1108. Granite Garden Sculpture — Fountains, sculpture, plinths, and other garden ornament. Free brochure. *Stone Forest*

8030. Glass Sunrooms — Aluminum and glass sunrooms up to 16 ft. deep; insulating glass in straight or curved-eave design. Free flyer. *Sunbilt Solar Products*

5006. Sunrooms — Company manufactures sunrooms and skylights. Free brochure. *Sunshine Rooms*

8077. Fasteners for Outdoor Construction — A full line of stainless steel and copper alloy fasteners for outdoor construction. *Swan Secure Products*

709. Copper Garden Elements — Arbors, trellises, and custom projects for gardens and landscapes. Free brochure. *Sycamore Creek*

711. Bronze Site Furnishings — Garden furniture and site

to 50 in. in diameter and up to 35 ft. long. Matching pilasters and 14 styles of capitals. Maintenance-free aluminum bases available. Custom work. Free catalog. **Schwerd Mfg.**

6830. Movable Louver Shutters — For interiors and exteriors. Also, heart pine flooring. Free brochure. **Shutter Depot**

4030. Architectural Woodcarving — Mantels, moldings, furniture, replication, and restoration work. Free brochure. **Sonrise Woodcarving Studio**

5650. Architectural Wood Columns — Wood columns and capitals; species include pine, redwood, oak maple, and cherry. Free brochure. **Spartan Architectural Columns**

138. Moldings — Standard and non-standard moldings in any size, shape, and species. Free brochure. **Superior Moulding, Inc.**

1056. Western Red Cedar Shutters — Manufacturer of fixed-louver, raised-panel, and recessed-panel shutters and shutter hardware. **Timberlane Woodcrafters**

8540. Timber Frames — Fabrication of many kinds of traditional timber-framed structures in multiple wood species, including reclaimed timbers. Nationwide. **Vermont Timber Frames**

1061. Victorian Woodworks — Gingerbread, porch parts, and other interior and exterior wood parts featured in their large catalog. **Vintage Wood Works**

1099. Custom Moldings — Over 100 embossed architectural profiles in stock. Curved and radius moldings. Free brochure. **White River Hardwoods**

7120. Victorian Millwork — Screen doors, porch parts, custom woodwork, moldings, ornamental trim, and gingerbread of all types fabricated from original period patterns. Free catalog. **Wood Factory**

5240. Wood Carvings — Architectural elements including stair parts, capitals, posts, corbels. Free brochure. **Woodline Company**

ROOFING & ROOF SPECIALTIES

2723. Imported Slate — Source of a wide range of slate for roofing; nationwide shipping. Free brochure. **American Slate Co.**

2532. Roof-Drainage Systems — Manufacturer of commercial and residential roof-drainage systems in all metals. Also, roof trims and accessories; soffit-ventilation systems; snow guards for all roof types. **Berger Bros. Building Products**

2901. Ridge Vents — Company supplies ridge vents for slate roofs. **Castle Metal Products**

6650. Shingles — Carriage House Shingles measure 18 in. by 36 in. with 50 shingles per sq. Can be used with the Grand Manor Shingle to create historic shingle effects. **CertainTeed Corp. Carriage House Shingle**

1348. Roofing Contractor — Custom design, fabrication, and reproduction of skylights; restoration of slate, asphalt, and flat roofs. **Charles River Restoration Co.**

410. Chimney Pots — Antique chimney pots in English and American styles: terra cotta, glazed, and unglazed. Free brochure. **Chimney Pot Shoppe**

1280. Gutter Products — Seamless half-round gutters in copper and heavy aluminum; compatible with hidden nut-&-bolt hanging system. Free brochure. **Commercial Gutter Systems**

2000. Leader Boxes and Rain Gutters — Copper rain gutters, custom gutter profiles. Also, leader heads, bronze brackets, and patinas. Free brochure. **Copperworks of Don Miller**

3720. Slate & Copper Work — Specialist in restoration. Also offers wood-gutter restoration and sheetmetal roofing. Free brochure. **Durable Slate Co.**

7220. Slate Roofing & Flooring — Importer and distributor of roofing and flooring slate in about 50 different colors. Can ship on short notice. Free literature. **Echeguren Slate, Inc.**

601. Fiber-Cement Slate — Textured or smooth finished imported fiber-cement slates. Large and small rectangular sizes available, various edges and colors. **Eternit, Inc.**

605. Vermont Roofing Slate — Natural roofing slate in a wide range of colors, sizes, and weights. Can match slates for additions and restoration projects. **Evergreen Slate Co.**

9270. Fiber-Cement Shingles — Slates, shakes, and shingles in styles including traditional Victorian hexagonal, twin-lap, and Dutch lap. Free brochure. **GAF Materials Corp.**

2612. Architectural Copper — Supplier of architectural copper work and slate, tile, and copper roofing. Snow guards a specialty. **Gough & Bros. Snoguards**

8052. Gutters — Supplies a gutter attachment to prevent clogged gutters. **Gutter Topper**

9950. Roofing Slate — New York and Vermont roofing slate in all colors is available from seven quarries. Specialist in replacement slate for restoration. Free brochure. **Hilltop Slate Co.**

644. "The Slate Roof Bible" — Book by Joseph Jenkins provides information on slate roofs — including how to keep slate roofs in good shape for years to come. Write in for more information. **Jenkins Publishing Co.**

3171. Steeplejacks — Steeplejack service specializes in slate and tile roofs, church roof and steeple repair. **Leeland's Slate Roof/Steeple Specialist**

3023. Roofing — Breathable membrane for roofs. Appropriate for pitched roofs. **Liner Rolpanit Inc.**

8300. Metal-Roof Restoration — Nationwide roofing con-

tractor offers extensive experience in sheetmetal fabrication and restoration. Free brochure. **NIKO Contracting**

4040. Clay Roofing Products — One-stop shopping for all clay roofing tiles and related architectural clay products. All profiles, colors, finishes. Handmade cresting and chimney pots. Free brochure. **Northern Roof Tile Sales**

9560. Authentic Slate — Roofing and flooring products. Also offers largest inventory of new & used Ludowici inventory. Free brochure. **Roof Tile and Slate**

8067. Slate Roofing — Supplier of natural slate for roofing. Also custom cut and polished slate for flooring and landscaping. **Scotia Slate**

9340. Roofing Slate — Major source of roofing slate in many colors; both domestic and imported slates. Free brochure. **Slate International**

8062. Gutter Systems — Suppliers of gutter systems. Also, ridge cresting, finials, cupolas, dormers, dormer vents, downspout brackets, decorative copper, conductor boxes, and slate-roofing materials. **Slate and Copper Co.**

8071. Roofing Products — Manufacturer of gutters, cornices and metal-roof edge products. **Southern Aluminum Co.**

546. Cedar Shingles — Western red cedar shingles for roofing and siding. Also, remanufactured shingles and classic-butt shingles. **Teal Cedar Products**

4570. Tile Roofs — Specialist in clay-tile roofs; supplies both new & antique tile, consultation & installation. Free brochure. **Tile Roofs, Inc.**

3870. Metal Roof Thatch — Easy-to-install metal shingles create the look of tropical thatch for structures in any climate. Free brochure. **Tropic Top**

2840. Roofing Tile — 50-year warranty on lightweight concrete roofing tile. Rough shake, Spanish Mission, Riviera, and slate styles. Custom colors & shapes. Free details. **Vande Hey Roofing**

8065. Rain-Gutter Supplier — Produces metal rain-carrying and metal roofing systems for residential, commercial and industrial institutions. Also, gutters, chains, leaders, and roofing tools. **Weather Guard Building Products**

DOORS, WINDOWS, HARDWARE

1265. Historic Restoration Windows — Custom windows and doors with AWI premium-grade construction. Replacement and storm and screen sash a specialty. **Adams Architectural Wood Products**

690. Invisible Storm Windows — Match any window shape or color; removable storm windows available inside- or outside-mounted; screen and glass panels. Fixed, magnetic, sliding, or lift-out styles. Free brochure. **Allied Window**

2930. Authentic Restoration Hardware — Largest selection of authentic 18th- and 19th-century hardware: hinges, latches, pulls, shutter hardware, and much more. Also, custom work and repairs. Free mini-catalog. **Ball & Ball**

519. MDF Doors — Solid, one-piece MDF doors available in any design or size, with or without raised moldings. Free literature. **Bolection Door**

9600. Wood Screen Doors — Available in many styles and any size. Choices of woods includes pine, Douglas fir, oak, and mahogany, stained or painted. Free brochure. **Coppa Woodworking**

6980. Arts & Crafts-Style Hardware — Hand-hammered hardware; copper, bronze, and brass sash lifts; door knobs, handles, and more. Free brochure. **Craftsmen Hardware Co.**

432. Historic Hardware — Door, window, cabinet, transom, and specialty hardware in period styles including Victorian, Arts & Crafts, Colonial, and Art Deco. **Crown City Hardware**

Replacement Sash — Any size or layout: circle, oval, round-top, Gothic. Sash or complete window unit. Custom moldings, doors, and millwork to specs. Call: 570-788-1145. **Drums Sash & Door**

2260. Fine Architectural Hardware — Door hardware, bath fittings, cabinet & furniture mounts, lighting, etc. All metals and all periods. Free brochure. **E.R. Butler & Co.**

1067. Wood Windows & Doors — Historical, commercial, and residential work; any wood, size, and glazing material. Free brochure. **H.I.C. Millwork, Inc.**

6640. Traditional Garage Doors — Specialists in custom wood garage doors. Free brochure. **Hahn's Woodworking, Inc.**

276. Carriage House Doors — Custom woodwork, including mantels, casework, and wall units. Free brochure. **Hazlemere Industries, Inc.**

3570. Custom Doors & Entryways — Circular moldings for interior or exterior applications. Also, historic restoration work. Free brochure. **Hendricks Woodworking**

1350. Wood Doors — Interior and exterior doors in Honduras mahogany and red oak. **Heritage Door**

4830. Custom Aluminum Windows — Specializes in new and replacement aluminum windows for churches; custom windows for stained and leaded glass. **J. Sussman, Inc.**

1240. Shutter Hardware — Specialist in shutter hinges, shutter dogs (holdbacks), shutter bolts, and shutter ring pulls. Free literature. **Peters & Son**

488. Windows & Doors — Custom windows and doors; true divided-lite, mortise-and-tenon construction. Free brochure. **Joseph Millworks**

Custom-Forged Hardware — Full-service blacksmithing shop custom-produces hardware, fireplace tools, etc. Repair and restoration specialists. For catalog or details, call 828-667-8868. **Kayne & Son**

4574. Screen Porch System — Fabricated from Honduras

Mahogany. Removable panel screen porch enclosure with an option for glass. Custom designed for all applications. **Kingsland Co.**

4573. Custom Wood Doors & Entries — Custom designs in Honduras Mahogany; full range of glazing options, including art glass and insulated glass. **Kingsland Co.**

9210. Custom Windows & Doors — Architectural millwork shop specializes in custom windows and doors for restoration and new construction. **Michael Reilly Design**

2800. Hand-Cast Door Hardware — Authentic high-quality reproductions of period door and shutter hardware. Free brochure. **D.C. Mitchell Ent.**

1150. High-End Period Hardware — Manufacturers and suppliers of door hardware from 19th-c. European to Moderne and Deco styles. Free brochure. **Nanz Custom Hardware**

Screen Door Hardware — Premium-quality traditionally styled screen door knobs and latches along with solid bronze screening. Call 802-257-4314. **Phelps Co./Architectural Specialties**

6001. Traditional Window & Door Hardware — High-end, high-quality door & window hardware, including pulleys and weights, is manufactured to precision specs. Free brochure. **Phelps Company/Architectural Specialties**

5720. Doors — Doors for restoration; custom molded profiles; beveled, stained, and etched glass. **Sun-Dor Company**

8410. Unused Antique Hardware — Original 19th- and early-20th-century hardware for windows, doors, shutters, etc. Stock always changes. Free brochure. **Wm. J. Rigby Co.**

9640. Wood Doors & Windows — Full range of millwork services from authentic restoration to custom design & production. Skilled at recreating historic windows and doors. Free flyer. **Wood Window Workshop**

8430. Specialty Wood Windows — Palladians, straight, and fan transoms. Single-, double-, or triple-glazed, thin muntins. Also, solid-wood doors with insulating core. Free brochure. **Woodstone Co.**

6920. Landmark Window Work — Duplication capabilities for any window or door requiring landmark approval. Monumental sizes, and special shapes and glazing options. Free brochure. **Zeluck Doors and Windows**

FLOORS, WALLS, CEILINGS, ORNAMENT

8920. Tin Ceilings — 26 Victorian and Art Deco tin-ceiling patterns. 2x8-, 2x4-, and 2x2-ft. panels for nail-up or lay-in. 13 cornices; pre-cut miters. 2x2-ft. center medallions. Free literature. **A.A. Abbingdon**

3158. Ceramic Tile — Hand-painted Dutch tile in Victorian, Dutch, and other styles. Free brochure. **Amsterdam Corp.**

8047. Decorative Finishing School — Licensed school of decorative finishes for professionals. Products include Aqua Finishing Solutions, scaffolds, ladders, stencils and books. **Anything But Plain**

8230. Arts & Crafts Fabrics — Reproduction or custom-designed textiles: yardage, curtains, pillows, bedspreads, table linens, and scarves. Free brochure. **Arts & Crafts Period Textiles**

825. Ornamental Plaster — Work on theaters, religious buildings, commercial and high-end residential spaces; molding-making services. **Boro Plastering Corp.**

Victorian Roomset Wallpaper — Vast array of borders, fills, and patterns. Catalog shows 10 roomsets including Neo-Grec, Arts & Crafts, Morris, Aesthetic Movement. Catalog \$10; call (707) 746-1900. **Bradbury & Bradbury**

5580. Custom Wood Flooring — Paneling and flooring in species including white pine, red oak, heart pine, Southern yellow pine, and cherry. Free brochure. **Carlisle Restoration Lumber**

1275. "Aged Enhanced" Floors — Wood flooring with an antique patina. Free brochure. **Christopher D. Hess, Inc.**

2522. Classic Plasterwork — Studio designs, manufactures, and installs plaster ornament as well as providing finishing painting. **Classic Plaster Studios**

7940. Terra Cotta — Manufacturer of architectural terracotta ceramics for mantels, paving, and flooring. **Claystone Architectural Ceramics**

250. Historic Tiles — For fireplaces, kitchens, or bath: coordinated borders and patterns in any size. Victorian, Neoclassic, De Morgan, Art Nouveau, Arts & Crafts, and more. Period pavers. Colorful catalog. **Designs In Tile**

112. Resawn Planks & Beams — Flooring, paneling, and custom millwork from recycled timbers, shipped nationwide. **Duluth Timber Co.**

3140. Delft Tiles — Traditional blue or polychromed sceneries, botanicals, animals, and tradespeople. Free flyer. **Dutch Product & Supply Co.**

8049. Venetian Plaster — Distributor of San Marco products for Venetian plaster and European stuccos. **Edile**

2460. Historic Painting — Major studio with extensive restoration and original design experience. Services range from research and analysis to trompe l'oeil, graining, and gilding. Free literature. **EverGreene Painting Studios**

4690. Faux-Finishing Products — Manufacturer/supplier of water-based decorative and faux products. Also offers classes. Free brochure. **Faux Effects**

1960. Plaster Ornament — Hundreds of ornaments in fiber-reinforced plaster from Turn-of-the-Century molds. Also, custom duplication of ornament from your sample. Free flyer. **Fischer & Jirouch Co.**

8051. Decorative Tile — High-fire relief decorative tile with a wide selection kitchen and bath images available. **Fresh Fish**

Ceramics

1297. Ceramics & Custom Tile — Designer and manufacturer of custom tile, relief works of art. Free brochure. **Goose-neck Designs**

8046. Designer Stencils — Manufacturer of unique designer stencils for interior decoration. Available for use on walls, ceilings, floors and furniture. **Hooe, Ltd.**

8066. Venetian Plaster & Finishes — Manufactures & imports specialty plaster finishes. Representing Algali lime plasters and paints for Milan, Italy; Tierrafino natural clay plasters for Amsterdam. **Hopper Specialty Finishes**

4910. Historic Pigments — Recreate the exact look of historic finishes through the use of authentic earth pigments and colors. **Kremer Pigments**

703. Exterior Elements — Cornices, balustrades, columns, capitals, brackets, and more in polymers and cast stone. **Manor Style, Inc.**

8057. Decorative Wall Tile — Custom handcrafted flat and relief wall tiles inspired by the decorative arts. **Margaret Licha Designs**

2821. Roman Reproductions — Mosaics that are reproductions of Roman patterns; borders, panels, and inserts. Custom work available. **Metro Inter Co.**

570. Tile & Ceramics — Custom tile & glazes. Also Batchelder and Malibu tile reproductions. 10 years' experience. Free brochure. **Native Tile and Ceramics**

6100. Ceramic Tile — Hand-painted and custom relief tile, friezes, and murals; reproductions and glaze matching. Also, terra-cotta tile. Free literature. **Nocera Art Tiles**

793. Ceramic Tile — Custom color matching and reproductions of antique tile; new tile designs, including Arts & Crafts-influenced relief tile. Free brochure. **North Prairie Tileworks**

5880. True Milk Paint — Eight colors of milk paint, including barn red, mustard, and Federal blue. Mix with water. **Old Fashioned Milk Paint Co.**

8058. Decorative Painting — Interior and Exterior decorative painting, murals and trompe l'oeil. Manufacturer of custom wallcoverings. Specializes in gilding, faux finishes and lettering. **Optic Nerve Art Corp.**

8059. Authentic Milk Paint — Traditional milk paints. Environmentally-safe qualities and earthy colors. **Real Milk Paint**

2880. Gold-Leaf Supplies — Gold leaf in booklets or rolls, oil sizes, Kolner burnishing clays for water gilding, imitation gold & aluminum leaves & rolls. Free brochure. **Sepp Leaf Products**

650. Architectural Molding Materials — Molding compounds can be used on-site, and are readily pourable or brushable for painting onto vertical surfaces. Free brochure. **Smooth-On**

922. Venetian Plaster — Architectural surfaces and surfacing processes. Also, workshops on these techniques, including Venetian plaster. **The TexSton Company**

2627. Hand-Painted Tile — Ceramic and stoneware tiles decorated with traditional Iznik designs and colors. Free brochure. **Tiles of Iznik/Timok**

2221. Decorative Finishes — Specializes in restoration and preservation of decorative finishes. Interior faux finishes, gold leafing, murals, woodgraining and marbleizing. **Touch's of Illusion**

399. Metal Leaf Products — Gold leaf, silver leaf, aluminum leaf, and other gilding products and supplies; from Germany, Italy, and the U.S. **W.H. Coe, Inc.**

8064. Wood Floor Finishes — Fine tung oil products since 1916. Specializes in oil and water-based finishes for wood floors. **Waterlox**

2842. Relief & Custom Tile — Tile studio produces handmade relief and custom tiles for fireplaces, inserts, and more. Free brochure. **Winged Dog Tile**

SPECIALTIES: Fireplaces, Cupolas, Bird Control

5032. Cupolas, Belfries, Steeples — Shop specializes in custom cupolas, belfries, and steeples. Also, solid-redwood predrilled lamp posts with handmade copper lanterns; weather-vanes, finials, and cresting in copper. **Architectural Accents**

1352. Bird Repellents — A complete line of bird-control products, including Adios Bird Repellant, a clear, sticky gel that is non-toxic to birds and people. **Bird-B-Gone**

3230. Bird and Pest Repellants — Non-toxic chemical roost-inhibitors, visual and sound pest-inhibitors, barriers, and more. **Bird-X Inc.**

107. Weathervanes, Cupolas, & Finials — Extensive catalog with a large selection of weathervanes and roof ornament; custom design and crafting available. **Crosswinds Gallery**

5011. Fireplaces, Mantels & More — Stoves, pre-fab fireplaces, wood-burning fireplaces, gas-burning fireplaces, and high-efficiency fireplaces. **Custom Fireplaces & More**

9100. Carved Stone Mantels — Skilled carvers and sculptors create statuary, ornament, mantels, entrances, and architectural moldings. Reproductions in marble, limestone, or bronze. Free brochure. **DMS Studios**

3153. Mantels — Georgian, Victorian, and other period-style mantels. **Eron Johnson Antiques**

5390. Architectural Mantels — French tradition, from Gothic to contemporary. Products include fountains, columns, moldings, benches, etc. Free brochure. **Limestone Concept**

1264. Cupolas, Vents, Louvers — Stock or custom cupolas

and vents. Finials, spires, and weathervanes in many shapes and sizes. **New Concept Louvers**

370. Pigeon Control — Get rid of bird pests with inconspicuous stainless-steel needles that eliminate roosts — without harming the building. Humane and practical. Free flyer. **Nix-alite**

282. Cast-Stone Mantels — New line of fireplace mantels; technical assistance for installations. **Old World Stoneworks**

9067. Cast-Stone Mantels — That look and feel like cut limestone. Free brochure. **Stone Magic Mfg.**

5024. Mantels — Stock and custom mantel designs; custom work, including cast-stone interior elements. **Tartaruga Design**

ARTWORK & SPECIALTIES

4590. Architectural Casting — Cast-plaster sculpture and other architectural elements, including interior cornices, capitals, wall plaques, and ornamentation. Free brochure. **Architectural Sculpture Ltd.**

8048. Custom Murals — Custom murals, trompe l'oeil and ceiling painting on canvas for simple installation in residential and commercial properties. **Cheryl Parsons Designs**

903. Muralist — Artist Dianne Warner specializes in murals, painted floors, inlaid floors, glazing, and gilding. **Dianne Warner Studio**

187. Bronze & Stone Sculpture — Cast and carved sculpture in cast bronze, cast aluminum, carved limestone, marble, granite, and more; sculptor works in the classical tradition. **Gerald Siciliano**

4770. Murals & Trompe L'oeil — On site or on canvas; also consultation, design. Wide range of clients. **Grand Illusion**

2527. Trompe L'oeil Murals — Studio specializes in trompe l'oeil murals for the hospitality market. **Guided Imagery**

1267. Glass Dome Ceilings — Specialists in making art glass dome ceilings with top-quality steel frames. **Larry Etzen Studio**

2759. Sculpture Studio — Carving, moldmaking, and casting studio. Commissions for figurative carving in marble, granite, and limestone. Cast sculpture in many other materials. **Manuel Palos Sculpture Inc.**

8076. Mosaic Tiles — Design and fabrication of mosaic tiles, borders and murals. All are handmade from marble, granite, glass or ceramic. **Mosaic Fantasies**

726. Western Style — Casework and furnishings in the Western style for high-end residential, commercial, and contract furnishing markets. **New West Furniture**

813. Mosaic & Stained Glass — Art projects, including mosaics, stained glass, and sculpture for religious buildings, cemeteries, and commercial spaces. **Conrad Pickel Studio, Inc.**

4710. Trompe L'oeil & More — Murals, intricate stencilizing, glazing, graining, etc. Specializes in re-creation of historic ornament. Free brochure. **Lynne Rutter Decorative Painting Studio**

454. Solariums, Sunrooms & Conservatories — Sunrooms and glass house fabricated of cedar, oak, and aluminum. Free brochure. **CS Conservatories**

ELEVATORS & DUMBWAITERS

3250. Hydraulic Elevator Systems — Custom design, manufacture, and installation for residential applications. Free brochure. **CemcoLift/LGIS America, Inc.**

BATHROOMS, ACCESSORIES, PLUMBING

426. Vermiel Sinks — Specially-designed handmade double-bowl German Silver sinks (copper/nickel/zinc); the soft metal makes it useful in period kitchens, garden houses, and bars. **German Silver Sink Co.**

2940. Victorian Showerhead — Features 169 holes on an 8-in.-dia. face. Shower-arm bracket available or installs with 1/2-in. standard fittings. Free brochure. **Sunflower Shower Co.**

LIGHTING & ELECTRICAL

2240. Carbon-Filament Bulbs — Authentic carbon-filament bulbs furnish the finishing touch for period light fixtures. Free brochure. **AAMSCO Lighting**

60. Reproduction Lighting — Hand-crafted 18th- and 19th-century lighting fixtures: chandeliers, sconces, and table lamps — all of solid brass. Free catalog. **Authentic Designs**

7660. Historic Lighting — Vast selection of highest quality lighting reproductions, from 18th through early-20th century: residential, commercial, and institutional. Standard and custom designs. Free catalog. **Ball & Ball**

166. Outdoor Gas Lighting — Gas-burning and electric lighting in solid copper and brass. **Bevolo Gas & Electric Lights**

2619. Venetian & Murano Glass — Chandeliers, mirrors, and decorative items imported from Italy. Free brochure. **Casa di Murano**

772. Copper Lanterns — Handmade gas and electric lanterns in historical styles. Free brochure. **Charleston Lighting & Mfg., Inc.**

1331. Period-Style Lighting — Source of handmade reproductions of historic lighting. Exterior, post, wall, or hanging styles. **Classic Lighting Devices**

620. Ceiling Fixtures — Solid brass ceiling fixture with hemispherical frosted glass globe looks like period Art Deco light. Also in polished chrome. Custom work. **Conant Custom Brass Lighting**

Lighting & Weathervanes — Lighting for interior & exterior, including sconces in Leadtex for the tin look in old designs. Copper weathervanes and cupolas also available. Call 800-281-9798. **Copper House**

Reproduction Colonial Lighting — Visit the website www.jrcoppersmythe.com or call 508-869-2769 for more information. **Josiah R. Coppersmythe**

www.customlightstyles.com — Sconces, chandeliers, outdoor lighting, and more. **www.customlightstyles.com**

809. Custom Lighting — Hand-crafted fixtures in wood, tin, brass, or copper. Styles include Colonial, traditional, and transitional lighting. **Deep Landing Workshop**

8072. Garden Lighting — Garden lighting handcrafted in copper. Available in standard and low voltage. **Escort Lighting**

424. Electric & Gas Lighting — Elegant historically-styled lighting for interiors and exteriors. Original designs and historic reproductions. **Faubourg Lighting**

3116. Gas Lights — Electric- and gas-burning lighting in period styles. Free brochure. **Gas & Electric Architectural Lighting**

483. Custom Lighting — Hand-crafted, traditionally styled iron and brass lighting. Catalog \$5, refundable with order. **Handelman Studios**

8041. Forged Lighting — Blacksmith supplies a variety of forged lighting; chandeliers, wall sconces, pendants, and exterior lighting. **Hans Duus Blacksmith**

1210. Custom Casting & Lighting — Custom-cast architectural ornament in iron, aluminum, and bronze. Works from your specs or will create designs for your approval. Free brochure. **Historical Arts & Casting**

2853. Lighting — Early American lighting in solid copper and solid brass. Also, log cabin-style lighting. **Hutton Metalcrafts**

2594. Exterior Lighting — Supplier of exterior lighting fixtures for commercial and residential applications. **Johnson Art Studio**

5280. Victorian Chandeliers — Solid-brass chandeliers and sconces with Venetian crystal; traditional crystal chandeliers. Free brochure. **King's Chandelier Co.**

198. Landscape Lighting — Exterior lighting, many Arts & Crafts influenced styles. **Laguna Lightcraft**

336. Vintage Lighting — Table lamps, sconces, chandeliers, and bridge lamps. Also, original designs in cast brass. Free brochure. **Luminaria**

5380. Historic Lighting — Interior and exterior lighting in solid brass and bronze, in all traditional styles. Free brochure. **New York Gas Lighting Co.**

800. Lanterns & Sconces — Large selection of Early American lanterns, sconces, and chandeliers for indoor and outdoor use. Constructed from solid copper and brass. Catalog free to professionals. **Newstamp Lighting**

8068. Interior & Exterior Lighting — Manufacturer of quality lighting fixtures in solid brass, art glass, & hand-applied patina finishes. Electric and oil lanterns. **Old California Lantern**

2664. Hand-Crafted Lighting — Source of hand-crafted 18th-century lighting for interior and exterior applications; also, lanterns. **Olde Mill Lighting Co.**

301. Lighting In 17th- To 19th-C. Designs — Handmade chandeliers, sconces, and lanterns in styles from the 17th, 18th, and 19th centuries. **Period Lighting Fixtures, Inc.**

2597. Exterior Lighting Fixtures — Source of lanterns and onion post lights with hand-blown glass globes. **Sandwich Lantern**

2833. Reproduction Lighting — Wide range of 18th and 19th century lighting and furniture. **The Federalist**

5030. Arts & Crafts Fixtures — Custom-designed sconces, lamps, and chandeliers in hammered copper and mica. Residential and commercial. Free brochure. **V. Michael Ashford Evergreen Studios**

316. Belt-Driven Ceiling Fans — Hand-cast ceiling fan designs with wooden blades; designs include a belt-driven model and classic two-blade design. **Woolen Mill Fan Co.**

ARCHITECTURAL ANTIQUES & SALVAGE

718. Architectural Antiques — Gates, fencing, fountains, urns, statuary, and more. **Aardvark Antiques**

440. Vintage Vermont Barn Frames — Suited for dwellings, additions, studios. Also, roofboards, siding, and flooring. **The Barn People, Inc.**

7480. Wide-Board Antique Flooring — Flooring, barnwood, and beams. Also, furniture made from 19th-century barnwood. Free brochure. **Country Road Associates, Ltd.**

Antique Hardware — Supplies original antique door knockers, door hardware, furniture hardware, and twist bells. Visit www.eugeniaantiquehardware.com **Eugenia's Antique Hardware**

Restored Antique Appliances — Cookstoves, parlor stoves, and gas ranges. Also, restoration and conversion of appliances. Call 888-282-7506. **Good Time Stove Co.**

568. French Architectural Salvage — Supplier of antique French building materials. **Normandy Imports** ♦

Rediscovering the World of Mellor, Meigs & Howe

A century ago, during the most dynamic period of growth in the city of Philadelphia, the architectural office of Mellor, Meigs & Howe produced residential design of great imagination and refinement. With the recent re-publication of *A Monograph of the Work of Mellor, Meigs & Howe*, the firm's established principles and methods are again made available — and are applicable — for architects and landscape designers today.

A MONOGRAPH OF THE WORK OF MELLOR, MEIGHS & HOWE: COUNTRY ESTATES, SUBURBAN HOMES & OTHER STRUCTURES
Preface by Owen Wister
New Introduction by James S. Collins
Architectural Book Publishing Company
Paul Wenzel & Maurice Krakow
31 East 12th Street, New York, NY 10011
212 pp.; hardcover; \$69.95; ISBN 0-942655-11-7

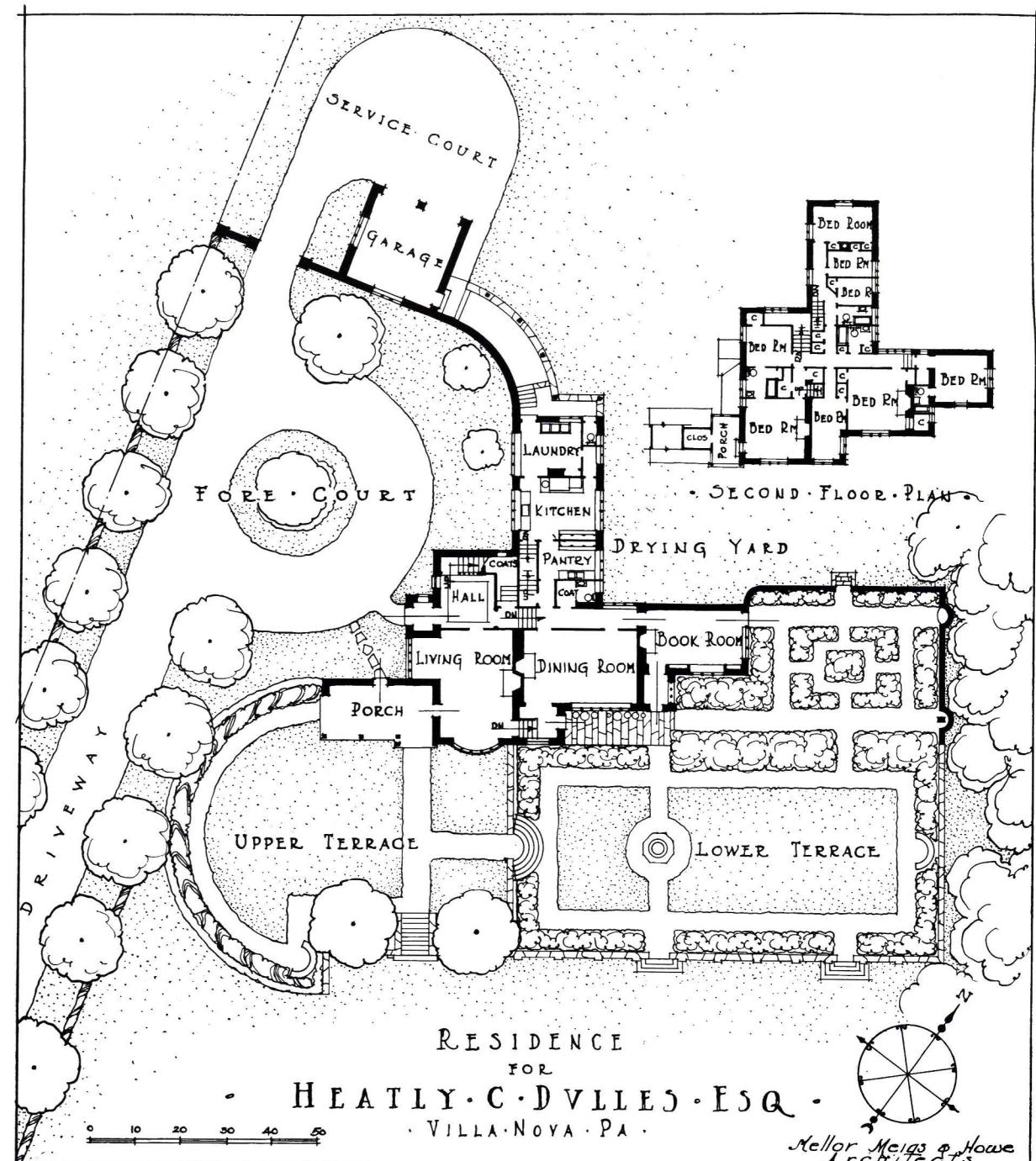
By James S. Collins

The architectural firm of Mellor, Meigs & Howe transformed American domestic design during the first third of the 20th century. By combining the local building traditions of Philadelphia with the rural architecture of England and France, they created a new American architecture for suburban and country houses. The publication in 1923 of *A Monograph of the Work of Mellor, Meigs & Howe*, which documents their most innovative projects from a corpus of over 130 houses and public buildings, established Mellor, Meigs & Howe as one of the leading architectural firms of their day. Their best-known country estates, High Hollow and the farmstead of Arthur E. Newbold, were two of the most published and copied designs in America before World War II. Houses, gardens, and public buildings based on the designs recorded in the *Monograph* can be found in every region of the United States. For this reason, *A Monograph of the Work of Mellor, Meigs & Howe* is one of the most influential books published on American domestic architecture. Its recent reprinting by the Architectural Book Publishing Company will once again present the work of architects Walter Mellor, Arthur Meigs, and George Howe — and allow us to examine their design principles and methods, which are as applicable for architects and landscape designers practicing today as they were nearly a century ago.

"Those that are concerned lest our inhabited world lose any beauty that can be saved, feel grateful to people like Messrs. Mellor, Meigs and Howe."

— Owen Wister, Preface, *A Monograph of the Work of Mellor, Meigs & Howe*

I. The Healy C. Dulles Residence, Villa Nova, Pa. Mellor, Meigs and Howe's principal design tenet was the integration of the building and landscape as parts of a total ensemble, with the house and garden together forming a single design. The building and landscape merge into a unified composition that is a direct response to the views, orientation, topography, and configuration of the site. Walter Mellor masterfully executed this principle in his design for the Healy C. Dulles residence (1917). The entrance drive runs along the edge of the property, leading to a motor forecourt with a concave wall that screens the service court and connects the garage to the kitchen ell of the house. (See site plan above) An open garden porch terminates the motor court. The house is T-shaped in plan, with the kitchen and pantry extending to the north and the living room,



Site plan for the Healy C. Dulles Residence, Villa Nova, Pa.

dining room, and book room extending west to east. Although situated with neighbors on three sides and fronting a public street, the rooms and gardens are arranged to provide privacy for all of the principal rooms. The entry hall, garden porch, and concave motor-court wall buffer the house on the west while the kitchen ell and book room screen the property to the north. Mellor also manipulated the sequence of rooms, terraces, and garden walls to provide secluded views to garden terraces for each room. Terraces step down from the entry-hall and living-room levels to create separate walled gardens for the dining room and book room.

Emphasizing the Craft Tradition

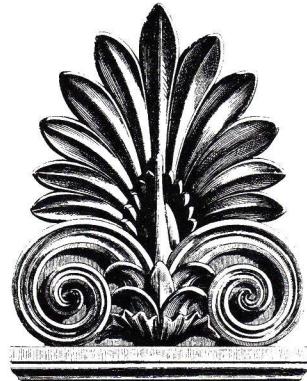
Mellor, Meigs and Howe also sought to continue the legacy of craft that began with the rural farmhouses and prominent Georgian houses of Philadelphia. They adapted the character of old houses to their work by adhering to local precedents and vernacular

construction techniques. The exterior walls of the Dulles residence are a local Wissahickon schist stone pointed with a mixture of cement, lime, and light-brown gravel. This surface treatment is similar to the wall finish of early Georgian houses such as Wyck (1690) and Mount Pleasant (1761) of Germantown and Fairmount Park, respectively. This stucco wall treatment gives the masonry facade an almost-uniform surface that accentuates the plasticity of the facades and the varied silhouettes of the roofline.

The use of vernacular construction techniques and details continues on the interior of the Dulles residence. The first floor features chestnut wall panels, limestone chimney-pieces, and beamed ceilings typical of medieval English houses; the second floor, chimney-pieces and trim based on prototypes dating back to the Revolutionary-era houses of the region. (See Dulles living-room interior on page 154) Mellor, Meigs & Howe based the proportions of the

continued on page 154

THE PALLADIO AWARDS



Annual Awards Program To Honor Excellence in Traditional Residential Design

CO-PRODUCED BY: PERIOD HOMES MAGAZINE AND RESTORATION & RENOVATION EXHIBITION & CONFERENCE

THE ANNUAL PALLADIO AWARDS FOR 2001 WILL BE PRESENTED IN A CEREMONY
AT THE RESTORATION & RENOVATION EXHIBITION & CONFERENCE
MARCH 21-23, 2002 AT THE HYNES CONVENTION CENTER
BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS

THE PALLADIO AWARDS PROGRAM

The Palladio Awards Program is designed to honor outstanding achievement in traditional design. The goal is to recognize project teams whose work enhances the beauty and humane qualities of the built environment through creative interpretation and adaptation of design principles developed through 2,500 years of the Western architectural tradition.

DEADLINES & ENTRY REQUIREMENTS

Deadline for receipt of the completed Entry Package is Nov. 15, 2001. For complete details on the Awards Program, Judging Criteria, and Submission Requirements, fax queries to (718) 636-0750, or Write in No. 7777 on the Information Card in this issue. For more about the Restoration & Renovation Exhibition & Conference, call 800-982-6247.

PALLADIO AWARD CATEGORIES

Palladio Prizes for Residential Architecture will be awarded in four categories:

- Restoration & Renovation Projects
- Adaptive Re-Use
- Sympathetic Additions
- New Construction

Four corresponding awards, co-produced by Traditional Building Magazine, will also be made for Commercial/Civic/Institutional projects.

IF YOU ARE ONE OF THE 8 WINNERS

- Winners of the Palladio Awards for 2001 will be announced during an Awards Ceremony at the Restoration & Renovation Exhibition & Conference, March 21-23, 2002 at the Hynes Convention Center, Boston, Mass. Attracting an average of 8,000 registrants, this Conference is the largest event in North America focused on traditional architecture and restoration.
- Winners will have the opportunity to give an illustrated presentation of their winning projects during a General Session at the Conference.
- Winners will also be honored at a special VIP dinner held during the Conference.
- Winning projects for Residential Architecture will receive full-color editorial coverage in the Summer issue of Period Homes.
- Winning projects will also be highlighted for 12 months in the Palladio Awards section of the Period Homes website.

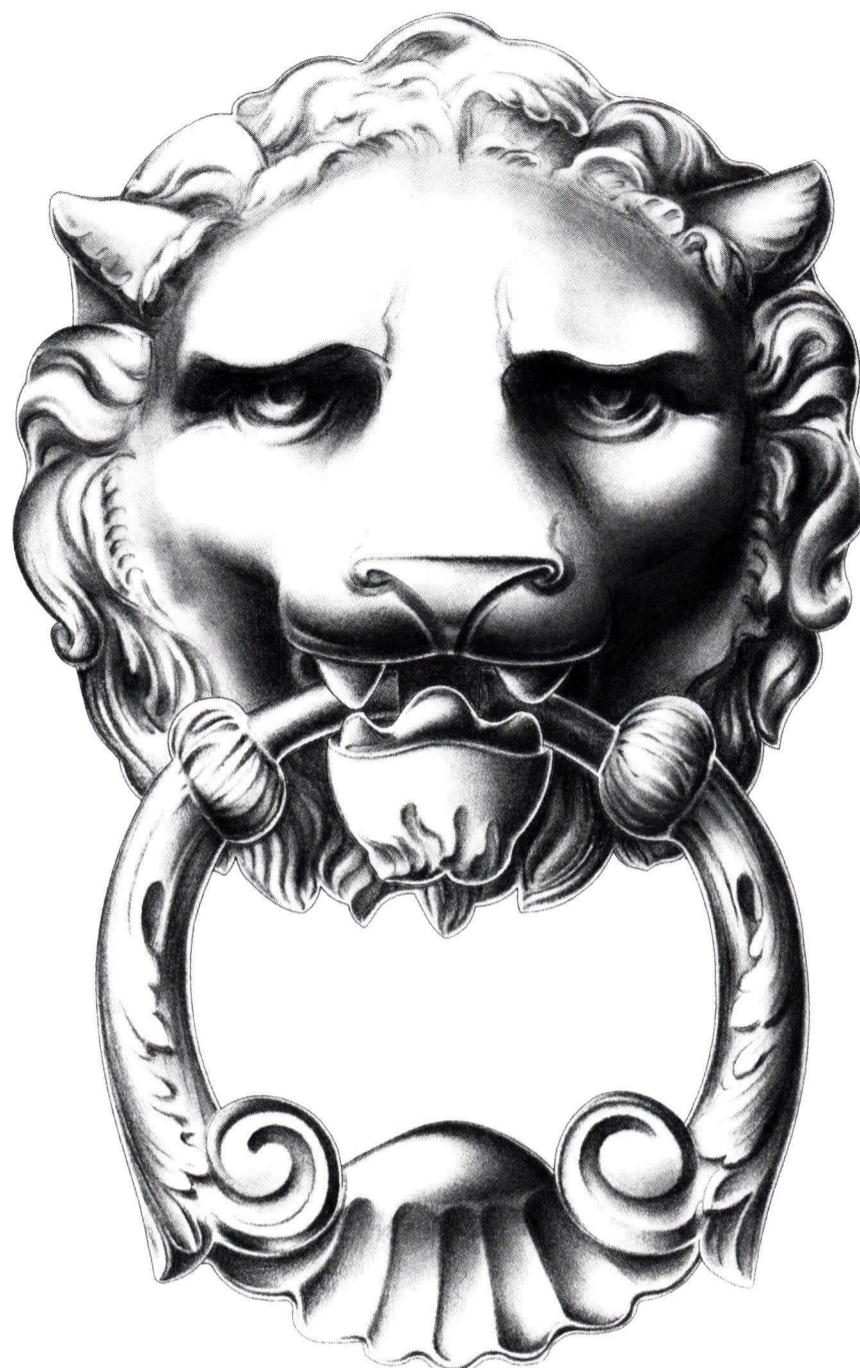
PANEL OF JUDGES

Judging will be by a Panel of distinguished architectural designers selected by the Editors of PERIOD HOMES and TRADITIONAL BUILDING Magazines.

JUDGING CRITERIA

The Palladio Awards are named in honor of Andrea Palladio, the Renaissance architect who created modern architecture for his time, while using models from the past for inspiration and guidance. The judges will be applying the same criteria that Palladio used in his own work: The projects should meet all the functional needs of contemporary usage, while applying lessons learned from previous generations to create beauty in the built environment.

The 8 Winners will be notified on February 1, 2002.



...
B

E. R. BUTLER & CO. *Traditional Brass Door Knockers*

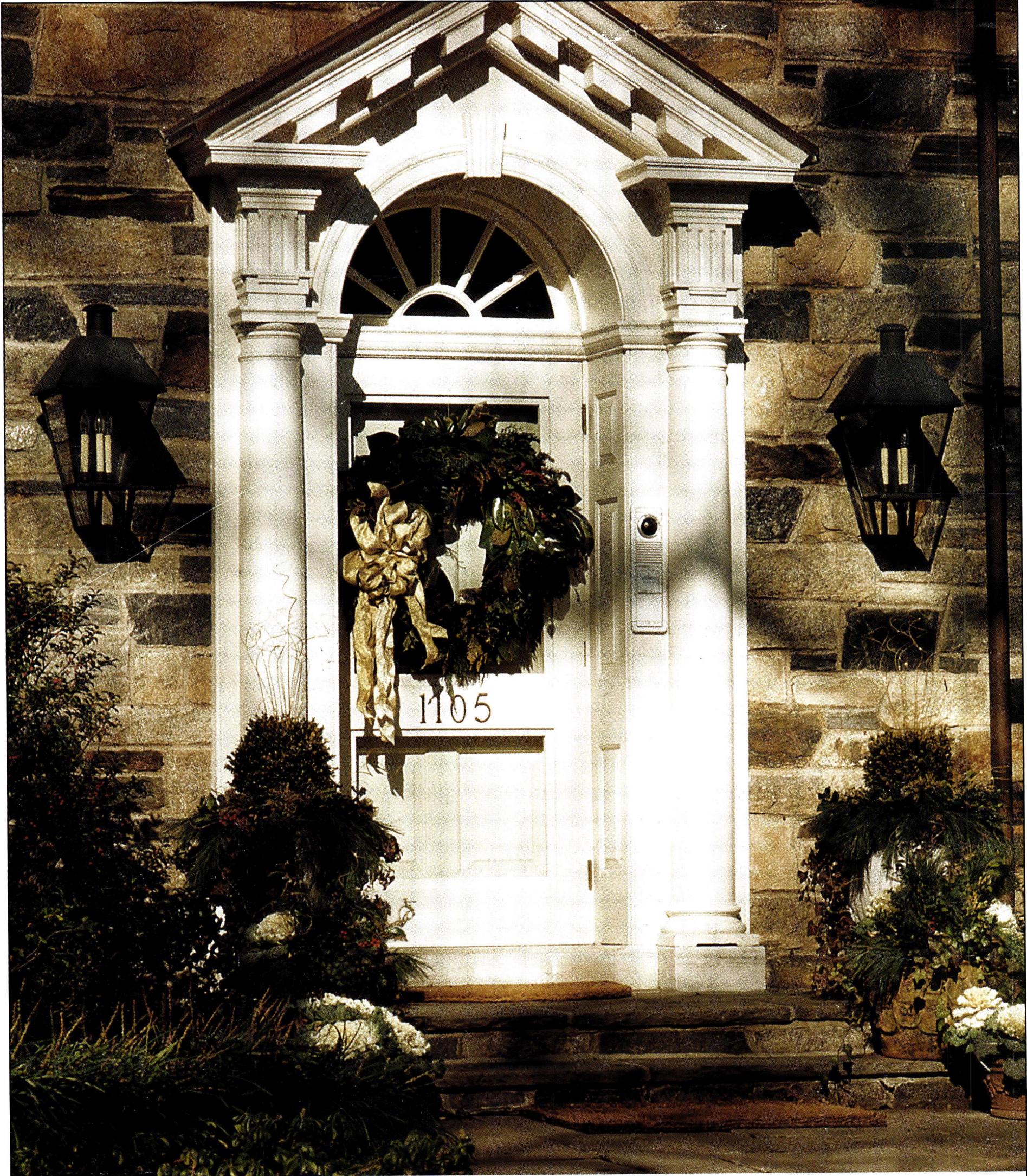
DOOR KNOCKERS hold a special attraction: mounted prominently on the threshold, they are the first fixture touched. They draw the eye and provide direct communication inside. Thus, to the skilled craftsman, they present a unique design opportunity. Originally the knocker was a simple iron ring fixed to a flat plate and hung on churches, monasteries, and other public buildings. Medieval and Renaissance metalworkers casting brass or bronze transformed humble door knockers into small works of art. The ring, embossed with ornate floral or shell chasing, joined a human or an animal figure, a metallic sentry: often a serpent, a hand, or a lion. Sometimes the knocker portrayed an entire sculpted

scene inspired by history or myth. Early Americans favored simpler, elegant designs with superior construction. Throughout New England S-shaped or hammer knockers were popular for their simplicity and resistance to theft. E. R. Butler & Co. offers a variety of traditional door knockers, from figurative Venetian knockers to Georgian and Federalist period American S-shaped knockers, ovals, and urns. Our solid brass knockers are available in a variety of decorative finishes. All knockers are fully complemented by a range of architectural trim including hinges, locks, cane bolts, cylinder rings and covers, key escutcheons and covers, thumb turns, doorstops, etc.

75 SPRING STREET · FIFTH FLOOR · NEW YORK, NY 10012 · TELEPHONE 212 925 3565 · TELEFAX 212 925 3305
www.erbutler.com · info@erbutter.com

CATALOGUES AVAILABLE TO THE TRADE · SHOWROOM BY APPOINTMENT ONLY

FINE ARCHITECTURAL, BUILDERS' AND CABINETMAKERS' HARDWARE



NO HOME IS COMPLETE WITHOUT THE RIGHT LIGHTING! HAND CRAFTED REPRODUCTION LIGHTING TO COMPLETE YOUR PERIOD HOME

by Ball and Ball Hardware Reproductions

Ball and Ball manufactures a complete line of reproduction interior and exterior lighting, in 18th, 19th, and 20th century designs. Using period techniques and materials, we faithfully reproduce each fixture with exacting attention to detail. Since 1932, Ball and Ball has been manufacturing the finest quality antique reproduction furniture hardware, builders' hardware, lighting fixtures, and fireplace accessories available.



BALL AND BALL
HARDWARE
REPRODUCTIONS
463 W. Lincoln Highway
Exton, PA 19341
Phone: 610-363-7330
Fax: 610-363-7639
Orders: 800-257-3711
www.ballandball-us.com